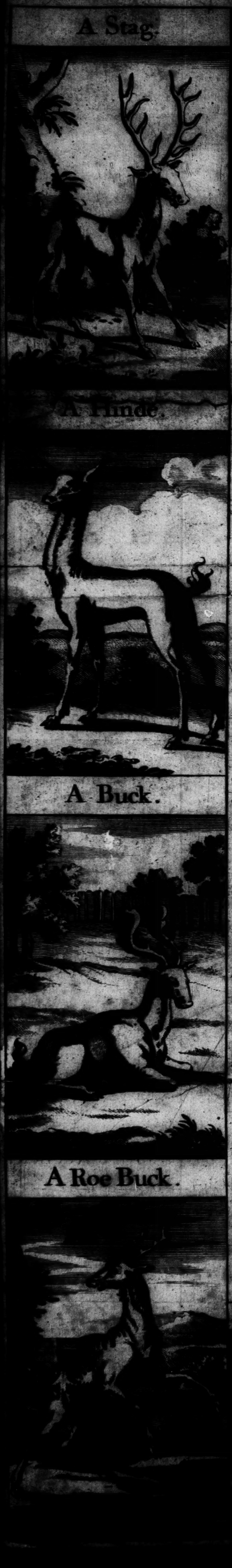
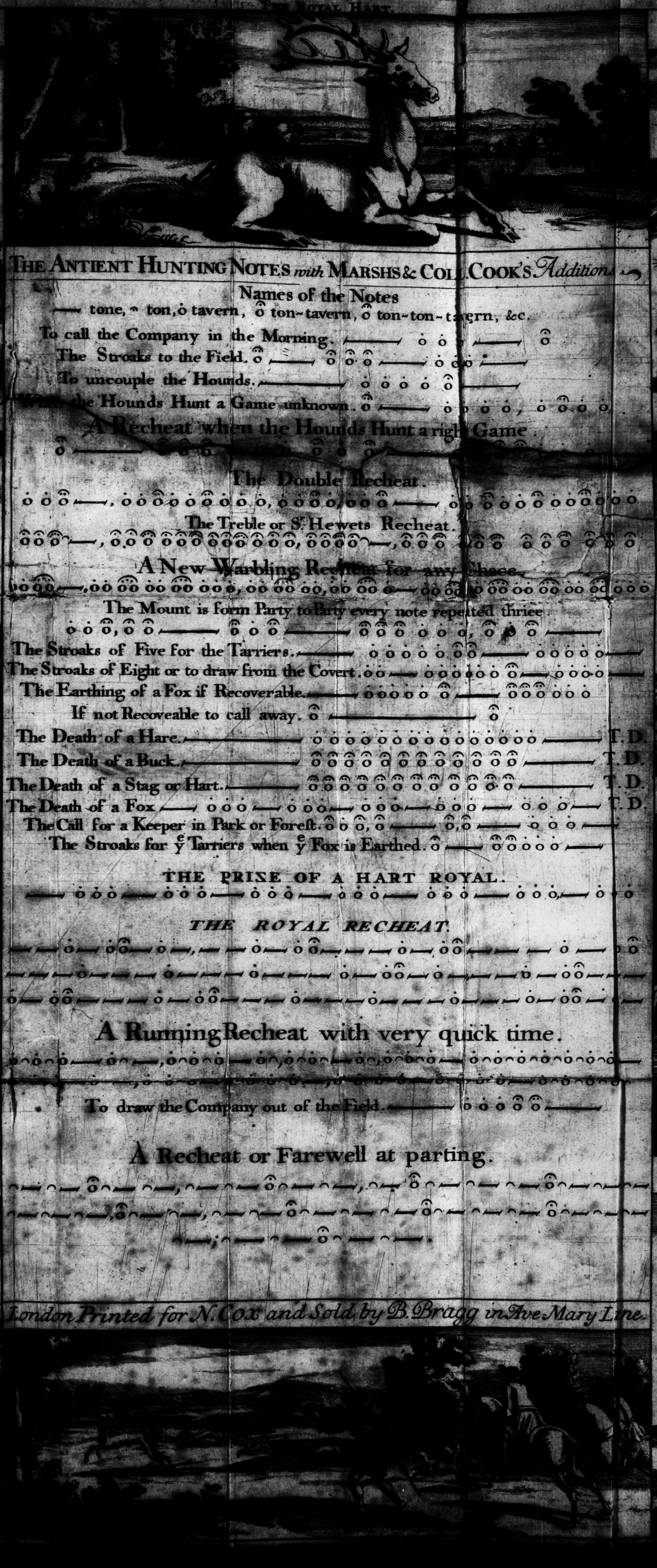
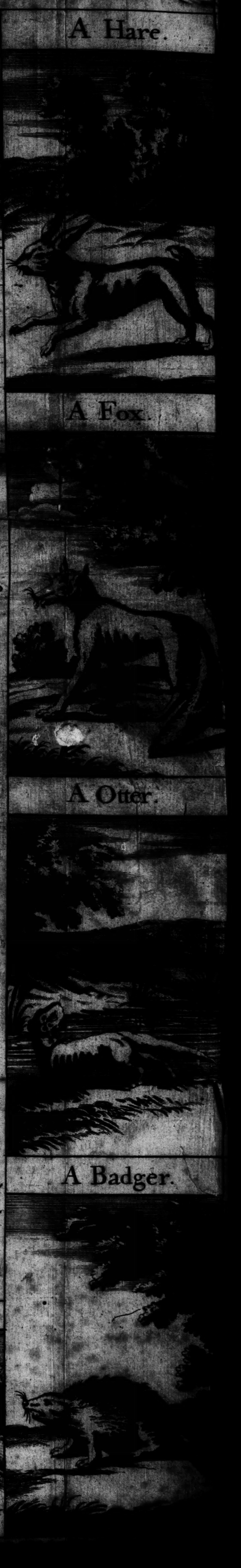


A Stag.



The Royal Hart.



A Hare.

A Hinde.

A Fox.

A Buck.

A Otter.

A Roe Buck.

A Badger.

THE ANTIENT HUNTING NOTES *with* MARSHS & COL. COOK'S *Addition*

Names of the Notes

— tone, ◠ ton, o tavern, o ton-tavern, o ton-ton-tavern, &c.

To call the Company in the Morning.

The Stroaks to the Field.

To uncouple the Hounds.

When the Hounds Hunt a Game unknown.

A Recheat when the Hounds Hunt a right Game.

The Double Recheat.

The Treble or S^t. Hewets Recheat.

A New Warbling Recheat for any Chace.

The Mount is form Party to Party every note repeated thriee.

The Stroaks of Five for the Tarriers.

The Stroaks of Eight or to draw from the Covert.

The Earthing of a Fox if Recoverable.

If not Recoveable to call away.

The Death of a Hare. T.D.

The Death of a Buck. T.D.

The Death of a Stag or Hart. T.D.

The Death of a Fox T.D.

The Call for a Keeper in Park or Foreſt.

The Stroaks for ye Tarriers when ye Fox is Earthed.

THE PRIZE OF A HART ROYAL.

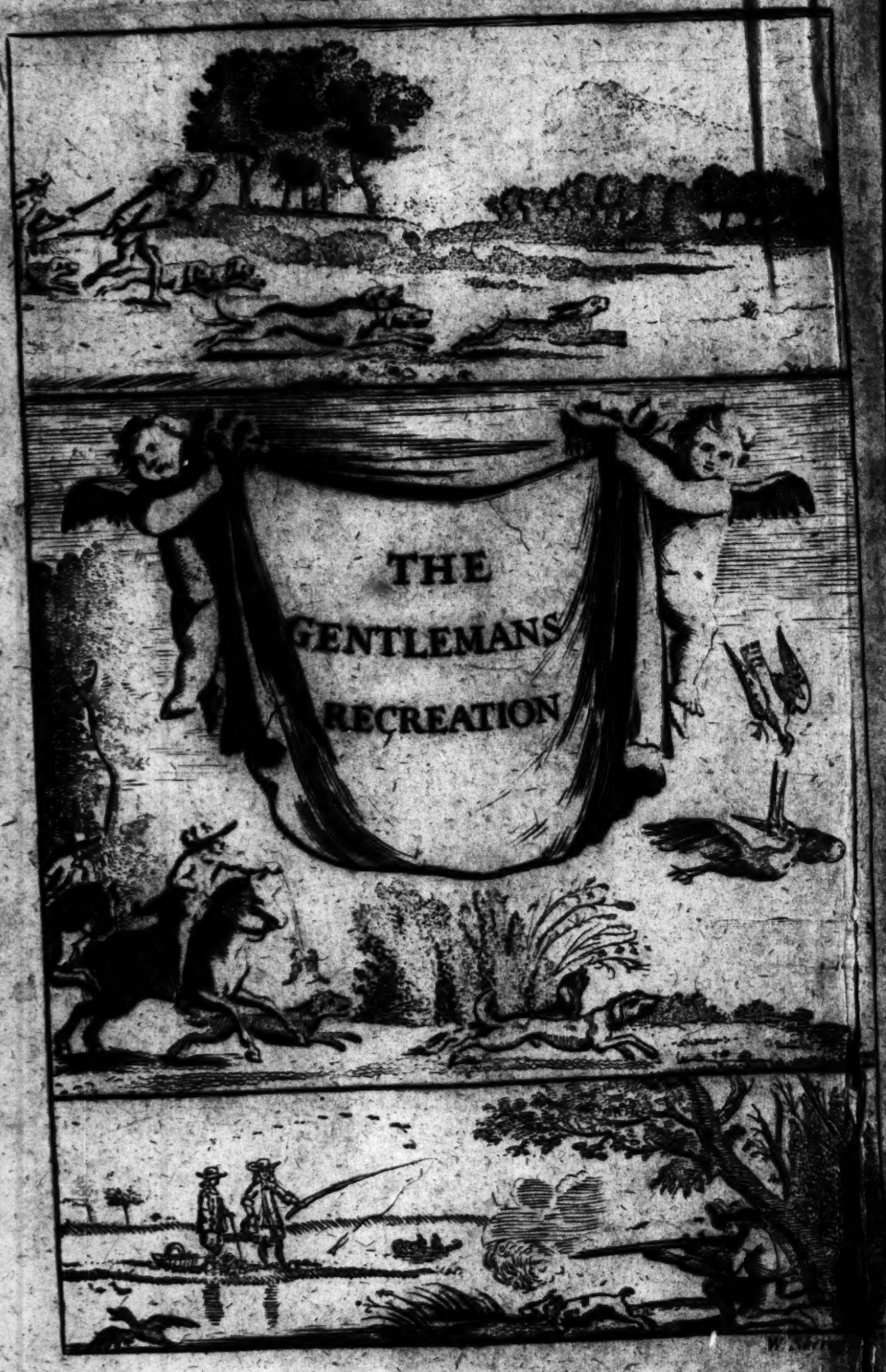
THE ROYAL RECHEAT.

A Running Recheat with very quick time.

To draw the Company out of the Field.

A Recheat or Farewell at parting.

London Printed for N. Cox and Sold by B. Bragg in Ave-Mary Line.


THE
GENTLEMANS
RECREATION

THE

Gentleman's Recreation:

In Four PARTS.

VIZ.

Hunting, *Fowling*,
Hawking, *Fiſhing*.

WHEREIN

Theſe generous Exerciſes are largely Treated of, and the Terms of Art for **Hunting** and **Hawking** more amply enlarged than heretofore. Alſo the Method of Breeding and Managing a *Hunting-Horſe*: Unto which is now annex'd an Appendix of choice Receipts for the Cure of ſeveral Maladies.

Whereto is added, A Perfect Abſtract of all the *Foreſt-Laws*, and of every particular Act of Parliament ſince *Magna Charta* to this time, as do any way relate to the ſeveral kinds of *Game* above-mention'd.

To which is prefix'd, A large Sculpture, giving eaſy Directions for *Blowing the Horn*. And other Sculptures proper to each Recreation.

The Fifty Edition.

LONDON: Printed by **F. Collins**, for **N. Cox**; and are to be Sold by the Bookſellers of *London* and *Weſtminſter*. 1706.

To the Right Honourable *Montague Venables Bertie*, Earl of *Abingdon*, Baron *Norreys* of *Ricot*, &c.

My Lord,

THE following Treatise has an hereditary Claim to your Lordship's Patronage; having found so favourable a Reception from your Father, to whose distinguishing Judgment and unquestionable Merits your Lordship is so acknowledged and visible an Heir.

Were I to address my self to a Person of less Understanding in all

the Accomplishments of a Gentleman, I should here set out the Excellence of those Recreations which are the Subject of this Book, and bring all those Reasons which the Matter would easily supply your Lordship, how Worthy it was of your Lordship's Protection. But when I remember that I speak to your Lordship, I am sensible that I need urge nothing to him who knows very well, that the Forest-Laws are a plain Evidence how much these generous Recreations have been the Care of our Wise Ancestors, and that the Legislative Power have all along had a peculiar Regard to them.

It is indeed no wonder that England, that has always been a Warlike

like Nation, shou'd be so Cautious of the Preservation of these Exercises, which have ever been look'd on, as the most Manly; and esteemed by all Antiquity no little Preparations to the Art of War, at least by ennuring the Body to bear Fatigue of Marches and Campaigns.

These Recreations therefore, cannot be suspected in the least unworthy of Encouragement from a Person of your Lordships high Character and Quality; and there can be no greater Encouragement, than to spread the Knowledge of them amongst them who are unacquainted with the Terms of Art, *for that Ignorance deters them from appearing in what they do not Understand.*

The Dedication.

The Method of Breeding and Manageing Hunting-Horſes, *which in this Edition is enlarg'd and improv'd, has a peculiar Claim to your Lordſhips Favour; becauſe no Perſon of Quality can boaſt, the Poſſeſſion of better Horſes in that kind, than your Lordſhip is Maſter of.*

Theſe, my Lord, are Motives which determine the Book to your Lordſhip's Patronage, but there are others which determine me: which are your unſhaken Loyalty to the Crown, and Monarchy, and unexampled Zeal for the Good and Safety of the Church of England *as by Law Eſtabliſhed, your peculiar Generoſity, and every other Virtue, that makes you ſo dear to all the Country, that more than one Experiment has ſhewn how much you are Maſter of all their Hearts.*

But, my Lord, I muſt remember that I ſpeak to one who had rather do Great and Good Actions than hear them repeated, I ſhall, therefore, only, beg leave to ſubſcribe my ſelf, Your Lordſhip's moſt Humble,

and moſt Obedient Servant,

NICHOLAS COX.

THE Gentleman's Recreation; OR, A TREATISE

Giving the beſt *Directions for HUNTING and KILLING all manner of* Chaſe *uſed in* England; *with the Terms of Art belonging thereunto.*

Alſo a ſhort Account of ſome peculiar Beaſts not uſually Hunted in *ENGLAND.*

PART I.

The INTRODUCTION.

HUNTING is a Game and Recreation commendable not only for *Kings*, *Princes*, and the *Nobility*, but likewiſe for private Gentlemen: And as it is a Noble and Healthy Paſtime; ſo it is a thing which hath been highly prized in all Ages.

Be-

Besides, *Hunting* trains up Youth to the use of manly Exercises in their riper Age, being encouraged thereto by the pleasure they take in hunting the *Stately Stag*, the *Generous Buck*, the *Wild Boar*, the *Cunning Otter*, the *Crafty Fox*, and the *Fearful Hare*; also the catching of Vermin by Engines, as the *Fitchet*, the *Fulimart*, the *Ferret*, the *Polecate*, the *Moldwarp*, and the like. Exercise herein preserveth Health, and increaseth the Strength and Activity. Others inflame the hot Spirits of young men with roving Ambition, love of War, and seeds of Anger. But the Exercise of Hunting neither remits the Mind to Sloth nor Softness, nor (if it be used with moderation) hardens it to inhumanity; but rather inclines Men to good Acquaintance, and generous Society. It is no small advantage to be enured to bear Hunger, Thirst, and Weariness from ones Childhood; to take up a timely habit of quitting ones Bed early, and loving to sit well and safe upon an Horse. What innocent and natural delights are they, when he seeth the Day breaking forth those Blushes and Roses which Poets and Writers of Romances only paint, but the Huntsman truly courts? When he heareth the charping of small Birds pearching upon their dewy Boughs? when he draws in the fragrancy and coolness of the Air? How jolly is his Spirit, when he suffers it to be imported with the noise of Bugle-Horns, and the baying of Hounds, which leap up and play round about him.

Nothing doth more recreate the Mind, strengthen the Limbs, whet the Stomach, and chear up the Spirit, when it is heavy, dull, and over-cast with gloomy Cares: from whence it comes, that these delights have merited to be in esteem in all Ages, and even amongst barbarous Nations, by the Lords, Princes, and highest Potentates.

Then it is admirable to observe the natural instinct of Enmity and Cunning, whereby one Beast being as

as it were confederate with Man, by whom he is maintained, ſerves him in his deſigns upon others. How perfect is the Scent or Smell of an Hound, who never leaves it, but follows it through innumerable changes and variety of other Scents, even over and in the Water, and into the Earth? Again, how ſoon will a *Hound* fix his Eye on the beſt and fatteſt *Buck* of the Herd, ſingle him out, and follow him, and him only, without changing, through a whole Herd of Raſcal Game, and leave him not till he kills him? Moreover, is it not delightful and pleaſant to obſerve the Docibleneſs of Dogs, which is as admirable as their Underſtanding? For as a right Huntſman knows the Language of his Hounds, ſo they know his, and the meaning of their own kind, as perfectly as we can diſtinguiſh the voices of our friends and acquaintance ſuch as are Strangers.

Again, How ſatisfied is a curious Mind, nay exceedingly delighted, to ſee the Game fly before him! and after that it hath withdrawn itſelf from his ſight, to ſee the whole Line where it hath paſſed over, with all the doublings and croſs-works which the amazed and affrighted Beaſt hath made, recovered again; and all that Maze wrought out by the Intelligence which he holds with Dogs! this is moſt pleaſant, and as it were a Maſter-piece of natural Magick. Afterwards, what Triumph there is to return with Victory and Spoils, having a good Title both to his Appetite and Repoſe! Neither muſt it be omitted, that herein there is an eſpecial need to hold a ſtrict Reign over our affections, that this Pleaſure, which is allowable in its ſeaſon, may not intrench upon our Domeſtical affairs. There is great danger leſt we be tranſported with this Paſtime, and ſo our ſelves grow Wild, haunting the Woods till we reſemble the Beaſts which are Citizens of them; and by continual converſation with Dogs, become altogether addicted to Slaughter and Carnage, which is wholly diſhonourable; being a ſervile

vile employment. For as it is the priviledge of Man, who is endued with Reason, and Authorized in the Law of his Creation, to subdue the Beasts of the Field; so to tyrannize over them too much, is bruitish in plain English.

Mistake me not, I intend this Reflection not for the Nobility and Gentry of this Nation, whose expence of time in this noble and delightful Exercise can no ways prejudice their large Possessions, since it is so far from being very chargeable, that it is exceeding profitable to the bodily health of such who can dispence with their staying at home without any injury to their Families.

I might much enlarge my self in the commendation of Hunting, but that I am loath to detain you too long from the knowledge of what will make a right and perfect Huntsman. I shall therefore thus conclude: No Musick can be more ravishingly delightful than a Pack of Hounds in full Cry, to such a Man whose Heart and Ears are so happy as to be set to the tune of such charming Instruments.

HUNTERS TERMS.

BEfore we shall treat of the Method that is to be used in the obtaining pleasure in the prosecution of this Royal Game, it will be very requisite, as an Introduction to this Work, first to understand those *Terms of Art* Huntsmen, Foresters, and Wood-men use, when they are discourfing of their commendable and highly recreative Profession. And first, let us consider,

Which are Beasts of Forest, Venery, or Venary, Chase, and Warren.

Old Foresters and Wood-men, with others well acquainted with Hunting, do reckon that there are five

five Beasts of Venery, (that are also called Beasts of Forest) which are these: the *Hart*, the *Hinde*, the *Hare*, the *Boar*, and *Wolf*: this is the Opinion of *Budæus* likewise, in his Treatise of *Philologie*, speaking of the former Beasts, *Semper Forestæ & Veneris habentur Bestiæ*: These (saith he) are always accounted Beasts of Venery and Forest.

Some may here object and say, Why should the *Hart* and *Hinde*, being both of one kind, be accounted two several Beasts? To this I answer, That though they are Beasts of one kind, yet they are of several seasons: for the *Hart* hath his season in the Summer, and the season of the *Hinde* begins when the *Hart's* is over.

Here note, that with the *Hart* is included the *Stag*, and all other *Red Deer* of Antiler.

There are also five wild Beasts that are called Beasts of Chase; the *Buck*, the *Doe*, the *Fox*, the *Martron*, and the *Roe*.

The Beasts and Fowls of Warren, are the *Hare*, the *Cony*, the *Pheasant*, and the *Partridge*; and none other saith Mr. *Manwood*, are accounted Beasts nor Fowls of Warren.

My Lord *Cook* is of another Opinion, in his *Commentary on Littleton* 233. *There be both Beasts and Fowls of the Warren*, saith he: *Beasts, as* Hares, Coneys, *and* Roes: *Fowls of two sorts*, Terrestres, *(and they of two sorts)* Silvestres, & Campestres. *The first* Pheasant, Wood-cock, *&c. The second*, Partridge, Quail, Rail, *&c. Then* Aquatiles, *as* Mallard, Hern, *&c.*

There is great difference between Beasts of Forest, and Chase; the first are *Silvestres tantum*, the latter *Campestres tantum*. The Beasts of the Forest make their abode all the day-time in the great Coverts and secret places in the Woods; and in the night-season they repair into the Lawns, Meadows, Pastures, and pleasant feeding places; and therefore they are called *Silvestres*, Beasts of the Wood. The Beasts of Chase

Chaſe do reſide all the day time in the Fields, and upon the Hills or high Mountains, where they may ſee round about them afar off, to prevent danger; but upon nights approach they feed as the reſt in Meadows, &c. and therefore theſe are called *Campeſtres* Beaſts of the Field.

Let us in the next place diſcover their Names, Seaſons, Degrees, and Ages of Foreſt or Venery, Chaſe, and Warren: and becauſe the *Hart* is the moſt noble, worthy, and ſtately Beaſt, I ſhall place him firſt, and muſt call a

Hart.

The firſt year, a *Hinde-calfe*, or *Calfe.*
The ſecond year, a *Knobber.*
The third year, a *Brocket.*
The fourth year, a *Staggard.*
The fifth year, a *Stag.*
The ſixth year, a *Hart.*

If hunted by the King or Queen, a *Hart Royal.* If he eſcape, and Proclamation be made for his ſafe return without let or detriment, he is then called a *Hart Royal Proclaimed.*

It is a vulgar errour, according to the Opinion of Mr. *Guillim*, to think that a *Stag*, of what age ſoever he be, ſhall not be called a *Hart* till he be hunted by the King or Queen, and thence he ſhall derive his Title. Mr. *George Turbervile* ſaith poſitively, he ſhall not obtain that Name till he be hunted or killed by a Prince. But late Huntſmen do agree, he may be called a *Hart* at and after the age of ſix years old.

Now if the King or Queen ſhall happen to hunt or chaſe him, and he eſcape with life, he ſhall ever after be called a *Hart Royal*: But if he fly ſo far from the Foreſt or Chaſe, that it is unlikely he will ever return of his own accord to the place aforeſaid, and that Proclamation be made in all Towns and Villages

lages thereabout, that none ſhall kill or offend him, but that he may ſafely return if he liſt; he is then called a *Hart Royal Proclaimed.*

The ſecond Beaſt of Venery is called a

Hinde.

And ſhe is called the firſt year, a *Calf.*
The ſecond year, a *Hearſe*, and ſometimes we ſay *Brockets Siſter*, &c.
The third year, a *Hinde.*

The next and third, which by old Foreſters is called the King of all Beaſts of Venery, is the

Hare.

And is called the firſt year, a *Leveret.*
The ſecond year, a *Hare.*
The third year, a *Great Hare.*

The fourth Beaſt of Venery is called the

Wild Boar.

The firſt year, he is a *Pig of the Sounder.*
The ſecond year, he is a *Hog.*
The third year, he is a *Hogs Steer.*
The fourth year, he is a *Boar*, at which age, if not before, he leaveth the *Sounder*, and then he is called a *Singler* or *Sanglier.*

The fifth and laſt Beaſt of Venery is the

Wolf.

The Names of the Beaſts of Chaſe according to their Ages

Ages.

The firſt is the

Buck.

He is called the firſt year, a *Fawn.*
The ſecond year, a *Pricket.*
The third year, a *Sorel.*
The fourth year, a *Sore.*
The fifth year, a *Buck of the firſt Head.*
The ſixth year, a *Great Buck.*

The ſecond Beaſt of Chaſe is the

Doe or *Doo.*

She is called the firſt year, a *Fawn.*
The ſecond year, a *Tegg.*
The third year, a *Doe.*

The third Beaſt of Chaſe is the

Fox.

And is called the firſt year, a *Cub.*
The ſecond year, a *Fox*, and afterwards an old *Fox.*

The fourth Beaſt of Chaſe is the

Martern.

The firſt year, it is called a *Cub.*
The ſecond year, a *Martern.*

The fifth and laſt Beaſt of Chaſe is called the

Roe.

The first year, it is called a *Kid*.
The second Year, a *Gyrle*.
The third year, a *Hemuse*.
The fourth year, a *Roe Buck* of the *first Head*.
The fifth year, a *Fair Roe-Buck*.

As for the Beast of the Warren, the *Hare* hath been spoken of already. The *Coney* is called the first year a *Rabbet*, and afterwards an old *Coney*.

The Seasons of Beasts.

A *Hart* or *Buck* beginneth at the end of Fencet Month, which is 15 days after *Midsummer*-day, and lasteth till *Holy rood* day. The *Fox* at *Christmas*, and lasteth till the *Annunciation* of the *Blessed Virgin*. The *Hinde* or *Doe* beginneth at *Holy-rood*-day, and lasteth till *Candlemas*. The *Roe-Buck* beginning at *Easter*, and lasteth till *Michaelmas*. The *Roe* beginneth at *Michaelmas*, and lasteth till *Candlemas*. The *Hare* beginneth at *Michaelmas*, and lasteth till the end of *February*. The Season of the *Wolf* is said to be from *Christmas* till the *Annunciation* of the Virgin *Mary*. Lastly, The *Boar* begins at *Christmas*, and continues to the *Purification* of our *Lady*.

Terms to be used for Beasts of Venery and Chase, as they are in Company one with the other.

A Herd of *Harts*.
A Herd of all manner of *Deer*.
A Bevy of *Roes*.
A Sounder of *Swine*.
A Rout of *Wolves*.
A Richess of *Marterns*.
A Brace or Lease of *Bucks*.
A Brace or Lease of *Foxes*.
A Brace or Lease of *Hares*.
A Couple of *Rabbets*.

A Couple of *Coneys*.

Terms for their Lodging.

A *Hart* Harboureth.
A *Buck* Lodgeth.
A *Roe* Beddeth.
A *Hare* Seateth, or Formeth..
A *Coney* Sitteth.
A *Fox* Kennelleth.
A *Martern* Treeth.
An *Otter* Watcheth.
A *Badger* Eartheth.
A *Boar* Coucheth.

Terms for their Diſlodging.

Unharbour the *Hart*.
Rouze the *Buck*.
Start the *Hare*.
Bolt the *Coney*.
Unkennel the *Fox*.
Tree the *Martern*.
Vent the *Otter*.
Dig the *Badger*.
Rear the *Boar*.

Terms for their Noiſe at Rutting time.

A *Hart* Belleth.
A *Buck* Growneth or Troateth.
A *Roe* Belloweth.
A *Hare* Beateth or Tappeth.
An *Otter* Whineth.
A *Boar* Freameth.
A *Fox* Barketh.
A *Badger* Shricketh.

A *Wolf* Howleth.
A *Goat* Ratleth.

Terms for Copulation.

A *Hart* or *Buck* goeth to Rut.
A *Roe* goeth to Tourn.
A *Boar* goeth to Brim.
A *Hare* and *Coney* goeth to Buck.
A *Fox* goeth to Clickitting.
A *Wolf* goeth to Match or to Make.
An *Otter* hunteth for his Kind.

Terms for the Footing and Treading of all Beasts of Venery and Chase.

Of a *Hart*, the Slot.
Of a *Buck* and all *Fallow Deer*, the View.
Of all *Deer*, if on the Grass, and scarce visible, then it is called Foiling.
Of a *Fox*, the Print; and other such Vermin, the Footing.
Of an *Otter*, the Marks.
Of a *Boar*, the Tract.
Of a *Hare*, diversly; for when she is in open Field, she Soreth: When she winds about to deceive the Hounds, then she Doubleth: When she beateth on the hard High-way, and her Footing can be perceived, then she Pricketh; and in the Snow, it is called the Trace of the *Hare*.

Terms of the Tail.

Of a *Hart*, *Buck*, or other *Deer*, the Single.
Of a *Boar*, the Wreath.
Of a *Fox*, the Brush or Drag; and the Tip at the end is called the Chape.

Of a *Wolf*, the Stern.
Of a *Hare* and *Coney*, the Scut.

Terms for their Ordure.

Of a *Hart*, and all *Deer*, their Excrement is called Fewments or Fewiſhing.
Of a *Hare*, Crotiles or Crotiſing.
Of a *Boar*, Leſſes.
Of a *Fox*, the Billiting; and all other ſuch Vermin, the Fuants.
Of an *Otter*, the Spraints.

Terms for the Attire of Deer.

Of a *Stag*, if perfect, the Bur, the Pearls (the little Knobs on it) the Beam, the Gutters, the Antlier, the Sur-Antlier, Royal, Sur-Royal, and all at top the Croches.

Of a *Buck*, the Bur, the Beam, the Brow-Antlier, the Back-Antlier, the Advancer, Palm, and Spellers.

If the Croches grow in form of a Man's Hand, it is then called a Palmed Head. Heads bearing not above three or four, the Croches being plac'd aloft all of one height, are called Crown'd Heads. Heads having doubling Croches, are called Forked Heans, becauſe the Croches are planted on the top of the Beam like Forks.

If you are asked what a *Stag* bears, you are only to reckon Croches he bears, and never to expreſs an odd Number: As, if he hath four Croches on his near Horn, and five on his far, you muſt ſay, he beareth ten, a falſe Right on his near Horn (for all that the Beam bears are called *Rights*:) If but four on the near Horn, and ſix on the far Horn, you muſt ſay he bears twelve, a double falſe Right on the near Horn: For you muſt not only make the number even, but alſo the Horns even with that diſtinction.

When

When a *Hart* breaketh Herd, and draweth to the Thickets or Coverts, we uſually ſay, he taketh his Hold, or he goeth to Harbour.

All kind of *Deers* Fat is called Sewit; and yet you may ſay, This Deer was a high Deer of Greaſe. The Fat of a *Boar* is called Greaſe. The Fat of a *Roe* only is called Beavy Greaſe.

We ſay the *Deer* is broken up. The *Fox* and *Hare* is caſed.

It is { A Litter of *Cubs*. / A Neſt of *Rabbets*. / A *Squirrels* Dray.

Veniſon, or Venaiſon, is ſo called, from the means whereby the Beaſts are taken, *quoniam ex Venatione capiuntur*; and being hunted, are moſt wholſome.

Beaſts of Venary (not Venery, as ſome call it) are ſo termed, becauſe they are gotten by Hunting.

No Beaſt of the Foreſt that is *ſolivagam & nocivum*, is Veniſon, as the *Fox*, the *Wolf*, the *Martern*, becauſe they are no Meat. The *Bear* is no Veniſon, becauſe not only that he is *Animal nocivum & ſolivagam*; but becauſe he is no Beaſt of the Foreſt, and whatſoever is Veniſon muſt be a Beaſt of the Foreſt; *ſed non è converſo*. On the other ſide, *Animalia gregalia non ſunt nociva*, as the Wild *Boar*; for naturally the firſt three years he is *Animal gregale*; and after truſting to his own ſtrength, and for the pleaſure of Man, becometh *Solivagam*. He is then called *Sanglier*, becauſe he is *Singularis*; but he is Veniſon, and to be eaten. The *Hare* is Veniſon too, which *Martial* preferreth before all others:

Inter Quadrupedes gloria prima Lepus.

So are the *Red-Deer* and *Fallow Deer* Veniſon: *Vide Cook* Inſt. 4. pag. 316. Give me leave to inſert here out of the ſame Author, two Concluſions in the Law of the Foreſt, which follow from hence. Firſt, Whatſo-

ever Beaſt of the Foreſt is for the Food of Man, that is Veniſon: and therewith agreeth *Virgil*, deſcribing of a Feaſt,

Implentur Veteris Bacchi pinguiſque Ferinæ.

They had their belly full of Old Wine and Fat Veniſon. So Veniſon was the principal Diſh of the Feaſt. Secondly, Whatſoever Beaſt is not for the Food of Man, is not Veniſon. Therefore *Capriolus*, or the *Roe*, being no Beaſt of the Foreſt, is by the Law of the Foreſt no Veniſon, unleſs Hunted. Nature hath endowed the Beaſts of the Foreſt with two Qualities, Swiftneſs and Fear; and their Fear increaſeth their Swiftneſs,

——*Pedibus timor addidit alas.*

Vert is any thing that beareth green Leaf, but eſpecially of great and thick Coverts, and is derived *a Viriditate*. Vert is of divers kinds; ſome that beareth Fruit that may ſerve for Food both for Man and Beaſts, as *Service-trees*, *Nut-trees*, *Orchards*, &c. and for the ſhelter and defence of the Game. Some called *Haut-boys*, ſerving for food and browſe of and for the Game, and for the defence of them, as *Oaks*, *Beeches*, &c. Some *Haut-boys* for Browſe, Shelter and Defence only; as *Aſhes*, *Poplars*, &c. Of *Sub-boys*, ſome for Browſe and Food of the Game, and for Shelter and Defence; as *Maples*, &c. Some for Browſe and Defence; as *Birch*, *Sallow*, *Willow*, &c. Some for Shelter and Defence only; as *Elder*, *Alder*, &c. Of Buſhes and other Vegetables, ſome for Food and Shelter, as the *Haw-thorn*, *Black-thorn*, &c. Some for hiding and ſhelter, as *Brakes*, *Gorſe*, *Heath*, &c. *Vert*, as I ſaid, comes *a Viridi*; thence *Viridarii*, becauſe their Offices is to look after the preſervation of the *Vert*, which in truth is the preſervation of Veniſon.

Terms for Flaying, Stripping and Casing of all manner of CHASES.

The *Hart* and all manner of *Deer* are slain: Huntsmen commonly say, Take off that *Deer*'s Skin. The *Hare* is Stripped or Cased; and so is the *Boar* too, according to the opinion of the Antients. The *Fox*, the *Badger*, and all manner of Vermin are cased, beginning at the Snout or Nose of the Beast, and so turn his Skin over his Ears down to the Body, till you come to the Tail.

Proper Terms for the Noises of Hounds.

When Hounds are first cast off, and find some Game or Chase, we say, *They Challenge.* If they are too busie before they find the scent good, we say, *They Bawl.* If they be too busie after they find good scent, we say, *They Babble.* If they run it end-ways orderly, making it good, and then hold in together merrily, we say, *They are in full Cry.* When Spaniels open in the string (or a Grey-hound in his Course) we say, *They Lapse.* When Hounds hang behind, and beat too much upon the scent or place, we say, *They Plod.* And when they have either Earthed a Vermin, or brought a *Deer*, *Boar*, or such-like to turn head against them, then we say, *They Bay.*

Different Terms for Hounds and Grey-hounds.

Of *Grey-hounds*, two make a *Brace*; of Hounds, a *Couple*; of Grey-hounds, three make a *Lease*; and of Hounds, a *Couple and half.*

We let slip a Grey-hound, and cast off a Hound. The string wherewith we lead a Grey-hound, is called a *Lease*; and for a Hound, a *Lyome.* The Grey-hound hath his *Collar*, and the Hound hath his *Couples.* We

ſay, a Kennel of Hounds, and a Pack of Beagle's. Some other differences there are, but theſe are the moſt uſual.

Where we find *Deer* have lately paſſed into Thickets, *&c.* by which we gueſs their greatneſs, and then put the Hounds or Beagles thereto for the View, we account ſuch places *Entries.*

The Impreſſion where any *Deer* hath repoſed or harboured, we call a *Layr.*

When the Hounds or Beagles hit the ſcent of their Chaſe contrary, as to hit it up the wind when they ſhould hit down, we then ſay, they *Draw amiſs.*

When the Hounds or Beagles take freſh ſcent, hunting another Chaſe, until they ſtick and hit it again, we ſay, they *Hunt Change.*

When the Hounds or Beagles hunt it by the Heel, we ſay, they *Hunt Counter.*

When the Chaſe goes off, and comes on again traverſing the ſame ground, to deceive the Hounds or Beagles, we ſay, they *Hunt* the *Foil.*

When we ſet Hounds in readineſs where we expect the *Deer* will come by, and then caſt them off when the other Hounds are paſs'd by, we account that a *Relay.*

When Hounds or Beagles have finiſh'd their Chaſe by the death of what they purſued, and then in requital are fed by the hands of the Huntſman or others, we call that their *Reward.*

Huntſmen when they go drawing in their Springs at *Hart* Hunting, uſually make Dew-rounds which we call *Ringwalks.*

When any *Deer* is hard hunted, and then betakes himſelf to ſwimming in any River, *&c.* then we ſay, he takes *Soyl.*

When *Deer* caſt their Horns, we ſay, they *Mew.*

The firſt Head of a *Fallow-Deer* is called *Prick.*

When Huntſmen endeavour to find a *Hart* by the Slot, *&c.* and then mind his ſtep to know whether he is great and long, they then ſay, they know him by his *Gate.*

When

When *Deer* rub and push their Heads against Trees, to cause the Pills of their new Horns to come off, we say, they *Fray*.

When *Deer*, after being hard run, turn head against the Hounds, we say, they *Bay*.

When Hounds or Beagles run long without opening or making any Cry, we say, they run *Mute*.

When Hounds or Beagles at first finding the scent of their Game presently open and cry, we then say, they *Challenge*.

When Hounds run at a whole Herd of *Deer*, we say, they *Run Riot*.

When the Hounds touch the scent, and draw on till they rouze or put up the Chase, we say, they *Draw on the Slot*.

When a *Roe* crosses and doubles, it is called *Treboning*.

When a *Hare*, as sometimes (tho' seldom) takes the Ground like a *Coney*, we then say, she *Goes to the Vault*.

When we beat the Bushes, *&c.* after the *Fox*, we call it *Drawing*.

When a *Hare* runs on rotten Ground, or in a Frost sometimes, and then it sticks to her Feet, we say, she *Carryeth*.

When the *Fox* hath Young ones in her, we say, she *is with Cub*.

When Beagles bark and cry at their Prey, we say, they *Yearn*.

A Red Male *Hart* of a year old, is called a *Spitter*.

A *Rayn-Deer* is a Beast like an *Hart*, but hath his Head fuller of Antliers.

A *Pricker*, is a Huntsman on Horse-back.

Engines that we take *Deer* withal, are called *Wiles*.

When we set Hounds or Beagles in readiness, expecting the Chase to come by, and then cast them off before the rest come in, we call it a *Vauntlay*.

When Hounds or Beagles find where the Chase hath been,

been, and made a proffer to enter, but returned, we ſay, there is a *Blemiſh*.

We ſay *How* to a *Deer*.

When we ſtart a *Hart*, we ſay, *That, that*, or *There, there*.

The *Call*, a Leſſon blowed on the Horn to comfort the Hounds.

A *Reveat*, a Leſſon likewiſe blown on the Horn.

The *Mort* or *Death*, is blown at the death of any *Deer*.

There are ſeveral other Leſſons, which you may find in the Sculpture of Notes for blowing on the Horn.

There are ſeveral Hounds and Beagles which we have different Titles for, as Gaze-hound, Blood-hound, Staunch hound, Harrier, and Terrier, *&c.* But we generally in all our Kennels and Packs rank them under theſe Heads: *Enterers*, *Drivers*, *Flyers*, *Tyers*, *&c.*

And now to conclude our Diſcourſe of general Terms at this place, give us leave to inſert, for ſuch young Gentlemen as in time may keep a Kennel, ſome uſual Names of Hounds and Beagles.

A Catalogue of ſome general Names of HOUNDS and BEAGLES.

Banger	Dido	Fuddle
Beauty	Driver	Gallant
Blueman	Drunkard	Gaudy
Boman	Drummer	Hector
Blewcap	Damoſel	Juggler
Bonny	Durling	Jewel
Bouncer	Dutcheſs	Jocky
Captain	Dancer	Jenny
Capper	Daphne	Joler
Chanter	Fancy	Jollyboy
Counteſs	Fidler	Jupiter
Cryer	Flippant	Juno
Ceſar	Flurry	Keeper

Kil-

Kilbuck	*Ranter*	*Truelips*
Lively	*Ratler*	*Touchstone*
Lovely	*Ruler*	*Traveller*
Lady	*Ranger*	*Tracer*
Lilly	*Royal*	*Touler*
Lillups	*Rapper*	*Tunewel*
Madam	*Ruffler*	*Tidings*
Maulkin	*Spanker*	*Trouncer*
Merryboy	*Singwel*	*Trusty*
Mopsie	*Sweetlips*	*Truescent*
Motley	*Soundwel*	*Tryer*
Musick	*Stately*	*Venus*
Nancy	*Troler*	*Vulcan*
Nailer	*Thunder*	*Violet*
Plunder	*Thisbe*	*Wanton*
Pleasant	*Truman*	*Wonder*
Pluto	*Truelove*	*Winder*
Rockwood	*Tickler*	*Whipster*
Ringwood	*Tattler*	*Yerker*
Rover	*Tulip*	*Younker.*

Some other Terms and Descriptions relating more particularly to Forest and Forest Laws.

A *Forest* is a Place privileged by Royal Authority, and differs from Park, Warren, and Chase, and is on purpose allotted for the peaceable abiding and nourishment of the Beasts and Fowls thereto belonging. For which there are certain peculiar Laws, Officers, and Orders; part of which appear in the Great Charter of the Forest.

A *Forester* is an Officer of the Forest, sworn to preserve the Vert and Venison therein, and to attend the wild Beasts within his Bailiwick, and to watch, and endeavour to keep them safe by day and night. He is likewise to apprehend all Offenders in Vert and Venison,

ſon, and to preſent them to the Courts of the Foreſt, to the end they may be puniſhed according to their Offences.

A *Purlieu*, is all that Ground adjoining to Foreſts, which being made Foreſt by *Henry* the Second, *Richard* the Firſt, or King *John*, were by Perambulations granted by *Henry* the Third, and ſevered again from the ſame.

A *Purlieu*-man, is he that hath Ground within the *Purlieu*, and hath 40 *s.* a year Free-hold; and ſuch a one with ſome caution may hunt within his own *Purlieu*.

A *Regarder*, is an Officer of the King's Foreſt, that is ſworn to take care of the Vert and Veniſon, and to view and enquire of all the Offences committed within the Foreſt, and of all the Concealments of them; and whether all other Officers do execute their Office or not.

Woodgeld, is the gathering or cutting of Wood in the Foreſt, or the Money paid for it to the uſe of the Foreſters; or an Immunity for this by the King's Grant.

A *Raunger*. In ſome Foreſts there are twelve *Raungers*, whoſe Offices are to look after the *Purlieu*, and drive back the wild Beaſts into the Foreſt again; and to ſee, hear, and enquire of Offenders there, and to preſent their Offences.

A *Verderor*, is an Officer of the King's Foreſt, and choſen by the Free-holders of the County where the Foreſt is, by the King's Writ directed to the Sheriff for that purpoſe. Their Office is chiefly to look after the Wood and Graſs in the Foreſt.

An *Agiſtor*, is an Officer of the Foreſt that takes in to feed the Cattle of Strangers, and receives for the King's uſe all ſuch Tack-Money as becomes due from thoſe Strangers.

A *Chaſe*, is a Place uſed for the receipt of *Deer* and Beaſts of the Foreſt: It differs from a Foreſt and Park.

Park. It may be in the hands of a Subject, which a Foreſt in its proper nature cannot be. Neither is it incloſed as a Park always is; and it hath a larger compaſs, more ſtore of Game, and more Keepers and Overſeers.

Expeditate, is (ſaith Mr. *Crompton*) the cutting out the Ball of the Foot of great Dogs in the Foreſt; but (ſaith Mr. *Manwood*) it is the cutting off the three Fore-Claws by the Skin; and that the Owner of every ſuch Dog, unexpeditated in the Foreſt, ſhall forfeit 3 *s.* 4 *d.*

Fence Month, hath 31 days, begins 15 days before *Midſummer*, and ends 15 days after; in which time it is unlawful for any to hunt in the Foreſt, or to go amongſt the *Deer* to diſquiet them; becauſe it is the time of Fawning.

Frank Chaſe, is a liberty of Free Chaſe in a Circuit annexed to a Foreſt, whereby all men that have ground within the Circuit, are forbidden to cut down Wood, or diſcover, *&c.* within the view of the Foreſter, tho it be his own Demeſne.

Green hue, or *Vert*, they both ſignifie one thing, it being every thing that doth grow and bear green Leaf within the Foreſt, that may cover and hide the *Deer*.

Over Vert, is all manner of high Wood.

Neither Vert is all ſorts of Under-wood; Bruſh-wood is called *Cabliſh*.

Horngeld, is a Tax within the Foreſt for all manner of horned Beaſts.

Footgeld, is an Amercement on ſuch as live within the Foreſt, for not expeditating their Dogs. And to be quit of *Footgeld*, is a Privilege to keep Dogs there Unlawed, without Puniſhment or Controulment.

Pawnage, is Money taken by the Agiſtors for the feed of Hogs with the Maſt of the King's Foreſt; but (Mr. *Crompton* ſaith) it is moſt properly the Maſt,

Woods,

Woods, Lands, or hedg'd Rows, or Money due to the Owners of the ſame for it.

A *Scotale*, is where any Officer of the Foreſt doth keep an Alehouſe in the Foreſt by colour of his Office, cauſing Men to come to his Houſe, and to ſpend their Mony there for fear of having diſpleaſure; but this is forbidden by *Charta Foreſta*.

Perambulation, is the admeaſurement and ſetting down of Bounds and Limits to the Foreſt.

Drift of the Foreſt, is an exact view and examination taken at certain times, as occaſion ſhall ſerve, to know what Beaſts are there; that none Common there but ſuch as have Right; and that the Foreſt be not overcharged with the Beaſts of Foreigners.

An *Aſſart*, is a great Offence committed in the Foreſt, by grubbing up the Wood, Coverts, and Thickets, and making them plain as Arable Land, or the like.

Minoverie, is a Treſpaſs or Offence committed by ſome Engine ſet up in the Foreſt to catch *Deer*, or the like.

Tritis, is a freedom that one hath from holding a Grey-hound in ones Hand, when the Lord of the Foreſt is hunting there, or to be amerced for his Default.

Protoforeſtarius, was a great Officer heretofore in *Windſor* Foreſt.

Stableſtand, is when one is found ſtanding in the Foreſt with his Bow ready bent to ſhoot at any *Deer*, or with his Grey-hound in a Leaſe ready to ſlip.

Swainmote, or *Swannimote*, is a Court appointed to be held thrice in a year within a Foreſt, the firſt, 15 days before *Michaelmas*; the ſecond, about *Martinmas*; and the third, 15 days before St. *John Baptiſt*.

Chiminage, is taken by Foreſters in Fee throughout their Bailiwick, for Buſhes, Timber, *&c.* and ſignifies the ſame with Toll.

Afforeſt, is to turn Land into Foreſt.

Diſafforeſt,

Disafforest, is to turn Land from being Forest to other uses.

Let what hath been said be sufficient for an Introduction, and let us conclude it with a perswasion to all generous Souls not to slight this noble and worthy Exercise (wherein is contained so much Health and Pleasure) for the befotting Sensualities, and wicked Debaucheries of a City, in which the course of Nature seems to be inverted, Day turn'd into Night, and Night into Day; where there is little other Recreation but what Women, Wine, and a Bawdy Play can afford them; whereby, for want of Labour and Exercise, Mens Bodies contain as many Diseases as are in a sickly Hospital.

Of DOGS *in general.*

AS there is no Country in the World wherein there is not plenty of Dogs, so no Animal can boast of greater variety both in Shape and Kind.

Some Dogs are very great, as the *Wolf*-dog, which is shaped like a Grey-hound, but by much taller, longer, and thicker; some are for the *Buck*, others for the *Boar*, *Bear*, and *Bull*; some for the *Hare*, *Coney*, and *Hedge-hog*; some are both for Water and Land, and they are called Spaniels; other are called Lurchers, Tumblers, Brachers, Beagles, &c. As for Shepherds Dogs, foisting Curs, and such whom some fond Ladies make their daily, nay nightly Companions too, I shall pass over, being neither worthy to be inserted in this Subject, nor agreeable thereunto: Wherefore I shall only treat of such whose Natures do incline them to Game, for Man's Pastime and Recreation.

In the first place, let us consider the Nature of Dogs in general, wherein they agree, and their common pro-

properties of Nature, ſuch as are not deſtroyed in the diſtinction of Kinds, but remain like infallible Truths, and invariable in every Kind and Country through the Univerſe. Dogs (as it is to be obſerved) are generally rough; and their Hair indifferently long (which in Winter they loſe every year) is a ſign of a good Conſtitution; but if it grow over-long, the Mange will follow. The outward proportion of the Head altereth as the Kind altereth, having no commiſſure or ſeam in the Skull, being a continued Bone without Separation.

The beſt Dogs (in *Pliny*'s Opinion) have flat Noſtrils, yet round, ſolid, and blunt: Their Teeth are like Saws, which they change in the fourth Month of their Age; and by them is their Age diſcerned: For while they are white and ſharp, it diſcovers the Youth of a Dog; but when they grow blackiſh or dusky, broken and torn, they demonſtrate the elder Age.

The Breaſt of a Dog is narrow, ſo is his Ventricle: for which cauſe he is always in pain in the diſcharging his Excrements.

After they have run a Courſe, they relieve themſelves by tumbling and rowling to and fro. When they lie down, they turn round in a circle two or three times together; which they do for no other cauſe, but that they may the more commodiouſly lie round, and from the Wind.

In their Sleep they often dream, as may appear by their Barking. Here obſerve, that they who love to keep Dogs, muſt have a ſpecial care that they let them not ſleep too much, eſpecially after their Meat, when they are young: For as they are very hot, ſo in their ſleep doth their Heat draw much pain into their Stomach and Ventricle. The time of their Copulation is for the moſt part at a Year old; yet the Females will luſt after it ſooner; but they ſhould be reſtrained from it, becauſe it debilitates their Body, and dulls their Generoſity. After the expiration of a Year, they

they may be permitted to copulate; it matters not whether in Winter or Summer; but it is beſt in the beginning of the Spring: but with this caution, that Whelps of a Litter, or of one and the ſame Bitch, be never ſuffered to couple; for Nature delights in variety.

In antient time, for the more enobling of their Race of Dogs, they would not permit them to ingender till the Male was four year old, and the Female three, for by that means the Whelps would prove more ſtrong and lively. By Hunting, Labour, and Travel, the Males are made more fit for Generation, and they prove beſt which have their Sires of equal age. When they grow proud, give them Leaven mingled with Milk and Salt, and they will not ſtray and ramble abroad.

It is not good to preſerve the firſt or ſecond Litter, but the third, and after they have Littered, it is good to give the Bitch Whey and Barly-bread; for that will comfort her, and increaſe her Milk: Or take the Bones of broken Meat, and ſeeth them in Goats-Milk; which Nutriment will ſtrengthen very much both Dam and Whelps.

There is no great regard to be had as to the Food of a Dog, for he will eat any thing but the Fleſh of his own kind; for that cannot be ſo dreſſed by the Art of Man, but they find it out by their Noſe, and avoid it. It is good to let the Whelps ſuck two Months before they be weaned, and that of their own Dam.

Put *Cummin* now and then in their Bread, it will cure or prevent Wind in their Bellies; and if Oyl be mingled with that Water they lap, they will prove more able and ſwift to run. If he refuſe and loath his Meat, give him a little hot Bread, or dip brown Bread in Vinegar, and ſqueeze the Liquor thereof into his Noſe, and it will eaſe him.

There is ſome difficulty to chuſe a Whelp under the

Dam that will prove the beſt of the Litter. Some obſerve that which ſeeth laſt, and take that for the beſt: Others remove the Whelps from the Kennel, and lay them ſeveral and apart one from the other; then watch they which of them the Bitch firſt taketh and carrieth into her Kennel again, and that they take for the beſt; or elſe that which vomiteth laſt of all. Some again give for a certain rule to know the beſt, that the ſame which weigheth leaſt while it ſucketh will prove the beſt, according to the Verſes of *Nemeſian*:

Pondere nam Catuli poteris prependere viris,
Corporibuſque leves gravibus pernoſcere curſu.

But this is certain, that the lighter Whelp will prove the ſwifter, and the heavier will be the ſtronger.

As ſoon as the Bitch hath littered, it is requiſite to chuſe them you intend to preſerve, and throw away the reſt: Keep the black, brown, or of one colour, for the ſpotted are not much to be accounted of; but of Hounds, ſpotted are to be valued.

There is not any Creature irrational, more loving to his Maſter, nor more ſerviceable than a Dog, enduring blows from his hands, and uſing no other means to pacify his Diſpleaſure, than Humiliation and Proſtration; and after beating, turneth a Revenge into a more fervent Love. Irrational, did I ſay? I may miſtake, if what *Ælianus* reports be true, who tho' Dogs have Reaſon, and uſe Logick in their Hunting; for they will caſt about for the Game, as a Diſputant doth for the truth; as if they ſhould ſay, the *Hare* is gone either on the Left Hand, the Right, or ſtraight forward; but not on the Left or Right; therefore ſtraight forward. Whereupon he runneth forthright after the true and infallible Footſteps of the *Hare*.

Of Dogs *for Hunting. Of the Hound* Rache *and* Sluth-Hound, *ſo called in* Scotland, *and by the* Germans Schlathund.

THere are in *England* and *Scotland* two kinds of Hunting-Dogs, and no where elſe in all the World: The firſt kind is called *Ane Rache*, and this is a Foot-ſcenting Creature both of wild Beaſts, Birds and Fiſhes alſo, which lie hid among the Rocks: *The Female thereof in* England *is called a* Brache. *A Brache* is a mannerly Name for all Hound-Bitches. The ſecond in *Scotland* is called a *Sluth-hound*, being a little greater than the Hunting-Hound, and in colour for the moſt part brown or ſandy ſpotted. The Senſe of Smelling is ſo quick in theſe, that they can follow the Foot-ſteps of Thieves, and purſue them with violence until they overtake them: Nay, ſhould the Thief take the Water, ſo eager they are in their purſuit, that they will ſwim after them, and are reſtleſs till they find the thing they ſeek after: For this is common in the Borders of *England* and *Scotland*, where the People were wont live much upon Theft; and if the Dog brought his Leader to any Houſe where they may not be ſuffered to enter, they take it for granted, that there is both the ſtolen Goods and the Thief alſo.

Of the Blood-Hound.

THE Blood-hound differeth nothing in quality from the *Scottiſh* Sluth-hound, ſaving that they are more largely ſized, and not always of one and the ſame colour; for they are ſometimes Red, Sanded, Black, White, Spotted, and of all colours with other Hounds, but moſt commonly either brown or red.

The *Germans* call this Beaſt *Langhund*, becauſe their Ears are long, thin, and hanging down; and they differ not from vulgar Dogs in any other outward proportion, than only in their Cry and Barking. Their nature is, being ſet on by the Voice and Words of their Leader, to caſt about for the fitting of the preſent Game; and having found it, will never ceaſe purſuing it with full Cry, till it is tired, without changing for any other. They ſeldom bark, except in their Chaſe, and are very obedient and attentive to the Voice of the Leader.

They which are white, are ſaid to be the quickeſt ſcented, and ſureſt nos'd, and therefore beſt for the *Hare*; the black ones for the *Boar*; and the red for the *Hart* and *Roe*. This is the Opinion of ſome, but none of mine, becauſe their Colour (eſpecially the latter) are too like the Game they hunt: Although there can be nothing certain collected of their Colour, yet is the black Hound hardier, and better able to endure cold, than the other which is white. They muſt be tied up till they hunt, yet ſo as they be let looſe now and then a little to eaſe their Bellies; for it is neceſſary that their Kennel be kept ſweet and dry. It is queſtionable how to diſcern a Hound of excellent ſenſe: Yet ſome are of the Opinion, that the ſquare and flat Noſe is the beſt Sign thereof; likewiſe a ſmall Head, having all his Legs of equal length; his Breaſt not deeper than his Belly, and his Back plain to his Tail; his Eyes quick; his Ears hanging long; his Tail nimble, and the Beak of his Noſe always to the Earth; and eſpecially ſuch as are moſt ſilent, and bark leaſt.

Conſider now the divers and variable diſpoſitions of Hounds in their finding out the Beaſt. Some are of that nature, that when they have found the Game, they will ſtand ſtill till the Huntſman come up, to whom in ſilence, by their Face, Eye, and Tail, they ſhew the Game: Others, when they have found the foot-

Footsteps, go forward without any Voice or other shew of Ear or Tail: Another sort, when they have found the Footings of the Beast, prick up their Ears a little, and either bark or wag their Tails; and others will wag their Tails, and not move their Ears.

There are some again that do none of these, but wander up and down barking about the surest marks, and confounding their own Foot-steps with the Beasts they hunt; or else forsake the way, and so run back again to the first Head; but when they see the *Hare*, are afraid, not daring to come near her, except she start first. These, with the other which hinder the cunning labours of their Colleagues, trusting to their Feet, and running before their betters, deface the best mark, or else hunt counter, and take up any false scent for the truth; or, which is more reprehensible, never forsake the High-ways, and yet have not learned to be silent: Unto these you may also add those which cannot discern the Footing or Pricking of a *Hare*, yet will they run speedy when they see her, pursuing her hotly in the beginning, and afterwards tire, or hunt lazily. All these are not to be admitted into a Kennel of good Hounds.

On the contrary, those Hounds which are good, when they have found the *Hare*, make shew thereof to the Huntsman, by running more speedily, and with gesture of Head, Eyes, Ears, and Tail, winding to the Form or *Hares* Muse, never give over prosecution with a gallant Noise: They have good and hard Feet, and stately Stomachs.

Now whereas the nature of the *Hare* is sometimes to leap and make Headings, sometimes to tread softly, with but a very small Impression in the Earth, or sometimes to lie down, and ever to leap or jump out and into her own Form, the poor Hound is so much the more busied and troubled to retain the small scent of her pricking which she leaveth behind her;

for this cauſe it is requiſite that you help the Hound, not only with Voice, Eye, and Hand, but with a ſeaſonable Time alſo: For in froſty Weather the ſcent freezeth with the Earth, ſo that there is no certainty of Hunting till it thaw, or that the Sun ariſe. Likewiſe if very much Rain fall between the ſtarting of the *Hare* and time of Hunting, it is not convenient to hunt till the Water be dried up; for the drops diſperſe the ſcent of the *Hare*, and dry Weather collecteth it again. The Summer-time alſo is not for hunting, becauſe the Heat of the Weather conſumeth the ſcent; and the Night being then but ſhort, the *Hare* travelleth not far, feeding only in the morning and evening: Beſides, the fragrancy of Flowers and Herbs then growing, obliterates the ſcent the Hounds are guided by.

The beſt time for hunting with theſe Hounds is in Autumn, becauſe then the former Odours are weakned, and the Earth bater than at other time.

Theſe Hounds do not only chaſe their Game while it liveth, but being dead alſo by any manner of caſualty, make recourſe to the Place where it lieth, having in this point an aſſured and infallible Guide, namely, the *Scent* and *Savour* of the Blood ſprinkled here and there upon the Ground: For whether the Beaſt being wounded, doth notwithſtanding enjoy Life, and eſcapeth the hands of the Huntſman; or whether the ſaid Beaſt, being ſlain, is conveyed cleanly out of the Park, (ſo that there be ſome marks of Bloodſhed) theſe Dogs, with no leſs facility and eaſineſs, than avidity and greedineſs, diſcloſe and bewray the ſame by Smelling, applying to their purſuit agility and nimbleneſs, without tediouſneſs; for which conſideration, of a ſingular ſpeciality, they deſerved to be called *Sanguinarii*, Blood-hounds: And although a piece of Fleſh be ſubtilly ſtolen, and cunningly conveyed away, with ſuch Proviſo's and Precaveats, as thereby all appearance of Blood is thereby prevented, or concealed; yet theſe kind of Dogs, by certain direction

direction of an inward assured notice and private mark, pursue these desperate *Deer*-stealers through craggy Ways, and crooked Meanders, till they have found them out; yea, so effectual is their foresight, that they can discover, separate, and pick them out from an infinite multitude; creep they never so far into the thickest throng, they will find them out notwithstanding.

Of the Gaze-Hound.

THis Dog is little beholding in Hunting to his Nose or Smelling, but to sharpness of Sight altogether, by the virtue whereof it makes excellent sport with the *Fox* and *Hare*.

This Dog will chuse and separate from amongst a great Flock or Herd, and such a one will it take by election, as is not lank or lean, but full, fat, and round.

If a Beast we wounded, and go astray, this Dog will seek after it by the stedfastness of the Eye; if it happen to return, and be mingled with the residue of the Herd, this Dog will soon spy it out, leaving the rest untouched; and after he hath set sure sight upon it, he separateth it from the company; and having so done, never ceaseth till he hath wearied it to death.

This Dog is called in Latin *Agasæus*, because the Beams of the Sight are so stedfastly setled, and unmoveably fastned. These Dogs are much used in the Northern parts of *England*, much more than in the Southern; and on Champaign ground, rather than in bushy and woody Places: Horsemen use them more than Footmen.

If it happen so at any time that this Dog take a wrong way, the Master making some usual sign and familiar token, he returneth forthwith, and taketh the right

and ready courſe, beginning his Chaſe afreſh, and with a clear Voice, and a ſwift Foot, followeth the Game with as much courage and nimbleneſs as he did at the firſt.

Of the Grey-Hound.

AMong the divers kinds of Hunting dogs, the *Grey-hound*, by reaſon of his Swiftneſs, Strength, and Sagacity to follow and purſue his Game, deſerveth the firſt place; for ſuch are the conditions of this Dog, as a Philoſopher obſerveth, that he is reaſonably ſcented to find out, ſpeedy and quick of Foot to follow, and fierce and ſtrong to take and overcome; and yet ſilent, coming upon his Prey at unawares, according to the obſervation of *Grotius*.

Sic Canis illa ſuos taciturna ſupervenit hoſtes.

The beſt *Grey-hound* hath a long Body, ſtrong, and reaſonably great, not ſo big as the *Wolf* dog in *Ireland*; a neat ſharp Head, and ſplendent Eyes; a long Month, and ſharp Teeth; little Ears, and thin Griſtles in them; a ſtraight Neck, and a broad and ſtrong Breaſt; his fore Legs ſtraight and ſhort, his hinder Legs long and ſtraight; broad Shoulders, round Ribs, fleſhy Buttocks, but not fat; a long Tail, ſtrong, and full of Sinews. Thus *Nemeſian* eloquently deſcribes the beſt of *Grey hounds*:

——— ——— ——— Sit cruribus altis,
Coſtarum ſub fine decenter prona carinam;
Renibus ampla ſatis validis deductaq; coxa
Sit rigidis, multamq; gerat ſub pectore lato,
Quæ ſenſim rurſus ſicca ſe colligat alvo:
Cuiq; nimis molles fluitent in curſibus Aures.
Elige tunc curſu facilem, facilemq; recurſu,
Dum ſuperant vires, dum læto flore juventus.

Of

Of this kind, that is always the beſt to be choſen among the Whelps, which weigheth lighteſt; for it will be ſooneſt at the Game, and ſo hang upon it, hindering its Swiftneſs, till the ſtronger and heavier Dogs come to help and offer their aſſiſtance; and therefore beſides the Marks, or neceſſary good Parts of a *Grey-hound* already ſpoken of, it is requiſite that he have large Sides, and a broad Midriff, that ſo he may take his Breath in and out more eaſily: His Belly muſt be ſmall; if otherwiſe, it will hinder the Swiftneſs of his Courſe; Likewiſe he muſt have long Legs, thin and ſoft Hairs. And theſe muſt the Huntſman lead on his Left Hand, if he be on foot; and on the Right, if on Horſe-back.

The beſt time to try them and train them to their Game, is at twelve Months old; yet ſome begin ſooner with them, that is, at ten Months, if they are Males, and at eight if Females: Yet it is ſureſt not to ſtrain them, or permit them to run a long Courſe, till they be twenty Months old. Keep them alſo in the Slip while they are abroad, until they can ſee their Courſe; and looſen not a young Dog, until the Game have been on foot for a good ſeaſon, leſt being overgreedy of the Prey, he ſtrain his Limbs too much.

The *Grey-hounds* which are moſt in requeſt among the *Germans*, are called *Windſpil*, alluding to compare their Swiftneſs with the Wind; but the *French* make moſt account of thoſe that are bred in the Mountains of *Dalmatia*, or in any other Mountains, eſpecially of *Turky*; for ſuch have hard Feet, long Ears, and briſtle Tails.

The *Grey-hound* (called by the Latins *Leporarius*) hath his Name from the Word *Gre*, which Word ſoundeth *Gradus* in *Latin*, in *Engliſh* Degree; becauſe among all Dogs, theſe are the moſt principal, having the chiefeſt place, and being ſimply and abſolutely the beſt of the gentle kind of Hounds.

Of the Harrier *and* Terrier.

THE *Harrier* in Latin is called *Leverarius*, or *Sagax*; by the Greeks, *Ichneuten*, of tracing or chasing by the Foot.

Nature hath endowed this Creature with an admirable gift of Smelling, and is bold and courageous in the pursuit of his Game. There are several sorts of them, and all differ in their Services: Some are for the *Hare*, the *Fox*, the *Wolf*, the *Hart*, the *Buck*, the *Badger*, the *Otter*, the *Polecat*, the *Weasle*, the *Coney*, &c. some for one thing, some for another.

As for the *Coney*, we use not to hunt, but take it sometimes with a Net, sometimes with a *Ferret*, and sometimes with a Lurcher or Tumbler. Among the several sorts of *Harriers*, there are some which are apt to hunt two divers Beasts, as the *Fox* sometimes, and otherwhiles the *Hare*; but they hunt not with that good success and towardness, who stick not to one sort of Game.

The *Terrier* hunteth the *Fox*, and the *Badger* or *Grey* only: And they are called *Terriers*, because they (after the manner and custom of *Ferrets* in searching for *Coneys*) creep into the Ground, and by that means affright, nip, and bite the *Fox* and the *Badger*, in such sort, that either they tear them in pieces with their Teeth, being in the bosom of the Earth) or else hale and pull them by force out of their lurking Angles, dark Dungeons, and close Caves; or at the least, through conceived fear, drive them out of their hollow Harbours, insomuch, if they are not taken by Net or otherwise, they are compelled to prepare for flight, and being desirous of the next, tho' not the safest Refuge, they are oft-times entrapped with Snares and Nets laid over Holes for the same purpose.

Of

Of the Leviner, *or* Lyemmer.

THE *Leviner* is ſingular in Smelling, and in Swiftneſs incomparable. This is at it were a middle kind between the *Harrier* and the *Greyhound*, as well for his kind, as the frame and ſhape of his Body. It is called in *Latin Levinarius*, *à levitate*, of lightneſs, and therefore may well be called a *Light-hound*. This Dog, for the excellency of his Conditions, namely, Smelling and ſwift Running, doth follow the Game with more eagerneſs, and taketh the Prey with a jolly quickneſs.

Of the Tumbler.

THE word *Tumbler* undoubtedly had its derivation from the *French* word *Tumbier*, which ſignifies to Tumble; to which the *Latin* Name agrees, *Vertagus*, from *Vertere* to turn, and ſo they do: For in Hunting they turn and tumble, winding their Bodies about circularly, and then fiercely and violently venturing on the Beaſts, do ſuddenly gripe it at the very entrance or mouth of the Holes or Receptacles, before they can make any recovery of ſelf-ſecurity.

This Dog uſeth another craft and ſubtilty, namely, when he runneth into a Warren, or fetcheth a courſe about a *Coney*-borough, he hunts not after them, he no ways affrights them, he ſhews no ſpight againſt them; but diſſembling Friendſhip, and pretending Favour, paſſeth by with quietneſs and ſilence, marking their Holes diligently, wherein he ſeldom is deceived. When he cometh to a place where there is a certainty of *Coneys*, he coucheth down cloſe with his Belly to the ground, provided always by his Skill and Policy, that

that the Wind be againſt him in that Enterprize, and that the *Coneys* diſcover him not where he lurketh; by which means he gets the benefit of the ſcent of the *Coneys*, which is carried to him by the Wind and Air, either going to their Holes, or coming out, either paſſing this way, or running that way, and ſo ordereth the buſineſs by his circumſpection, that the ſilly *Coney* is debarred quite from his Hole (which is the Haven of their hope, and the Harbour of their ſafety) and fraudulently circumvented and taken before they can get the advantage of their Holes. Thus having caught his Prey, he carrieth it ſpeedily to his Maſter, waiting his Dog's return in ſome convenient lurking Corner.

Theſe Dogs are ſomewhat leſſer than the Hounds, being lanker, leaner, and ſomewhat prick-ear'd. By the form and faſhion of their Bodies they may be juſtly called *Mungrel Grey-hounds*, if they were ſomewhat bigger. But notwithſtanding they countervail not the *Grey-hound* in greatneſs, yet will he take in one days ſpace as many *Coneys* as ſhall ariſe to as big a Burthen, and as heavy a Load as a Horſe can carry: For Craft and Subtilty are the Inſtruments whereby he maketh this ſpoil, which pernicious Properties ſupply the places of more commendable qualities.

Let this ſuffice for a taſte. Now, after ſuch Dogs as ſerve Hunting, will follow ſuch as ſerve for Hawking and Fowling; among which, the principal and chiefeſt is the *Spaniel*, called in *Latin Hiſpaniolus*, borrowing his Name for *Hiſpania*; wherein we *Engliſh* men, not pronouncing the Aſpiration *H*, nor the Vowel *I*, for quickneſs and readineſs of ſpeech, ſay, *Spaniel*.

Of the Spaniel.

THere are two ſorts of Dogs which neceſſarily ſerve for Fowling. The firſt findeth Game on the

the Land, the other on the Water. Such as delight on the Land, play their parts either by ſwiftneſs of Foot, or by often queſting, to ſearch out and to ſpring the Bird for further hope of reward, or elſe by ſome ſecret ſign and privy token, diſcover the place where they fall. The firſt kind of ſuch ſerve the *Hawk*; the ſecond, the Net or Train. The firſt kind have no peculiar Names aſſigned them, except they are named after the Bird, which by natural appointment he is allotted to take; for which conſideration, ſome are called Dogs for the *Falcon*, the *Pheaſant*, the *Partridge*, and ſuch like: They are commonly called by one Name, *viz.* *Spaniels*, as if they originally came from *Spain*.

The *Spaniel*, whoſe Service is required in Fowling on the Water, partly through natural inclination, and partly by diligently teaching, is properly called *Aquaticus*, as *Water-Spaniel*, becauſe he hath uſual recourſe to the Water, where all his Game lieth, namely, Water-fowl, which are taken by their help in their kind.

His ſize is ſomewhat big, and of a meaſurable greatneſs, having long, rough, and curled Hair, which muſt be clipt in due ſeaſon: For by leſſening that ſuperfluity of Hair, they become more light and ſwift, and are leſs hindred in ſwimming. *Ducks* and *Drakes* are his principal Game; whereupon he is likewiſe named a Dog for a *Duck*, becauſe in that quality he is excellent.

Of the White Hound.

THoſe Hounds which are all of one colour, as all white, are the beſt Hounds; in like manner thoſe which are ſpotted with red: but thoſe which are ſpotted with a dun colour, are of little value, being faint-

heart-

hearted, and cannot endure much Labour. But ſhould they happen to be whelpt coal-black, which is but ſeldom, they commonly prove incomparable Hounds. But if white Hounds are ſpotted with black, Experience tells us, they are never the beſt *Hare* hunters. White, and black and white, and grey ſtreak'd white, are alſo the moſt beautiful.

Of Fallow Hounds.

THey are hardy, and of good ſcent, keeping well their Chaſe without change; but not ſo ſwift as the white. They are of a ſtrong conſtitution, and do not fear the Water; running ſurely, and are very hardy, commonly loving the *Hart* beyond any other Chaſe.

The beſt complexion for theſe *Fallow-hounds*, is the lively red, and ſuch as have a white Spot in their Forehead, or have a Ring about their Neck; but thoſe which are yellowiſh, and ſpotted with black or dun, are of little eſtimation. Thoſe which are well joynted, having good Claws, are fit to make Blood-hounds; and thoſe which have ſhagged Tails, are generally ſwift Runners. Theſe Hounds are fitter for Princes than private Gentlemen, becauſe they ſeldom run more than one Chaſe; neither have they any great ſtomach to the *Hare*, or other ſmall Chaſes; and, which is worſt of all, they are apt to run at tame Beaſts.

Of the Dun-Hounds.

THeſe are good of all Chaſes, and therefore of general uſe. The beſt coloured are ſuch as are Dun on the Back, having their four Quarters tann'd, of

or of the complexion of a *Hare*'s Legs: But if the Hair on the Back be black, and their Legs freckled with red and black, they then uſually prove excellent Hounds; and indeed there are few dun-coloured to be found bad; the worſt of them are ſuch whoſe Legs are of a whitiſh colour. It is wonderful, in theſe Creatures, to obſerve how much they ſtick upon the knowledge of their Maſter, eſpecially his Voice and Horn, and none's elſe. Nay, farther, they know the diſtinct Voices of their Fellows, and do know who are Babblers and Liars, and who not; and will follow the one, and not the other.

Now for Hounds, the Weſt Country, *Cheſhire*, and *Lancaſhire*, with other Wood-land and Mountainous Countries, breed our *Slow-hounds*; which is a large great Dog, tall and heavy. *Worceſter-ſhire*, *Bedford-ſhire*, and many well-mixt Soils, where the Champaign and Covert are of equal largeneſs, produce a middle-ſized Dog, of a more nimble compoſure than the former. Laſtly, the North parts, as *York-ſhire*, *Cumberland*, *Northumberland*, and many other plain Champaign Countries, breed the Light, Nimble, Swift, Slender, Fleet Hound. After all theſe, the little Beagle is attributed to our Country; this is that Hound, which in Latine is called *Canis Agaſæus*, or the *Gaze-hound*. Beſides our Maſtiff, which ſeems to be an *Indigena*, or Native of *England*; we train up moſt excellent Grey-hounds (which ſeem to have been brought hither by the *Galls*) in our open Champaigns. All theſe Dogs have deſerved to be famous in adjacent and remote Countries, whither they are ſent for great Rarities, and ambitiouſly ſought for by their Lords and Princes; altho' only the fighting Dogs ſeem to have been known to the antient Authors; and perhaps in that Age Hunting was not ſo much cultivated by our own Countrymen.

The marks of a good and fair Hound.

His Head ought to be of a middle proportion, rather long than round; his Noſtrils wide; his Ears large; his Back bowed; the Fillets great; the Haunches large; the Thighs well truſſed; the Ham ſtraight; the Tail big near the Reins, and the reſt ſlender to the end; the Leg big; the Sole of the Foot dry, and formed like a Fox's, with the Claws great.

Of the Election of a Dog and Bitch for good Whelps.

Your Bitch muſt come of a good kind, being ſtrong, and well proportioned in all parts, having her Ribs and Flanks great and large. Let the Dog that lines her be of a good fair breed; and let him be young, if you intend to have light and hot Hounds: For if the Dog be old, the Whelps will participate of his dull and heavy nature.

If your Bitch grow not naturally Proud ſo ſoon as you would have, you may make her ſo by taking two heads of Garlick, half a Caſtor's Stone, the Juice of Creſſes, and about twelve Spaniſh Flies, or Canthari-des: Boil theſe together in a Pipkin which holds a Pint, with ſome Mutton, and make Broth thereof; and of this give to the Bitch twice or thrice, and ſhe will infallibly grow Proud. The ſame Pottage given to the Dog, will make him deſirous of Copulation.

When your Bitch is lined, and with Puppy, you muſt not let her hunt, for that will be the way to make her caſt her Whelps; but let her unconfined walk up and down in the Houſe and Court, and never lock her up in her Kennel; for ſhe is then impatient of Food; and therefore you muſt make her ſome hot Broth once a day.

If you would ſpay your Bitch, it muſt be done be-fore ſhe ever had a Litter of Whelps: And in ſpaying her, take not away all the Roots or Strings of the Veins;

Veins; for if you do, it will much prejudice her Reins, and hinder her Swiftneſs ever after: But by leaving ſome behind, it will make her much the ſtronger and more hardy. Whatever you do, ſpay her not when ſhe is proud; for that will endanger her Life: But you may do it fifteen days after. But the beſt time of all is, when the Whelps are ſhaped within her.

How to enter young Hounds to Hunt the Hart: *and what Quarries and Rewards you ſhall give them.*

Having firſt taught your Hounds to know your Hallow, and the Sound of your Horn; then about eighteen Months old, you muſt lead them once a week into the Fields, and not oftner.

The beſt manner to teach your Hounds, is to take a live *Hare*, and trail her after you upon the Earth, now one way, now another; and ſo, having drawn it a convenient ſpace, hide it in the Earth: Afterward ſet forth your Hound near the Trail, who taking Wind, runneth to and fro near the Woods, Fields, Paſtures, Path-ways, and Hedges, until he find which way the *Hare* is gone; but with a ſoft and gentle pace, until at length coming near the lodged *Hare*, he mendeth his pace, and beſtirreth himſelf more ſpeedily, leaping on his Prey, and killing it, loadeth himſelf with his conqueſt, and bringing it to his Maſter with Triumph, he muſt receive both Dog and it with all tokens of Love into his Boſom.

When you hunt, let your *Hart* be in prime of Greaſe, for then he is heavier than in *April* or *May*, and cannot ſtand up ſo long.

Then chuſe your Foreſt, wherein the Relays are of equal proportion; then place all your young Hounds, with five or ſix old to enter them; and then lead them to the fartheſt and laſt Relay, and cauſe the *Hart* to be

hunted unto them. Being come up, uncouple your old Hounds; and having found the Track of the *Hare*, being well entred in cry, uncouple likewiſe your young Hounds; and if you find any of them lag behind, you muſt beat or whip them forward.

In what place ſoever you kill the *Hart*, immediately flay his Neck, and reward your Hounds; for it is beſt whilſt it is hot ſo to do.

There are ſeveral ways of entring Hounds: As firſt, by taking a *Hart* in Nets, and after you have cut off one of his Feet, let him go: A quarter of an hour after, aſſemble your young Hounds; and having found out the View or Slot of the *Hart* or *Buck* by your Blood-hounds, uncouple your young Hounds, and let them hunt. Secondly, you may bring them to quarry, by taking half a dozen Huntſmen, ſwift of foot, each whereof ſhall have two couple to lead in Liams; and having unlodg'd the *Hare*, purſue him fair and ſoftly, ſo that you tire not too much your young Hounds. After the *Hart* hath ran two or three hours, and that you find he begins to ſink, you may then caſt off your young Hounds: But beware it be not when he is at Bay, and his Head full ſummed; for ſo you may endanger the Lives of your Hounds.

But the beſt way of entring Hounds is at the *Hare*; for thereby they will learn all Doubles and Turns, better know the Hallow, will be more tender noſed, and better ſcented, by uſing the beaten Ways and Champaign Grounds.

Here note, that with whatſoever you firſt enter your Hounds, and therewith reward them, they will ever after love that moſt. Wherefore, if you intend them for the *Hart*, enter them not firſt with the *Hinde*. And for the better hunting the *Hart*, enter not your young Hounds within a Toil; for there a *Hart* doth nothing but turn and caſt about, ſince he cannot run end-long, and ſo they are always in ſight of him. If then afterwards you ſhould run at force out of a Toil, and at length,

length, and out of ſight, you will find the Hounds to give him over quickly.

Laſtly, enter not your Hounds nor teach them in the Morning; for if ſo, you will find them apt to give over in the heat of the day.

Of Courſing *with* Grey-hounds.

I Need not declare the Excellencies which are contained in the noble and worthy Exerciſe of Courſing with *Grey-hounds*, ſince it is ſo well known to all Gentlemen who take delight in this pleaſant and healthy Paſtime: I ſhall therefore only inſiſt upon the Breed of *Grey-hounds*, their Shape, their Diet, and the Laws belonging to the ſame, according as they were commanded, allowed, and ſubſcribed by the Duke of *Norfolk*, in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*.

Firſt, for the Breeding of *Grey-hounds*: In this you muſt have reſpect to the Country, which ſhould be champaign, plain, or high Downs. The beſt Valleys are thoſe of *Belvoir*, *White-horſe*, and *Eveſholm*, or any other where there are no Coverts, ſo that a *Hare* may ſtand forth and endure a Courſe of two or three Miles. As for high Downs or Heaths, the beſt are about *Marlborough*, *Salisbury*, *Cirenceſter*, and *Lincoln*.

Though theſe Places are very commodious for the breeding and training up of *Grey-hounds*; yet, in my opinion, the middle, or moſt part arable Grounds are the beſt; and yet thoſe Gentlemen who dwell on Downs or plain Grounds, to keep up the Reputation of their own Dogs, affirm, that they are more nimble and cunning in turning than the Vale-Dogs are: and Mr. *Markham* confeſſeth that he hath ſeen a Vale-Dog ſo much deceived, that upon a turn he hath loſt more ground than hath been recoverable in the

whole Courſe after: However, with a little care in a ſhort time this Error may be rectified; and then you will experimentally find, *The good Dogs upon the Deeps will ever beat the good Dogs upon the Plains.*

It is a received Opinion, that the *Grey-hound*-Bitch will beat the *Grey-hound*-Dog, by reaſon ſhe excelleth him in Nimbleneſs: But if you conſider that the Dog is longer and ſtronger, you muſt look upon that Opinion no more than as a vulgar Error.

Here note, as to the breeding of your *Grey-hounds*, that the beſt Dog upon an indifferent Bitch, will not get ſo good a Whelp as an indifferent Dog upon the beſt Bitch.

Obſerve this in general as to Breeding, let your Dogs and Bitches, as near as you can, be of an equal Age, not exceeding four years old: However, to breed with a young Dog and an old Bitch, may be the means of producing excellent Whelps, the goodneſs whereof you ſhall know by their Shapes in this manner.

If they are raw-bon'd, lean, looſe made, ſickle or crooked-hough'd, and generally unknit in every Member; theſe are the proper Marks of excellent Shape and Goodneſs: But if after three or four Months they appear round and cloſe truſs'd, fat, ſtraight, and as it were, full ſummed and knit in every Member, they never prove good, ſwift, nor comely.

The goodneſs of Shape in a *Grey-hound* after a year and a half old, is this: His Head muſt be lean and long, with a ſharp Noſe, ruſh-grown from the Eye downward; a full clear Eye, with long Eye-lids; a ſharp Ear, ſhort and cloſe-falling; a long Neck a little bending, with a looſe hanging Weaſand; a broad Breaſt, ſtraight Fore-legs, hollow Side, ſtraight Ribs; a ſquare flat Back, ſhort and ſtrong Fillets, a broad ſpace between the Hips, a ſtrong Stern or Tail, a round Foot, and good large Clefts.

The Dieting of *Greyhounds* conſiſts in theſe four things: *Food*, *Exerciſe*, *Airing*, and *Kennelling*.

Food

Food of a *Grey hound* is two-fold: general, that is, the maintaining of a Dog in good bodily condition; and particular, when the Dog is dieted for a Wager, or it may be for ſome Diſtemper he is afflicted with.

A *Grey-hound*'s general Food ought to be Chippings, Cruſts of Bread, ſoft Bones and Griſtles. Your Chippings ought to be ſcalded in Beef, Mutton, Veal or Veniſon Broth; and when it is indifferently cool, then make your Bread only float with good Milk, and give it your *Grey hounds* Morning and Evening; and this will keep them in good ſtate of Body.

But if your Dog be poor, ſickly, and weak, then take Sheeps-heads, Wool and all, clean waſh'd, and having broken them to pieces, put them into a Pot; and when it boils, ſcum the Pot, and put therein good ſtore of Oatmeal, and ſuch Herbs as Pottage is uſually made of; boil theſe till the Fleſh be very tender: Then with the Meat and Broth feed your Dogs Morning and Evening, and it will recover them.

If you deſign your *Grey-hound* for a Wager, then give him this Diet-bread: Take half a peck of the fineſt and drieſt Oat-meal, and a peck of good Wheat; having ground them together, boult the Meal, and ſcattering an indifferent quantity of Liquoriſh and Anniſeeds well beaten together; knead it up with the Whites of Eggs, new Ale and Barm mix'd together, and bake it in ſmall Loaves indifferent hard; then take it and ſoak it in Beef, or any of the aforeſaid Broaths; and half an hour after Sun-riſing, and half an hour before its ſetting, having firſt walkt and air'd your *Grey-hound*, give it him to eat. This will not only increaſe his Strength, but enlarge his Wind.

Having thus ſpoken of a *Grey-hound*'s Feeding, either generally or particularly, either for keeping him in health, or reſtoring it when it is loſt, I ſhall in the next place proceed to his Excerciſe; and this likewiſe conſiſts in two things, that is, Courſing and Airing.

As to the firſt, he ought to be Courſed thrice a week, in ſuch manner that you uſually reward him with Blood, which will animate and encourage him to proſecute his Game: but be not unmindful to give the *Hare* all juſt and lawful advantage, ſo that ſhe may ſtand long before the *Grey-hound*, that thereby he may ſhew his utmoſt Strength and Skill before he reap the benefit of his Labour.

If he kill, ſuffer him not no break the *Hare*, but take her from him, and having cleans'd his Chaps from the Wool of the *Hare*, then give him the Liver, Lights, and Heart, and ſo take him up in your Leaſh; and having led him home, waſh his Feet with ſome Butter and Beer, and then put him into the Kennel, and feed him half an hour afterwards.

Upon your *Grey hound*'s Courſing-days, give him in the Morning before you air him, a Toaſt and Butter or Oyl, and nothing elſe; then Kennel him till he go to his Courſe.

The reaſon of Kennelling your *Grey-hounds* is this, becauſe it breeds in Dogs Luſt, Spirit, and Nimbleneſs; beſides, it prevents ſeveral dangerous Caſualties, and keeps the Pores from ſpending till time of neceſſity: therefore do not permit your Dog to ſtir out of the Kennel, but in the hours of Feeding, Walking, Courſing, or other neceſſary buſineſs.

The Laws of the Leaſh or Courſing.

Though the Laws of Courſing may alter according to ſome mens ſwaying Fancies; yet theſe, ſubſcribed by the chief of the Gentry, were ever held authentical. Take them thus in order, according to my collection out of Mr. *Markham*.

Firſt, it was ordered, that he who was choſen *Fewterer*, or Letter-looſe of the *Grey-hounds*, ſhould receive the *Grey-hound*'s Match to run together into his Leaſh as ſoon as he came into the Field, and follow

next

next to the *Hare-finder* till he came unto the Form; and no Horſe man or Foot-man, on pain of diſgrace, to go before him, or on any ſide, but directly behind, the ſpace of forty yards or thereabouts.

2. That not above one Brace of *Grey-hounds* do courſe a *Hare* at one inſtant.

3. That the *Hare-finder* ſhould give the *Hare* three *Soboe's* before he put her from her *Lear*, to make the *Grey-hounds* gaze, and attend her riſing.

4. That the *Fewterer* ſhall give twelve-ſcore Law e're he looſe the *Grey hounds*, except it be in danger of loſing ſight.

5. That Dog that giveth the firſt *Turn*, if after the *Turn* be given there be neither *Coat*, *Slip*, nor *Wrench* extraordinary; I ſay, he which gave the firſt *Turn* ſhall be held to win the Wager.

6. If one Dog give the firſt *Turn*, and the other bear the *Hare*, then he which bore the *Hare* ſhall win.

7. If one give both the firſt and laſt *Turn*, and no other advantage between them, the odd *Turn* ſhall win the Wager.

8. That a *Coat* ſhall be more than two *Turns*, and a *Go-by*, or the *Bearing* of the *Hare*, equal with two *Turns*.

9. If neither Dog turn the *Hare*, then he which leadeth laſt at the *Covert*, ſhall be held to win the Wager.

10. If one Dog turn the *Hare*, ſerve himſelf, and turn her again, thoſe two *Turns* ſhall be as much as a *Coat*.

11. If all the Courſe be equal, then he which *bears* the *Hare* ſhall win only; and if ſhe be not *born*, the Courſe muſt be adjudged dead.

12. If he which comes firſt in to the death of the *Hare*, takes her up, and ſaves her from breaking, cheriſhing the Dogs, and cleanſeth their Mouths from the Wool, or other filth of the *Hare*, for ſuch courteſie

done, he ſhall in right challenge the *Hare*: But not doing it, he ſhall have no Right, Privilege or Title therein.

13. If any Dog ſhall take a Fall in the Courſe, and yet perform his part, he ſhall challenge the advantage of a *Turn* more than he giveth.

14. If one Dog turn the *Hare*, ſerve himſelf, and give divers *Coats*, yet in the end ſtand ſtill in the Field, the other *Dog*, without *Turn* giving, running home to the *Covert*; that *Dog* which ſtood ſtill in the Field ſhall be adjudged to loſe the Wager.

15. If any Man ſhould ride over a Dog, and overthrow him in his Courſe, (though the Dog were the worſe Dog in opinion, yet) the Party for the Offence ſhall either receive the Diſgrace of the Field, or pay the Wager; for between the Parties it ſhall be adjudged no Courſe.

16. Laſtly, thoſe which are choſen *Judges* of the *Leaſh* ſhall give their Judgments preſently before they depart from the Field, or elſe he in whoſe default it lieth ſhall pay the Wager by a general Voice and Sentence.

Here note, that it lieth in the power of him that hath the Office of the *Leaſh* conferred on him, to make Laws according to the Cuſtoms of Countries, and the Rule of Reaſon.

Of the Stiles of Hunting different from the Engliſh, *both Antique and Foreign.*

THE Hunting uſed by the Antients was much like that way which is at preſent taken with the *Rain-Deer*, which is ſeldom hunted at force, or with Hounds, but only drawn after with a Blood-hound, and foreſtall'd with Nets and Engines. So did they with all Beaſts, and therefore a Dog is never commen-

ded

ded by them for opening, before he hath by Signs discovered where the Beaſt lieth in his *Layre*, as by their drawing ſtiff our Harbourers are brought to give right Judgment. Therefore I do not find that they were curious in the Muſick of their Hounds, or in a compoſition of their Kennel or Pack, either for deepneſs, or loudneſs, or ſweetneſs of Cry like to ours. Their Huntſmen were accuſtomed to ſhout and make a great Noiſe, as *Virgil* obſerves in the third of his *Georgicks*.

Ingentem clamore premes ad retia Cervum.

So that it was only with that confuſion to bring the *Deer* to the Nets laid for him.

But we comfort our Hounds with loud and courageous Cries and Noiſes, both of Voice and Horn, that they may follow over the ſame way that they ſaw the *Hart* paſs, without croſſing or coaſting.

The *Sicilian* way of Hunting was this: When the Nobles or Gentry were informed which way a Herd of *Deer* paſſed, giving notice to one another, they appointed a Meeting, and every one brought with him a Croſs-bow, or a Long bow, and a Bundle of Staves. Theſe Staves had an Iron Spike at the bottom, and their Head is bored, with a Cord drawn through all of them; their length is about four Foot. Being thus provided, they come to the Herd, and there caſting themſelves about in a large Ring, they ſurround the *Deer*; and then every one of them receives a peculiar Stand, and there, unbinding his Faggot, ties the end of his Cord to the other who is ſet in the next Station; then to ſupport it, ſticks into the Ground each Staff, about the diſtance of ten foot one from the other. Then they take out Feathers, which they bring with them, dyed in Crimſon for this very purpoſe, and faſten'd upon a Thred which is tied to the Cord, ſo that with the leaſt breath of wind they are whirled round about

bout. Thoſe which keep the ſeveral Stands, withdraw and hide themſelves in the next Covert. After this, the chief Ranger enters within the Line, taking with him only ſuch Hounds which draw after the Herd; and coming near with their cry, rouze them: Upon which the *Deer* fly till they come towards the Line, where they turn off towards the Left, and ſtill gazing upon the ſhaking and ſhining Feathers, wander about them as if they were kept in with a Wall or Pale. The chief Ranger purſues, and calling to every one by Name, as he paſſeth by their Stand, cries to them, that they ſhoot the firſt, third, or ſixth, as he ſhall pleaſe; and if any of them miſs, and ſingle out any other than that which was aſſigned by the Ranger, it is counted a diſgrace to him; by which means, as they paſs by the ſeveral Stations, the whole Herd is killed by ſeveral hands. This Relation is of undoubted truth, as you may find it in *Pierius* his *Hieroglyphicks*, Lib. 7. Chap. 6.

Boar-Hunting is very uſual in *France*, and they call it *Sanglier*. In this ſort of Hunting the way is to uſe furious terrible Sounds and Noiſes, as well of Voice as Horn, to make the Chaſe turn and fly; becauſe they are ſlow, and truſt to their Tusks and defence; which is *Agere Aprum*, to bait the *Boar*. Yet this muſt be done after his Den or Hold is diſcovered, and the Nets be pitched.

The Huntſmen give judgment of the *Wild Boar* by the print of his Foot, by his Rooting. A wild Swine roots deeper than our ordinary Hogs, becauſe their Snouts are longer; and when he comes into a Corn-field, (as the *Caledonian-Boar* in *Ovid*) turns up one continued Furrow, not as our Hogs, routing here and there; and then by his ſoil he ſoils and wallows him in the Myre: Theſe are his *Volutabra Silveſtria*, where his greatneſs is meaſured out; then coming forth, he rubs againſt ſome Tree, which marks his height; as alſo when he ſticks his Tusk into it, that ſhews the great-

neſ

neſs thereof. They obſerve the bigneſs of his Leſſes, and the depth of his Den; where note, that they call his Dung by the name of *Leſſes*.

Whenſoever the *Boar* is hunted and ſtands at Bay, the Huntſmen ride in, and with Swords and Spears ſtriking on that ſide which is from their Horſes, wound or kill him. This is in the *French* Hunting; but the antient *Romans* ſtanding on foot, or ſetting their Knees to the ground, and charging directly with their Spear, did *Opponere Ferrum*, and *Excipere Aprum*: For ſuch is the nature of a *Boar*, that he ſpits himſelf with fury, running upon the Weapon to come at his Adverſary; and ſo ſeeking his revenge, he meets with his own deſtruction.

Though theſe *Wild-Boars* are frequent in *France*, we have none in *England*; yet it may be ſuppoſed, that heretofore we had, and did not think it convenient to preſerve that Game: For our old Authors of Hunting reckon them amongſt the Beaſts of Venery; and we have the proper Terms belonging to them, as you may find them at the beginning of the Book. Of *Boar*-hunting you will read more hereafter.

There are no *Roe-Deer* in *England*; but there are plenty of them in *Scotland*, as Sir *James Lindſay*, an old *Scottiſh* Writer teſtifies.

Yet it may be thought that they have been more common in *England*, becauſe our antient Huntſmen acknowledge the proper Terms for this Chaſe, and in the firſt place we have diſtinct Ages for theſe *Dorces*, which you ſhall find in the Terms aforeſaid. They make good Chaſe, ſtand long, and fly end-way. *Compellere Dorcas*, is to force the *Bevy*, and to drive them into the *Toyls*.

Although we have no *Wolves* in *England* at this preſent, yet it is certain, that heretofore we had Routs of them, as they have to this very day in *Ireland*; and in that Country are bred a Race of *Grey hounds*, (which are commonly called *Wolf-Dogs*) which are ſtrong,

ſtrong, fleet, and bear a natural enmity to the *Wolf*. Now in theſe the *Grey-hounds* of that Nation, there is an incredible force and boldneſs, ſo that they are in great eſtimation, and much ſought after in foreign Parts, ſo that the King of *Poland* makes uſe of them in his hunting of great Beaſts by force. Wherefore it may well be intended of the great Fierceneſs which theſe *Dogs* have in aſſaulting, that when the *Romans* ſaw them play, they thought them ſo wonderful violent, as that they muſt needs have been *Ferreis caveis advecti*, brought up in Iron Dens.

In *Poland* when the King hunts, his Servants are wont to ſurround a Wood, though a Mile in compaſs, with Toyls which are pitched on firm Stakes. This being done, the whole Town, all Sexes and Ages, promiſcuouſly ruſh into the Incloſure, and with their loud Shouts rear all the Beaſts within that Wood; which making forth, are intercepted in the Nets. There ſmall and great Beaſts are intangled together, after the ſame manner as when amongſt us we draw a Net over a Pond, and after beating it all over with Poles, we bring out not only *Pike* and *Carp*, but leſſer Fry; ſo they incloſe at once *Deer*, *Boar*, *Roe-Buck*, and *Hare*: For ſo they order their Nets, that the ſpace of thoſe Meſhes which are twiſted with greater Cords, for the entangling of greater Beaſts, that ſpace, I ſay, is made up with ſmaller Whip-cord, for the catching ſmaller Prey.

He hath a great Race of *Engliſh* Maſtiffs, which in that Country retain their Generoſity, and are brought up to play upon greater Beaſts. It is not counted amongſt them diſagreeable to the Laws of the Chaſe, to uſe Guns. I ſhall now proceed to the manner of *Engliſh* Hunting, both antient and modern, according to the beſt Information I could gather, either out of Books, experienced Huntſmen, and my own Practice,

Of

Of Hart-Hunting.

A *Hart* can naturally ſwim a great way; inſomuch that I have heard of ſome ſo ſore hunted in Foreſts near the Sea, that they have plung'd into it, and have been killed by Fiſhermen a dozen Miles from Land.

It is reported of them when they go to Rut, and muſt for that purpoſe croſs ſome great River or Arm of the Sea, they aſſemble in great Herds, the ſtrongeſt goes in firſt, and the next of ſtrength follows him, and ſo one after the other, relieving themſelves by laying their Heads on the Buttocks of each other.

The *Hind* commonly carries her Calf eight or nine Months, which uſually falls in *May*, altho' ſome later. Some of them have two at once, eating the Skin up, wherein the Calf did lie.

As the Calf grows up, ſhe teacheth it to run, leap, and the way it muſt keep to defend it ſelf from the Hounds.

Harts and *Hinds* are very long-liv'd, living commonly an hundred Years and upwards.

The Nature of a Hart.

The *Hart* is ſtrangely amazed when he hears any one call, or whiſtle in his Fiſt: For trial of which, ſome ſeeing a *Hart* in the Plain in motion, have called after him ſaying, *Ware, Ware,* or *Take heed*; and thereupon have ſeen him inſtantly turn back, making ſome little ſtand. He heareth very perfectly when his Head and Ears are erected; but heareth imperfectly when he holdeth them down. When he is on foot, and not afraid, he wonders at every thing he ſeeth, and taketh pleaſure to gaze at them.

They

They bear ſometimes few, and ſometimes more Croches; and that is the reaſon that many men have erred in their Judgments as to their Age.

Harts are bred in moſt Countries; but the Antients do prefer thoſe of *Britain* before all others, where they are of divers colours.

Theſe do excel all others in the Beauty of Horns; which are very high, yet do not grow to their Bones or Scalps, but to their Skin, branching forth into many Spears, being ſolid throughout, and as hard as Stones, and fall off once a year: But if they remain abroad in the Air, and that thereby they are ſometimes wet and dry, they grow as light as any vaniſhing or other Subſtance, as I have proved by experience, finding ſome which have been loſt by them in the Woods; wherefore I gather that they are of an earthly Subſtance, concrete, and hardned with a ſtrong Heat, made like unto Bones. They loſe theſe Horns every year in the Spring. At one year old they have nothing but Bunches, that are ſmall ſignificators of Horns to come: At two years they appear more perfectly, but ſtraight and ſimple: At three years they grow into two Spears: At four, into three; and ſo increaſe every year in their Branches till they be ſix; and above that time their Age is not certainly to be diſcerned by their Head.

Having loſt their Horns in the day-time, they hide themſelves, inhabiting the Shades, to avoid the annoyance of Flies, and feed, during that time only, in the Night. Their new Horns come out at firſt like Bunches, and afterwards (as I ſaid before) by the increaſe of the Sun's Heat they grow more hard, covered with a rough Skin, which is called a *Velvet Head*; and as that Skin drieth, they daily try the ſtrength of their new Heads upon Trees; which not only ſcrapeth off the roughneſs, but by the pain they feel thus rubbing them, they are taught how long to forbear the company of their Fellows; for at laſt, when in their cha-

chafing and fretting of their new Horn againſt the Tree, they can feel no longer pain and ſmart in them, they take it for high time to forſake their ſolitary Dwellings, and return again to their former condition.

The reaſon why *Harts* and *Deers* do loſe their Horns yearly, are theſe: Firſt, becauſe of the matter whereof they conſiſt; for it is dry and earthy, like the ſubſtance of green Leaves which have an yearly fall, likewiſe wanting glewing or holding moiſture to continue them; wherefore the Horn of a *Hart* cannot be bent. Secondly, from the place they grow upon; for they are not rooted upon the Skull, but only within the Skin. Thirdly, from the efficient Cauſe; for they are hardned both with the Heat of Summer, and Cold of Winter; by means whereof the Pores to receive their nouriſhing Liquor are utterly ſhut up and ſtopped, ſo as of neceſſity their native Heat dieth; which falleth not out in other Beaſts, whoſe Horns are for the moſt part hollow, and fitted for longer continuance; but theſe are of leſſer, and the new Bunches ſwelling up towards the Spring, do thruſt off the old Horns, having the aſſiſtance of Boughs of Trees, weight of the Horns, or by the willing excuſſion of the Beaſt that beareth them.

It is obſerved, that when a *Hart* pricketh up his Ears, he windeth ſharp, very far and ſure, and diſcovereth all treachery againſt him; but if they hang down and wag, he perceiveth no danger. By their Teeth is their Age diſcerned, and they have four on both ſides wherewith they grind their Meat, beſides two other, much greater in the Male than in the Female. All theſe Beaſts have Worms in their Heads underneath their Tongue, in a hollow place where the Neck bone is joined to the Head, which are no bigger than Flie-blows. His Blood is not like other Beaſts, for it hath no Fibres in it, and therefore it is hardly congealed. His Heart is very great, and ſo

are

are all those of fearful Beasts, having in it a Bone like a Cross. He hath no Gall, and that is one of the causes of the length of his Life; and therefore are his Bowels so bitter, that the Dogs will not touch them unless they be very fat. The Genital Part is all Nervy, the Tail small; and the *Hind* hath Udders betwixt her Thighs, with four Speans like a Cow. These are above all other four-footed Beasts, both ingenious and fearful, who altho' they have large Horns yet their defence against other four-footed Beasts, is to run away.

And now if you will credit *Gesner* as a Huntsman, pray here observe what account he gives of Hunting the *Hart*: *This wild deceitful and subtile Beast* (says he) *by Windings and Turnings does often deceive its Hunter, as the Harts of* Meandros *flying from the terrible Cry of* Diana's *Hounds*. Wherefore the prudent Hunter must frame his Dogs as *Pythagoras* did his Scholars, with Words of Art, to set them on and take them off again at his pleasure; wherefore he must first of all encompass in the Beast (*en son gitte*) in her own Layr, and so unharbour her in the view of the Dogs, that so they may never lose her Slot or Footing: Neither must he set upon every one, either of the Herd, or those that wander solitary alone, or a little one; but partly by sight, and partly by their Footing and Fumets, judge of their Game; also he must observe the largeness of his Layr. Being thus informed, then *Discouples les chiens*, take off your Dog-Couplings; and some on Horseback, others on foot, follow the Cry with greatest art, observation and speed, remembring and preventing (*cer fruze*) the subtile Turnings and Headings of the *Hart*; standing with all dexterity to leap Hedge, Pale, Ditch, nay Rocks; neither fearing Thorns, down Hills, nor Woods, but providing fresh Horse if the first tire, follow the largest Head of the whole Herd, which you must endeavour to single out of the Chase; which the Dogs perceiving,

must

muſt follow, taking for a prohibition to follow any other.

The Dogs are animated by the winding of Horns, and voices of the Huntſmen, like Souldiers to the battel by the noiſe of Trumpets and other Warlike Inſtruments. But ſometimes the crafty great beaſt ſendeth forth his little Squire to be ſacrificed to the Dogs and Huntſmen, inſtead of himſelf, lying cloſe in the mean time: Then muſt a retreat be ſounded, and (*rompre le chiens*) the Dogs be broken off, and taken in (*le Limier*) that is, Leame again, until they be brought to the fairer Game; who ariſeth in fear, yet ſtill ſtriveth by flight, until he be wearied and breathleſs.

The Nobles call this beaſt (*Cerf ſage*) a wiſe *Hart*, who, to avoid all his Enemies, runneth into the greateſt Herds, and ſo bringeth a Cloud of errour on the Dogs, to keep them from further proſecution, ſometimes alſo beating ſome of the Herd into his Footings, that ſo he may the more eaſily eſcape, and procure a Labyrinth to the Dogs; after which he betaketh himſelf to his Heels again, running ſtill with the Wind, not only for refrigeration, but becauſe he may the more eaſily hear the voice of his purſuers, whether they be far or near. At laſt, being for all this found out again by the obſervance of the Hunters, and skilful Scent of the Dogs, he flieth into the Herds of Cattel, as Cows, Sheep, *&c.* leaping on an Ox or Cow, laying the foreparts of his body thereon, that ſo touching the Earth only with his hinder feet, to leave a very ſmall or no ſcent at all behind for the Hounds to diſcern.

The chief Huntſman to *Lewis* the Twelfth, (called *le Grand Venieur*) affirmeth, that on a time, they having a *Hart* in chaſe, ſuddenly the Hounds were at a fault, ſo as the Game was out of ſight, and not a Dog would once ſtir his foot; whereat the Hunters were all amaz'd; at laſt, by caſting about, (as it is uſual in ſuch caſes) they found the fraud of the crafty Beaſt, which is worth the memory.

There was a great White thorn, which grew in a ſhadowy place as high as a Tree, and was environed with other ſmall Shrubs about it; into which the ſaid *Hart* leaped, and there ſtood aloft the Boughs ſpreading from one another, and there remained till he was thruſt through by a Huntſman, rather than he would yield to the angry and greedy Hounds. Yet their manner is, when they ſee themſelves every where intercepted, to make force at him with their Horns who firſt comes unto him, except prevented by Sword or Spear; which being done, the Hunter with his Horn windeth the fall of the Beaſt, and then every one approacheth, luring with triumph for ſuch a Conqueſt, of whom the skilfulleſt openeth the Beaſt, rewarding the Hounds with what properly belongeth unto them for their future encouragement; and for that purpoſe the Huntſmen dip Bread in the Skin and Blood of the Beaſt, to give unto the Hounds their full ſatisfaction.

Veloces Spartæ catulos, acremq; Moloſſum
Paſce fero pingui, &c.

Much more might be ſaid of this preſent ſubject, which is not proper in this place; wherefore I ſhall refer to you what followeth, and your own experience.

Of the Rut of Harts.

The time of their Rutting is about the midſt of *September*, and continues two Months, the older they are, the hotter, and the better beloved by the Hinds; and therefore they go to Rut before the young ones, and being very fiery, will not ſuffer any of them to come near the *Hinds* till they have ſatisfied their Venery. But the young ones are even with the old, for when they perceive the old are grown weak by

exceſs

excess of Rutting, the young will frequently attack them, and make them quit the place, that they may be Masters of the Sport.

They are easily kill'd in Rutting-time; for they follow the scent of the *Hinds* with such greedinesse, laying their Noses to the ground, that they mind that solely, and nothing else.

They are such great lovers of the Sport, it is very dangerous for any Man to come near them at this season, for then they will make at any living Creature of different kind.

In some places, in *October* their Lust ariseth, and also in *May*; and then, whereas at other times the Males live apart from the Females, they go about like lascivious Lovers, seeking the company of their Females, as it were at the Market of *Venus*.

The Males in their raging desired Lust have a peculiar noise, which the *French* call *Reere*. One Male will cover a many Females, continuing in this carnal appetite a Month or two. The Females are chaste, and unwilling to admit of Copulation, by reason of the rigour of the Male's Genetal; and therefore they sink down on their buttocks, when they begin to feel his Seed, as it hath been often observed in tame *Harts*; and if they can, the Femals run away, the Males striving to hold them back within their fore-Feet. It cannot be well said, that they are covered standing, lying, or going, but rather running; for so are they filled with greatest severity. When one Month or six Weeks is over of their Rutting, they grow tamer by much, and laying aside all herceness, they return to their solitary places, digging every one by himself a several Hole or Ditch, wherein they lie to asswage the strong savour of their Lust; for they stink like Goates, and their face beginneth to look blacker than at other times, and in those places they live till some Showers distil from the Clouds, after which, they return to their Pasture again, living in Flocks as before.

The Female, thus filled, never keepeth company again with the Male until she is delivered of her burthen which is eight months; and but one at a time, seldom two, which she lodgeth cunningly in some Covert: If she perceive them stubborn and wild, she will beat them with her feet till they lie close and quiet.

Oftentimes she leadeth forth her young, teaching it to run and leap over bushes, stones, and small shrubs, and so continueth all the Summer long, while their own strength is most considerable.

It is very pleasant to observe them when they go to Rut, and make their Vaut: For when they smell the *Hind*, they raise their Nose up into the Air, looking aloft, as though they gave thanks to the God of Nature, who gave them so great delight and pleasure. And if it be a great *Hart*, he will turn his Head and look about to see whether there be none near to interrupt or spoil his sport. Hereat the young fly away for fear: but if there be any of equal bigness, they then strive which shall vaunt first; and in the opposing each other, they scrape the ground with their feet, shocking and butting each other so furiously, that you shall hear the noise they make with their Horns a good half mile, so long, till one of them is Victor. The *Hind* beholding this Pastime, never stirs from her station, expecting, as it were, the Vauting of him who hath the Mastery, and having got it, he bellows, and then instantly covers her.

During the time of their Rut, they eat but very little, for they feed only on what they see before them, minding more the track of the *Hinds*. Their chief Meat is the red Mushrom, which helps them to evacuate their Grease: they are then extraordinary hot, insomuch that every where as they pass and find Waters, they tumble and lie therein.

The

The time of Harts *Mewing, Caſting the Head.*

The old *Hart* caſteth his Head ſooner than the young: and the time is about the Months of *February* and *March*.

Here note, that if you geld an *Hart* before he hath an Head, he will never bear any; and if you geld him when he hath it, he will never after Mew or caſt it: And ſo, if you geld him when he hath a Velvet-head, it will ever be ſo, without fraying or burniſhing.

Having caſt their Heads, they inſtantly withdraw unto the Thickets, hiding themſelves in ſuch convenient places where they may have good Water, and ſtrong Feeding, near ſome ground where Wheat or Peaſe is ſown: But young *Harts* do never betake themſelves to the Thickets till they have born their third Head, which is in the fourth year.

After they have Mewed, they will begin to Button in *March* and *April*; and as the Sun grows ſtrong, and the ſeaſon of the year puts forward the Crop of the Earth, ſo will their Heads increaſe in all reſpects: So that in the midſt of *June* their Heads will be ſummed as much as they will bear all the year.

Of the Coats and Colour of Harts.

The Coats of *Harts* are of three ſundry ſorts *Brown*, *Red*, and *Fallow*; and of every of theſe Coats there proceeds two ſorts of *Harts*, the one are great, the other little.

Of brown *Harts*, there are ſome great, long, and hairy, bearing a high Head, red of colour, and well beam'd, who will ſtand before Hounds very long, being longer of breath, and ſwifter of foot than thoſe of a ſhorter ſtature.

There are another ſort of brown *Harts*, which are little, ſhort, and well-ſet, bearing commonly a black Main, and are fatter and better Veniſon than the former, by reaſon of their better feeding in young Copſes.

They are very crafty, eſpecially when in greaſe; and will be hardly found, becauſe they know they are then moſt enquired after: beſides, they are very ſenſible they cannot then ſtand long before the Hounds. If they be old, and feed in good ground, then are their Heads black, fair, and well branched, and commonly palmed at the top.

The Fallow-*Harts* bear their Heads high, and of a whitiſh colour, their Beams ſmall, their Antliers long, ſlender, and ill-grown, having neither Heart, Courage, nor Force. But thoſe which are of a lively Red-fallow, having a black or brown Liſt down the ridge of the back, are ſtrong, bearing fair and high Heads, well furniſhed and beamed.

Of the Heads and Branches of Harts, *and their diverſities.*

As there are ſeveral ſorts of *Harts*, ſo have they their Heads in divers ſort and manner, according to their Age, Country, Reſt, and Feeding. Here note, that they bear not their firſt Head, which we call Broches, and in a Fallow *Deer* Pricks, until they enter the ſecond Year of their Age. In the third Year they bear four, ſix, or eight ſmall Branches: At the fourth, they bear eight or ten: At the fifth, ten or twelve: At ſix, fourteen or ſixteen; And at the ſeventh year they bear their Heads beam'd, branched, and ſummed with as much as ever they will bear, and do never multiply but in greatneſs only.

How to know an old Hart *by the Slot, Entries, Abatures, and Foils, Fewmets, Gate and Walks, Fraying-Stocks, Head and Branches.*

I ſhall proceed in order, and firſt of the *Slot*. You muſt carefully look on the Treadings of the *Hart*'s Foot: If you find the Threadings of two, the one long, the other round, yet both of one bigneſs; yet ſhall the long Slot declare the *Hart* to be much larger than the round:

Moreover, the old *Hart*'s hind-foot doth never over-reach the fore-foot, the young ones doth.

But above all, take this Obſervation: When you are in the Wood, and have found the Slot of a *Hart*, mark what manner of Footing it is, whether worn, or ſharp, and accordingly obſerve the Country, and thereby judge whether either may be occaſion'd thereby. For *Harts* bred in Mountains and ſtony Countries, have their Toes and ſides of their Feet worn, by reaſon of their continual climbing and reſting themſelves thereon, and not on the Heel: Whereas in other places they ſtay themſelves more on the Heel than Toes: For in ſoft or ſandy ground, they ſlip upon the Heel, by reaſon of their weight; and thus by frequent ſtaying themſelves thereon, it makes the Heel grow broader and greater. And thus you may know the age of a *Hart* by his Slot or Treading.

The next thing to be conſidered, is the Fewmiſhing, and this is to be judged of in *April* or *May*. If the Fewments be great, large, and thick, they ſignifie the *Hart* to be old.

In the midſt of *June* and *July*, they make their Fewmets or Fewmiſhing in great Croteys, very ſoft; and from that time to the end of *Auguſt*, they make them great, long, knotty, and anointed and gilded, letting them fall but few and ſcattered. In *September* and *October* there is no longer judging, by reaſon of the Rut.

Thirdly, If you would know the heighth and thickneſs of the *Hart*, obſerve his Entries and Galleries into the Thickets, and what Boughs he hath over-ſtridden, and mark from thence the heighth of his Belly from the ground.

By the heighth of the Entries, we judge the age of a *Hart*; for a young Deer is ſuch as creeps uſually, but the old is ſtiff and ſtately.

His greatneſs is known by the heighth of his creeping as he paſſes to his Harbour, the young *Deer* creeping low, which the old will not ſtoop too.

Fourthly, Take notice of his Gate, by which you may know whether the *Hart* be great and long, and whether he will ſtand long before the Hounds or not. For all *Harts* which have a long ſtep will ſtand up very long, being ſwift, light, and well breathed; but if he leave a great Slot, which is the ſign of an old *Deer*, he will never ſtand long when he is chaſed.

Laſtly, Take notice of his Fraying-poſt: Where note, the elder the *Hart* is, the ſooner he goeth to Fray, and the greater is the Tree he ſeeketh the Fray upon, and ſuch as he cannot bend with his Head.

All *Stags* as they are burniſh'd, beat their Heads dry againſt ſome Tree or other, which is called their Fraying-poſt: The younger *Deer* againſt weaker and leſſer Trees, and lower, the elder againſt bigger and ſtronger, and Fray higher; ſo that accordingly we confidently judge of their age, and of the nearneſs of their Harbour, for that is the laſt Ceremony they uſe before they enter it.

As to the Head and Branches, the *Hart* is old, firſt, when the compaſs of the Bur is large, great, and well pearled.

Secondly, When the Beam is great, burdened, and well pearled, being ſtraight, and not made crooked by the Antliers.

Thirdly, When the Gutters therein are great and deep.

Fourthly,

Fourthly, When the first *Antlier*, called *Antoiller*, is great, long and near to the Bur; the *Surantlier* near unto the *Antlier*; and they ought to be both well pearl'd.

Fifthly, The rest of the Branches which are higher, being well ordered, and set, and well grown, according to the bigness and proportion of the Head; and the Croches, Palm or Crown being great and large according to the bigness of the Beam, are the signs of an old *Hart*.

Now since many Men cannot understand the Names and Diversities of Heads according to the Terms of Hunting, I shall in the following Chapter give you a brief account thereof.

The Names and Diversities of Heads according to Hunting Terms.

The thing that beareth the *Antliers*, *Royals*, and *Tops*, is called the *Beam*; and the little streaks therein are called *Gutters*.

That which is about the Crust of the *Beam*, is termed *Pearls*; and that which is about the Bur it self, formed like little *Pearls*, is called *Pearls bigger than the rest*.

The Bur is next the Head; and that which is about the Bur, is called *Pearls*. The first is called *Antlier*; the second *Surantlier*: All the rest which grow afterwards, until you come to the Crown, Palm, or Croche, are called *Royals*, and *Sur-royals*: The little Buds or Broches about the *Top*, are called *Croches*.

Their Heads go by several Names: The first Head is called a *Crowned Top*, because the Croches are ranged in form of a Crown.

The second is called a *Palmed Top*, because the Croches are formed like a Mans Hand.

Thirdly, all Heads which bear not above three or four, the Croches being placed aloft, all of one heighth, in

in form of a cluſter of Nuts, are to be called *Heads* of ſo many *Croches*.

Fourthly, all Heads which bear two in the Top, or having their Croches doubling, are to be called *Forked Heads*.

Fifthly, all Heads which have double Burs, or the Antliers, Royals, and Croches turned downwards, contrary to other Heads, are only called *Heads*.

How to ſeek a Hart *in his Haunts or Feeding-places, according to the Seaſons of the Year.*

All *Harts* do change their manner of Feeding every Month; and therefore I ſhall treat orderly of every one till I have concluded the Year, beginning with that Month which is the concluſion of their Rutting time, and that is *November*, in which Month they feed in Heaths and Broomy places.

In *December* they Herd together, and withdraw themſelves into the ſtrength of the Foreſts, to ſhelter themſelves from the cold Winds, Snows, and Froſts, and do feed on the Holm-trees, Elder-trees, Brambles, with whatſoever other green thing they can find; and if it Snow, they will skin the Trees like a Goat.

In *January*, *February*, and *March*, they leave Herding, but will keep four or five in company, and in the corners of the Foreſt will feed on the Winter-paſture, ſometimes making their Incurſions into the neighbouring Corn-Fields, if they can perceive the blades of Wheat, Rye, or ſuch like, appear above ground.

In *April* and *May* they reſt in their Thickets, and other bushy and ſhady places, during that Seaſon, and ſtir very little till Rutting-time, unleſs they are diſturb'd.

There are ſome *Harts* ſo cunning, that they will have two ſeveral Layrs to harbour in, a good diſtance one from the other, and will frequently change (for their greater ſecurity) from the one to the other, taking ſtill the benefit of the Wind. In

In theſe Months they go not to the Soil, by reaſon of the moiſture of the Spring, and the Dew that continually overſpreadeth the Graſs.

In *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, they are in their pride of greaſe, and do reſort to Spring-Copſes, and Corn-fields; only they ſeldom go where Rye or Barley grow.

In *September* and *October* they leave their Thickets and go to Rut, during which Seaſon, they have no certain place either for food or harbour.

In what manner the Huntſman ſhall go drawing in the Springs.

Let him not come too early into the Springs or Hewts where he thinketh the *Hart* feedeth, and is at relief. For they uſually go to their Layrs in the Springs: and if they be old crafty *Deer*, they will return to the border of the Copſe, and there liſten whether they can hear any approaching danger; and if they chance once to vent the Huntſman or the Hound, they will inſtantly diſlodge.

Now is the Huntſman's proper time. Let him beat the out-ſides of the Springs or Thickets: If he find the Track of an *Hart* or *Deer*, let him obſerve whether it be new; which he may know thus: The Dew will be beaten off, the Foil freſh, or the ground broken or printed, with other tokens: ſo he may judge his Game lately went that way.

Having found this Slot or Treading, and the Hound ſticking well upon it, let him hold him ſhort; for he ſhall better draw being ſo held, than if he were let at length of the Lyam: and thus let him draw till he is come to the Covert, if poſſible, taking notice by the way of the Slot, Foils, Entries, and the like, till he hath harboured him. That done, let him plaſh down ſmall Twigs, ſome above, and ſome below, as he ſhall think fit: and then, whilſt the Hound is hot, let him beat the

out

outſides, and make his Ring-walks twice or thrice about the Wood, one while by the great and open ways, that he may help himſelf by the Eye, another while through the thick and Covert, for fear leſt his Hound ſhould over-ſhoot it, having ſtill better Scent in the Coverts than High-ways.

If he doubt the *Hart* is gone out of the Ring-walks, or fears he has drawn amiſs, then let him go to the marks which he plaſhed, and draw counter, till he may take up the Fewmet.

The Directions for Harbouring a Stag *are theſe:*

The Harbourer having taught his Hound to draw mute always round the outſide of the Covert, as ſoon as his Hound challenges, which he knows by his eager flouriſhing, and ſtraining his Lyam, he then is to ſeek for his Slot: If he finds the Heel thick, and the Toe ſpreading broad, it argues an old *Deer*, eſpecially if it is fringed, (that is, broken on the ſides.) However, if the ground be too hard to make any judgment from the Slot, he is to draw into the Covert, as he paſſes, obſerving the ſize of the Entries, the larger and higher, the older the *Deer*; as alſo his Croppings of the Tenders as he paſſes: (the younger the *Deer*, the lower; the elder the *Deer*, the higher he branches.) Alſo obſerve his Fewmiſhings as you paſs, whoſe largeneſs beſpeak the largeneſs of the *Deer*; alſo be curious in obſerving his Fraying-poſt, which uſually is the laſt opportunity you have to judge by, the eldeſt *Deer* Fraying higheſt againſt the biggeſt Trees; and that found, you may conclude his Harbour not far off; therefore draw with more circumſpection, checking your Draught-hound to ſecure him from ſpending when he comes ſo near as to have the *Deer* in the Wind: and then by his eagerneſs you having diſcovered that, ought to draw him; and having retired ſome diſtance back, you are with your Hound to round the place firſt at a conſide-

rable

able distance, and then, if you find him not disturbed, a little within that make your second round; which will not only secure you that he is in his Harbour, but will also secure his continuance there; for he will not (unforc'd) pass that Taint your Hound left in the rounding of him. So that having broken a Bough for his Direction, he may at any time unharbour that *Hart*.

How to find a Hart *lost the Night before.*

A Huntsman may fail of killing a *Hart* divers ways; sometimes by reason of great heat, or overtaken with the night, and the like. If any such thing should happen, then thus you must do: First, they which follow the Hounds, must mark the place where they left the Chase, and at break of day bring your Blood-hound to it, with your Kennel after him. If any Hound vents, whom he knows to be no Lier or Babler, he shall put his Hound to it, whooping twice, or blowing two Notes with his Horn, to call all his Fellows about him: and if he find where the *Hart* is gone into some likely Covert or Grove, then must he draw his Hounds about it, and beat cross through it. And if there he renews his Slot or View, let him first consider whether it be the right or not: If it be the right, let him blow his Horn. Now if he find five or six Layrs, let it not seem strange; for *Harts* hunted and spent, do frequently make many Layrs together, because they cannot stand, but lie and feed.

Harts which are hunted, most commonly run up the Wind, and streight forwards as far as they are able, and finding any Water or Soil, do stay a long time therein, by which means their Joints are so benummed and stiffned, that coming out they cannot go far, nor stand up long; and therefore are compelled to take any Harbour they can find, which may be a present Covert to them.

How

How to find a Hart *in high Woods.*

In the ſeeking of a *Hart* in high Woods, regard muſt be had to two things; that is, the Thickets of the Foreſts, and the Seaſon.

If it be in very hot Weather, Gnats, Horſe-flies, and ſuch like, drive the *Deer* out of the high Wood, and they diſperſe themſelves into ſmall Groves and Thickets near places of good feeding. According to the Coverts which are in the Foreſt, ſo accordingly the Huntſman muſt make his enquiry: For ſometimes the *Harts* lie in the Tufts of White-thorn; ſometimes under little Trees, otherwhiles under great Trees in the high Woods, and ſometimes in the Skirts of the Foreſt, under the ſhelter of little Groves and Copſes. And therefore the Huntſman muſt make his Ring-walk great or ſmall, according to the largeneſs of thoſe Harbours or Coverts.

How to Unharbour a Hart, *and caſt off the Hounds.*

When the Relays are well ſet and placed, let the Huntſman with his Pole walk before the Kennel of Hounds: Being come to the Blemiſhes, let him take notice of the Slot, and ſuch other marks as may be obſerved from the View of the *Deer*, to the intent he may know whether the Hounds run Riot or not. Then let the Huntſman caſt abroad about the Covert, to diſcover the *Hart* when he is unharboured, the better to diſtinguiſh him by his Head or otherwiſe. The Huntſman having unharboured him, all the Hounds ſhall be caſt off, they crying one and all, *To him, to him; That's he, that's he*, with ſuch words of encouragement.

If the *Blood hound* as he draweth, chance to overſhoot, and draw wrong or counter, then muſt the Huntſman draw him back, and ſay, *Back, Back; Soft, Soft*, until

till he hath ſet him right again: and if he perceive that the Hound hath mended his fault, by his kneeling down, and obſerving the Slot or Ports, he muſt then cheriſh him, by clapping him on the back, and giving him ſome encouraging words. Thus let him draw on with his Hound till the *Deer* be deſcried.

Now ſome are ſo cunning and crafty, that when they are unharboured from their Layr, they will coaſt round about to find ſome other *Deer*, whereby the Hounds may be confounded in the change of Hunts.

If the Huntſman have the *Hart* in view, let him ſtill draw upon the Slot, blowing and hollowing until the Hounds are come in. When he ſeeth they are in full cry, and take it right, he may then mount, keeping under the Wind, and coaſt to croſs the Hounds that are in chaſe, to help them at default, if need require.

What Subtilties are uſed in Hunting a Hart *at force.*

Let the Huntſman never come nearer the Hounds in cry, than fifty or threeſcore paces, eſpecially at the firſt uncoupling, or at caſting off their Relays: For if a *Hart* make Doublings, or wheel about, or croſs before the Hounds, as he ſeldom doth; if then you come in too haſtily, you will ſpoil the Slot or View, and ſo the Hounds, for want of Scent, will be apt to overſhoot the Chaſe: But if after Hunting an Hour, the Huntſman perceive that the *Hart* makes out end-ways before the Hounds, and that they follow in full cry, taking it right, then he may come in nearer, and blow a Recheat to the Hounds to encourage them. Hereupon the *Hart* will frequently ſeek other *Deer* at Layr, and rouze them, on purpoſe to make the Hounds hunt change, and will lie down flat in ſome of their Layrs upon his Belly, and ſo let the Hounds over-ſhoot him, and becauſe they ſhall neither ſcent or vent him, he will gather up all his four feet under his Belly, and will blow or breathe on ſome moiſt

moiſt place of the ground, in ſuch ſort, that I have ſeen the Hounds paſs by ſuch a *Hart* within a yard, and never vent him.

For which cauſe Huntſmen ſhould blemiſh at ſuch places they ſee the *Hart* enter into a Thicket, to this end, that if the Hounds ſhould fall to change, they may return to thoſe Blemiſhes, and put their Hounds to the right Slot and View, until they have rouzed or found him again.

The *Hart* hath another way to bring the Hounds to change; and that is, when he ſeeth himſelf cloſely purſued, and that he cannot ſhun them, he will break into one Thicket after another to find *Deer*, rouzing and herding with them, continuing ſo to do ſometimes above an hour before he will part from them, or break Herd. Finding himſelf ſpent, he wil break Herd, and fall a doubling and croſſing in ſome hard High-way that is much beaten, or elſe in ſome River or Brook, in which he will keep as long as his Breath will permit him: and if he be far before the Hounds, it may be then he will uſe his former Device, in gathering his Legs up under his Belly, as he lies flat along upon ſome hard and dry place. Sometimes he will take Soil, and ſo cover himſelf under the Water, that you ſhall perceive nothing but his Noſe.

In this caſe the Huntſman muſt have a ſpecial regard to his old Hounds, who will hunt leiſurely and fearfully; whereas the young Hounds will over-ſhoot their Game.

If it ſo chance that the Hounds are at a default, and hunt in ſeveral Companies, then it may be gueſſed that the *Hart* hath broken Herd from the freſh *Deer*, and that the freſh *Deer* have ſeparated themſelves alſo: then regard how the old *Staunch hounds* make it, and obſerve the Slot; and where you ſee any of the old Hounds challenge, cheriſh and encourage him, haſtening the reſt in to him, by crying *Hark* to ſuch a Hound, calling him by his Name.

Here

Here is to be noted, that they cannot make it ſo good in the hard High-ways as in other places, becauſe they cannot have there ſo perfect a ſcent, either by reaſon of the Tracks or Footing of divers ſort of Beaſts, or by reaſon of the Sun drying up the moiſture, ſo that the duſt covereth the Slot: Now in ſuch places (ſuch is the natural Subtilty of that Beaſt for Self-preſervation) the *Hart* will make many Croſſes and Doublings, holding them long together, to make the Hounds give over the Chaſe.

In this caſe, the firſt care of the Huntſman is, to make good the Head, and then draw round apace, firſt down the Wind, though uſually *Deer* go up the Wind; and if the way is too hard to Slot, be ſure to try far enough back. This expert Hounds will frequently do of themſelves.

But if a *Hart* break out into the Champion Country, and that it be in the Heat of the Day, between Noon and Three of the Clock; then if the Huntſman perceive his Hounds out of breath, he muſt not force them much, but comfort them; and though they do not call upon the Slot or View, yet it is ſufficient if they do but wag their Tails; for, being almoſt ſpent, it is painful for them to call.

The laſt Refuge of a *Hart* ſorely hunted is the Water, (which, according to Art, is termed the *Soil*) ſwimming oftneſt down the Stream, keeping the middle, fearing leſt by touching any Bough by the Water-ſide he may give ſcent unto the Hounds.

Always when you come to a Soil, (according to the old Rule, *He that will his Chaſe find, let him firſt try up the River, and down the Wind*) be ſure if your Hounds challenge but a yard above his going in, that he is gone up the River: for though he ſhould keep the very middle of the Stream, yet will that, with the help of the Wind, lodge part of the Stream, and ſmooth that comes from him on the Bank, it may be a quarter of a mile lower, which hath deceived many.

Therefore first try up the Stream: and where a *Deer* first breaks Soil, both Man and Hound will best perceive it.

Now the ways to know when a *Hart* is spent, are these; *First*, He will run stiff, high, and lompering. *Secondly*, If his Mouth be black and dry without any Foam upon it, and his Tongue hanging out; but they will often close their Mouths, to deceive the Spectators. *Thirdly*, By his Slot; for often times he will close his Claws together, as if he went at leisure; and straightway again open them wide, making great glidings, and hitting his Dew-claws upon the ground, following the beaten Paths without Doublings; and sometime going all along by a Ditch-side, seeking some Gap, having not strength to leap it otherways: yet it hath been often seen, that Dead-run *Deer* have taken very great leaps.

Thus must a Huntsman govern himself according to the Subtilty and Craft of the *Deer*, observing their Doublings and Crossings, and the places where they are made; making his Rings little or great, according to the nature of the place, time, and season: For Hounds are subject to shoot where Herbs and Flowers have their most lively scent and odoriferous smell. Neither must you be unmindful of the perfection and imperfection of your Hounds. Thus doing, it will be very hard luck if you lose a *Hart* by default.

How to kill a Hart *at Bay.*

It is very dangerous to go in to a *Hart* at Bay, and especially at Rutting-time, for then they are most fierce.

There are two sorts of Bays; one on the Land, the other on the Water. If now the *Hart* be in a deep Water, where you cannot well come to him, then couple up your Dogs; for should they long continue in the Water, it would endanger surbating or foundering. Get then a Boat, or swim to him with Dagger; or else with a

a Rope that hath a Nooſe, and throw it over his Horns; for if the Water be ſo deep that the *Hart* ſwims, there is no danger in approaching him; otherwiſe you muſt have a care.

As to the Land-Bay, if the *Hart* be hurniſhed, then you muſt conſider the place: For if it be in a plain and open place, where there is no Wood nor Covert, it is dangerous and hard to come in to him; but if it be in a Hedge-ſide or Thicket, then, whilſt the *Hart* is ſtaring on the Hounds, you may come covertly among the Buſhes behind him, and cut his Throat. If you miſs your aim, and the *Heart* turn head upon you, then make ſome Tree your refuge; or when the *Hart* is at Bay, couple up your Hounds; and when you ſee the *Hart* turn head to fly, gallop in roundly to him, and kill him with your Sword.

Directions at the Death of Buck *or* Hart.

The firſt Ceremony when the Huntſmen come in to the Death of a *Deer*, is to cry *Ware Haunch*, that the Hounds may not break into the *Deer*; which having ſecured, the next is cutting his Throat, and there blooding the youngeſt Hounds, that they may the better love a *Deer*, and learn to leap at his Throat; then, having blown the *Mort*, and all the Company come in, the beſt Perſon, that hath not taken Say before, is to take up the Knife that the Keeper or Huntſman is to lay croſs the Belly of the *Deer*, ſtanding cloſe to the left Shoulder of the *Deer*, ſome holding by the Fore-legs, and the Keeper or Huntſman drawing down the Pizzle, the Perſon that takes Say, is to draw the edge of the Knife leiſurely along the very middle of the Belly, beginning near the Briſket; and drawing a little upon it, enough in the length and depth to diſcover how fat the *Deer* is, then he that is to break up the *Deer*, firſt ſlits the Skin from the cutting of the Throat downward, making the Arber, that ſo the Ordure may not break

forth; and then he is to paunch him, rewarding the Hounds therewith. Next, he is to present the same Person that took the Say with a drawn Hanger, to cut off the Head; which done, and the Hounds rewarded therewith, the concluding Ceremony is, if a *Buck* a double, if a *Stag* a treble Mort blown by one, and then a whole Recheat in Consort by all that have Horns, and that finished, immediately a general *Whoo whoop.*

It was formerly termed *Wind a Horn*, because (as I suppose) all Horns were then compassed; but since streight Horns are come into fashion, we say, *Blow a Horn*, and sometimes, *Sound a Horn.*

In many cases heretofore, *Leasing* was observed; that is, one must be held, either cross a Saddle, or on a Man's Back, and with a pair of Dog couples receive ten pound and a Purse; that is, ten Stripes, (according to the nature of the Crime, more or less severe) and an eleventh, that used to be as bad as the other ten, called a *Purse.*

There are many Faults, as coming too late into the Field, mistaking any Term of Art; these are of the lesser size: of the greater magnitude, hallowing a wrong *Deer*, or leaving the Field before the death of the *Deer*, &c.

Buck *Hunting.*

THis Beast is common in most Countries, being as corpulent as a *Hart*; but in quantity resembleth more a *Roe*, except in colour.

The Males have Horns, which they lose yearly; but the Females none at all. Their Colours are divers, but most commonly branded or tandy on the back, having a black list all down along on the back; their bellies and sides

ſides ſpotted with white, which they loſe by their old age: and the *Does* do eſpecially vary in colour, being ſometimes all white, and therefore like unto Goats, except in their Hair, which is ſhorter.

In their Horns they differ not much from a *Hart*, except in quantity, and that they grow out of their Heads like Fingers out of the Hand; ſuch is this *Fallow-Deer*, being therefore called *Cervus Palmatus*. As for their other parts, they much reſemble a *Roe-buck*. Their Fleſh is excellent for nouriſhment, but their Blood ingenders too much Melancholy.

Now know, the *Buck* is Fawn'd about the latter end of *May*, and its Nature and Properties differ little from the *Hart*.

There is not ſo much art and skill in Lodging a *Buck*, as in the Harbouring a *Hart*; neither is there required ſo much drawing after, but only you are to judge by the View, and mark what Grove or Covert he entreth; for he will not wander and rove up and down ſo often as a *Hart*, nor ſo frequently change his Layer.

He maketh his Fewmiſhing in divers manners and forms, as the *Hart* doth, according to the diverſity of Food, and time of the Day, Morning and Evening; but moſt commonly they are round.

The *Hart* and *Buck* differ thus in parallel. When the *Buck* is hunted, he oft-times betakes himſelf to ſuch Strong Holds and Coverts as he is moſt acquainted with, not flying far before the Hounds, not croſſing nor doubling, uſing no ſuch Subtleties as the *Hart* is accuſtomed to.

The *Buck* will beat a Brook, (but ſeldom a great River, as the *Hart*) but it muſt not be ſo deep; nor can he ſtay ſo long at Soil as the *Hart* will do: only he leapeth lightlier at Rut than the *Hart*; and groaneth or troateth, as a *Hart* belleth, but with a lower Voice, ratling in the Throat. And here is to be noted, they love not one another, nor will they come near each other's Layr.

Buck-Veniſon is incomparable Food, and is dreſſed like *Hart*-Veniſon; only this laſt will be preſerved longer than the former.

The *Buck* herds more than the *Hart*, and lieth in the drieſt places: but if he be at large, unconfined within the limitary Precincts of a Park, he will herd but little from *May* to *Auguſt*, becauſe the Flies trouble him. He takes great delight in hilly places, but the Dales are his joy to feed in.

Bucks have ſeldom or never any other Relays than the old Hounds.

The greateſt ſubtilty a Huntſman need uſe in the Hunting of the *Buck*, is to beware of Hunting Counter or Change, becauſe of the plenty of *Fallow-Deer*, which uſe to come more directly upon the Hounds than the *Red-Deer* doth. Now upon the breaking up of a *Buck*, the Hounds Reward is the ſame with that of the *Hart*.

Roe-*Hunting*.

THE *Roe-Buck* is called by the Greeks and Latins by one name, *viz. Dorcas*. Theſe Beaſts are very plentiful in *Africa*, *Germany*, and *Helvetian Alps*.

Their ſwiftneſs doth not only appear upon the Earth, but alſo in the Waters, cutting them when they ſwim as with Oars; and therefore they love the Lakes and ſtrong Streams, breaking the Floods to come at freſh Paſture, feeding deliciouſly on ſweet Ruſhes, and Bull-ruſhes. Horns only grow upon the Male, and are ſet with ſix or ſeven Branches, not palmed, but branchy, yet ſhorter than *Fallow-Deer*: They differ not much from common *Deer*, but in their Horns: and whereas the Horns of other Beaſts are hollow towards the root, whereinto entereth a certain long ſubſtance; the

the Horns of theſe, as alſo of the vulgar *Buck* and *Elk*, are ſolid without any ſuch emptineſs, only they are full of Pores.

It is ſuppoſed by the Learned, that a *Roe* was called in *Greek Dorcas*, by reaſon of the quickneſs of her ſight; and that ſhe can ſee as perfectly in the night as in the day. Phyſicians have obſerved a certain viſcous humor about her Bowels, which by anointing Eyes that are dark, heavy, and near blind, quickens the ſight moſt wonderfully.

It is reported of them, that they never wink, no not when they ſleep; for which conceit their Blood is preſcribed for them who are dim-ſighted or purblind. The tail of this Beaſt is leſſer and ſhorter than a *Fallow-Deer's*, inſomuch that it is doubtful whether it be a tail or not.

They keep for the moſt in the Mountains among the Rocks, being very ſwift; and when they are Hunted (*Martial* ſaith) they hang upon the Rocks with their Horns, to delude the Dogs, after a ſtrange manner, ready to fall and kill themſelves, and yet receive no harm, where the Dogs dare not approach, as appeareth in his Epigram:

Pendentem ſumma Capream, de rupe videbis,
Caſuram ſperes, decipit illa Canes.

This might be more properly meant of the Wild *Goat*.

They are moſt eaſily taken in the Woods. When they are chaſed, they deſire to run againſt the Wind, becauſe the coldneſs of the Air refreſheth them in their Courſe; and therefore they who hunt them place their Dogs with the Wind. They are often taken by the counterfeiting of their Voice, which the skilful Huntſman doth by the aſſiſtance of a Leaf in his Mouth.

This Beaſt is very eaſie to hunt, and goeth to Rut (or *Tourn* moſt properly) in *October*, the extent whereof conſiſts of fifteen days, and never parteth with the *Doe* till Fawning-time.

The *Doe* finding her ſelf near her time, ſecretly departs from the *Buck*, and ſawneth as far from him and his knowledge as ſhe can; for could he find the *Fawn* he would kill it. Now when the *Fawn* grows big, and can run and feed, ſhe then returns to the *Buck* again very lovingly, with all expedition: the cauſe whereof, is the *Roes* fawning Twins, which are commonly *Buck* and *Doe*; ſo that being accuſtomed together in youth, they do love to keep company ever after.

As ſoon as the *Roe-Buck* cometh from Rut, he caſts his Horns; and there are few after two years old which Mew not at *Alhallontide*, but their Heads grow quickly out again.

The Veniſon of a *Roe* is never out of ſeaſon, being never fat, and therefore they are to be hunted at any time: only this, ſome favour ought to be ſhewn the *Doe* whilſt ſhe is big with *Fawn*, and afterwards till her *Fawn* is able to ſhift for himſelf: beſides, ſome *Roe-Does* have been killed with five *Fawns* in their belly.

They uſually when hunted, take a large firſt Ring, and afterwards hunt the Hounds.

When they are hunted, they turn much and often, and come back upon the Dogs directly: When they can no longer endure, they then take Soil, as the *Hart* doth, and will hang by a Bough in ſuch manner, that nothing ſhall appear of them above water but their Snout, and will ſuffer the Dogs to come juſt upon them before they will ſtir.

He is not called by the skilful in the Art of Hunting, a *Great Roe-Buck*, but a *Fair Roe-Buck*. The Herd of them is called a *Bevy*: And if he hath not Beavy-greaſe on his Tail when he is broken up, he is more fit to be Dogs meat than Mans-meat.

The

The Hounds muſt be rewarded with the Bowels, the Blood, and Feet ſlit aſunder, and boiled all together. This is more properly called a *Doſe* than a *Reward*. For what might be ſaid farther concerning *Roe* Hunting, I ſhall refer you to the Chapters of *Hart* and *Buck*-Hunting.

Rain-Deer-*Hunting*.

THE *Rain-Deer* is not unlike a *Hart*, only his Head is fuller of Antliers, being bigger and wider in compaſs; for he bears four and twenty Branches, and more, according to his Age, having a great Palm on the top, as a *Hart*, and his Fore-Antliers are Palmed alſo.

He flieth end-ways when he is Hunted, by reaſon of the great weight of his Head. When he hath ſtood up a great while, doubled, croſſed, and uſed other crafty tricks to ſhun the Hounds, he makes a Tree his laſt refuge; ſo planting himſelf, that nothing can aſſault him but juſt before, placing his Buttock and Haunches againſt the Tree, and hanging down his Head low to the ground, whereby all his Body is covered.

As the *Hart* ſtrikes with his Head, the *Rain-Deer* ſtrikes with his Feet againſt any one that comes in to him to help the Dogs, not in the leaſt turning his Head, that being his chiefeſt defence, and ſeems very terrible to the Hounds.

He feedeth like the *Hart*, and maketh his Fewmets ſometimes long, and ſometimes flat, and beareth fatter Veniſon, when he is in pride of Greaſe, than any other *Deer* doth, and is very long liv'd. He is more commonly drawn after with a Blood-Hound, than Hunted, and intrapped with Nets and Engines, and that in the

the thick and greateſt Holds, if it may be; which is the beſt and ſpeedieſt way, by reaſon of his great and ſpreading Head. Since there are but few of them in *England*, I ſhall deſiſt from diſcourſing farther concerning him.

Of the Nature and Properties of a Hare.

AN *Hare* is called in Hebrew *Arnebet* in the Feminine Gender, which word poſſeſſed a great many that all *Hares* were Females: He is called *Lagos* by the Greeks, for his immoderate Luſt; and by the ſame Nation *Ptoax*, for his Fear; and by the Latins *Lepus*, *quaſi Levi-pes*, ſignifying Swiftneſs of feet (*aliàs*) Light-foot.

There are four ſorts of *Hares*; ſome live in the Mountains, ſome in the Fields, ſome in the Marſhes, ſome every where, without any certain place of abode. They of the Mountains, are moſt ſwift; they of the Fields, leſs nimble; they of the Marſhes, moſt ſlow; and the wandering *Hares* are moſt dangerous to follow; for they are ſo cunning in the ways and muſes of the Fields, running up the Hills and Rocks, becauſe by cuſtom they know the nearer way, with other tricks, to the confuſion of the Dogs, and diſencouragement of the Hunters.

In the next place, a deſcription of the parts of an *Hare* will not be unneceſſary, ſince it is admirable to behold how every Limb and Member of this Beaſt is compoſed for celerity. In the firſt place, the Head is round, nimble, ſhort, yet of convenient longitude, prone to turn every way. The Ears long, and lofty, like an Aſſes: for Nature hath ſo provided, that every fearful and unarmed Creature ſhould have long and large Ears, that by hearing it might prevent its Enemies, and ſave it

it self by flight: The Lips continually move sleeping and waking; and from the slit they have in the middle of their Nose, cometh the term of *Hare-lips* which are so divided in Men.

The Neck of an *Hare* is long, small, round, soft, and flexible: The Shoulder-bone streight and broad, for her more easie turning: her Legs before soft, and stand broader behind than before, and the hinder Legs longer than the former: a Breast not narrow, but fitted to take more breath than any Beast of that bigness: a nimble back, and a fleshy Belly, tender Loins, hollow Sides, fat Buttocks, filled up, strong and nervous Lines. Their Eyes are brown, and they are subtile, but not bold; seldom looking forward, because going by Jumps. Their Eye-lids coming from the Brows, are too short to cover their Eyes, and therefore this Sense is very weak in them. When they watch they shut their Eyes, and when they sleep they open them.

They have certain little Bladders in their Belly filled with matter, out of which both the one and the other Sex suck a certain humour, and anoint their Bodies all over therewith, and so are defended against Rain.

Though their Sight be dim, yet they have *visum indefessum*, an indefatigable Sense of Seeing; so that the continuance in a mean degree, countervaileth in them the want of excellency.

They feed abroad, because they would conceal their forms; and never drink, but content themselves with the Dew, and for that cause they often fall rotten. As it is before, every Limb of a *Hare* is composed for celerity, and therefore she never travelleth, but jumpeth: her Ears lead her the way in her Chase; for with one of them she hearkneth to the Cry of the Dogs, and the other she stretcheth forth like a Sail, to hasten her Course; always stretching her hinder beyond her former, and yet not hindering

ing

ing them at all; and in Paths and High-ways ſhe runs more ſpeedily.

The *Hares* of the Mountains do often exerciſe themſelves in the Valleys and Plains, and through practice grow acquainted with the neareſt ways to their Forms or Places of conſtant abode; ſo that when at any time they are Hunted in the Fields, ſuch is their ſubtile Dodging, that they will dally with the Huntſman till they ſeem to be almoſt taken, and then on a ſudden take the neareſt way to the Mountains, and ſo take Sanctuary in the inacceſſible places, whither Dogs nor Horſe dare aſcend.

Hares which frequent Buſhes and Brakes, are not able to endure Labour, and not very ſwift, by reaſon of the pain in their Feet, growing fat through idleneſs and diſcontinuance of running. The *Campeſtrial* or *Field-Hare*, being leaner of Body, and oftner chaſed, is taken with more difficulty, by reaſon of her ſingular agility; ſhe therefore when ſhe beginneth her Courſe, leapeth up from the ground as if ſhe flew, afterwards paſſeth through Brambles, and over thick Buſhes and Hedges with all expedition; and if at any time ſhe come into deep Graſs or Corn, ſhe eaſily delivereth her ſelf, and ſlideth through it, always holding up one Ear, and bending it at her pleaſure to be the Moderator of her Chaſe. Neither is ſhe ſo unprovident and prodigal of her Strength, as to ſpend it all in one Courſe, but obſerveth the force of her Proſecutor, who if he be ſlow and ſluggiſh, ſhe is not profuſe of her Celerity, but only walketh gently before the Dogs, and yet ſafely from their Clutches, reſerving her greateſt ſtrength to her greateſt neceſſity: for ſhe knoweth ſhe can out-run the Dogs at her pleaſure, and therefore will not trouble her ſelf more than ſhe is urged. But if there be a Dog following her more ſwiftly than the reſidue; then ſhe ſetteth forward with all the force

force she can; and when she hath left both Hunters and Dogs a great way behind her, she getteth to some little Hill or rising of the Earth, where she raiseth her self upon her hinder Legs, that thereby she may observe how far or near her Pursuers are distant from her.

The younger *Hares*, by reason of their weak Members, tread heavier on the Earth than the elder; and therefore leave the greater Scent behind them. At a year old they run very swift, and their Scent is stronger in the Woods than in the plain Fields; and if they lie down upon the Earth (as they love to do) in red Follow-grounds, they are easily descried.

Their Foot-steps in the Winter-time are more apparent than in the Summer, because, as the Nights are longer, so they travel farther: neither do they scent in the Winter-mornings so soon as it is day, until the Frost be somewhat thawed; but especially their Foot-steps are uncertain at the Full of the Moon, for then they leap and play together, scattering or putting out their scent or savour; and in the Spring time also, when they do ingender, they confound one anothers Footsteps by multitudes.

Hare-*Hunting*.

IT is the Judgment of all, that a *Hare* doth naturally know the change of Weather from twenty four Hours to twenty four Hours. When she goeth to her Form, she will suffer the Dew to touch her as little as she can, but followeth the High-ways and beaten Paths.

They

They go to Buck commonly in *January*, *February*, and *March*, and ſometimes all the warm Months, ſometimes ſeeking the Buck ſeven or eight miles diſtant from the place where they uſually ſit, following the High-ways, *&c.*

If when a *Hare* riſeth out of her Form ſhe couches her Ears and Scut, and runs not very faſt at firſt, it is an infallible ſign that ſhe is old and crafty.

You may know a Buck-*Hare* as you Hunt him to his Form by his beating the hard High-ways. He feedeth farther out into the Plains, and maketh his doublings and croſſings much wider, and of greater Compaſs than the Female doth: for ſhe will keep cloſe by ſome Covert-ſide, turning and winding in the Buſhes like a *Coney*, and if ſhe go to relief in the Corn-fields, ſhe ſeldom croſſeth over the Furrows, but followeth them along, ſtaying upon the thickeſt tufts of Corn to feed.

Likewiſe you may know a Buck at the riſing out of his Form by his Hinder-parts, which are more whitely; or if you obſerve his Shoulders before he riſe, which will be redder than the Does, having ſome looſe long Hairs growing on them. Again, his Head is ſhorter, and better truſſed; his Hairs about his Lips longer; and his Ears ſhorter and more gray. The Hairs upon the Female's Chine will be of a blackiſh gray.

Beſides, when Hounds hunt a Female *Hare*, ſhe will uſe more croſſing and doubling, ſeldom making out end-ways before the Hounds: whereas the Male acts contrary; for having once made a Turn or two about his Form then farewel Hounds; for he will frequently lead them five or ſix Miles before ever he will turn his Head.

When you ſee that your Hounds have found where an *Hare* hath paſs'd to relief upon the High-way-ſide, and hath much doubled and croſſed upon dry places, and never much broken out nor relieved in the Corn, it is a ſign

ſign ſhe is but lately come thither; and then commonly ſhe will ſtay upon ſome high place to look about her, and to chuſe out a place to Form in, which ſhe will be loth to part with.

Of the Craft and Subtilty of an Hare.

As of all Chaſes the *Hare* makes the greateſt paſtime and pleaſure; ſo it is a great delight and ſatisfaction to ſee the craft of this little poor Beaſt in her own ſelf-preſervation.

And that you may underſtand what theſe Subtilties are, you muſt firſt take notice what Weather it is. If it be rainy, then the *Hare* will hold the High-ways more than at any other time: and if ſhe come to the ſide of any young Grove or Spring, ſhe will ſcarcely enter, but ſquat down by the ſide thereof, until the Hounds have over-ſhot her; and then ſhe will return the ſelf-ſame way ſhe came to the place from whence ſhe was ſtarted, and will not by the way go into any Covert, for fear of the Wet and Dew that hang upon the Boughs.

In this caſe, let the Huntſman ſtay a hundred paces before he comes to the Wood-ſide, by which means he ſhall perceive whether ſhe return as aforeſaid; which if ſhe do, let him hallow in his Hounds, and call them back, and that preſently, that the Hounds may not think it the Counter ſhe came firſt.

The next thing to be obſerved, is the place where the *Hare* ſitteth, and upon what Wind ſhe makes her Form: for if ſhe Form either upon the North or South Wind, ſhe will not willingly run into the Wind, but run upon a ſide or down the Wind. But if ſhe Form in the Water, it is a ſign ſhe is foul and meaſled. If you hunt ſuch a one, have a ſpecial regard all the day to the Brook-ſides, for there and near Plaſhes ſhe will make all her croſſings, doublings, *&c.*

I have ſeen a *Hare* ſo crafty, that as ſoon as ſhe heard the ſound of a Horn, ſhe would inſtantly ſtart out of her Form, tho' it was a quarter of a mile diſtant, and go ſwim in ſome Pool, and there reſt her ſelf upon ſome ruſhbed in the midſt thereof, from whence ſhe would not ſtir till ſhe heareth the Horn again; and then I have ſeen her ſtart out again ſwimming to Land, and ſhe hath ſtood up before the Hounds four Hours before we could kill her, ſwimming, and uſing all her Subtleties and Croſſing in the Water.

Such is the natural Craft and Subtilty of a *Hare*, that ſometimes, after ſhe hath been Hunted three Hours, ſhe will ſtart a freſh *Hare*, and ſquat in the ſame Form. Others, having been Hunted a conſiderable time, will creep under the Door of a Sheep-coat, and there hide themſelves among the Sheep; or when they are hard Hunted, will run in among a flock of Sheep, and cannot be gotten out from among them by any means, till the Hounds are coupled up, and the Sheep driven into their Pens. Some (and that is ſomething ſtrange) will take the Ground like a *Coney*, and that is called *going to the Vaut*. Some *Hares* will go up one ſide of the Hedge, and come down the other, the thickneſs of the Hedge being the only diſtance between the Courſes.

I have ſeen a *Hare*, that being ſorely Hunted, got upon a Quick-ſet Hedge, and ran a good way upon the top thereof, and then leapt off upon the ground. And they will frequently betake themſelves to Furz-buſhes, and will leap from the one to the other, whereby the Hounds are frequently in default. Nay, which is more, I have heard of a *Hare*, that being Hunted two Hours, or more, at length, to ſave her ſelf, got upon an old Wall ſix foot high from the ground, and hid her ſelf in the Hole that was made for a Scaffold: and that ſeveral have ſwam over *Trent* and *Severn*.

A *Hare* liveth not above ſeven Years at moſt, eſpecially the Buck; and if he and the Doe ſhall keep one Quarter together, they will never ſuffer any ſtrange *Hare* to ſit by them; and therefore it is proverbially ſaid, *The more you hunt, the more* Hares *you ſhall have*; becauſe when you have killed one *Hare*, another will come and poſſeſs his Form.

An *Hare* hath greater Scent, and is more eagerly Hunted by the Hounds, when ſhe feeds and relieveth upon green Corn, than at any other time in the Year: And yet there are ſome *Hares* which naturally give a greater Scent than others; as the great Wood-*Hares*; and ſuch as are foul and meaſled, and keep near to the Waters: But the little red *Hare*, which is not much bigger than a *Coney*, is neither of ſo ſtrong a Scent, nor ſo eagerly Hunted. Such as feed upon the ſmall branches of wild Thyme, or ſuch like Herbs, are commonly very ſwift, and will ſtand long up before the Hounds. In like manner you have ſome *Hares* more ſubtile and cunning than others. Young *Hares* which have not been Hunted are fooliſh, and are neither of force nor capacity to uſe ſuch ſubtilties and crafts, but hold on end ways before the Hounds moſt commonly, and do ſquat and ſtart again oftentimes, which doth much encourage the Hounds, and enters them better than if the *Hare* flies end-ways, as ſometimes they will five or ſix mile an end.

The Females are more crafty and politick than the Bucks; for they double and turn ſhorter than they, which is diſpleaſant to the Hounds; for it is troubleſome for them to turn often, delighting more in an end-way Chaſe, running with all their force: For ſuch *Hares* as double and croſs ſo often, it is requiſite at default to caſt the greater compaſs about, when you beat to make it out, for ſo you will find all her ſubtilties, and yet need to ſtick upon none of them, but only where ſhe went on forwards: By this means you will abate her force, and compel her to leave doubling and croſſing.

How to enter Hounds to the Hare.

Let the Huntſman be ſure in the firſt place to make his Hounds very well acquainted with him and his Voice, and let them underſtand the Horn; and to this end let him never blow his Horn or hollow, but when there is good cauſe for ſo doing, and let him be ſure that his Hounds want no encouragement.

Here by the way obſerve two remarkable things. The firſt is, if you intend to enter a young Kennel of Hounds, you muſt take notice of the Country where you will make your firſt Quarry, and whereof you make it: For according to the places wherein they are firſt entred, and the nature of the Quarry given them, they will prove accordingly for the future. Thus if they are firſt entred in the Plains and Champion Countries, they will ever after more delight to Hunt there than in any other place: And ſo it is the ſame with the Coverts.

But, ſay ſome of our Huntſmen, all ſtrange Countries that differ from that to which Hounds are accuſtomed, cauſes them at firſt to be at ſeek: But good Hounds will ſoon be maſter of any Country; and therefore he that would have the beſt Hounds, muſt uſe them to all kinds of Hunting: And it is eaſie to bring Hounds to enjoy a Scent from a bleak Down to a freſh Paſture. And therefore many of us love to enter in the worſt Countries.

Do not accuſtom your Hounds to Hunt in the Morning, becauſe of the Dew and Moiſture of the Earth; and beſides, you will find by experience, that if afterwards you Hunt them in the Heat of the Day, they will ſoon give over the chaſe; neither will they call on willingly or chearfully, but ſeek out the ſhades to ſleep in. Yet many of us agree, that to Hunt both early and late in the morning by Trayling, advantageth the Hounds to uſe their Noſes; and by keeping them ſometimes

times in the Heat of the Day, or till Night, moves them to ſtoutneſs.

The beſt Seaſon to enter your young Hounds is in *September* and *October*; for then the Weather is temperate, neither too hot nor too cold; and then is the time to find young *Hares* which have never been Hunted, which are fooliſh and ignorant of the politick Croſſings, Doublings, *&c.* of their Sires, running commonly end-ways, frequently ſqatting, and as often ſtarting, by which encouragement the Hounds are the better entered.

A *Hare* hath greater Scent, and is more eagerly Hunted by the Hounds, when ſhe feedeth and relieveth on green Corn, than at any other time of the Year.

Moreover, ſome *Hares* have naturally a greater ſcent than others, as the great Wood *Hares*, and ſuch as are foul and meaſled, having their greateſt reſort near the Water and Plaſhes.

The little ſmall red *Hare*, not much bigger than a *Coney*, is very feeble, and not much coveted by the Hounds, having a bad Scent: But ſuch as feed on the ſmall branches of wild Thyme are commonly very ſwift, and will ſtand up a long time before the Hounds.

The Does are much craftier than the Bucks, doubling and turning oftner and ſhorter, which is very vexatious and troubleſome to the Hounds. Now for ſuch *Hares* as double and croſs ſo often, it is requiſite at a default to caſt the greater compaſs about when you draw to make it out; ſo ſhall you find all their ſubtilties; though it is needleſs to ſtick upon any, but where they went onwards. By ſo doing you will abate the force of a *Hare*, and force her from croſſing and doubling.

Some *Hares* hold the high beaten ways only, where the Hounds can have no Scent; wherefore when the Huntſman finds his Hounds at a default in the High-way, let him Hunt on until he find where the *Hare* hath broken from the High way, or hath found ſome Dale or

freſh place where the Hounds may recover Scent, looking narrowly on the ground as he goeth, if he can find the footing or pricking of the *Hare*.

There are other places wherein a Hound can find no ſcent; and that is in fat and rotten ground, and it ſticketh to the Foot of the *Hare*, which is called *Carrying*, and ſo conſequently ſhe leaves no ſcent behind her. So likewiſe there are certain Months wherein a Hound can find no ſcent, and that is in the Spring-time, by reaſon of the fragrant ſmell of Flowers, and the like.

Shun, as much as you can, Hunting in hard froſty weather, for ſo you will ſurbate or founder your Hounds, and make them loſe their Claws: beſides, at that time a *Hare* runneth better than at any other time, the Soals of her feet being hairy.

To conclude, the beſt way of entring your young Hounds, is by the help of old Staunch-Hounds; ſo will they the better learn to caſt for it at a doubling or default.

What time of the Year is beſt for Hare *Hunting: How to find her, ſtart her, and chaſe her.*

The beſt time to begin *Hare*-Hunting, is about the middle of *September*, ending towards the latter end of *February*, leſt you deſtroy the early Brood of *Leverets*. Moreover, upon the approach of Winter, the moiſtneſs and coolneſs of the Earth increaſeth, which is agreeable to the nature of the Hounds, and very acceptable, they ever hating extream Heats and hot Weather.

Your Hounds being two Years old and upwards, you may exerciſe them thrice a Week, and they will be the better for ſo often Hunting, provided you feed well; and keep out your Hounds the greateſt part of the day, both to try their ſtoutneſs, and to make them hour.

If

If there be any Hound which hath found the Trail of a *Hare* where ſhe hath relieved that night, let the Huntſman then forbear being over-haſty, but let the Hounds make it of themſelves: and when he ſhall perceive that they begin to draw in together, and to call on freſhly, then let him encourage them, eſpecially that Hound which Hunteth beſt, frequently calling him by his name.

Here note, that a *Hare* leaveth better ſcent when ſhe goeth to relief, than when ſhe goeth towards her Form: For when ſhe relieveth in the Field, ſhe coucheth her Body low upon the ground, paſſing often over one piece of ground, to find where lieth the beſt Food; and thus leaveth the better Scent, crotying alſo ſometimes.

Beſides, when ſhe goes to her Form, ſhe commonly takes the High-ways, doubling, croſſing, and leaping as lightly as ſhe can; in which places the Hounds can have no ſcent, (as is ſaid before) by reaſon of the duſt, *&c.* And yet they will ſquat by the ſides of the High-ways, and therefore let the Huntſman beat very well the ſides of thoſe High-ways.

Now having found where a *Hare* hath relieved in ſome Paſture or Corn-field, then muſt you conſider the Seaſon of the Year, and what Weather it is: for if it be in the Spring time, or Summer, a *Hare* will not then ſit in the Buſhes, becauſe they are frequently offended with Piſmires, Snakes, and Adders, but will ſit in Corn-fields and open places.

In Winter they love to ſit near Towns and Villages in Tufts of Thorns and Brambles, eſpecially when the Wind is Northerly or Southerly.

According to the ſeaſon and nature of the place where the *Hare* is accuſtomed to ſit, there beat with your Hounds and ſtart her; which is much better ſport than Trailing of her from her Relief to her Form.

When the *Hare* is ſtarted and on foot, then ſtep in where you ſaw her paſs, and hollow in your Hounds until they have all undertaken it, and go on with it in full cry: Then Recheat to them with your Horn, following fair and ſoftly at firſt, making neither too much haſte nor noiſe with Horn or Voice: for at the firſt, Hounds are apt to over-ſhoot the Chaſe through too much heat. But having ran the ſpace of an hour, and that you ſee the Hounds are well in with it, ſticking well upon it, then you may come in nearer with the Hounds, becauſe by that time their Heat will be cooled, and they will Hunt more ſoberly. But above all things mark the firſt doubling, which muſt be your direction for the whole day; for all the doublings that ſhe afterwards ſhall make, will be like the former: and according to the policies that you ſhall ſee her uſe, and the place where you Hunt, you muſt make your compaſſes great or little, long or ſhort, to help the defaults, always ſeeking the moiſteſt and moſt commodious places for the Hounds to ſcent in.

To conclude, thoſe who delight in the commendable Exerciſe of Hunting the *Hare*, muſt riſe early, leſt they be deprived of the ſcent of her foot-ſteps, by which means the Dogs will be incapacitated to follow their Game; for the nature of the ſcent is ſuch, that it will not remain long, but ſuddenly, in a manner every hour, vaniſheth away.

Of Parks *and* Warrens.

HAving thus diſcourſed of the Nature and Properties of the *Hare*, together with the manner of Hunting them; in the next place I hold it not improper in ſhort to ſpeak ſomething of Parks and encloſed Warrens, wherein *Hares*, *Coneys*, *Deers*, &c. may always be ready as it were out of a Store-houſe or Seminary, to ſerve the uſe and pleaſure of their Maſters.

The firſt *Roman* that ever encloſed wild Beaſts, was *Fulvius Herpinus*; and *Varro* had the firſt Warren of *Hares*. The largeſt *Hare*-Parks that ever I heard of, and the beſt furniſhed with thoſe fearful, yet ſubtile Creatures, are in *Ireland*; the one belongs to the *Lord-Lieutenant* of that Kingdom, near *Dublin*; and the other in the North, and belongs to the Lord of *Mazareen*. It will be a tedious task for me to give you an account of the variety of Parks and Warrens within the three Kingdoms; I ſhall therefore only tell you in what manner they are erected, and that very briefly.

The Walls or Pales muſt be high, or cloſe jointed, ſo as neither *Badger* nor *Cat* can creep through, nor *Wolf* nor *Fox* can leap over; wherein ought alſo to be Buſhes and broad Trees to cover the Beaſts againſt Heat and Cold, and other ſecret places to ſatisfie their Natures, and to defend the leſſer Beaſts, as *Hares*, *Coneys*, &c. from *Hawks*, *Kites*, and other ravening Fowls; in which three or four couple of *Hares* will quickly multiply into a great Warren.

It is very good to ſow Gourds, Miſceline, Corn, Barley, Peaſe, and ſuch-like, wherein *Hares* delight, and will thereby quickly grow fat.

Warreners have a very crafty device to fatten *Hares*, which by experience is found effectual, and that is by putting Wax into their Ears, and ſo make them deaf; then turn them into the place where they ſhould feed,

where being freed from the fear of Sounds (for want of Hearing) they grow fat before other of their kind.

Here note, that when you have pitched your Hays for *Coneys*, found a Trumpet in ſome of the Burrows, and ſcarce a *Coney* in the whole Warren but will ſtart abroad.

I ſhall end this Chapter with *Martial*'s Praiſe of a *Hare* and a *Thruſh*.

Inter Aves Turdus ſi quis in Judice certet,
Inter Quadrupedes gloria prima Lepus.

Amongſt all Birds none with the *Thruſh* compare,
And no Beaſt hath more glory than the *Hare*.

Of Coney *Catching.*

BEfore we ſpeak of the Hunting of the *Coney*, it will not be amiſs to take notice of her Nature and Properties, which are theſe: She carrieth her young in her Belly thirty days; as ſoon as ſhe hath kindned ſhe goes to Buck. They begin to breed in *England* at a year old (but ſooner in other places) and ſo continue, bearing at leaſt ſeven times in a year if they Litter in *March*; this is the reaſon that a ſmall ſtock will ſerve to increaſe a large Warren. The Does cannot ſuckle their young till they have been with the Buck, which muſt be done preſently, or ſhe will not be inclined fourteen days after.

When the Buck goes to Doe, he will beat very ſtrongly with his fore-foot upon the ground, and by that means he heateth himſelf. When he hath buckt, he is accuſtomed to fall backwards, and lie as if he were in a Trance, or half dead, at which time he is eaſily taken.

The

The *Latins* call a *Coney*, *Cuniculus*, becauſe it maketh Holes in the Earth; and *Cuniculus* was a Latin Word for a Hole or Cave in the Earth, before it was taken for a *Coney*.

The Bucks will kill the young if they can come at them, like to your Bore-cats; and therefore the Doe prevents that miſchief, by covering her Stop or Neſt, with Earth or Gravel, that ſo they may not eaſily be diſcovered.

Thoſe who keep *Coneys* tame for profit, may give them to eat Vine-leaves, Fruits, Herbs, Graſs, Bran, Oat-meal, Mallows, Milk-thiſtles, Apple-parings, Cabbage, Lettice, or Carret-tops. In Winter they will eat Hay, Oats, and Chaff, being given to them thrice a day: but when they eat green things, they muſt not drink at all, becauſe of the Dropſie which will follow: At all other times a little drink muſt ſerve their turn, and that muſt be always freſh. Here note, give them not too much green juicy meat, unleſs you intermix therewith what is dry, as Oats, Chaff, *&c.* otherwiſe they will be *Cathed*, or tun-belly'd.

Now the way of taking them is either by ſmall Currs or Spaniels bred up for that ſport; and their places for Hunting are among Buſhes and Hedges; or elſe by courſing them with ſmall Grey-hounds. In their default they are commonly driven into their Burrows; and therefore it will be very requiſite to ſet Purſe-nets on the Holes, then put in a Ferret cloſe muzzled, and ſhe will make the *Coneys* bolt out again into the Purſe-nets, and ſo you may take them. Some ſay the Drone of a Bag-pipe, put into a *Coney*-Burrow, and blown on a ſudden, will make *Coneys* bolt.

For want of a *Ferret*, you may take the Pouder of Orpine and ſome Brimſtone, and therewith make a ſmother in the Burrows, and ſo they will bolt out. But this way is not to be approved of; for by that means the *Coneys* will forſake thoſe Burrows, and ſo in a little time

a

a Warren will be deſtroy'd, ſhould this courſe be uſed frequently.

But above Nets and Ferrets, Hays are to be preferred for the taking of *Coneys*; neither is the drawing Ferret to be deſpiſed when they are young. Likewiſe there is excellent ſport to be made with our Tumblers, who will kill *Coneys* abundantly.

Let this ſuffice, ſince any farther Diſcourſe hereof is neither proper nor pertinent to my preſent purpoſe.

Of the Ferret.

THE *Ferret* is a little Creature that is not bred in *Spain*, *Italy*, *France*, nor *Germany*; but in *England* they breed naturally, and are tamed for the benefit of ſuch who keep Warrens, and others.

It is a bold and audacious Beaſt, Enemy to all others but his own kind, drinking and ſucking in the Blood of the Beaſt it biteth, but eateth not the Fleſh.

When the Warrenner hath an occaſion to uſe his *Ferret*, he firſt makes a noiſe in the Warren to frighten what *Coneys* are abroad into their Burrows, and then he pitcheth his Nets; after that, he puts his *Ferret* into the Earth, having a long Strick, with Bells about her Neck, whoſe mouth muſt be muzzled, ſo that he may not ſeize, but frighten the *Coneys* out of their Burrows, and afterwards driven by Dogs into the Nets or Hays ſo planted for them.

The Body is longer for the proportion than the quantity may afford. Their colour is variable, ſometimes black and white on the Belly, but moſt commonly of a yellowiſh ſandy colour, like Wool died in Urine. The Head is little like a Mouſe's; and therefore into whatſoever Hole ſhe can put it in, all her Body will eaſily fol-

follow after. The Eyes are ſmall, but fiery like red-hot Iron, and therefore ſhe ſeeth moſt clearly in the dark. Her Voice is a whining cry without changing it: She hath only two Teeth in her nether Chap, ſtanding out, and not joined and growing together. The Genital of the Male is of a bony ſubſtance, and therefore it always ſtandeth ſtiff, and is not leſſer at one time than another. The pleaſure of the ſence in Copulation is not in the Genital Part, but in the Muſcles, Tunicles, and Nerves wherein the ſaid Genital runneth. When they are in Copulation, the Female lieth down, or bendeth her Knees, and continually crieth like a Cat, either becauſe the Male claweth her with his Nails, or by reaſon of the roughneſs of his Genital.

She uſually brings forth ſeven or eight at a time, carrying them forty days in her little Belly: The young ones newly littered are blind thirty days together; and within forty days after they can ſee, they may be uſed as their Dam for Profit and Recréation.

When tamed, they are nouriſhed with Milk or with Barley-bread, and they can faſt a very long time. When they go, they contract their long Back, and make it ſtand upright in the middle round like a Bowl: when they are touched, they ſmell like a *Martel*; and they ſleep very much. Thus much of the *Ferret*, which I thought good to place after the Chapter of *Coney*-catching, becauſe this little Animal is ſuch a neceſſary Inſtrument for that purpoſe.

Of

Of Fox-*Hunting.*

HIS Shape and Proportion is so well known, being a Beast so common, that it will be needless to describe him.

His nature in many respects is like that of a *Wolf*; for they bring as many Cubs at a Litter one as the other: but thus they differ; the *Fox* Litters deep under the ground, so doth not the *Wolf*.

A Bitch-*Fox* is hardly to be taken when she is bragged and with Cub; for then she will lie near her Burrow, into which she runs upon the hearing of the least noise. And indeed at any time it is somewhat difficult; for the *Fox* (and so the *Wolf*) is a very subtile crafty Creature.

Fox-hunting is very pleasant; for by reason of his strong hot scent he maketh an excellent Cry: And as his scent is hottest at hand, so it dies soonest. Besides, he never flies far before the Hounds, trusting not on his Legs, Strength, or Champion Ground, but strongest Coverts. When he can no longer stand up before the Hounds, he then taketh Earth, and then must he be digged out.

If Grey-hounds course him on a Plain, his last refuge is to piss on his Tail, and slap it in their faces as they come near him; sometimes squirting his thicker Excrement upon them, to make them give over the Course or Pursuit.

When a Bitch-*Fox* goes a clicketing and seeketh for a Dog, she crieth with a hollow Voice, not unlike the howling of a mad Dog; and in the same manner she cries, when she misseth any of her Cubs: but never makes any cry at all when she is killing, but defends her self to the last gasp.

A *Fox* will prey upon any thing he can overcome, and feeds upon all sorts of Carrion; but their Dainties, and the

the Food which they moſt delight in, is Poultry. They are very deſtructive and injurious to *Coney* Warrens, and will ſometimes kill *Hares* by deceit and ſubtilty, and not by ſwift running.

The *Fox* is taken with Hounds, Grey-hounds, Terriers, Nets, and Gins.

Of Terriers there are two ſorts. The one is crooked-legg'd, and commonly ſhort-hair'd: and theſe will take Earth well, and will lie very long at *Fox* or *Badger*. The other ſort tis ſhagged and ſtreight-legg'd: and theſe will not only hunt above-ground as other Hounds, but alſo enter the Earth with much more fury than the former; but cannot ſtay in ſo long by reaſon of their great eagerneſs.

The time of entring theſe Terriers, is when they are near a twelve month old; for if you enter him not in within this time, you will hardly after bring him to take the Earth. And to encourage the young Terrier the more, put in an old one before him, that can better endure the fury of the *Fox* or *Badger*; and be careful that neither of them be old when you engage your young Terrier with him.

The entring and fleſhing them may be done ſeveral ways. In the firſt place thus: When *Foxes* and *Badgers* have young Cubs, then take your old Terriers and enter them in the ground; and when they begin to bay; you muſt then hold every one of your Terriers at a ſundry Hole or Mouth of the Earth, that they may liſten and hear the old ones Bay. Having taken the old *Fox* or *Badger*, and that nothing remains within but the young Cubs, then couple up all your old Terriers, and put in the young in their ſtead, encouraging them by crying, *To him, to him, to him.* And if they take any young Cub within the ground, let them alone to do what they pleaſe with him; and forget not to give the old Terriers their reward, which is the Blood and Livers, fried with Cheeſe and ſome of their own Greaſe, ſhewing them the Heads and Skins to

encou-

encourage them. Before you reward them, waſh them with Soap and warm Water, to clear their Skins from Earth and Clay that is clodded to the Hair, otherwiſe they are apt to be mangie. You may alſo enter them in this manner: Take an old *Fox*, or *Badger*, and cut away the neather Jaw, but meddle not with the other, leaving the upper to ſhew the fury of the Beaſt, although it can do no harm therewith. Then dig an Earth in ſome convenient place in your own grounds, and be careful to make it wide enough, to the intent the Terriers may turn therein the better, and that there may be room enough for two to enter together: Then cover the Hole with Boards and Turf, putting the *Fox* or *Badger* firſt therein, and afterwards put in your Terriers both young and old, encouraging them with words that are the uſual terms of Art. When they have bay'd ſufficiently, then begin to dig with Spades and Mattocks, to encourage them againſt ſuch time as you are to dig over them: then take out the *Fox* or *Badger* with the Clamps or Pinchers, killing it before them, or let a Grey-Hound kill it in their ſight, and make them reward thereof. Here note, that inſtead of cutting away the Jaw, it will be every whit as well to break out all his Teeth, to prevent him from biting the Terriers.

Now to ſay the truth, there is not much paſtime or pleaſure in Hunting of a *Fox* under-ground; for as ſoon as that ſubtle Creature perceiveth the Terriers, if they bay hard, and lie near unto them, they will bolt out immediately, unleſs it be when the Bitch hath young Cubs, then they will ſooner die than ſtir.

They make their Earths as near as they can in ground that is hard to dig, as in Clay, Stony-ground, or amongſt the Roots of Trees; and their Earths have commonly but one Hole, and that is ſtreight a long way in before it come at their Couch. Sometimes craftily they poſſeſs themſelves of a *Badger*'s old Burrow, which hath variety of Chambers, Holes, and Angles.

When

When a good Terrier doth once bind the *Fox*, he then yearns, and defends himſelf very notably, but not ſo ſtrenuouſly as the *Badger*, nor is his biting half ſo dangerous. Here note, if you take a Bitch-*Fox* when ſhe goeth a Clicketing, and cut out that gut which containeth her Sperm, together with the Kidneys which Gelders deprive Bitches of when they ſpay them, and cut them into ſmall gobbets, mingling therewith the Gum of Maſtich, and put them hot as they are into a Pot, and cover the ſame cloſe, it will ſerve for an excellent train for a *Fox*, and will keep the whole Year round. Take the Skin of Bacon, and broil it well on a Gridiron, then dip it in the Ingredients of the Pot aforeſaid, and make a train thereof, you will experimentally find, that if there be any *Fox* near to any place where the Train is drawn, he will follow it; but let him who makes the Train rub the Soals of his Feet with Cow-dung, leſt the *Fox* vent his Footing: And thus you may train a *Fox* to a ſtanding, and kill him in an Evening with Gun or Croſs-bow. It is likewiſe found by Experience, that if a Terrier be rubbed with Brimſtone, or with Oil of Cade, and then put him into an Earth where either a *Fox* or *Badger* is, they will leave that Earth, and come not to it again a good while after.

I ſhall conclude this Diſcourſe with what I have obſerved in *Geſner's Hiſtory of Beaſts*, tending to the ſame purpoſe: Saith he, *As he frequently cheats the* Badger *of his Habitation by laying his Excrements at the mouth of his Earth or Burrow; ſo, foraſmuch as the* Wolf *is an Enemy to the* Fox, *he layeth in the mouth of his Earth an Herb called a Sea-onion, which a* Wolf *naturally hates, and is ſo averſe thereunto, that he will never come near the place where it either lies or grows.*

Of

Of Fox-*Hunting above ground.*

To this purpoſe you muſt draw with your Hounds about Groves, Thickets, and Buſhes near Villages: for a *Fox* will lurk in ſuch places, to prey on young Pigs and Pullein.

But it will be neceſſary to ſtop up his Earths, if you can find them, the night before you intend to Hunt; and the beſt time will be about midnight, for then the *Fox* goeth out to ſeek his Prey. You may ſtop his Holes by laying two white ſticks acroſs before them, which will make him imagin it is ſome Gin or Trap laid for him: or elſe you may ſtop them up cloſe with black Thorns and Earth together.

The beſt hunting a *Fox* above-ground is in *January*, *February*, and *March*; for then you ſhall beſt ſee your Hounds Hunting, and beſt find his Earthing; beſides, at thoſe times the *Fox*'s Skin is beſt in ſeaſon.

Again, the Hounds beſt Hunt the *Fox* in the coldeſt Weather, becauſe he leaveth a very ſtrong ſcent behind him; yet in cold Weather it chills faſteſt.

At firſt only caſt off your ſure Finders, and as the Drag mends, ſo add more as you dare truſt them.

Shun caſting off too many Hounds at once, becauſe Woods and Coverts are full of ſundry Chaſes, and ſo you may engage them in too many at one time.

Let ſuch as you caſt off at firſt be old Staunch Hounds, which are ſure; and if you hear ſuch a Hound call on merrily, you may caſt off ſome other to him; and when they run it on the full cry, caſt off the reſt: and thus you ſhall compleat your paſtime.

The words of comfort are the ſame which are uſed in the other Chaſes, attended with the ſame Hollowings and other Ceremonies.

Let the Hounds kill the *Fox* themſelves, and worry and hare him as much as they pleaſe: many Hounds will eat him with eagerneſs.

When

When he is dead, hang him at the end of a Pike-staff, and hollow in all your Hounds to bay him: but reward them not with any thing belonging to the *Fox*, for it is not good, neither will they eat it.

Of Badger-Hunting.

A *Badger* is called by several Names, *viz.* a *Grey-Brock*, *Borefon*, or *Bauſon*, and in *French Tauſſon*. The Male is called a *Badger* or *Boar-pig*; and the Female is called a *Sow*.

These Beasts are plentiful in *Naples*, *Sicily*, *Lucane*, and in the *Alpine* and *Helvetian* Coasts; so are they also here in *England*.

There are two kinds of this Beast, (saith *Gesner*) one resembling a Dog in his Feet, and the other a Hog, in his cloven Hoof: they differ too in their snout and colour, for the one resembles the snout of a Dog, the other of a Swine: the one hath a greyer coat, or whiter coat than the other, and goeth farther out in seeking of its prey. They differ also in their meat, the one eating Flesh and Carrion like a Dog, the other Roots and Fruits like a Hog: both these kinds have been found in *Normandy*, *France*, and *Sicily*.

Mr. *Turbervil* makes mention of two sorts of *Badgers* likewise, but in a different manner: *For the one* (saith he) *casteth his Haunts long like a* Fox, *and have their residence in Rocks, making their Burrows very deep. The other sort make their Burrows in light ground, and have more variety of Cells and Chambers than the former.* The one of these is called the *Badger pig*, and the other the *Badger whelp*; or call one *Canine*, and the other *Swinish*. The first hath his Nose, Throat, and Ears yellowish like a *Martens* Throat; and are much blacker, and higher legged than the *Badger-whelp*:

whelp. Both sorts live upon all Flesh, hunting greedily after Carrion. They are very mischievous and hurtful to Warrens, especially when they are big with young.

Badgers when they Earth, after by digging they have entred a good depth, for the clearing of the Earth out, one of them falleth on the back, and the other layeth Earth on the belly, and so taking his hinder feet in his mouth, draweth the belly-laden *Badger* out of the Hole or Cave; and having disburdened her self, re-enters, and doth the like till all be finished.

These *Badgers* are very sleepy, especially in the day-time, and seldom stir abroad but in the Night, for which cause they are called *Lucifugæ*, avoiders of the Light.

It is very pleasant to behold them when they gather materials for their Couch, as straw, leaves, moss, and such like; for with their feet and their head they will wrap as much together as a Man can well carry under his arm, and will make shift to get it into their Cells and Couches.

He hath very sharp Teeth, and therefore is accounted a deep biting Beast: his Back is broad, and his Legs are longer on the right side than the left, and therefore he runneth best when he gets on the side of an Hill, or a Cart-road-way. His fore-Legs have very sharp Nails, bare, and apt to dig withal, being five both before and behind, but the hinder very much shorter, and covered with hair. His favour is strong, and much troubled with Lice about the Secrets. Both Male and Female have under their Hole another Hole outwardly, but not inwardly in the Male. If he be hunted abroad with Hounds, he biteth them most grievously where ever he lays hold on them. For the prevention thereof, the careful Huntsmen put great broad Collars made of *Grays* Skins about their Dogs Necks. Her manner is to fight on her back, using thereby both her Teeth and her Nails; and by blowing up their Skin

after

after a ſtrange and wonderful manner, ſhe defendeth her ſelf againſt any blow and teeth of Dogs; only a ſmall ſtroke on her Noſe will diſpatch her preſently, you may thraſh your Heart weary on her Back, which ſhe values as a matter of nothing.

In *Italy* they eat the Fleſh of *Badgers*, and ſo they do in *Germany*, boiling it with Pears, ſome have eaten it here in *England*, but like it not, being of a ſweet rankiſh taſte.

The Fleſh is beſt in *September*, if it be fat, and of the two kinds, the Swimiſh *Badger* is better Fleſh than the other.

They love Hogs-fleſh above any other; for take but a piece of Pork and train it over a *Badgers* Burrow, if he be within, you ſhall quickly ſee him appear without.

Their Nature is very cold, and therefore when it ſnoweth they will not come out of their Holes for three or four days together.

They live long, and by meer age will grow blind, then they will not ſtir out of their Holes, but are fed by thoſe who have their ſight.

This Subtilty they have, that when they perceive the Terriers begin to yearn them, they will ſtop the Hole between the Terriers and them: if the Terriers continue baying, they will remove their Baggage with them, and go into another Apartment or Chamber of the Burrow, (for know that ſome of their Houſes have half a dozen Rooms at leaſt;) and ſo will remove from one to the other, till they can go no farther, barricadoing the way as they go.

The Hunting of a *Badger* muſt be after this manner: You muſt firſt ſeek the Earths and Burrows where he lieth, and in a clear Moon-ſhine night go and ſtop all the Holes but one or two, and therein place ſome Sacks faſtned with ſome drawing-ſtrings, which may ſhut him in as ſoon as he ſtraineth the Bag.

The Sacks or Bags being thus ſet, caſt off your Hounds, and beat all the Groves, Hedges, and Tufts within a mile or two about. What *Badgers* are abroad, being alarmed by the Dogs, will ſtreight repair to their Earths or Burrows, and ſo be taken.

Let him that ſtandeth to watch the Sacks, ſtand cloſe, and upon a clear Wind, for elſe the *Badger* will ſoon find him, and fly ſome other way for ſafety. But if the Hounds either encounter him, or undertake the Chaſe before he can get into his Earth, he will then ſtand at Bay like a *Boar*, and make moſt incomparable ſport.

What Inſtruments are to be uſed in digging, and how to dig for Badger *or* Fox.

In the firſt place, you muſt have ſuch as are able to dig; next, you muſt have ſo many Terriers garniſhed with Bells hung in Collars, to make the *Fox* or *Badger* bolt the ſooner; beſides, the Collars will be ſome ſmall defence unto the Terriers.

The Inſtruments to dig withal are theſe: A ſharp-pointed Spade, which ſerveth to begin the Trench where the ground is hardeſt, and broader Tools will not ſo well enter, the round hollowed Spade, which is uſeful to dig amongſt Roots, having very ſharp edges, the flat broad Spade, to dig withal when the Trench is better opened, and the ground ſofter, Mattocks and Pick-Axes, to dig in hard ground where a Spade will do but little ſervice; the Cole-rake, to cleanſe the Hole, and to keep it from ſtopping up; the Clamps, whereby you may take a *Fox* or *Badger* out alive to make ſport therewith afterwards. And it would not be amiſs to have a Pail of Water to refreſh your Terriers after they are come out of the Earth to take breath.

In this order you may beſiege a *Fox* or *Badger* in their ſtrongeſt Holes or Caſtles, and may break their Caſmats, Platforms, Parapets, and work to them with Mines

Mines and Counter-mines, until you have obtained your ſatisfaction. But there is a ſhorter method than this, which by reaſon of its commonneſs I ſhall forbear to mention.

Of the Otter.

IT is ſuppoſed by ſome that the *Otter* is of the kind of *Beavers*, being it is an amphibious Creature, living both in the Water and on the Land; beſides, the outward form of the Parts beareth a ſimilitude of that Beaſt. Some ſay were his tail off, he were in all parts like a *Beaver*, differing in nothing but habitation. For the *Beaver* frequenteth both the Salt-water and the Freſh; but the *Otter* never goeth to the Salt.

Though the *Otter* liveth in the Water, yet it doth not breathe like Fiſhes through the benefit of the Water, it doth breathe like other four-footed Beaſts, yet it will remain a long time underneath the Water without reſpiration.

If he want Prey in the Waters, then will he quit them for the Land; and if by painful Hunting aſhoar he cannot fill his belly, he will feed on Herbs, Snails, or Frogs, neither will he take leſs pains in the Water to ſatisfie Hunger: for he will ſwim two miles together againſt the ſtream, that ſo, when his belly is full, the current of the ſtream may carry him again down to his deſigned Lodging, which is near the Water, very artificially built with boughs, ſprigs, and ſticks, couched together in excellent order, wherein he ſitteth to keep him from the wet.

In the hunting of Fiſh, he often pops his Noſe above water to take breath: It is a Creature of wonderful ſwiftneſs and nimbleneſs in taking his Prey, and for

greedineſs takes more than he knows what to do with.

It is a very ſubtile and crafty Beaſt, and endowed with a wonderful ſagacity and ſenſe of ſmelling, inſomuch that he can directly wind the Fiſhes in the Waters a mile or two off.

The Fleſh of this Beaſt is both cold and filthy, becauſe it feedeth on ſtinking Fiſh, and therefore not fit to be eaten; yet it is eaten in *Germany*; and the *Carthuſian* Fryars, who are forbidden to eat all manner of Fleſh of other four-footed Beaſts, yet they are not prohibited to the eating of *Otters*. There are thoſe in *England*, who lately have highly valued an *Otter*-Pie, much good may do them with it.

Theſe *Otters* muſt be hunted by ſpecial *Dogs*, ſuch as are called *Otter* Hounds, and alſo with ſpecial Inſtrument called *Otter*-Spears. When they find themſelves wounded with a Spear, they then come to Land, where they fight with the *Dogs* furiouſly; and except they be firſt wounded, they forſake not the Water: for they are not ignorant how ſafe a refuge the Waters are unto them, and how unequal a combat they ſhall ſuſtain with Men and *Dogs* upon the Land: yet, becauſe the cold Water annoyeth their green Wounds, therefore they ſpin out their Lives to the length of the thread, chuſing rather to die in Torments among *Dogs*, than to die in the Waters.

The Food of an *Otter* (as I ſaid) is Fiſh; and her abode is commonly under the Root of ſome Tree near Rivers, Brooks, Pools, Meers, or Fiſh-ponds; and ſometimes ſhe will lie in a hollow Tree four or five foot above ground: and no Vermin can be more deſtructive to a Warren, than the *Otter* is to a Fiſh-pond, for ſhe diveth and hunteth under water after that moſt wonderful manner, that few Fiſh eſcape her, unleſs they are very ſwift and great.

An

An *Otter* and *Otter* grow fat much about the ſame time, and bring forth their young much after the ſame manner, neither having their conſtant number.

There is much craft and cunning in the Hunting them; yet with pains-taking you may enſnare them under the Water, and by River-ſides, as you may a *Hare* with *Hare*-pipes and ſuch like Gins. They bite ſore and venomouſly, and when occaſion ſerves they will defend themſelves ſtoutly. If after their enſnaring they chance to abide there long, they will ſoon enlarge themſelves with their teeth.

Theſe Creatures are footed like your water-Fowl, having a web between their claws, and have no heel, but a round ball under the ſoal of their feet: and their Track is called their *Mark*, as the Slot of a *Hart*, and their Excrements are called *Spraints*.

An *Otter* will not abide long in a place, for he is apt to be afraid and take diſtaſte, having an excellent Ear and Noſe, for hearing and ſmelling; and then he will forſake his Couch, and ſhift a mile or two up or down the River: and this he will do according as he finds ſcarcity of Fiſhing.

In Hunting of the *Otter* obſerve this, to ſend ſome to one ſide of the River whilſt you are on the other, and ſo beat on the Banks with your *Dogs*, and ſo you will ſoon find if there be an *Otter* in that quarter: for an *Otter* cannot endure long in the Water, but muſt come forth to make his Spraints, and in the Night ſometimes to feed on Graſs and ſuch Herbs as the Fields afford.

If any of the Hounds find out an *Otter*, then look in the ſoft grounds and moiſt places to ſee which way he bent his head; if the Marks make no diſcovery, you may partly perceive it by the Spraints, and ſo follow the Hounds, and lodge him as a *Hart* or *Deer*. If you find not the *Otter* quickly, you may then imagine he is gone to couch ſomewhere farther off from the River: for ſometimes he will ſeek his food a mile

from the place of his rest, chusing rather to go up the River then down, because upwards he meets with better scent of Fish; and bearing his Nose into the Wind, he shall the sooner find any fault that is above him.

Remember, in the Hunting of the *Otter*, that you and your Friends carry your *Otter*-Spears to watch his Vents, for that is the chief advantage: and if you perceive where the *Otter* swims under water, then strive to get to a stand before him where he would vent, and there endeavour to strike him with your Spear; but if you miss, pursue him with the Hounds, which if they be good *Otter*-Hounds, and perfectly entred, will come chaunting and trailing along by the River-side, and will beat every Tree-root, every Otter-bed and tuft of Bull-rushes; nay, sometimes they will take the Water, and beat it like a Spaniel. And by these means the *Otter* can hardly escape you.

Of the Squirrel.

THE first Author that ever wrote of this little Animal, was *Oppianus*, who liv'd in the days of *Antonius Cæsar*, and wrote a Book also of Hunting.

A *Squirrel* is greater in compass than a *Weasle*, but the latter is longer than the other; the back-parts and all the Body is reddish except the Belly, which is white. In *Helvetia* they are black and branded, and they are Hunted at the fall of the Leaf, when the Trees grow naked, for they run and leap from bough to bough in a most admirable and agile manner, and when the Leaves are on, they cannot so well be discerned. They are of three colours, in the first age black, in the second of a rusty Iron colour, and lastly, when old they are full of white-hoar Hairs. Their teeth are like the teeth of Mice, having the two under-teeth very long and sharp. Their

Tail is always as big as their Body, and it lieth continually on their Back when they ſleep or ſit ſtill, and it ſeemeth to be given them for a covering.

In the Summer-time they build them Neſts (which by ſome are called *Drays*) in the tops of the Trees very artificially with Sticks and Moſs, with other things the Woods afford, and then they fill it with Nuts for Winter-proviſion, and do ſleep like the *Alpine* Mouſe moſt part thereof very ſoundly, in ſuch ſort, that the beating of the outſide of their Drays will not wake them.

When they leap from Tree to Tree, they uſe their Tail inſtead of Wings, leaping a great diſtance, and are ſupported without ſinking to any ones appearance, nay, they will frequently leap from a very high Tree down to the ground, and receive no harm.

Many muſt go together to Hunt them, and muſt carry Dogs with them, and the fitteſt place for the exerciſe of this ſport, is in little and ſmall ſlender Woods, ſuch as may be ſhaken by the Hand. Bows are requiſite to remove them when they reſt in the twiſts of Trees, for they will not be much terrified with all the hollowing, except they be ſtruck now and then by one means or other. Well do they know what harbour a high Oak is unto them, and how ſecure they can lodge therein from Men and Dogs, wherefore ſince it is too troubleſom to climb every Tree, that labour muſt be ſupplied with Bows and Bolts, that when the *Squirrel* reſteth, preſently he may be thumpt by the blow of an Arrow; the Archer need not fear to do her much harm, except he hit her on the head, for by reaſon of a ſtrong back-bone, and fleſhy parts, ſhe will abide as great a ſtroak as a Dog.

If they be driven to the ground from the Trees, and they creep into Hedges, it is a ſign of their wearineſs, for ſuch is the lofty Mind of this little Beaſt, that while her ſtrength laſteth, ſhe ſaveth her ſelf in the tops of high trees, but being wearied ſhe deſcendeth, and falls into the mouths of the yelping Currs that attend her.

The admirable Wit of the *Squirrel* appeareth (if it be true) in her ſwimming, or paſſing over a River; for when Hunger conſtraineth her ſo to do, ſhe ſeeks out ſome rind or ſmall bark of a tree, which ſhe ſetteth upon the water, and then goeth into it, and holding up her Tail like a Sail, letteth the Wind drive her to the other ſide; and carry meat in their mouths, to prevent famine whatſoever ſhould befal them.

Of the Martern *and* Wild Cat.

A *Martern* is about the bigneſs of a Cat, having a longer body, but ſhorter legs, with head and tail like a *Fox*, its skin is commonly brown, white on the throat, and ſomewhat yellowiſh on the back.

Their teeth are exceeding white and unequal, being above meaſure ſharp, the canine teeth both above and below hang out very long.

This and the Wild Cat are a ſort of Vermin which we uſe here in *England* commonly to Hunt, and as neceſſary to be Hunted as any Vermin can be; For the queſtion may be doubtful, whether either *Fox* or *Badger* do more hurt than the Wild Cat doth, ſince there are ſo many Warrens every where throughout the Kingdom of *England* which are very much infeſted by the Wild Cat.

It is the Opinion of long-experienced Huntſmen, that ſhe leaveth as great ſcent, and maketh as good a Cry for the time as any Vermin that is Hunted, eſpecially the *Martern* paſſeth all other Vermin for ſweetneſs of ſcent, and her Caſe is a noble Furr. The Wild Cat's Caſe is not ſo good, but it is very warm, and medicinal for ſeveral Aches and Pains in the Bones and Joints: alſo her Greaſe is very good for Sinews that are ſhrunk.

Theſe

These two Chases are not to be sought purposely, unless the Huntsman do see them where they prey, and can go readily to them, but if a Hound chance to cross them, he will hunt it as soon as any Chase, and they make a noble Cry as long as they stand up, when they can do it no longer, they will take a tree, and so deceive the Hounds, but if the Hounds hold in to them, and will not give it over so, then they will leap from one Tree to another, and make great shift for their Lives, with much pastime to the Huntsman.

When they are killed, you must hold them upon a piked staff, and hollow in all your Hounds, and then reward them with some meat; for the Flesh of these Vermin is naught for Hounds.

A SHORT ACCOUNT

Of some particular BEASTS that are not Hunted in *England*, but in Foreign Countries.

The Nature and Properties of a Wolf, *and the manner of its Hunting.*

HEretofore I read that there were many *Wolves* in *England*, but now there are none, however, they are ſtill in *Ireland*, but their number is very much decreaſed within theſe thirty years; and that they may more and more decreaſe, being ſo pernicious to all ſorts of Cattel, I thought good to publiſh the nature and manner of their Hunting.

Firſt, as to their Nature: They go a Clicketting in *February*, and continue in that manner ten or twelve days. Where many *Wolves* are, many will follow one Bitch, as Dogs will follow a Bitch that is ſalt, but ſhe will be only lined with one.

A notable Story I have heard when I was in *Ireland*, and atteſted for a truth by the Inhabitants: That a Bitch *Wolf* proud, will ſuffer a great many of the Male to follow her, and will carry them after her ſometimes eight or ten days without Meat, Drink, or Reſt; and when they are ſo tired that they cannot travel farther, ſhe

she will first lie down, then will the rest follow her example; when she perceives that they are all asleep, and through weariness snore, then will she arise and awake that *Wolf* which she observed to follow her most, and having so done, entice him with her far from the rest, and suffer him to line her, the rest awaking and finding her missing, pursue her by the scent, and finding how she hath cunningly deluded them, they fall instantly on her Companion who hath been before-hand with them, and revenge themselves on him by depriving him of his life, which verifies the Proverb, *Never Wolf yet ever saw his Sire.*

Their Whelps are able to ingender at twelve months end, at which age they part with their Dam, that is, when those Teeth are grown which they cast the first half year, and being grown, they never shed them again: And here see their gratitude, (though bloody cruel Creatures) after they have preyed for themselves, if they chance to meet their Dam or Sire (for *Turberville* doth not believe the aforesaid Story) they will fawn upon them, and lick them, rejoycing at the sight of them.

The Dog will never bring any of his Prey to his Whelps till he hath filled his own Belly, whereas the Bitch will not eat a bit till she hath served them first, they go nine weeks with Whelp, and sometimes a little longer, and grow salt but once a year. As to number of Whelps, they have more or less as Dogs have, for doubtless both the *Wolf* and the *Fox* are but a kind of wild Mastiffs and wild Currs.

They prey upon all kind of things, and will feed on Carrion, Vermin, *&c.* They will kill a Cow or a Bullock, and as for a Sheep, Goat, or good Porket, they will roundly carry him off in their Mouths, not touching ground with it, and will run so fast away, notwithstanding the load, that they are hardly to be stopped but by Mastiffs or Horse-men. There is no Beast which runneth faster than the *Wolf*, and holdeth

wonder-

wonderfully alſo. When he is Hunted with Hounds, he flieth not far before them; and unleſs he be courſed with Grey hounds or Maſtiffs, he keepeth the Covert like the *Bear*, or *Boar*, and eſpecially the beaten ways therein. Night is the uſual time of his preying, though Hunger will force him to prey by day. They are more ſubtile and crafty (if more can be) than the *Fox* or any other Beaſt: When they are Hunted, they will take all their advantages, at other times they will never run over haſtily, but keep themſelves in breath and force always.

A *Wolf* will ſtand up a whole day before a good Kennel of Hounds, unleſs that Grey-hounds or Wolf-dogs courſe him. If he ſtand at bay, have a care of being bitten by him; for being then mad, the Wound is deſperate, and hard to be cured.

When a *Wolf* falls into a Flock of Sheep, with his good will he would kill them all before he feed upon any of them, and therefore all means ſhould be uſed to deſtroy them, as by Hunting at force, or with Grey hounds or Maſtiffs, or caught in Gins and Snares, but they had need be ſtrong. For encouragement to the meaner ſort in *Ireland*, whoſoever took a ſucking Whelp, or preying Cub, a Dog or a Birch *Wolf*, and brought the Heads of either to the next Juſtice of Peace, for reward for the firſt, he received twenty ſhillings; for the ſecond, forty; for the third, five pound; and for the laſt, ſix pounds: which late encouragement hath in a manner cleared that Kingdom of them.

They bark and howl like unto Dogs; and if there be but two of them together, they make ſuch a terrible hideous noiſe, that you would think there could be no leſs than twenty of them in a body.

When any one would Hunt the *Wolf*, he muſt train him by theſe means: Firſt, let him look out ſome fair place, a mile or more from the great Woods, where there is ſome cloſe ſtanding to place a brace of good Grey-

Grey-hounds in, if need be: the which ſhould be cloſely environed, and ſome Bough of Watch by it. There the hunt kill a Horſe that is worth little, and take the four Legs thereof, and carry them into the Woods and Foreſts adjoining; then let four Men take every Man a Leg of the Beaſt, and draw it at his Horſe-tail all along the Paths and Ways in the Woods, until they come back again to the place where the Carcaſe of the ſaid Beaſt lieth; there let them lay down their Trains. Now when the *Wolves* go out in the night to prey, they will follow the ſcent of the Train till they come to the Carcaſe where it lieth. Then let thoſe who love the Sport, with their Huntſmen come early and privately near the place, and if they are diſcernable as they are feeding, in the firſt place let them conſider which way will be the faireſt Courſe for the Grey-hounds, and place them accordingly, and as near as they can let them foreſtal with their Grey-hounds the ſame way that the *Wolves* did or are flying either then or the night before; but if the *Wolves* be in the Coverts near the Carrion that was laid for them to feed upon, then let there be Hewers ſet round the Coverts to make a noiſe on every ſide, but only that where the Grey-hounds do ſtand; and let them ſtand thick together, making what noiſe they can to force them to the Grey-hounds. Then let the Huntſman go with his Leam-hound, and draw from the Carrion to the Thickets ſides where the *Wolves* have gone in, and there the Huntſman ſhall caſt off the third part off their beſt Hounds; for a *Wolf* will ſometimes hold a Covert a long time before he will come out.

The Huntſmen muſt hold near in to the Hounds blowing hard, and encouraging them with their Voice: for many Hounds will ſtrain Courteſie at this Chaſe, although they are ſtrong and fit for all other Chaſes.

When

When the *Wolf* cometh to the Grey-hounds, they who hold them will do well to suffer the *Wolf* to pass by the first rank until he come further, and let the last rank let slip their Grey-hounds full in the face of the *Wolf*, and at the same instant let all the other ranks let slip also: so that the first rank staying him but ever so little, he may be assaulted on all sides at once, and by that means they shall the more easily take him.

It is best entring of Hounds at young *Wolves* which are not yet past half a year or a year old, for a Hound will Hunt such more willing, and with less fear than an old *Wolf*, or you may take *Wolves* alive in Engines, and breaking their Teeth, enter your Hounds at them.

A Man may know a Dog *Wolf* from a Bitch by the tracks of his feet, for the Dog hath a greater Heel, a greater Toe, greater Nails, and a rounder Foot. Besides, the Bitch casteth her Flaunts commonly in the midst of an High-way, whereas the Dog casteth them either on the one side or the other of the Path.

The Reward of the Dogs is thus: when they have bit and shaked the dead *Wolf*, let the Huntsman then open his Belly streight along, and taking out his Bowels, let him throw in Bread, Cheese, and other Scraps, and so let the Dogs feed therein.

Wild-

Wild-Goat *Hunting.*

I Never could read or hear, that there was ever any ſuch Chaſe in *England*, as the Hunting of the *Wild-Goat*: But ſince there may be ſuch Sport in *Wales*, as there hath been elſewhere, it will not be much amiſs to give ſome ſhort account thereof.

The *Wild-Goat* is as big as a *Hart*, but not ſo long, or ſo long-legg'd, but is as fleſhy. They have Wreaths and Wrinkles on their Horns, which declare what their Age is: For according to the quantity of the Wreaths, ſuch is the number of their Years; which Wreaths he meweth, but not his Beam, the which may be, if he be an old *Goat*, as big as a Man's Leg.

They have a great long Beard, and are of a brownish grey colour very ſhaggy, having a long black Liſt down the ridge of the Back, and the Track is bigger than the Slot of a *Hart*.

They fawn as a *Hind* or *Doe* in *May*, and have but one Fawn, which they ſuckle and bring up as the tame *Goat* doth her Kid.

They feed like *Deer*, only they will eat beſides Ivy, Moſs, and ſuch like. In the Spring they make their Fumets round, and afterwards broad and flat, as the *Hart* when he comes to feed well.

They go to rut about *Alhallontide*, and continue therein a Month or five Weeks; that Seaſon being over, they deſcend from the Mountains and Rocks, their abode for the Summer Seaſon, and herd themſelves, not only to avoid the Snow, but becauſe they can find no Food any longer; and yet they come not very low, but keep at the foot of the Mountains, feeding there till *Eaſter*; then they return again, every one chuſing ſome ſtrong Hold in the Rocks, as the *Harts* in the Thickets.

About Fawning-time the Females ſeparate from the Males, attending till Rutting-time: In this Interval they will run at Man or Beaſt, and fight as *Harts* do one amongſt the other.

When he goeth to rut, his Throat and Neck is much bigger than uſual: He is very ſtrong backt; and (which is wonderful) though he ſhould fall from on high ten Poles length, he will receive no harm; and will walk as ſecurely on the ſharp tops of Rocks, as a Horſe in the High-way.

Alhallontide is the chiefeſt Seaſon for Hunting theſe Wild-*Goats*, obſerving very well before you Hunt, the advantages of the Coults, the Rocks and Places where the *Goats* do lie.

Having thus done, ſet Nets and Toils toward the Rivers and Bottoms; for you cannot expect your Hounds ſhould follow a *Goat* down every place of the Mountains.

Alſo it will be needful that ſome ſtand on the top of the Rocks, and throw down Stones as they ſee occaſion. Where the *Goat* goeth down to the ſmall Brooks or Waters in the Bottom, there place your Relays, and let the Relays never tarry till the Hounds come in which were caſt off: and this is your beſt Help; for a Man can neither follow on foot nor Horſeback.

Hunt-

Hunting of the Wild Boar.

THE *Boar* is ever pigg'd with as many Teeth at firſt as he ſhall have ever after, which will only increaſe in bigneſs, not number. Amongſt the reſt, they have four which are called *Tuſhes* or *Tusks*, whereof the two biggeſt do not hurt when he ſtrikes, but ſerve only to whet the other two loweſt, with which they frequently kill.

They feed upon all kind of Corn and Fruits which they can come at; alſo Roots. In *April* and *May* they feed on the Buds of Plumb-trees, and Cheſnut-trees, and all other ſweet Buds they can find, eſpecially on the Buds of Broom and Juniper, and are never meaſled, as our tame Swine. Being near the Sea-coaſt, they will feed on all manner of Shell-fiſh.

Their Seaſon beginneth in the midſt of *September*, and endeth about the beginning of *December*, at which time they go a *Brimming*. A *Boar* will commonly abide the Bay before he goes out of his Den; and he lies moſt commonly in the ſtrongeſt Holds of Thorns and thick Buſhes.

If it ſo chance that there is a Sounder of them together, then if any break founder, the reſt will run that way: and if you hunt a *Boar* from a thick and ſtrong Covert, he will not fail to go back by the ſame way he came thither: and when he is rear'd he never ſtays, but flies coutinually till he comes to the place where he was farrow'd and brought up. This Mr. *Turbervile* obſerved himſelf when he was in *France*; atteſting he ſaw a *Boar* hunted from a Thicket, which returned the ſame way he came to the place of his farrowing, which was diſtant ſeven *French* Leagues. And this was performed by the track of his Feet.

If he be hunted in a Foreſt or Hold where he was bred, he will hardly be forced out of it. Sometimes he will take head, and ſeem to go out, and will draw to the Outſides of the Wood; but it is only to hearken to every ſide; and if he hear the noiſe of the Hounds, then will he return, and will not be compell'd to go that way till night. But having broken out of a Foreſt, and taken head end-ways, he will not be put out of his way, either by Man, Dog, Voice, Blowing, or any thing.

A *Boar*, eſpecially a great one, will not cry when you kill him: The Sows and young Swine will ſometimes.

Terms to be uſed in Boar-*hunting.*

If it ſhould be demanded what you will call a *Boar* of three years old; you may anſwer, He is a *young Boar which hath lately left the Sounder*. An old *Boar* you muſt call a *Singular*, or *Sanglier, that hath left the Sounder four or five years ſince*. In making of a report, if you are asked where the *Boar* fed the night before, you may ſay, he *fed* in the Corn; but if in the Fields or Meadows, you muſt then ſay, he hath been *routing* and *worming* in ſuch a place, or ſuch a Fern field. Where note, that whatſoever he feeds on, excepting Roots, is called *feeding*; the other is called *routing*, *worming*, or *fearning*: But when he feedeth and routeth not, you muſt then call that *graſing*.

Boar *Hunting with Hounds at Force.*

Be adviſed not to Hunt a young *Boar* of three years old at force; for he will ſtand up as long, if not longer than any light young *Deer* which beareth but three in the top; but in the fourth year you may hunt him at force, as you do a *Hart* at ten.

In

In the rearing of your *Boar*, you need not be afraid to come near him, for he values you not, and will lie ſtill, and will not be rear'd by you alone.

Here note, that if a *Boar* intend not to bide in his Den, Couch, or Fort, then will he make ſome croſſing or doubling at the entry thereof, upon ſome High way or beaten Path; by ſuch means a Huntſman, being early in the Woods, may judge of the Subtilty of the *Boar*, and accordingly may make preparations for his Game.

If he be a great *Boar*, and one that hath lain long to reſt, let him hunt him with good ſtore of Hounds, and ſuch as will ſtick cloſe to him; and let him on Horſe-back be ever amongſt them, charging the *Boar*, to diſcourage him: For if you hunt ſuch a *Boar* with half a dozen Couple of Dogs, he will not value them; and they having chaſed him, he will take courage and keep them ſtill at bays, running upon any thing he ſeeth before him. But if he be charged home, and hard laid unto, with the Hounds, he will turn head and fly.

If you ſtrike at him with your Sword or *Boar*-ſpear, ſtrike not low, for then you will hit him on the Snout, which he little values; for he watcheth to take blows upon his Tusks, or thereabouts: But lifting up your Hand, ſtrike right down, and have a ſpecial care of your Horſe; for if you ſtrike and hurt him, ſo will he you, if he can.

It behoveth the Hunters of *Boars* to be very wary; for he will run fiercely without fear upon his Purſuers; in which Encounter, if he receive not his Death's Wound, he overthroweth his Adverſary, except he fall flat on the Ground, and then he need not fear much harm; for his Teeth cannot cut upward, but downward: But it is otherwiſe with a Female; for ſhe will bite and tear any way.

It is good to raiſe this Beaſt early in the morning before he hrth made water, for the burning of his Bladder doth quickly make him weary.

When the *Boar* is firſt raiſed out of the Wood, he ſnuffeth in the Wind, lifting up his Noſe to ſmell what is with him, and what againſt him; and rarely ſtrikes a Man till he be firſt wounded himſelf.

The Hunting ſpear muſt be very ſharp and broad, branching forth into certain Forks, ſo that the *Boar* may not break through them upon the Huntſman: The beſt places to wound him in therewith, are the middle of his Forehead betwixt his Eye-lids, or elſe upon the Shoulder; either of theſe Wounds is mortal.

If the *Boar* make head againſt the Hunter, he muſt not fly for it, but muſt meet him with his Spear, holding one Hand on the middle of it, and the other at the end, ſtanding one Foot before another, having an eſpecial eye to the Head of the Beaſt, which way ſoever he windeth or turneth the ſame: For ſuch is the nature of the *Boar*, that ſometimes he ſnatcheth the Spear out of their hands, or elſe recoileth the force back again upon the Hunter, by both which means he is in great danger of Life: Whenſoever this hapneth there is but one remedy, which is; another of his Companions muſt come and charge the *Boar* with his Spear, and then pretend to wound him with his Dart, but not caſting it, for fear of hurting the Hunter. The *Boar* ſeeing this, forſaketh the firſt Man, and ruſheth upon the ſecond, who muſt look to defend himſelf with all dexterity, compoſing his Body, and ordering his Weapons according to artificial *Boar* hunting: In the mean time he that was overthrown muſt riſe again, taking freſh hold on his Spear, and with all courage aſſault his Adverſary, and aſſiſt his Friend, who was the cauſe of the ſaving of his Life.

When he feeleth himſelf ſo wounded that he cannot live, were it not for the Forks of the *Boar*-ſpear, he would

would preſs it on his Vanquiſher, and ſo revenge his Death: For ſuch is the Fury of this Beaſt, that he will endeavour to wound and kill, although he feel upon him the Pangs of Death; and what place ſoever he biteth, whether Man or Dog, the Heat of his Teeth cauſeth the Wound to be inflam'd: And for this cauſe, if he but touch the Hair of a Dog, he burneth it off: Nay, Huntſmen have tried the Heat of his Teeth, by laying Hairs on them as ſoon as he was dead, and they have ſhrivel'd up as with a hot Iron.

To conclude, the ſame Devices, Diligence, Labour, Proſecution, and Obſervations, are to be uſed in the hunting of the *Boar*, which are preſcribed for the hunting of the *Hart*. Not but that there are ſeveral Policies and Stratagems which have been invented, and are ſtill uſed in ſeveral Countries, whereby to take them without the purſuit of Dogs; for the knowledge whereof I ſhall refer the Reader to *Blondus*, *Oppianus*, *Geſner*, *Turberville*, and many others both antient and modern Writers, who have largely treated on this Subject.

Of the Nature and Properties of a Bear, *and after what manner Hunted.*

THere are two ſorts of *Bears*, a greater and leſſer; the laſt is more apt to climb Trees than the other.

Bears are bred in many Countries; in the *Helvetian Alpine* Region they are ſo ſtrong and courageous, that they can tear in pieces both Oxen and Horſes; for which cauſe the Inhabitants are ſtudiouſly laborious in the taking them.

A *Bear* is of a moſt venereous and luſtful diſpoſition; for night and day the Females with moſt ardent inflam'd deſires, do provoke the Males to copulation; and

for this cauſe at that time they are moſt fierce and angry. The time of their Copulation is in the beginning of Winter, and the manner of it is like to a Man's; the Male moving himſelf upon the Belly of the Female, which lieth flat on her Back, and they embrace each other with their Fore-feet: They remain a very long time in that Act; inſomuch (as ſome have obſerved, how true I cannot ſay) that if they were very fat at their firſt entrance, they diſ-join not themſelves again till they be lean.

There is a ſtrange Report in Hiſtory (if it be true) That in the Mountains of *Savoy* a *Bear* carried a young Maid into his Den by violence, where in a venereal manner he had the carnal uſe of her Body; and while he kept her in his Den, he daily went forth and brought her the beſt Fruits he could get, preſenting them to her as Food, as courtly as he could do it; but always when he went to forrage, he rowled a very great Stone to the Mouth of his Den, that the Virgin ſhould not make her eſcape from him: At length her Parents, with long ſearch, found their Daughter in the *Bear*'s Den, who delivered her from that beſtial Captivity.

They are naturally very cruel and miſchievous unto all tame Beaſts, and are very ſtrong in all Parts of their Body but their Head, whereon a ſmall Blow will kill them.

They go to mate in the beginning of the Winter, ſome ſooner, ſome later, according to their reſt and feeding; and their Heat laſteth not paſſing fifteen days.

When the She *Bear* perceiveth her ſelf with Whelp, ſhe withdraws her ſelf into ſome Cave, or hollow Rock, and there remains till ſhe brings forth her Whelps, where without Meat they grow very fat, eſpecially the Males, only by ſucking their Fore-feet. When they enter into their Den, they convey themſelves backward, that ſo they may put out their Foot-ſteps from the ſight of the Hunters.

The

The nature of all of them is to avoid Cold, and therefore in the Winter time they hide themſelves, chuſing rather to ſuffer Famine than Cold; lying for the moſt part three or four Months together, and never ſee the Light, whereby in a manner their Guts are clung together: coming forth, they are ſo dazled by long darkneſs, being in the light again, that they ſtagger and reel to and fro; and then by a ſecret Inſtinct they remedy the ſtraightneſs of their Guts by eating an Herb called *Arum*, in Engliſh *Wake-robin* or *Calves-foot*, by the acidity whereof their Guts are enlarged; and being recovered, they reman more fierce and cruel than at other times, during the time their Young are with them: And this is the Herb, ſome ſay, which they eat to make them ſleep ſo long in Winter without ſenſe of Cold or Hunger.

They are Whelped moſt commonly in *March*, ſometimes two, and not above five in number; the moſt part of them are dead one whole day after they are whelped; but the Bear doth ſo lick them and warm them with her Breath, and hug them in her Boſom, that ſhe quickly revives them again.

It is commonly received as a truth (though it be a palpable vulgar Error) *That the Whelps of* Bears *at their firſt Littering are without all form and faſhion, and nothing but a little congealed Blood like a Lump of Fleſh, which afterwards the Old one frameth with her Tongue by licking them to her own like.* This Opinion may be eaſily diſproved; for they are only littered blind without Hair, and the hinder Legs not perfect, the fore-Feet folded up like a Fiſt, and other Members deformed, by reaſon of the immoderate Humour or Moiſtneſs in them; which alſo is one cauſe why ſhe cannot retain in her Womb the Seed to the perfection of the Young ones, whereof *Joachimus Rheticus* is an Eye-witneſs.

As ſoon as the Dam perceiveth her Cubs to grow ſtrong, ſhe ſuckleth them no longer, by reaſon of their curſt-

curſtneſs; for they will ſurely bite her, if they cannot get ſuck enough. After this ſhe preyeth abroad upon any thing ſhe can meet with, which ſhe eats, and caſts up again to her Young ones, and ſo feeds them till they can prey for themſelves: They will climb a Tree for the Fruit.

If they be Hunted, they will follow a Man, but not run upon him, unleſs they are wounded. They are very ſtrong in their Paws, in ſuch ſort, that they will ſo hug a Man or Dog till they have broke his Back, or ſqueez'd his Guts out of his Belly: With a ſingle Paw they will pull a luſty Dog to their tearing and devouring Mouth. They bite very ſeverely; for they will bite a Man's Head to the very Brains; and for an Arm or Leg, they will cruſh it as a Dog may do a ſlender Bone of Mutton.

When they are hunted, they are ſo heavy, that they make no ſpeed, and ſo are always in ſight of the Dogs: They ſtand not at bay as a *Boar*, but fly wallowing; but if the Hounds ſtick in, they will fight valiantly in their own defence; ſometimes they ſtand up ſtreight on their hinder Feet, and then take that as a ſign of Fear and Cowardize; they fight ſtouteſt and ſtrongeſt on all four.

They have an excellent ſcent, and ſmell farther off than any other Beaſt except the *Boar*; for in a whole Foreſt they will ſmell out a Tree laden with Maſt.

They may be hunted with Hounds, Maſtiffs, or Grey-hounds; and they are chaſed and killed with Bows, *Boar*-ſpears, Darts, and Swords; ſo they are alſo taken in Snares, Caves, Pits, with other Engines.

They do naturally abide in great Mountains; but when it ſnoweth, or in hard Weather, then they deſcend into Valleys and Foreſts for Proviſion. They caſt their Leſſes ſometimes in round Croteys, and ſometimes flat like a Bullock, according to their Feeding.

They go ſometimes a gallop, and at other times an amble; but they go moſt at eaſe when they wallow.

When

When they come from their feeding, they beat commonly the High-ways and beaten Paths; and wheresoever they go out of the High-ways, there you may be sure they are gone to their Dens; for they use no Doublings nor Subtilties.

They tumble and wallow in Water and Mire as Swine, and they feed like a Dog. Some say their Flesh is very good Food, let who will eat it for me, who are not so nicely palated as my self.

The best finding of a *Bear* is with a lame Hound; and yet he who is without one may trail after a *Bear* as we do after a *Buck* or *Roe*, and you may lodge and hunt them as you do a *Buck*. For the more speedy execution, mingle Mastiffs among your Hounds; for they will pinch the Bear, and so provoke her to anger, until at last they bring her to the bay, or else drive her out of the Plain into the Covert, not letting her be at rest till she fight in her own defence.

Of the Beaver.

A *Beaver* differeth but a little from an *Otter* but in his Tail: His Colour is somewhat yellow and white, aspersed with ash-colour, which stand out beyond the shorter Hairs, double their length, and are neat and soft like an *Otter*'s.

There is plenty of them in the River *Pontus*, whence the *Beaver* by some is called *Canis Ponticus*: They are also bred in *Spain*, some few in *France*, *Germany*, *Polonia*, *Sclavonia*, *Russia*, *Prussia*, *Lithuania*, and abundance of them in *New England*.

These Beasts are amphibious, living both on Land and Water, both fresh and salt, keeping the last in the day-time, and the first in the night: Without Water they cannot live; for they participate much of the nature of Fish, which may be gathered from their Tails and hinder Legs.

They

They are about the bigneſs of a Country Cur; their Head ſhort; their Ears ſmall and round; their Teeth very long; the under Teeth ſtanding out beyond their Lips three Fingers breadth, and the upper about half a Finger, being very broad, crooked, ſtrong, and ſharp, ſtanding very deep in their Mouth, wherewith they defend themſelves againſt Beaſts, take Fiſhes as it were upon Hooks, and will gnaw in ſunder Trees as big as a Man's Thigh.

Their fore Feet are like Dogs, and their hinder like Geeſe, made as it were on purpoſe to go on the Land, and ſwim in the Water; but the Tail of this Beaſt is moſt ſtrange of all, being without Hair, and covered over with a Skin like the Scales of a Fiſh, it being like a Soal, and for the moſt part ſix Fingers broad, and half a Foot long. They are accounted a very delicate Diſh, and eat like Barbels: The manner of their dreſſing is by roaſting them firſt, and boiling or ſtewing them afterwards; they muſt be Food that is very ſweet, ſince this Proverb proceeded from them: *Sweet is that Fiſh which is no Fiſh at all.*

As for the wonderful manner of their Building, I ſhall let that alone, ſince it is at large deſcribed by *Geſner* in his *Hiſtory of Beaſts*, pag. 36.

There is nothing ſo valuable in this Beaſt as his Stones; for they are in great eſteem, and a precious Commodity.

It hath been the opinion of ſome, that when a *Beaver* is hunted, and is in danger to be taken, he biteth off his own Stones, knowing that for them only is he thus purſued: But this is found to be a meer Fiction; for their Stones being ſmall, and placed like a *Boar*'s, it is impoſſible for them to come at them.

They are taken for their Skins, Tails, and Cods, and that many ways. Firſt, when their Caves are found; (in which are ſeveral Chambers built one over another by the Water-ſide, to aſcend or deſcend according as the Water riſeth or falleth) I ſay, their abode being found,

found, they make a breach therein, wherein is put a little Dog, which the *Beaver* perceiving, flies instantly to the end of her Cave, and there defendeth herself with her Teeth, till all her Building be raised, and she laid open to her Enemies, who kill her with Instruments for that purpose. These Dogs for the *Beaver* are the same which hunt *Otters*.

They cannot dive long time under water, but must put up their Heads for breath; which being seen by those who are hunting them, they kill them with Gunshot or *Otter* Spears: His nature is, if he hear any Noise, to put up his Head above water, whereby he is discovered, and so loseth Life. Those Skins are best which are blackest.

Of the Elk.

THis Beast is twice as big as a *Hart*, whose upper Lip is so great, and hangeth over the nether so far, that he cannot eat going forward; but as he eateth he goeth backward, and so gathereth up his Sustenance.

His Mane is divers both on the top of his Neck, and underneath his Throat, which buncheth like a Beard, or curled Lock of Hair: his Neck is very short, disproportionable to his Body.

He hath two very large Horns bending towards the Back in a plain edge, and the Spires stand forward to the Face: Both Males and Females have them; they are solid at the root, and round, but afterwards branched; they are broader than a *Hart*'s, and are very heavy, being not above two foot long; and these Horns they mew every Year: He is coloured for the most part like a *Hart*, and hath cloven Feet, but without Joints (like an Elephant) in his fore Legs, and therefore sleepeth leaning to Posts or Trees; and fighteth not with his Horns, but fore Feet.

It

It is a moſt timerous Creature, not deſiring to ſtir much, unleſs provoked thereunto by Hunting. There is no danger in hunting this Beaſt, except a Man come right before him: For if this Beaſt faſten his Fore-feet on him, he cannot eſcape alive: but if it receive any ſmall Wound, it inſtantly dies.

They are taken by Nets and Toils, or as Elephants are taken: for when they have found the Trees whereunto they lean, they ſo cut and ſaw them, that when the *Elk* cometh, he overthroweth the Tree, and falleth with it, and being not able to riſe, is ſo taken alive. When they are chaſed eagerly, and can find no place to reſt themſelves, and lie ſecret, they run to the Waters, and therein ſtand, taking up Waters into their Mouths, and in a little time do ſo heat it, that ſquirting it upon the Dogs, the Heat thereof ſo ſcaldeth them, that they dare not come nigh or approach them any more.

Many more exotick Beaſts I might here inſert, deſcribing their Natures, and the manner of their foreign Hunting: but ſince they are not to be found in *England*, let theſe ſuffice which I have already deſcribed.

DOGS

DOGS Diſeaſes Remedied, and their Hurts Healed;

According to the beſt Preſcriptions of Antient and Modern Huntſmen.

Of a Fivefold Madneſs in a Dog; *the Symptoms of the Maladies, and their Cure.*

THE Antients have derived *Rabies*, Madneſs, from *Ravies* Hoarſneſs of Voice, for mad Dogs have no perfect Voice: But it is more probable, that *Rabies* cometh *a Rapiendo*; becauſe when a Dog beginneth to go mad, he biteth, runneth, ſnatcheth, and roves to and fro, to his own perdition. A mad Dog is moſt dangerous in the Dog-days; for at that time the very Foam or Spittle falling on a Man, breeds danger.

There are properly ſeven ſorts of Madneſſes which afflict a Dog, whereof two of them are incurable, and therefore I ſhall ſpeak little of them, only ſo much as may give you warning to ſhift them from your other Dogs, becauſe their Diſeaſe is infectious; and that you may beware of them your ſelf, leſt they injure you; for their biting is dangerous.

The firſt of theſe incurable Madneſſes is called the *Hot burning Madneſs*, and is known by theſe Symptomes: Firſt, when they run they raiſe their Tails bolt upright, and run upon any thing that ſtands before them, having no reſpect where nor which way they run:

run: Alſo their Mouths will be very black, having no Foam in or about them. They will not continue thus above three or four days, after which time they die, their Pain being ſo intolerable. Where note, that all thoſe Dogs they have bitten and drew Blood from, will be mad in like manner.

The ſecond is called the *running Madneſs*, and is leſs dangerous, however incurable. The Dogs that are troubled with this Madneſs run not on Men, but Dogs, and no other Beaſts. The Symptoms are, they will ſmell on other Dogs, and having ſmelt them, will ſhake and bite them, yet ſhaking their Tails, and ſeeming to offer no harm; with other tokens I omit for brevity ſake.

Of the Dumb Madneſs.

The five Madneſſes (or rather Sickneſſes) which are curable, are theſe:

The firſt is called the *Dumb Madneſs*, and is thus known: The Dog that is troubled therewith will not feed, but hold his Mouth wide open continually, putting his Feet to his Mouth frequently, as if he had a Bone in his Throat.

The Cure is thus: Take four Ounces of the Juice of *Spathula putrida*, and put it into a Pot; then take the like quantity of the Juice of black Hellebore, and as much of the Juice of Rue: having ſtrained them all well thro' a fine Cloth, put them into a Glaſs: Then take two drams of Scammony unprepared, and having mingled it with the former Juices, put it into a Horn or Funnel, and convey it down his Throat, keeping his Head up ſtreight, leſt he caſt it up again: Then bleed him in the Mouth, cutting three or four Veins in his Gums that he may bleed the better; and in a ſhort time you will find amendment. Or you may only take eight drams of the Juice of an Herb called Hartſhorn, or Dogs-tooth, and you will find it a moſt excellent Receipt againſt any Madneſs whatſoever.

Of

Of the Falling *Madneſs.*

The ſecond is called the *Falling* Madneſs: the diſeaſe lieth in their Heads, which maketh them reel as they go, and fall.

The cure is thus: Take four ounces of the juice of Piony, with the like quantity of the juice of Briony, the like of the juice of *Cruciata*, and four drams of Staveſacre pulverized, mingle theſe together, and give it your Hound or Dog as aforeſaid, then let him blood in the ears, or the two veins which come down the ſhoulders, and if he is not cured at firſt, give him a ſecond or third time.

Of the Lank *Madneſs.*

The third kind of Madneſs is called the *Lank* Madneſs, by reaſon of the leanneſs of their bodies, occaſioned by *ſkummering*.

The cure is thus: Firſt, purge your Dog with this potion: Take an ounce and a half of *Caſſia fiſtularis* well cleanſed, two drams and a half of Staveſacre pulverized, and the like quantity of Scammony prepared in White-wine vinegar, and four ounces of Oil-olive, temper theſe, and warm them over the fire, and give it your Dog. In the morning put him into this bath faſting as followeth: Put into ſix pails full of water ten handfuls of Mugworth, of Roſemary, of red Sage, of the roots or leaves of Marſh-mallows, of the roots or leaves of Wall-wort, of the roots or ſtalks of Fennel, of the leaves or ſtalks of Elecampane, Bawm, and Rue, Sorrel, Bugloſs, and Melilot, let theſe boil together in two thirds of Water and the other Wine, until one third be conſumed, the bath being no hotter than your Dog can endure it, bathe him therein for the ſpace of an hour, then taking him out, put him in ſome warm place for fear of catching cold. Do this four or five times in the ſame bath, and it will cure.

Of the Sleeping *Madness.*

The fourth Madness is called the *Sleeping* Madness, and is caused by some little Worms breeding in the mouth of the Stomach from corrupt Humours, the vapours and fumes whereof ascending into the Head, make the Dog sleep continually, and frequently he dieth sleeping.

For the cure, you must take five ounces of the juice of Worm-wood, with two ounces of the pouder of Hartshorn burned, and two drams of Agarick: mingle these together, and if they be too thick, thin them with White-wine, and give it your Dog to drink.

Of the Rheumatick *or* Slavering *Madness.*

This Madness is called so, because when a Dog hath got it, his head swelleth, his eyes are as yellow as a Kites foot, and he commonly slaverth at the mouth.

The Cure is thus: Take six ounces of the juice of Fennel-roots, and the like quantity of the juice of Misseltoe, four ounces of the juice of Ivy, four ounces of the pouder of the roots of Polypody, boil these in White-wine, and give it your Dog to drink as hot as he can suffer it.

Here note, that when a Dog hath any of these kinds of Madnesses, he will have no desire to eat, fasting frequently eight or nine days, and so starving to death. Nay, if they are troubled with any distemper, they will refuse their meat, nay, the daintiest bit you can give them, until they have eaten grass, and have cleared their stomach of what did offend it, and then they will eat.

Concerning the Madness of Dogs, *and their Venomous Bitings.*

I think no reasonable Man ought to question why the teeth of a mad Dog should do more harm than those of a sound one, because in rage and anger the teeth of every Beast and Creature receive venom and poison from the

the Head, whereby when they bite at that time they do much more harm.

Against the simple biting of a Dog, take the urine of a Dog, which is sufficient, since there is but little venom in those wounds. To lay the hair of the same Dog thereon (tho' so much talkt on) I look upon as a meer foppery. Or being bit by a Dog, take vinegar, and with your hand rub the wound very well, then pour into it vinegar mixed with water or nitre, then wet a spunge in the same liquids, and so let it remain bound up three days then take Pellitory of the wall, mingled and beaten with salt, or any other plaister for green wounds.

Divers are the cures and remedies for biting of mad Dogs, which I omit in this place, as belonging not to my subject, but to Physick.

A Remedy against the common Mange.

This distemper befals a Dog frequently for want of fresh water to drink when he desires it, and sometimes by foul kennelling, and sometimes by foundering and melting his grease.

You may cure it in this manner: Take two handfuls of wild Cresses, two handfuls of Elecampane, and as much of the leaves and roots of Rhoerb and Sorrel, and two pound of the roots of Frodels, make them all boil well in ley and Vinegar: having strained the decoction, put therein two pound of grey soap, and when it is melted therein, then rub your Dogs with it four or five days together, and it will cure them.

A brief Discourse of the Cure of Maladies belonging to Spaniels, *with other Accidents happening.*

HOw necessary a thing a *Spaniel* is to Faulconry, and for those that delight in that noble Recreation, keeping Hawks for their pastimes and pleasure, I think no body need question, as well to spring and retrieve a

fowl being flown to the mark, as alſo divers other ways to help and aſſiſt Faulcons and Goſhawks.

Now ſince they are ſubject to many diſeaſes and caſualties, I ſhall endeavour to propound a ſuitable cure for them, and firſt, I ſhall begin with the Mange, as the capital enemy to the quiet and beauty of a brave *Spaniel*, wherewith, poor creatures, they are often grievouſly tormented, and as frequently infect others.

For the cure of this diſtemper, take a pound of Barrow ſlick, common Oil three ounces, Brimſtone well pulverized four ounces, Salt well beaten to pouder, Aſhes well ſifted and ſearched, of each two ounces, boil all theſe in a kettle or earthen-pot, and when they are all well incorporated together, anoint you *Spaniel* with this thrice every other day, either againſt the Sun or Fire, having ſo done, waſh him all over with good ſtrong Ley, and this will kill the Mange. Remember you ſhift his kennel and litter often.

If the *Spaniel* loſe its Hair, as it often happens, then bathe your *Spaniel* in the water of Lupines or Hops, and anoint him with ſtale Barrows ſlick.

This ointment, beſides the cure, maketh his skin look ſlick and beautiful, and kills the fleas, the Dogs diſquieters, and enemies to his eaſe.

If this be not ſtrong enough to deſtroy this malady, then take two quarts of ſtrong vinegar, common oil ſix ounces, brimſtone three ounces, ſoot ſix ounces, braid ſalt and ſearced two handfuls, boil all theſe together in the vinegar, and anoint your Dog as aforeſaid. This receipt muſt not be adminiſtred in cold weather, for it may hazard his life in ſo doing.

If a *Spaniel* be not ſo much troubled with the Mange, then it is eaſie to cure him thus:

Make bread with wheaten-bran, with the roots, leaves and fruit of Agrimony, beating them well in a mortar, and making it into a paſte or dough, bake it in an oven, and ſo made, give thereof to your *Spaniel*, giving him no other bread for ſome time, letting him eat as long as he will.

Cure

Cure of the Formica.

In the Summer-time there is a ſcurvy malady which very much afflicts a *Spaniels* ears, and is occaſioned by flies, and their own ſcratching with their feet: We term it a *Mange*, the *Italians Formica*, and the *French Fourmier*.

For the cure, take Gum-tragaganth four ounces, infuſed in the ſtrongeſt vinegar may be gotten, for the ſpace of eight days, and afterwards bruiſed on a marble ſtone, as Painters do their colours, adding unto it Roch-Allum and Galls beaten to pouder, of either two ounces, mingle all theſe well together, and lay it on the place afflicted.

For Swelling in the Throat.

By reaſon of a Humour diſtilling from the Brain, the throat of a *Spaniel* will often ſwell unreaſonably: For cure whereof, anoint the grieved place with oil of Camomil, then waſh it with vinegar not over-ſtrong mixed with ſalt. *Probatum eſt.*

Of Worms breeding in the Hurts and Mangy parts of a Spaniel.

Theſe Worms do hinder the cure of the Mange or Wounds, cauſing them to continue at one ſtay, or to grow worſe and worſe. To remove this hindrance, take the gum of Ivy and convey it into the Wound, and let it there remain a day or two, waſhing the Wound with Wine, and after that anoint it with Bacon-greaſe, oil of Earth-worms, and Rue.

The pouder of wild Cucumbers is excellent good to kill theſe Worms, and will prove a good corroſive, alſo eating away the dead fleſh, and encreaſing the good.

If the Worms be within the Body, you muſt deſtroy them in this manner: Cauſe your *Spaniel*, by fair means or foul, when faſting, to eat the yolk of an egg with two ſcruples of ſaffron pulverized and confected with the ſame egg, keeping him after it faſting till night.

When a *Spaniel* is hurt, as long as he can come to lick the Wound with his tongue, he needs no other remedy, his tongue is his beſt Chirurgeon, but when he cannot do that, then ſuch wounds as are not venomous, you may cure with the pouder of *Matreſilva* dried in an oven, or in the Sun. If it be a bite of a *Fox*, anoint it with oil wherein Earthworms and Rue have been boiled together. If by a mad Dog, let him lap twice or thrice of the broth of Germander, and eat the Germander too boiled.

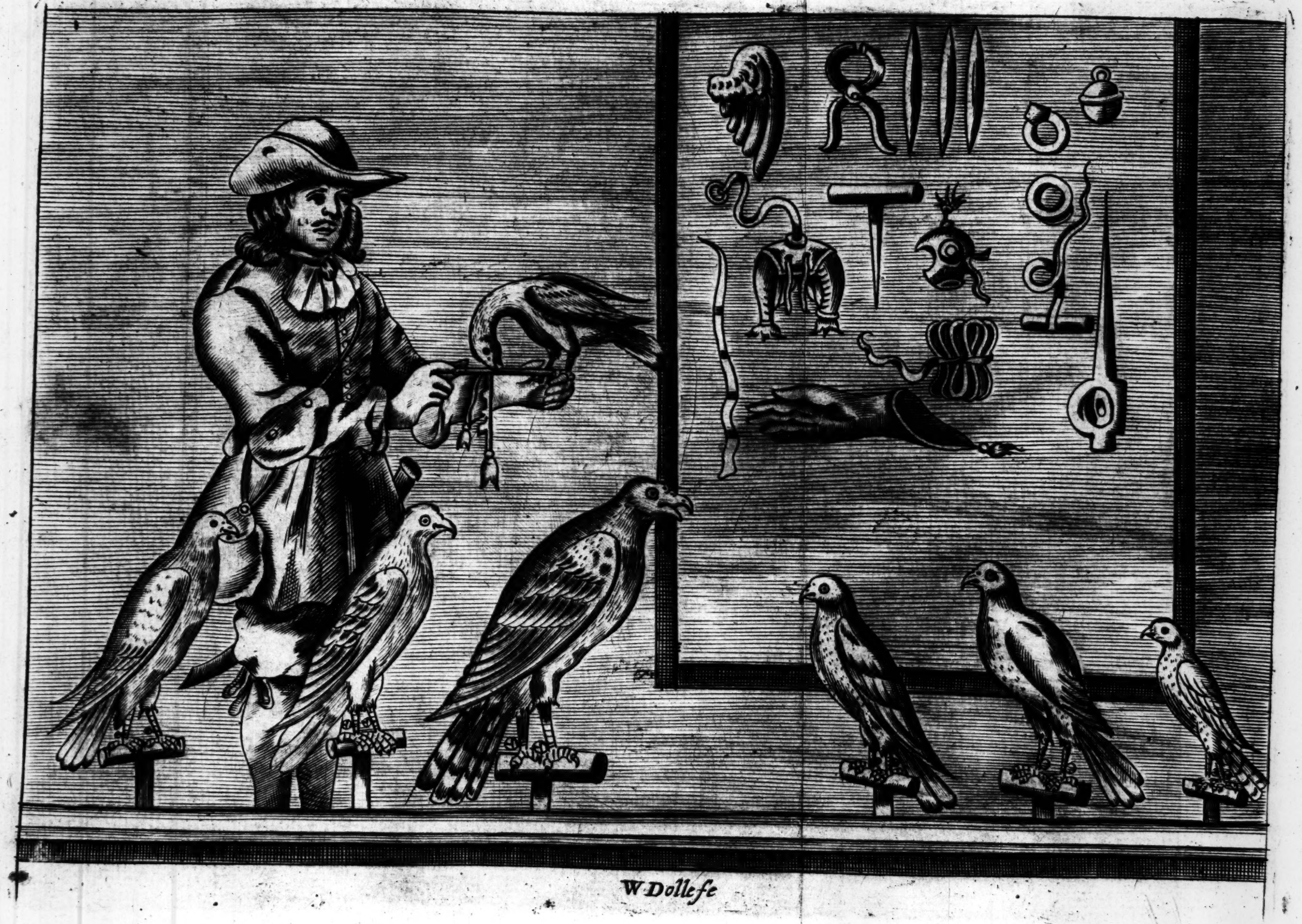
Others bore the skin of his neck through with a hot iron juſt betwixt his ears, ſo as the fire may touch both ſides of the hole made: after that plucking up the skin of the Dogs ſhoulders and flanks backwards, thruſt it through with a hot iron in like manner, by giving the venom this vent, it is a ready way to cure him.

To help a Spaniel *that has loſt his Senſe of Smelling.*

Spaniels ſometimes, by reaſon of too much reſt and greaſe, or ſome other accident, do loſe their Senſe of Smelling, ſo as they cannot ſpring or retrieve a Fowl after their uſual manner: To recover it again, take Agarick two drams, Sal gemma one ſcruple, beat theſe into pouder, and incorporate them with Oxymel, making a pill as big as a nut, cover it with butter, and give it the Dog by fair means or foul. This will bring him into a quick ſcent, as I have oftentimes proved it.

The benefit of cutting off the tip of a Spaniel's *Tail or Stern.*

It is neceſſary for ſeveral reaſons to cut off the tip of a *Spaniel*'s Stern when it is a Whelp: Firſt, by ſo doing Worms are prevented from breeding there, in the next place, if it be not cut, he will be the leſs forward in preſſing haſtily into the Covert after his Game, beſides this benefit, the Dog appears more beautiful.



W. Dollefe

A TREATISE OF *Hawking* and *Faulconry*, &c.

PART II.

The Introduction.

THE Element wherein the *Faulconer* uſeth to trade, is the *Air*, and though he dealeth ſometimes in the *Water*, yet he prefers the Air before it, that yielding him moſt Recreation, for it is unable to ſtop the high Soarings of his generous Faulcon; in it ſhe flies to ſuch a height, that being loſt to the ſight of Mortals, ſhe ſeems to converſe with Heaven alone, and, like *Icarus*, endangers her Wings to be ſcorched by the Sun-beams, and yet is fearleſs, cutting the fluid Air with her nimble Pinions, making her High-way over the ſteepeſt Mountains and deepeſt Rivers, and in her lofty career looks down with a ſeeming contempt on the greateſt Glories we moſt eſtimate; and yet ſuch is her Loyalty and Obedience to her Maſter, that a word from his mouth ſhall make her ſtoop and condeſcend.

This Element of Air is not only to be praiſed for the Recreation it affords the Faulconers, but for its uſefulneſs to all, no Creature being in a condition to live without it: for if the inſpiring or expiring Organ of any Creature be ſtopt, it muſt ſpeedily die, and pay the Debt that's due to Nature.

And as this Element juſtly merits praiſe, ſo do its wing'd Inhabitants, both feeding and refreſhing Mankind, with their Bodies they perform the firſt, and the latter with their harmonious Voices.

The number of Heaven's Airy Choir is ſo great, I cannot here well enumerate them, yet I muſt not paſs by theſe nimble Muſicians of the Air, which warble forth ſuch curious Notes as puzzle Art to imitate.

I mean to ſpeak of a few, and firſt of the *Lark*: When ſhe means to recreate her ſelf and Hearers, ſhe quits the Earth, and ſings as ſhe aſcends, and having made an end of her Heavenly Ditty, ſhe ſeems to ſwound to think ſhe muſt deſcend again unto the dull Earth, which ſhe would ſcorn to tread but for neceſſity.

Again, obſerve how the *Black bird* and the *Thruſh* contend who ſhall with their unimitable Voices bid the beſt welcome to the fragrant Spring.

Nor doth the *Nightingale* come ſhort in breathing out her loud Muſick through the ſmall Organ of her Throat. How have I oft admired in a ſtill Night the clearneſs of her Airs, the ſweetneſs of her Deſcants, her natural Riſings and Fallings, her Doublings and Redoublings!

Much more might be ſaid of theſe, which I ſhall wave, being a digreſſion from my purpoſe, which is to treat of another Bird of Pleaſure, *viz.* the *Hawk*.

HEre note, that the *Hawk* is diſtinguiſhed into two Kinds, the *Long-winged*, and *Short-winged Hawk*.

Of

Of the first kind there are these, which are here amongst us most in use.

The *Gerfaulcon* and *Jerkin*,
Faulcon and *Tiercel-gentle*,
Lonner and *Lannaret*,
Bockerel and *Bockeret*,
Saker and *Sakaret*,
Merlin and *Jack-merlin*,
Hobby and *Jack*,
The *Stelletto* of *Spain*,
The blood red *Rook* of *Turkie*,
The *Waskite* from *Virginia*.

Of the *Short-winged Hawks* there are these:

The *Eagle* and *Iron*,
Goshawk and *Tiercel*,
The *Sparrow-hawk* and *Musket*,
Two sorts of the *French Pie*.

Of inferiour sort are these:

The *Stanyel* or *Ring-tail*,
The *Raven* and *Buzzard*,
The *Forked Kite* and bold *Buzzard*,
The *Hen-driver*, &c.

It is not to be expected that we should treat of all these and many others bearing different Names, but only such which are most in use, of which I shall regularly treat concerning their Eyries, Mewings, Castings, Renovation of Feathers, *&c.* with their Reclaiming, Dieting, Diseases, Cures, and Method of Practice.

Terms

Terms of Art in Faulconry.

As they were used by Ancient Faulconers, *and are now by Modern Practitioners, with their Explanations.*

THE *Age* of a *Hawk*:
The first year, a *Soarage.*
The second year, an *Enterview.*
The third year, a *White Hawk.*
The fourth year, a *Hawk of the first Coat.*

Arms, are the Legs from the Thigh to the Foot.

Bate, is when the *Hawk* fluttereth with her Wings, either from Pearch to Fist, as it were striving to get away.

Bathing, is when the *Hawk* washeth her self at home or abroad.

Beak, is the upper part of the Bill that is crooked.

Beam Feathers, are the long Feathers of the *Hawks* Wings.

Beavy of Quails, are a brood of young *Quails.*

Bewits, are the Leathers with Bells buttoned about the *Hawks* Legs.

Binding, is tying, or when a *Hawk* seizeth.

Bowet, is when a young *Hawk* draweth any thing out of her Nest, and covets to clamber on the Boughs.

Boufing, is when the *Hawk* drinks often, and yet continually thirsteth for more.

Branch or Stand, is to make the *Hawk* leap from Tree to Tree till the Dog springs the *Partridge.*

Branches, is a young *Hawk* newly taken out of the Nest.

Cadge,

Cadge, is that circular piece of Wood on which *Hawks* are carried when they are expoſed to ſale.

Canceleer, is when a high-flown *Hawk* in her ſtooping turneth two or three times upon the wing, to recover her ſelf before ſhe ſeizeth.

Carry, is flying away with the Quarry.

Caſt your Hawk to the Pearch, is to put your *Hawk* on the *Pearch*.

Caſting, is when you give your *Hawk* any thing to cleanſe and purge her Gorge.

Carviſt, a *Hawk* may be ſo called at the beginning of the year, and ſignifies as much as to carry on the Fiſt.

Cataraſt, a Diſeaſe in *Hawks* ſo called.

Cauterizing-Irons, are Irons to ſear with.

Cawking-time, is Treading time.

Crabbing, is when *Hawks* ſtanding too near, fight with one another.

Creance, is a fine ſmall long Line of ſtrong and even-wound Pack-thread, which is faſtned to the *Hawks* Leaſe or Leaſh when ſhe is firſt Lured.

Check, that is when the *Hawk* forſakes her proper Game to fly at Pies, Crows, or the like, croſſing her in her flight.

Clap, is the nether part of the *Hawks* Beak.

Coping-Irons, are uſed in coping or paring the *Hawks* Beak, Pounces, or Talons, when over-grown.

Cowring, is when young *Hawks* quiver and ſhake their Wings, in teſtimony of obedience towards the old ones.

Crinets, are the ſmall black Feathers like Hairs about the Sere.

Diſcloſed, is when the young juſt peep through the ſhell.

Dropping, is when the *Hawk* muteth directly downward in ſeveral drops, not yerking it ſtreight forwards.

Endew,

Endew, is when the *Hawk* digeſteth her meat, that ſhe not only diſchargeth her *Gorge* thereof, but likewiſe cleanſeth her *Pannel*.

Enſeame, is the purging of a *Hawk* of her Glut and Greaſe.

Enter a Hawk, is when ſhe firſt begins to kill.

Eyeſs, is a young *Hawk* newly taken out of the Neſt, not able to prey for himſelf.

Eyrie, is that place where *Hawks* build and hatch their young.

Feaking, is when the *Hawk* wipeth her Beak after feeding.

Filanders, a ſort of little red Worms that uſually breed in *Hawks*.

Flags, Feathers next the principal Feathers in the *Hawks* Wing.

Fly on Head, is miſſing her *Quarry*, and betaking her ſelf to the next Check, as Crows, *&c.*

Formale, is the Female *Hawks*.

Formica, a Diſeaſe in *Hawks* ſo called.

Frounce, is a Diſeaſe common in the Mouth or Throat of a *Hawk*.

Gleam, after a *Hawk* hath caſt ſhe gleameth, or throweth up filth from her Gorge.

Glut, is the ſlimy ſubſtance that lies in the *Hawk* Pannel.

Gorge, is called in other *Fowl* the *Craw* or *Crop*.

Gurgiting, is when ſhe is ſtuft and ſuffocated.

Hack, is the place where the *Hawks* meat is laid.

Hawk keeps her Mark, is when ſhe waits at the place where ſhe lays in *Partridge*, or the like, until it be retrieved.

Hern at ſeidge, is when you find a *Hern* ſtanding by the Water-ſide watching for Prey, or the like.

Jack,

Jack, is the Male *Hawk*.

Jesses, are those short straps of Leather which are fastned to the *Hawks* Legs, and so to the Lease or Leash by Vervails, and such like.

Imp, is to insert a Feather into the Wing of a *Hawk*, in the place of one that is broken.

Inke, is the Neck from the Head to the Body of any Bird which the *Hawk* doth prey upon.

Intermewing, is from the first exchange of the *Hawks* Coat, till she turn white, and this is so called from the first Mewing.

Jouketh, is when she sleepeth.

Lure, that is when a young *Hawk* is called by the Faulconer thereunto, and is made of Feathers and Leather, not much unlike a *Fowl*, which he casteth up into the Air.

Lease or *Leash*, is a small long thong of Leather by which the Faulconer holdeth his *Hawk* fast, folding it many times about his Finger.

Lean, is when the *Hawk* holds in to you.

A *Make-Hawk*, is an old Staunch-*Hawk* which used to fly, will easily instruct a young *Hawk*.

Managing a Hawk, is to use her with Art and Skill.

Make out, is when the *Hawk* goeth forth at Check.

Mailes, are the Breast-feathers.

Manning, is making a *Hawk* endure company.

Mantleth, is when the *Hawk* stretcheth one of her Wings after her Legs, and so the other.

Mew, is the place where you set down your *Hawk* during the time she raiseth her Feathers.

Muting, is the Excrements or Dung of a *Hawk*, and so it is of a *Hern*.

Mites, are a sort of Vermin that trouble the Head and Nares of a *Hawk*.

Nares,

Nares, are the little Holes in a *Hawks* Beak.

Pearch, is the *Hawks* reſting-place when ſhe is off the Faulconers Fiſt.

Pelt, is the dead Body of any Fowl the *Hawk* hath killed.

Pill or *Pelf*, is what the *Hawk* hath left of her Prey after ſhe is relieved.

Plume, is the general mixture of Feathers and Colours by which the Conſtitution of a *Hawk* is known.

Plumage, are ſmall Feathers given the *Hawk*, to make her caſt.

Plunging, is after the *Hawk* hath ſeized her Prey, and diſmantles it of the Feathers.

Pannel, is the Pipe next the Fundament of a *Hawk*, where ſhe digeſteth her meat from her body.

Pantas, a Diſeaſe in *Hawks* ſo called.

Pendant-Feathers, thoſe Feathers behind the Thigh of a *Hawk*.

Petty-ſingles, are the Toes of the *Hawk*.

Pounces, are the Claws of the *Hawk*.

Principal-Feathers, are the two longeſt Feathers in the *Hawks* Wings.

Pruneth, is when the *Hawk* picketh her ſelf.

Put over, is when a *Hawk* removeth her Meat from the Gorge into her Bowels, by traverſing with her body, but chiefly with her Neck.

Quarry, is the Fowl which the *Hawk* flies at, dead or alive.

Raiſed in Fleſh, is when a *Hawk* grows fat.

Rake, is when the *Hawk* flies out too far from the Fowl.

Ramage, is when the *Hawk* is wild, and difficult to be reclaimed.

Rangle, is when we give a *Hawk* Gravel to bring her to her Stomack.

Retrieve,

Retrieve, is when Partridges having been ſprung, are to find again.

Rouse, is when a *Hawk* lifteth her ſelf up, and ſhaketh her ſelf.

Ruff, is when the *Hawk* hits the Prey, and yet not truſſes it.

Ruſter Hood, is a plain and eaſie Leather Hood, being large, wide, and open behind, and is to be worn by the *Hawk* when you firſt draw her.

Reclaim, is to make a *Hawk* tame, gentle, and familiar.

Sails, are the Wings of a *Hawk*.

Sear or *Sere*, is the yellow between the Beak and Eyes of the *Hawk*.

Seeling, is when a *Hawk* firſt taken is blinded with a Thread run through the Eye-lids, that ſhe ſeeth but little, or very little, the better to make her endure the Hood.

Seizing, is when a *Hawk* gripes her Prey, or anything elſe, faſt within her Foot.

Setting down, is when the *Hawk* is put into the Mew.

Slice, is when a *Hawk* muteth a great diſtance from her.

Sliming, is when a *Hawk* muteth without dropping.

Sniting, is when a *Hawk* as it were ſneezeth.

Soar-hawk, that is from the firſt taking her from the Eyries till ſhe hath Mewed her Feathers.

Spring, is when any Partridge or Pheaſant riſe.

Stooping, is when the *Hawk* is aloft upon her Wing, and then deſcends to ſtrike her Prey.

Summ'd, is when the *Hawk* is in all her Plumes.

Swivel, is that which keepeth a *Hawk* from twiſting.

Tiercel or *Vaſſel*, is the Male *Hawk*.

Tiring, is when you give your *Hawk* a Leg or Pinion of a Pullet, Pidgeon, *&c.* to pluck at.

Train, is the Tail of a *Hawk*.

Traſſing, is when ſhe raiſeth any Fowl aloft, and ſoaring with it, at length deſcendeth with it to the ground.

Varvels,

Varvels, little Rings of Silver at the end of the Jesses, whereon the Owners of the *Hawk* have their Names ingraven.

Unreclaimed, is when a *Hawk* is wild.

Unseeling, is when you take away a Thread that runs through the *Hawks* Eye-lids, and hinders her sight.

Unstrike the hood, is to draw the Strings, that it may be in a readiness to pull off.

Unsismm'd, is when the Feathers of a *Hawk* are not fully grown.

Urines, are Nets to catch *Hawks* withal.

Warbling, is after a *Hawk* hath mantled her self, she crosses her Wings together over her Back.

Weathering, is when you air your *Hawk* in Frost, Sun, or by the Fire-side.

Whur, is the rising and fluttering of Partridge or Pheasant.

The Names and Natures of Hawks *in general; and first of the* Haggard-Faulcon.

I Begin with the *Haggard-Faulcon*, since it is a *Hawk* which most men now-a-days covet, to fit and prepare for their delight and pleasure; altho' heretofore I hear less spoken of her praise by the Antients than she deserves.

Some of old have preferred the *Faulcon-gentle* for mettle and courage, being of a loving disposition, strong and daring, and hardy in all Seasons; and by a mere mistake have undervalued the *Haggard faulcon*, condemning her as being a Bird too tender to endure rough and boisterous Weather.

Experience confutes this Opinion, she being known to be able to indure as much the extremity of Weather, or more than the *Tiercel*, *Faulcon-gentle*, or most other *Hawks* whatsoever; and therefore she shall first take place in this manner.

The *Haggard faulcon*, wild and unreclaimed, takes a large liberty to her self for her abode, either by Sea or Land; and is so absolute in her power, that wherever she comes, all flying Fowl stoop under her Subjection. Nay the *Tiercel-gentle*, altho' her natural companion, dares not sit by her or come near her residence but in cawking-time, and that is in the Spring; and then for procreation sake, she will admit him to come near her with submission, which he manifests by bowing his head at his approach, and by calling and cowring with his Wings, as the *young ones* do, in testimony how fearful he is of incurring her displeasure.

Whilst she is very young (and so will a *Passenger-Soar-faulcon*) she will prey upon Birds which are too big to encounter withal; and this she doth for want of understanding; and she continues this rashness and

folly, till experience and a ſound beating have reclaimed her.

The *Haggard-Faulcon* will prey on any other Fowl ſhe can meet with advantageouſly, eſpecially tame Pidgeons, or ſuch as belong to a Dove-houſe; for theſe they frequently meet withal.

This Hawk is an inceſſant Pains-taker; no weather diſcourageth her from her Game, but that only wherein no Fowl can well ſtir abroad to ſeek for ſuſtenance; otherwiſe ſhe is continually working, either in the Air or elſewhere, unleſs ſhe ſtoop and miſs of her Prey, and then ſhe will reſt a little, to take breath and renew her courage. Nay, if ſhe hath laboured in boiſterous and tempeſtuous weather 3 or 4 days together, ſhe will be ſo far from being the worſe for it, that ſhe will appear much better, and more lively. And therefore it is a vulgar error for men not to fly their *Hawks* but after 3 or 4 days reſt, ſome a week or fortnight. For old ſtaunch *Hawks*, I judge a little reſt will do no harm; but for the young, till ſhe is blooded give her but little; and if you can fly her every day, you will find it ſo much the better.

When the Faulcon unreclaimed hath ſeized her Prey and broke her Neck (in artificial terms, her *Ink*) ſhe then falls on the Crop, and feeds firſt on what is there contained, afterwards on other parts; and having filled her Gorge, ſhe will fly to ſome ſolitary place which is near Water, or what liketh her beſt, and there ſhe will ſit all day: Upon the approach of night ſhe takes Wing, and flies to ſome convenient place ſhe hath afore purpoſed, to pearch therein till the morning.

Thus much of her as ſhe is wild and unreclaimed. In the next place it will be requiſite to inform you with the manner of reclaiming of a *Haggard-faulcon*, and her entry to the Lure.

Having taken or purchaſed one of them, ſet her down, and let her reſt quietly the firſt night in a Rufterhood. The

The next day take her up eaſily on your Fiſt, and carry her up and down that whole day, uſing a Feather to ſtroke her withal inſtead of your Hand. When you find her not impatient of being toucht, take her Hood off ſpeedily, and put it on again as ſpeedily, obſerving thus to do till ſhe is willing to feed; then frequently offer her Food, but let her have but a little at a time; never pulling her Hood off or on, but you muſt gain her love with a bit or two, uſing your Voice unto her when you are taking off her Hood, and all the while ſhe is feeding, and no longer; and by that means, after ſhe is reclaimed, ſhe may know by your Voice ſhe ſhall be fed.

Having thus done, teach her to come to your Fiſt from the Pearch, by doing thus: Let her ſtand on a Pearch about breaſt-high; if lower, kneel, for this low poſture will leſs affright than any other: After this, unſtrike her Hood, and lure her, uſing your Voice, and have a ſpecial care that you affright her not or diſtaſte her, and ſo cauſe her to bate from you. But you muſt, before you unſtrike her Hood, encourage her with a bit or two, which will make her the more eager to come to you: For it is her Stomach that rules her, and is the Bridle that keeps her in ſubjection, pricking her forward to perform her duty; wherefore if you keep not her Appetite ſharp and truly edged, inſtead of Submiſſion you will find Diſobedience. When you find ſhe will willingly feed from and come to your Hand, you may then let her ſit bare-fac'd, now and then diverting her ſtarting about, by giving her a bit or two, to direct her Face towards you: After this you may ſet her to the Lure.

When you find ſhe will come readily to the Lure, garniſht with Meat in the *Creance*, fearing leſt ſhe ſcorn this way of luring, fix a live Pidgeon to the Lure, and lure her therewith. When ſhe hath killed the Pidgeon and eaten the Head, take her up gently with a bit of Meat, and put on her Hood; then unſtrike her

Hood and lure her to the Pelt, doing thus twice or thrice, and no more: If you do it oftner, ſhe will become in time very loth to part with the Pelt, and by this means you will provoke her to carry. This is a great fault, and more incident to and worſe in Field-Hawks than ſuch as are fitted for the River.

But be ſure you lure her not far till her Stomach be perfect; for otherwiſe ſhe may diſcover ſomething by the which ſhe hath a greater eſteem for, and ſo be loſt for that time, which will be very detrimental to her, altho' you ſhould happen to recover and reclaim her afterwards.

Here obſerve, in the time of her making (while ſhe is on the ground either pluming or feeding) forget not to walk round her, uſing your Voice, and giving her many bits with your hand; continuing ſo to do till you have won her to a more than ordinary familiarity.

But above all, mark this; ſpring her ſome living Doves between the Man and the Lure, and let them be given in a long Creance, that ſhe may kill them near you, in ſuch a manner that ſhe may truſs them over your Head; by this means ſhe will not be afraid when you come to her from afar off; the neglect whereof will make her timerous: thence will proceed her dragging and carrying from you; nay ſometimes ſhe will leave her Prey, and totally forſake you.

There are ſome *Hawks* will not be taken up without ſtriking or rapping in the Creance, which muſt be infallibly the loſs of ſuch a *Hawk* without ſuch a device. This is a great fault in the *Hawk*, and argueth great negligence in the Faulconer, in ſuffering, and not remedying that ill property in her firſt making.

Rules

Rules for ordering a Haggard-faulcon *in the Luring; with the Cauſes and Remedies of Carrying, and other ill qualities.*

Having thus far acquainted your Hawk with the Lure, take her out ſome convenient Evening, and be no farther from her than ſhe can ſee and hear you; then hold in your Lure, and ſuffer her to fly about you, holding her as near you as you can with your Voice and Lure, teaching her to do her buſineſs, and work it on your head, and then caſt up a live Dove: Which ſome diſapprove of, becauſe (ſay they) the lightneſs of the Dove inclines the *Hawk* to that ill quality of carrying; but I rather impute that fault to the ignorance, or negligence and harſhneſs of the Faulconer, who hath been either unskilful, remiſs, or hath not uſed that gentleneſs which is requiſite in reclaiming a Hawk in her firſt making; ſo that inſtead of gaining her Love by fair Allurements, he hath converted it into Hatred, Abhorrency, and diſdainful Coyneſs.

Another cauſe of this Dragging or Carrying proceeds from the Keepers ill or ſlender rewarding his Hawk in the Luring, in giving her the Pelt of a Pidgeon, or ſome other dead thing, which gives her no delight. It is the pleaſure ſhe takes in the Reward that engages her coming to you: If then ſhe chance to find her expectation fruſtrated in her uſual ſatisfaction, ſhe will ever after ſhun you; and tho' you ſhould throw her a live Pidgeon, ſhe may ſeize it, and keep cloſe to it, or remove it as you approach, for fear that your unkindneſs ſhould deprive her of it. Wherefore you muſt have a ſpecial care you diſoblige her not in her Luring.

There are ſeveral other errors which muſt be rectified in a *Haggard faulcon, Faulcon gentle, or Slight-faulcon:* (which naturally are all of one kind, yet

differ much in quality and condition) which I shall leave to the study of the ingenious and industrious Faulconer or Keeper. I say, the first fault is, that tho' you have lured your Hawk well, and given her all the content and satisfaction imaginable, yet will she not tarry with you, but take her flight and forsake you. This argueth an aversion in her from you to something else. This fault Mr. *Turberville* and Mr. *Latham* say they have known remedied; but because I look upon the trouble therein to be so great, and the future satisfaction so small and uncertain, I shall not lay down what means are commonly made use of in the cure of this ill quality.

But there is another fault, which at first may be easily prevented; and that is, an aspiring quality and working humour, when altho' the Hawk never shewed any dislike to the Keeper, or discontent, yet by observation she hath been found conceited, and would not endure the society of another Hawk; and having been well blooded on Fowl, she would not be kept down near her Keeper. To remedy this, let no scope be given to the *Haggard* in the time of making; let her not fly high, but be held down and near you; and if you should let this Hawk in to another Hawk, and find her fall to her work without any regard or notice taken of the other Hawk, suspect her instantly, and let her see Fowl in due time, lest when she comes to her due place, she go her way; for she will prove impatient: Wherefore the shorter work you make with her, the greater delight you give her, and so consequently you engage her Love continually towards you.

Having taught your Hawk to sit bare-fac'd in the Evening among company undisturbed, and that she knows your Voice, and will come to the Lure, then give her every night Stones, till you find her Stomach good: After that, proffer her *Casting*, and let her not receive it unless she likes it well; otherwise she is apt

to

to take a diſlike, and will never afterwards receive it willingly.

Theſe Stones aforeſaid prepare and make ready the way for caſting, ſtirring, and diſſolving whatever is offenſive within, and fitting it to be carried downward in her Mutes, or upwards in her Caſtings. The time for giving theſe Stones is, when ſhe hath put away her Supper from above; then give her half a dozen above the hand, if you have ſo much Skill; if not, otherwiſe as you are able. Do thus often, until ſuch time as you ſhall give her ſuch things whereof ſhe ſhall take Plumage in her living or training. But of this, more hereafter.

How to know the Nature and Diſpoſition of ſeveral HAWKS, *and what muſt be obſerved from thence.*

THere is a certain *Hawk* called a *Blank Hawk*, which is a kind, loving, and docible *Hawk*; for ſhe will diligently liſten and give ear unto you, and your Voice; ſhe will ſoon learn to come to hand, being very eager and hot to ſeize on what you ſhall either throw or give her, and will be very familiar: Laſtly, having done your will on the ground, ſhe will look up for your Fiſt, and will readily jump thereon.

They are much ſubject to little Grubs, which are ingendered in the Guts, and diſcover themſelves in their Mutes, crawling out from them, ſhrinking themſelves up, and ſo inſtantly dying. Theſe Worms do little harm, and that *Hawk* which hath them is ſeldom bad. The colour of theſe Worms is red in a *Slight Faulcon*, and red in a *Barbary-Faulcon*, and when dead, in both white.

There is a ſort of *Swarthy black-plum'd Hawk*, that

is good-mettl'd, and a high flier, yet hard to be reclaimed: for she will neither mind you nor your Voice; but when you lure her, will look any other way than that she should. However, you must shew your self very loving towards her, tho' you shall get no more from her than what you extort by force. For her due reclaiming, lessen her Pride by ordering her Diet with measure, with respect had unto the Weather; which if it be mild and temperate, you need not fear to hold her down until you have quarried her; and as you shall see her mend her Manners, alter her Diet, and add to her strength according to reasonable expedition; which will be soon obtained if she be sound and the Weather moderate. But if the Weather be frosty, have a care of abating Flesh.

When at any time you fly any one of these black or tawny *Hawks*, and she stoops foul, and falls in her flight, you must take her down with some living thing.

If she be young, suffer not her (or any other *Hawk*) to fly too long; for nothing is more prejudicial and distasteful to a young Hawk at her first making, than to let her toil and make many stoopings before she be served: by this dislike she is induced to fly wide and carelesly, and frequently to go away through displeasure.

Now to the intent I may go on methodically, and with as little confusion as may be, I shall in the next place here nominate what *Hawks* I intend to treat of; and in the same order as I name them, in like manner I will discourse of them. Take them thus:

Faulcon,	Their Males	*Tiercel-gentle*,
Gerfaulcon,		*Jerkin*,
Mylion,		*Tiercel*,
Merlin,		*Jack*,
Hobby,		*Robbin*,
Goshawk,		*Tiercel*,
Sparrow-hawk,		*Musket*,
Lanner,		*Lanneret*.

Here

Here note, that the Female of all Birds of Prey are much larger, and of greater bulk than the Male, and are more ſerviceable, being more watchful, hardy, and bold: But of ſuch Birds as do not prey, the Cocks are the larger.

The *Faulcon*, *Gerfaulcon*, *Mylion*, *Merlin*, and *Hobby* do ſtoop and ſeize their Prey with their Foot, breaking with their Beak the Neck-bone of the Fowl, without pluming or tiring thereupon till the Fowl hath left buſking and bating on the foot.

The *Goſhawk*, with her Male the *Tiercel*, and the *Sparrow hawk*, kill their Game by ſtrength and force of Wing at random, and do inſtantly plume and tire upon their Prey.

Of the Faulcon.

THere are ſeven kinds of *Faulcons*, viz.

Faulcon-gentle, *Haggard faulcon*, *Barbary* or *Tartaret faulcon*, } *Gerfaulcon*, *Saker*, *Lanner*, *Tunician*.

The *Faulcon-gentle* is ſo called for her familiar courteous diſpoſition; ſhe is withal valiant, ſtrong, and better able to endure any ſort of Weather than any other Hawk.

She hath a natural inclination and love to fly the Hern every way, either from her Wings to the down-come, or from the Fiſt and afore-hand. She is moſt excellent at the Brook or River, eſpecially at large Fowl, as the Shoveler, Wild-gooſe, *&c.* If ſhe be an *Eyeſs*, you may venture her at the Crane; otherwiſe ſhe will not be hardy and bold. Where note, Hawks prove valiant or Cowards according as they are firſt quarried

quarried: and if you take them out of the Eyrie before they are fully ſummed and hard penned, you muſt never expect their Wings ſhould grow to perfection, but their Legs will be apt to wear crooked, and their Train, their long Feathers and their Flags alſo will be full of Taints.

In the choice of your *Faulcon*, obſerve that ſhe have wide Nares; high and large Eye-lids; a great black Eye; a round Head, ſomewhat full on the top; a ſhort, thick, azure Beak, and indifferent high Neck; hard Feathers under the clap of the Beak; a good large, round, fleſhy Breaſt: Let her be ſtrong, hard, and ſtiff bonded, broad-ſhouldered; having ſlender Sails, full Sides, long and great Thighs; ſtrong and ſhort Arms; large Feet, with the Sear of the Foot ſoft and blewiſh; black Pounces, long Wings, and croſſing the Train, which Train muſt be ſhort, and very pliable.

Here obſerve, that *Faulcons* of one kind differ much, and are diverſly named according to the time of their firſt Reclaiming, places of Hunt, and Countries from whence they come; as *Mew'd Hawks*, *Rammage Hawks*, *Soar Hawks*, *Eyeſſes*; and theſe again are divided into large *Hawks*, mean *Hawks*, and ſlender *Hawks*. All theſe have different Males and Plumes, according to the nature of the Countries from whence they come: as ſome are black, ſome blank or ruſſet; and they differ in diſpoſition, ſome are beſt for the Field, others for the River.

Names are beſtowed on a *Faulcon*, according to her Age or Taking.

The firſt is an *Eyeſs*, which Name laſts as long as ſhe is in the Eyrie. Theſe are very troubleſome in their feeding, do cry very much, and are difficultly entred; but being well entred and quarried, prove excellent *Hawks* for the *Heron*, River, or any ſort of Fowl, and are hardy and full of Mettle.

The

The second is a *Rammage-faulcon*, and reserves the Name after she hath left the Eyrie, being so called *May*, *June*, *July*, and *August*. These are hard to be manned, but being well reclaimed, they are not inferior to any *Hawk*.

The third is a *Soar-hawk*, so called *September*, *October* and *November*. The first Plumes they have when they forsake the Eyrie, they keep a whole Year before they mew them, which are called *Soar-feathers*.

The fourth is termed *Munzarolt* (the latest term is *Carvist*, as much as to say, *Carry on the Fist*) they are so called *January*, *February*, *March*, *April*, and till the middle of *May*, during which time they must be kept on the Fist. They are for the most part very great Baters, and therefore little eaters: They are bad *Hawks*, frequently troubled with *Filanders* Worms, and are rarely brought to be good for any thing.

The fifth are called *Enter-mews*, from the middle of *May*, to the latter end of *December*. They are so called because they cast their Coats. They were excellent *Hawks*, could they be trusted; therefore they must be kept hard under, and must make your Fist their Pearch. Having discours'd of the Names and Nature of the *Faulcon*, I next come to his Manning, Luring, Flights, and mewing in every condition; which course I shall orderly take in my ensuing Discourse of the other *Hawks* I have only named heretofore. And because what Diseases or Casualties are incident to one, are likewise to all, I shall put their Cures at the latter end all together.

Of the Manning, Luring, Flights and Mewing of a Faulcon, with other things properly belonging to an Ostrager.

Having taken a *Faulcon*, you must Seel her, in such manner, that as the Seeling slackens, the *Foulcon* may be

be able to see what provision is straight before her, which she will better see so than any other way: and be sure you feel her not too hard.

A *Hawk* newly taken ought to have all new Furniture, as new Jesses of good Leather, mailed Leases with Buttons at the end, and new Bewets. You must have a small round Stick likewise hanging in a String, with which you must frequently stroak your *Hawk*: the oftner you do it, the sooner and better you will man her. She must have two good Bells, that she may the better be found and heard when she either stirreth or scratteth: Her Hood must be well fashioned, raised and bossed against her Eyes, deep, and yet straight enough beneath, that it may the better fasten about her Head without hurting her; and you must cope a little her Beak and Talons, but not so near as to make them bleed.

Take notice, if you take a *Soar-faulcon*, which hath already past the Seas, altho' she be very hard to be reclaimed, yet she is the best of Faulcons.

Her Food must be good and warm twice or thrice a day, till she be full gorg'd; which Food must be either Pigeons, Larks, or other live Birds: and the reason is, because you must break her by degrees off from her accustomed Feeding.

When you feed her, you must whoop and lure, as you do when you call a *Hawk*, that she may know when you will give her Meat.

You must unhood her gently, giving her two or three bits; and putting on her Hood again, you must give her as much more, and be sure that she be close Seeled, and after three or four days lessen her Diet, and when you go to bed, set her on some Pearch by you that you may awaken her often in the night. Thus you must do till you observe her grow tame and gentle: and when you find she begins to feed eagerly, then give her a Sheep's Heart. And now you may begin to unhood her by day-time, but it must be far from company;

pany; first giving her a bit or two, then hood her again gently, and give her as much more. Be sure not to affright her with any thing when you unhood her. And when you perceive her to be acquainted with company, and that she is sharp set, unhood her, and give her some Meat, holding her just against your Face and Eyes, which will make her less afraid of the Countenances of others. If you can, reclaim her without over-watching.

You must bear her continually on the Fist till she be throughly Manned, causing her to feed in company, giving her in the Morning about Sun rising the Wing of a Pullet, and in the Evening the Foot of a Coney or Hare cut off above the Joint, slay'd and laid in Water; which having squeez'd, give it her with the Pinion of a Hen's Wing.

For two or three days give her washt Meat, and then Plumage, according as you think her foul within. If she Cast, hood her again, and give her nothing till she Gleam after her Casting: Having gleamed and casted, then give her a breching of hot Meat in company; and towards the Evening let her plume a Hen's Wing in company also.

If the Feathers of her Casting be foul or slimy, and of a yellowish complexion, then be sure to cleanse her well with washt Meat and Casting: If clean within, give her gentle Castings, as the Pinions of an old Hen's Wing, or the Neck-bone chopped four or five times between the Joints, washt and steeped in fair Water.

Having well reclaimed her, throughly manned her, and made her eager and sharp set, then you may venture to feed her on the Lure.

But before you shew her the Lure, you must consider these three things: 1. That she be bold in and familiar with Company, and no ways afraid of Dogs and Horses. 2. That she be sharp-set and hungry, regarding the hour of the Morning and Evening when you

you will Lure her. 3. And laſtly, ſhe muſt be clean within, and the Lure muſt be well garniſhed with Meat on both ſides, and you muſt abſcond your ſelf when you intend to give her the length of a Leaſe.

You muſt firſt unhood her, giving her a bit or two on the Lure as ſhe ſitteth on your Fiſt: Afterwards take the Lure from her, and ſo hide it, that ſhe ſee it not; and when ſhe is unſeized, caſt the Lure ſo near her, that ſhe may catch it within the length of her Leaſe. When ſhe hath ſeiz'd it, uſe your Voice according to the cuſtom of Faulconers, and feed her upon the Lure on the ground with the Heart and warm Thigh of a Pullet. Having ſo lured her, in the Evening give her but a little Meat; and let this luring be ſo timely, that you may give her Plumage and a Jack of a Joint.

In the Morning betimes take her on your Fiſt, and when ſhe hath caſt and gleamed, give her a little beaching of warm Meat. Towards Noon take a Creance and tie it to her Leaſe, and go into ſome pleaſant Field or Meadow, and give her a bit or two on the Lure; then unſeize her; and if you find ſhe is ſharp ſet, and hath ſeized on the Lure eagerly, then give her ſome one to hold, to let her off to the Lure; then unwind the Creance, and draw it after you a good way, and let him which holds the *Hawk* hold his Right Hand on the Taſſel of the *Hawk*'s Hood in readineſs, ſo that he may unhood her aſſoon as you begin to lure: and if ſhe come well to the Lure, and ſtoop upon it roundly, and ſeize it eagerly, then let her eat two or three bits thereon; then unſeize her, and take her off the Lure, hood her, and deliver her to him again that held her, and going farther off, lure her, feeding her as before with the accuſtomed Voice. Thus lure her every day farther and farther off, till ſhe is accuſtomed to come freely and eagerly to the Lure.

After

After this, lure her in company, but have a care that nothing affright her; and when you have used her to the Lure on foot, then lure her on Horse-back; which you may effect the sooner, by causing Horsemen to be about you when you lure her on foot; also you may do it the sooner by rewarding her upon the Lure on Horse back among Horsemen. When this way she grows familiar, let some body afoot hold the Hawk, and he that is on Horse back must call, and cast the Lure about his Head; then must the Holder take off the Hood by the Tassel: and if she seize eagerly on the Lure without fear of Man or Horse, then take off the Creance, and lure her at a greater distance. And if you would have her love Dogs as well as the Lure, call Dogs when you give her Tiring or Plumage.

Of Bathing *a* Faulcon *lately reclaimed; how to make her Flying, and to hate the Check.*

Having wean'd your Faulcon from her Rammage-fooleries, being both ways lured, rewarded, and throughly reclaim'd, offer her some Water to bathe her self in, in a Bason wherein she may stand up to the Thighs, chusing a temperate clear day for that purpose. Then having lured your Hawk, and rewarded her with warm Meat, in the morning carry her to some Bank, and there hold her in the Sun till she hath endewed her Gorge, taking off her Hood that she may prune and pick her self: that being done, hood her again, and set her near the Bason, and taking off her Hood, let her bathe again as long as she pleaseth: After this, take her up, and let her pick her self as before, and then feed her. If she refuse the Bason to bathe in, shew her some small River or Brook for that purpose.

By

By this use of bathing she gains strength and a sharp appetite, and thereby grown bold; but that day wherein she bath'eth, give her no washt Meat.

If you would make your Faulcon upwards, the next day after she hath bath'd get on Horseback, either in the Morning or Evening, and chuse out some Field, wherein are no Rooks or Pidgeons; then take your Lure well garnished on both sides, and having unhooded your *Hawk*, give her a bit or two on the Lure, then hood her: afterwards go leisurely against the Wind, then unhood her, and before she bate, or find any Check in her Eye, whistle her off from your Fist fairly and softly. As she flieth about you, trot on with your Horse, and cast out your Lure, not suffering her to fly long about you at first: Continue thus doing Morning and Evening for seven or eight days. But if you find your *Hawk* unwilling to fly about you, or stoop to the Lure, then must you let her fly with some *Hawk* that loves the company of others, and will not rove at any change or check; and that must first be done at the Partridge, for they will not fly far before the *Hawk*. If she hath flown twice or thrice, cast out the Lure, and reward her on Horseback. If the Fowl you flew her at be killed by another *Hawk*, let her feed with him a little, and then farther reward her on the Lure.

If you would have your Faulcon prove upwards, and a high-flying *Hawk*, you must let her fly with such as are so qualified. If she love the company of others, and is taught to hold in the Head, then if the Fowl be in Pool, Pit, or Plash, cast off your high-flying *Hawk*, and let him that hath your new-lur'd *Hawk* get under the Wind, and when he seeth his advantage, let him unhood her; and if she bate, then it is to get up to the other *Hawk*.

Let

Let him then caſt her off, and before ſhe get up to the other near his full pitch, lay out the Fowl: if ſhe kill her Game, reward her with the Heart, and let her participate of the Breaſt with the other *Hawks*.

To take your Faulcon from going out to any Check, thus you muſt do: If ſhe hath kill'd a Check, and hath fed thereon before you could come in, rebuke her not ſeverely at firſt, but take her down to the Lure, give her a bit or two, hood her, and fly her not in three or four days; and if you do, let it be where no Checks are: but if you come in before ſhe hath taſted the Check ſhe hath killed, then take the Gall of an Hen, and anoint the Breaſt of that Check ſhe hath killed, (any other bitter thing will do) and this will make her hate to go at Check again.

How to enſeam a Faulcon *with her Caſtings and Scowrings.*

When you feed your Faulcon, call and lure as if you called her to the Lure, and every day profer her Water, and every night give her Caſtings accordingly as ſhe endeweth. Take off her Hood frequently in company; and that you may hinder her from beating, hold always the Hood ready by the Taſſal in your hand.

In the Evening by candle-light take off her Hood among company, until ſhe Rouze and Mewt; then ſet her on the Pearch, and not before, ſetting a light before her.

Every Faulcon ought to have a *Make-Hawk* to teach her to hold in the head: if that will not do, cut off ſome part of her two Principals in each Wing, the

long Feather and that next to it, which will force her to hold in.

Be ſure to reward your *Hawk* well at the beginning, and let her feed well on the Quarry; which will ſo encourage her, that ſhe will have no fancy to go out to the Check. When ſhe is well in blood and well quarried, then let her fly with other *Hawks*.

If you would make your Faulcon to the Crane, her Lure ſhould be a counterfeit Crane. If you would make her to the Hare, her lure ſhould be then a Hares Skin ſtuft with ſome light matter: When ſhe is well lured, and you would enter her, tie the Hares Skin ſo ſtuft to the end of a Creance, and faſten it to your Saddle-pummel, by which means when you gallop it will reſemble a running Hare: then unhood your *Hawk*, and cry, *Back with the Dogs, back with the Dogs*. When you find ſhe hath ſeized it, let go your Creance, and ſuffer her to faſten thereon; then inſtantly reward her upon it, and encourage her as much as is poſſible.

When ſhe is well entred after this manner, take a living Hare and break one of her hinder Legs, and having before well acquainted your Faulcon with your Dogs by continual feed among them, I ſay then put your Hare out in ſome fair place with your Dogs, and the Faulcon will ſtoop and ruff her until the Dogs may take her; then take the Hare from the Dogs, and caſt her out to the Faulcon, crying, *Back, back there*.

If you would make your Hawk flying to the Partridge or Pheaſant after ſhe is reclaimed and made, then every time you lure her, caſt your Lure into ſome low Tree or Buſh, that ſhe may learn to take the Tree or Stand: if ſhe take the Stand before ſhe ſees the Lure, let her ſtand a while; and afterwards draw the Lure out before her, and cry with what words you have acquainted her to underſtand you by, and then reward

reward her well. After this manner she will learn to take Stand.

Feed her always on the ground, or in some thick place, for in such places she must encounter with the Pheasant at Pearch.

At first fly with her at young Pheasant or Partridge, to encourage her by advantage, and afterwards at the old.

If a Faulcon will not take Stand but keep on the Wing, then must you fly her in plain places where you may always see her upon you.

Draw your Faulcon out of the Mew twenty days before you Enseam her. If she trust and carry, the remedy is to cope her Talons, her Powlse and Petty-single.

Never reward your *Hawk* upon River-fowl, but upon the Lure, that she may the better love and esteem thereof.

The Crane ought to be flown at before Sun rising; for she is a slothful Bird, and you may cast off to her a Cast or Lease of Faulcons, or a Coshawk from the Fist, without Dogs. You must fly but once a day at the Crane, after which you must reward your Hawk very well, ever succouring her with a Grey-hound, which is the best of Dogs for that purpose.

Give your Faulcon a Beaching very early in the morning, and it will make her very eager to fly when it is time for it.

If you would have her a high flying *Hawk*, you must not feed her highly, but she should be fed nine days together before Sun-rising, and at night late in the cool of the Evening.

The Faulcon will kill the Hern naturally if she be a Peregrin or Traveller: yet you will do well to give her Trains.

A Faulcon may fly ten times in a day at a River, if the season be not extream; but more is inconvenient.

A *Hawk* ought to have forty Caſtings before ſhe be perfectly made. And indeed all *Hawks* ought to have Caſtings every night, if you would have them clean and ſound: for *Hawks* which have not this continual nocturnal Caſting will be ſurcharged with abundance of ſuperfluous Humours, which aſcending to the Brain, breed ſo great a diſturbance that they cannot fly ſo high as otherways they would. And it is good to give them Tiring or Plumage at night, eſpecially field-*Hawks*, but not Rive-*Hawks*, for fear of weakning their Backs.

When your *Hawk* hath flown or bated, feed her not ſo long as ſhe panteth, (but let her be firſt in breath again;) otherways you may bring her into a Diſeaſe called the *Pantas*.

If a Faulcon or other *Hawk* will not Seize nor Gorge, take the Quill of a Wild-gooſe, and tie it under her long Single; then will ſhe Seize and Gripe. When ſhe beginneth to ſeize, take away the ſaid Quill, and ſhe will ſeize long afterwards.

If you cannot give Covert to your Faulcon or Gos-hawk, then caſt her off with the Sun in her back.

When you draw your *Hawk* out of the Mew, if ſhe be greazie, (which you ſhall know by her round fat Thighs and her full Body, the fleſh being round, and as high as her Breaſt-bone) and if ſhe be well mew'd, and have all her Feathers ſummed, then give her at feeding-time in the morning two or three bits of hot meat; and at night give her leſs, unleſs it be very cold; and if ſhe feed well and without compulſion, give her waſht meat. Thus prepared, take the Wings of a Hen for her Dinner and waſh them in two waters. In the morning give her the Legs of a Hen very hot, at Noon meat temperately warm, a good Gorge; then let her faſt till it be late in the Evening. If ſhe have put over her meat, and there is nothing left in her Gorge, then give her warm meat, as in the morning. Thus diet her till it be convenient to give her Plumage,

male, the which you may know by theſe tokens: Firſt, the Fleſh of the end of the Pinion of the *Hawk's* Wing will ſeem ſofter and tenderer than it did before ſhe did eat waſht meat. Secondly, if her Mewte be white, and the black thereof be very black, and not mingled with any other colour. Laſtly, if ſhe be ſharp ſet, and doth plume eagerly, you may give her Caſting either of a Hare's or Coney's Foot, or the ſmall Feathers on the joint of the Wing of an old Hen.

Having ſet her on the Pearch, ſweep clean underneath, that you may ſee whether the Mewt be full of ſtreaks, or skins, or ſlimy: if it be, then continue this ſort of Caſting three or four nights together, but if you find the Feathers digeſted and ſoft, and that her Caſting is great, then take the neck of an old Hen, and cut it between the joints, then lay it in cold water, and give it your Faulcon three nights together; in the day-time give her waſht meat, after this Caſting or Plumage, as you ſhall ſee requiſite: and this will bear all down into the Pannel.

When you have drawn her out of the Mew, and her principal Feathers are ſummed, give her no waſht meats, but quick Birds with good Gorges, and ſet her out in open places.

General Inſtructions for an Oſtrager or Faulconer.

LET his *Jeſſes* and *Bewets* be of good Leather, having Bells big and ſhrill according to the proportion of the *Hawk*, with a Hood that is boſſed at the Eyes, and fizable for the Head.

He muſt uſe his *Hawk* in ſuch manner, that he may make her grow familiar with him alone or in company, and to that end he muſt often unhood and hood her again.

In nine nights the Faulconer ought not to let his *Hawk* Jouk at all, nor ſuffer her to pearch, but keep her during that time continually on his Fiſt.

When the Faulconer would call his *Hawk*, let him ſet her on the Pearch, unhood her, and ſhew her ſome meat within his Fiſt, call her ſo long till ſhe come to it, then feed her therewith: if ſhe come not, let her ſtand without food till ſhe be very ſharp ſet. Obſerve this order for about nine days.

When you would lure her give her ſome man to hold, and call her with a Lure well garniſht with meat on both ſides, and give her a bit: uſe her to this ſix or ſeven days; then cauſe her to be held farther from you, and caſt the Lure about your head, and throw it on the ground a little way from you: if ſhe come to it roundly, reward her bountifully. Having uſed her to this ſome certain days, take your Lure garniſhed as aforeſaid, and every day call her to you as far as it is poſſible for her to ſee or hear you, and let her be looſe from all her Furniture, without Loins or Creance. If ſhe come freely, reward her, and ſtop her now and then in her feeding; for that will make her come the better. You may do well to ſtop the Lure upon her ſometimes, and let her fly upon you. Here note, it is requiſite to bathe her before you take this courſe, leſt when ſhe is at liberty ſhe rangle to ſee Water, and in the mean time you loſe your *Hawk*; therefore bathe her every ſeven or eight days, for her nature requireth it.

When you have thus manned, reclaimed, and lured your *Hawk*, go out with her into the fields, and whiſtle her off your Fiſt, ſtand ſtill to ſee what ſhe will do, and whether ſhe will rake out or not: but if ſhe fly round about you, as a good *Hawk* ought to do, let her fly a turn or two, and fling her out the Lure, and ſet her foot a Chicken or Pullet, and having killed it, let her feed thereon.

Unhood

Unhood her often as you bear her; continue ſo doing till ſhe hath endewed and mewted ſufficiently.

Your *Hawk* being thus made and manned go abroad with her every morning when it is fair, and let the place where you intend to fly her be plaſhy, or ſome narrow Brook; and when you caſt her off, go into the Wind ſo far, that the Fowl may not diſcover you. When ſhe is caſt off, and beginneth to recover her Gate, make then to the Brook or Plaſh where the Fowl lie, always making your *Hawk* to lean in upon you: and when you ſee her at a reaſonable pitch, (her Head being in) lay out the Fowl, and land it if you can; and if you cannot, take down your *Hawk*, and let her kill ſome Train; to which end you muſt always carry ſome live Fowl with you, as a Duck, *&c.* And having ſlipt one of her Wing feathers, thruſt it through her Nares, and caſt her up as high as you can underneath your *Hawk*, that ſhe may the better know your hand.

If you would have your *Hawk* fly at one particular Fowl more than at another, you muſt then feed her well upon a Train of the ſame kind, as thus: Take a Creance, and tie that Fowl you would accuſtom her to fly to by the Beak, with meat on her Back, and cauſe one to ſtand cloſe that ſhall hold the Creance; then ſtanding afar off, unhood your *Hawk*, and let the Fowl be ſtirred and drawn with the Creance until your *Hawk* perceive it ſtir; and if ſhe ſoon it, make another Train thus: Take a living Fowl that can fly, half ſeel it and caſt it out; then let your *Hawk* fly to it; and if ſhe kill it, reward her well upon it.

Of the Rammage-faulcon.

If a faulconer chance to recover a *Rammage-Hawk* that was never handled before, let him immediately feel her, and at that inſtant put on her Jeſſes made of

ſoft leather; at the end thereof fix two Varvels, the one may bear your Coat of Arms, and the other your Name, that if ſhe chance to be loſt, they that take her up may know where to return her: put her on alſo a pair of Bells with two proper Bewets. Having thus furniſhed her, you muſt begin her manning by gentle handling. To avoid the danger of her Beak, you muſt have a ſmooth Stick about half a foot in length, with which you muſt ſtroak you *Hawk* about the Pinions of her Wings, and ſo downwards thwart her Train. If ſhe offer to ſnap at the Stick, withdraw not your hand, and let her bite thereon, the hardneſs whereof will ſoon make her weary of that ſport.

If you would man her well, you ſhould watch all the night, keeping her continually on your Fiſt.

You muſt teach her to feed ſeel'd; and having a great and eaſie Ruſſet hood, you muſt hood and unhood her often, ſeel'd as ſhe is, handling her gently about the head, coying her always when you unhood her, to the intent ſhe may not be diſpleaſed with her Keeper.

Let her plume and tire ſometimes upon a Wing on your Fiſt, keeping her ſo day and night, without pearching, until ſhe be weary, and will ſuffer you to hood her without ſtirring.

If your *Hawk* be ſo rammage that ſhe will not leave her ſnapping or biting, then take a little *Aloes ſuccotrina*, and when ſhe offers to ſnap, give it her to bite; the bitterneſs whereof will quickly make her leave that ill quality, Garlick I have heard will do the like, the ſtrong ſcent thereof being equally offenſive.

How to Hood a Hawk.

Having ſeel'd your *Hawk*, fit her with a large eaſie Hood, which you muſt take off and put on very often, watching

watching her two nights, handling her frequently and gently about the Head as aforesaid. When you perceive she hath no aversion to the Hood, unseel her in an Evening by Candle-light; continue handling her softly, often hooding and unhooding her, until she takes no offence at the Hood, and will patiently endure handling.

Take this Observation by the way, That it is the duty of a Faulconer to be endowed with a great deal of Patience; and in the next place he ought to have a natural love and inclination to *Hawks*; without these two Qualifications, all the Professors of this Art will prove *Mar-Hawks* instead of good Faulconers.

But to return where I left off: If your seel'd *Hawk* feeds well, abides the Hood and handling without striking or biting, then by Candle-light in an evening unseel her, and with your Finger and Spittle anoint the place where the Seeling thread was drawn through; then hood her, and hold her on your Fist all night, often hooding, unhooding and handling her, stroaking her gently about the Wings and Body, giving her sometimes a bit or two, also Tiring or Plumage. Being well reclaimed, let her sit upon a Pearch; but every night keep her on the Fist three or four hours, stroaking, hooding, and unhooding, *&c.* as aforesaid: and thus you may do in the day-time, when she hath learn'd to feed eagerly without fear.

How to make a Hawk know your Voice, and her own Feeding.

Having mann'd your *Hawk* so that she feeds boldly, acquaint her with your Voice, Whistle and such words as Faulconers use: you may do it by frequently repeating them to her as she is feeding on your Fist, *&c.* But I think the best way of making her acquainted with them, is by your experience and practice.

When

When she feeds boldly, and knows your Voice and whistle, then teach her to know her feeding, and to bate at it in this manner: Shew her some meat with your right hand, crying and luring to her aloud; if she bate or strike at it, then let her quickly and neatly foot it, and feed on it for four or five bits. Do thus often, and she will know her feeding the better.

After this, give her every night some Casting either of Feathers, or Cotton with Cloves or Aloes wrapt up therein, *&c.* These Castings make a *Hawk* clean and eager.

How to make your Hawk *bold and venturous.*

In the first place, to make her hardy, you must permit her to Plume a Pullet or large Chicken in a place where there is not much light: her Hood in a readiness, you must have either of the aforesaid alive in your hand; then kneeling on the ground, luring and crying aloud to her, make her plume and pull the Pullet a little; then with your Teeth drawing the Strings, unhood her softly, suffering her to pluck it with her Beak three or four times more; then throw out the Pullet on the ground, and encourage her to seize it. When you perceive she breaks it and takes blood, you must lure and cry aloud to her, encouraging her all the ways imaginable: then hood her gently, and give her Tiring of the Wing or Foot of the said Pullet.

How to make a Hawk *know the Lure.*

Your *Hawk* having three or four times thus killed a Pullet or large Chicken in some secret place, then thus teach her to know the Lure.

Having fastned a Pullet unto your Lure go apart, giving your *Hawk* unto another, who must draw loose the

the ſtrings of her Hood in readineſs: Being gone a little way, take half the length of the String, and caſt it about your Head, luring with your Voice at the ſame time, then let your *Hawk* be unhooded as you are throwing your Lure a little way from her, not ceaſing luring all the while. If ſhe ſtoop to the lure and ſeize, ſuffer her to plume the Pullet, ſtill coying and luring with your Voice; then let her feed on the Pullet upon the Lure: After that, take her on your Fiſt together with her meat, then hood her, and let her tire as aforeſaid. And thus you may teach her to come by degrees to a very great diſtance.

How to make a Hawk *flying.*

When your *Hawk* or *Haggard-faulcon* will come and ſtoop to the Lure roundly without any fear or coyneſs, you muſt put her on a great pair of Luring-bells, the like you muſt do to a *Soar-Hawk*: by ſo much greater muſt the Bells be, by how much your *Hawk* is giddy-headed, and apt to rake out at Check.

That being done, and ſhe ſharp ſet, go in a fair Morning into ſome large Field on Horſeback, which Field muſt be very little incumbered with Wood or Trees: having your *Hawk* on your Fiſt, ride up into the wind and having looſned her Hood, whiſtle ſoftly to provoke her to fly; and then you will obſerve ſhe will begin to bate, or at leaſt to flap with her Flags and Sails, and to raiſe her ſelf on your Fiſt: then ſuffer her until ſhe rowze or Mewt: when ſhe hath done either of them, unhood her, and let her fly with her Head into the Wind; for thereby ſhe will be the better able to get upon the Wing; then will ſhe naturally climb upwards, flying in a circle.

When ſhe hath flown three or four Turns, then cry and Lure with your Voice, caſting the Lure about your head, unto which you muſt firſt tie a Pullet: and if your Faulcon come in and approach near you, then caſt

caſt out the Lure into the Wind; and if ſhe ſtoop to it, reward her as before.

There is one great fault you will often find in the making of a *Hawk* flying, and that is, when ſhe flieth from the Fiſt ſhe will not get up, but take ſtand on the ground; a frequent fault in Soar-faulcons. You muſt then fright her up with your Wand, riding in to her; and when you have forced her to take a Turn or two, take her down to the Lure and feed her. But if this do no good, then you muſt have in readineſs a Duck feeled, ſo that ſhe may ſee no way but backwards, and that will make her mount the higher. This Duck you muſt hold by one of the Wings near the body in your right hand, then lure with your voice to make your Faulcon turn the head: when ſhe is at a reaſonable pitch, caſt up your Duck juſt under her, that ſhe may perceive it: if ſhe ſtrike, ſtoop, or truſs the Duck, permit her to kill it, and reward her, giving her a reaſonable Gorge. Uſe this cuſtom twice or thrice, and your *Hawk* will leave the Stand, delighting on the Wing, and will become very obedient.

Here note, that for the firſt or ſecond time it is not convenient to ſhew your *Hawk* great or large Fowl, for it often happens that they ſlip from the *Hawk* into the wind; the *Hawk* not recovering them, raketh after them, which puts the Faulconer to much trouble, and frequently occaſions the loſs of his *Hawk*.

But if it ſo chance that your *Hawk* ſo rake out with a Fowl that ſhe cannot recover it, but gives it over and comes in again directly upon you, then caſt out a ſeeled Duck; and if ſhe ſtoop and truſs it, croſs the Wings, and permit her to take her pleaſure, rewarding her alſo with the Heart, Brains, Tongue, and Liver. For want of a quick Duck, take her down with the dry Lure, and let her plume a Pullet, and feed her upon it.

By

By ſo doing, your *Hawk* will learn to give over a Fowl that rakes out, and hearing the Lure of the Faulconer, will make back again to the River, and know the better to hold in the Head.

A Flight for a Haggard.

When you intend a Flight for a Haggard, for the firſt, ſecond, and third time, make choice of ſuch a place where there are no Crows, Rooks, or the like, to take away all occaſion of her raking out after ſuch Check.

Let her not fly out too far on head at the firſt, but run after and cry, *Why lo, why lo*, to make her turn Head. When ſhe is come in, take her down with the Lure, unto which muſt be faſtned a live Pullet, and let her Tire, Plume, and feed as aforeſaid.

Sometimes a Haggard out of pride and a gadding humour will rangle out from her Keeper: then clog her with great Luring-bells, and make her a Train or two with a Duck ſeeled, to teach her to hold in and know her keeper: take her down often with the dry Lure, and reward her bountifully, and let her be ever well in blood, or you may whoop for your *Hawk* to no purpoſe.

How to make a Soar-faulcon *or* Haggard, *kill her Game at the very firſt.*

If ſhe be well lured, flieth a good Gate, and ſtoopeth well, then caſt off a well quaried *Hawk*, and let her ſtoop a Fowl on Brook or Plaſh, and watch her till ſhe put it to the plunge: then take down your *Make Hawk*, reward her, hood her, and ſet her; ſo you may make uſe of her if need require.

Then take your *Hawk* un entred, and going up the wind half a Bow-ſhot, unlooſe her Hood, and ſoftly whiſtle

whiſtle her off your Fiſt, until ſhe have rouzed or mewted: then let her fly with her Head into the wind, having firſt given notice or warning to the company to be in readineſs againſt the *Hawk* be in a good Gate, and to ſhew Water and to lay out the Fowl.

When ſhe is at a good pitch, and covering the Fowl, then notify that all the company make in at once to the Brook upon the Fowl, to land her: if your Faulkon ſtrike, ſtoope or truſs her Game, run in to help her, and croſſing the Fowls Wing, let her take her pleaſure thereon.

If ſhe kill not the Fowl at firſt ſtooping, give her then reſpite to recover her Gate. When ſhe hath got it, and her Head in, then lay out the Fowl as aforeſaid, until you land it at laſt; nor forgetting to help her as ſoon as ſhe hath ſeized it, giving alſo her due Reward.

Remedy for a Hawk's *taking Stand in a Tree.*

In the firſt place you muſt chuſe ſuch places where are no Wood or Trees, or as little as may be. If you cannot avoid it, then have two or three live Trains, and give them to as many Men, placing them conveniently for to uſe them. When therefore your *Hawk* hath ſtooped, and endeavours to go to ſtand, let him to whom the *Hawk* moſt bends caſt out his Train-Duck ſeeled: if the *Hawk* kill her, reward her therewith. If this courſe will not remedy that fault in her by twice or thrice ſo doing, my advice is then to part with the Buzzard.

How to help a Hawk *forward and coy through pride of Greaſe.*

There is a ſcurvy quality in ſome *Hawks*, proceeding from pride of Greaſe, or being high kept, which is

a

a diſdainful coyneſs. Such a *Hawk* therefore muſt not be rewarded altho ſhe kill; yet give her leave to plume a little; and then let the Faulconer take a Sheeps Heart cold, or the Leg of a Pullet, and whilſt the *Hawk* is buſie in pluming, let either of them be conveyed into the Body of the Fowl, that it may ſavour thereof; and when the *Hawk* hath eaten the Brains, Heart, and Tongue of the Fowl, then take out your Incloſure, and call your *Hawk* with it to your Fiſt, and feed her therewith: after this give her ſome Feathers of the Neck of the Fowl to ſcowr and make her caſt.

To make a Hawk *hold in her Head, and not mind Check.*

Take a piece of a Leaſe, and faſten it to your Lure-ſtring, the other end to the Wing of a Pidgeon, which you may put in and pull out of your Hawking-bag at your conveniency: when you find your *Hawk* apt to go out, ſhew your Pidgeon. I would not have you uſe it often; for it draws a *Hawk* from her place if well flown.

How to continue and keep a Hawk *in her high-flying.*

If your *Hawk* be a ſtately high-flying *Hawk*, you ought not to engage her in more flights than one in a Morning: for often flying brings her off from her ſtately pitch. If ſhe be well made for the River, fly her not above twice in a Morning; yet feed her up tho ſhe kill not.

When a high-flying *Hawk* being whiſtled to, gathers upward to a great gate, you muſt continue her therein, never flying her but upon broad Waters and open Rivers; and when ſhe is at the higheſt, take her

her down with your Lure; where when she hath plumed and broken the Fowl a little, then feed her up, and by that means you shall maintain your Faulcon high-flying, inwards, and very fond of the Lure.

Some will have this high-flying Faulcon seldom to kill, and not to stoop: yet if she kill every day, altho she stoop from a high Gate, yet if she be not rebuked or hurt therewith, she will, I can assure you, become a higher flier every day than other; but she will grow less fond of the Lure. Wherefore your high flying *Hawks* should be made inwards, it being a commendable quality in them to make in and turn head at the second or third toss of the Lure, and when she poureth down upon it as if she had killed.

And as the teaching of a Faulcon, or any other *Hawk* to come readily to and love the Lure, is an Art highly commendable, because it is the effect of great labour and industry; so it is the cause of saving many a *Hawk*, which otherwise would be lost irrecoverably.

Mark this by the way, that some naturally high-flying *Hawks* will be long before they be made upwards, still fishing and playing the slugs; and when they should get up to cover the Fowl, they will stoop before the Fowl be put out: And this may proceed from two causes. In the first place, she may be too sharp set, and in the next place, it may be she is flown untimely, either too soon or too late.

When you find a *Hawk* use those evil Tatches without any [illegible] use, cast her out a dead Fowl for a dead Quarry, and hood her up instantly without Reward to discourage her from practising the like another time: half an hour afterwards call her to the Lure and feed her, and serve her after this manner as she fisheth in that fashion.

Besides, to correct this errour, the Faulconer ought to consult the natures and dispositions of his *Hawks*, and

and ſhould carefully obſerve which fly high when in good plight, and which beſt when they are kept low; which when ſharpeſt ſet, and which on the contrary in a mean between both; which early at Sun riſing, which when the Sun is but two hours high; which ſooner, and which later in an Evening.

For know, that the natures of *Hawks* are different, ſo are the time to fly each one: For to fly a *Hawk* in her proper times, and to fly her out of it, is as diſagreeable as the flight of a *Gerfaulcon* and a *Buzzard*. Therefore the Oſtrager muſt fly his *Hawks* according to their natures and diſpoſitions, keeping them always in good order.

Where by the by take notice, all *Hawks*, as well *Soar hawks*, as *Mew'd-hawks* and *Haggards*, ſhould be ſet out in the Evening two or three hours, ſome leſs, having reſpect to their nature, as it is ſtronger or weaker; and in the morning alſo, according as they caſt, hooding them firſt and then ſetting them abroad a weathering, until you get on Horſeback to proſecute your Recreation.

A Flight for the Hern.

This Flight hath leſs of Art in it than Pleaſure to the Beholders; and, to ſay the truth, the Flight is ſtately and moſt noble.

As it is leſs difficult to teach a *Hawk* to fly at Fowl than it is to come unto and love the Lure, the firſt being natural, and not the laſt; ſo there is leſs induſtry to be uſed in making a *Hawk* fly the Hern than Water-fowl. To the firſt ſhe is inſtigated by a natural propenſity and inclination; to the latter ſhe is brought with art, pains, and much diligence.

At the beginning of *March* Herns begin to make their Paſſage: If therefore you will adapt your Faulcons for the Hern, you muſt not let them fly longer at the River, and withal you muſt pull them down to

make them light; which is done by giving them Hearts and Flesh of Lambs and Calves, also Chickens; but give them no wild Meats.

To the intent you may acquaint them one with the other, so that they may the better fly the Hern, and help one another, you must call a cast of them to the Lure at once; but have a care they crab not together, for so they may endanger one another in their flight.

When your *Hawk* is scowred and clean and sharp-set, you must get a live Hern, upon the upper part of whose long sharp Bill you must place a joint of a hollow Cane, which will prevent her from hurting the *Hawk*; that being done, tie the Hern in a Creance; then setting her on the ground, unhood your *Hawk*, who will fly the Hern as soon as she sees her. If she seize her, make in apace to succour her, and let her plume and take blood of the Hern; then take the Brains, the Marrow of the Bones, and the Heart, and laying it on your Hawking-glove, give it your Faulcon. After this, rip up her Breast, and let your *Hawk* feed thereon till she be well gorged: this being done, hood her up upon the Hern, permitting her to plume at her pleasure, then take her on your fist, and let her tire on the Foot or Pinion.

Because Herns are not very plentiful, you may preserve one for a Train three or four times, by arming Bill, Head, and Neck, and painting it of the same colour that the Hern is of; and when the Faulcon seizeth her, you must be very nimble to make in, and deceive her by a live Pidgeon clapt under the Wing of the Hern for the Faulcon, which must be her Reward.

The *Hawk* having thus several times taken her Train without discovery of the Delusion, you may then let the Hern loose in some fair Field without a Creance, or without arming her; when she is up of a reasonable height, you may cast off your Faulcon, who

who if ſhe bind with the Hern, and bring her down, then make in apace to reſcue her, thruſting the Hern's Bill into the ground, and breaking his Wings and Legs, that the *Hawk* may with more eaſe plume and foot him. Then reward her as before, with the Brains, Marrow of the Bones, and Heart, making thereof an *Italian Soppa*.

Thus much of a Train-Hern. Now to fly the wild Hern, it is thus: If you find a wild Hern at Siege, win in as nigh unto her as you can, and go with your *Hawk* under the Wind; and having firſt looſed her Hood in a readineſs, as ſoon as the Hern leaveth the Siege, off with her Hood, and let her fly. If ſhe climb to the Hern and bring her down, run in (as I ſaid before) to reſcue her, thruſting her Bill into the ground, breaking her Wings and Legs, and rewarding her as aforeſaid on your Hawking glove.

Now if your Faulcon beat not down the Hern, or do give him over, never fly your Faulcon again at a Hern, unleſs with a *Make-hawk* well entred; for the Coward by this means ſeeing another fly at the Hern and bind with her, takes freſh courage. And if they kill the Hern flying both together, then muſt you reward them both together while the Quarry is hot, making for them a *Soppa* as aforeſaid. This is the only way to make them both bold and perfect Herners.

Of the HAGGARD-FAULCON, *why ſo called: her good Shape and Properties: and what difference there is between a* Haggard *and a* Faulcon-gentle.

THE *Haggard* is by ſome called the *Peregrin-Faulcon*, becauſe, ſay ſome, ſhe is brought from a Country foreign and remote; and therefore others

call them *Travellers*, or *Paſſengers*. But if there be no other reaſon for the Name but this, all other *Hawks* coming from exotick places might borrow that Appellation.

Upon a threefold conſideration, I conceive they are called *Haggard* or *Peregrin-faulcons*.

Firſt, becauſe their Eyrie was never found in any Country by any man that ever I could hear or read of.

Secondly, becauſe theſe Faulcons range and wander more than other Faulcons do, ſtill ſeeking ſtrange and foreign Coaſts; ſo that whereever they come they may be juſtly called *Peregrins* or *Foreigners*.

Thirdly, and laſtly, ſhe never takes up her Habitation long in a place.

This *Haggard* is not inferiour to any other Faulcon, but very tender, and cannot endure hard Weather, ſay ſome; but my experience hath found it otherwiſe. The reaſon that may be alledged is this: Firſt, ſhe travels far as a ſtranger, and comes into Countries commonly in the hardeſt time of the Year: next, ſhe is a hot *Hawk*, which may be gathered from her high flying, where the Air is much colder than below, and therefore ought to be more hardy: laſtly, ſhe meweth with more expedition (if ſhe once begin to caſt her Feathers) than other Faulcons do.

They are of ſhape like other Faulcons; but as to mould they are of three ſorts, large, middle-siz'd, and little; ſome long-ſhaped, ſome ſhort truſſed; ſome larger, ſome leſs.

They have a fourfold Mail, blank, ruſſet, brown and turtle.

The goodneſs of her Shape conſiſts in having her Head plum'd dark or blank, flat on the top, with a white Wreath environing the ſame, a large blue bending Beak, wide Nares, a great black full Eye, high ſtately Neck, large Breaſt, broad Shoulders, a great Turtle-coloured Feather, long Veins and Sails, but ſlender

ſlender ſhaped, a long Train, high Thighs, and white on the Pendant Feathers, a large wide Foot, with ſlender Stretchers, and Talons tending ſomewhat to an azure colour.

You may know her in her flight from another by the ſtirring of her Wings; for ſhe uſeth no thick ſtroak, but getteth up to her *Mountee* leiſurely, without any great making out; beſides ſhe may be known by her extraordinary large Sails.

The differences between the *Haggard* and *Faulcon-gentle* are theſe.

Firſt, the *Haggard* is larger, being longer-armed with longer Beak and Talons, having a higher Neck, with a long and fair-ſeaſoned Head.

Secondly, her Beam-feathers in flight are longer than the *Faulcon-gentle*'s, her Train ſomewhat larger: Again, the *Haggard* hath a flat Thigh, and the other's is round.

Thirdly, the *Haggard* will lie longer on the Wing.

Fourthly, the *Haggard* at long flight exceeds the *Faulcon gentle*; which laſt flieth with more ſpeed from the Fiſt than the other. For maintenance of Flight and Goodneſs of Wing the *Haggard* exceeds all other *Hawks*.

Fifthly, and laſtly, the *Haggard* is more deliberate and adviſed in her Stooping than the *Faulcon-gentle*, who is more hot and haſty in her Actions, and miſſing the Fowl, is apt preſently to fly on head at the Check.

Of the BARBARY FAULCON.

THE *Barbary*, or, as ſome call her, the *Tartaret-Faulcon*, is a Bird ſeldom found in any Country, and is called a *Paſſenger* as well as the *Haggard*. They are ſomewhat leſſer than the *Tiercel-gentle*, and plum'd

red under the Wings, ſtrong-armed, with long Talons and Stretchers.

The *Barbary Faulcon* is venturouſly bold, and you may fly her with the *Haggard* all *May* and *June*. They are *Hawks* very ſlack in Mewing at firſt; but when once they begin, they mew their Feathers very faſt.

They are called *Barbary Faulcons*, becauſe they make their Paſſage through that Country and *Tunis*, where they are more frequently taken than in any other place, namely in the Iſles of the *Levant*, *Candy*, *Cyprus*, and *Rhodes*. In my opinion, ſhe is a *Hawk* of not much value, and therefore I ſhall leave her, to ſpeak of another of greater reputation.

Of the GERFAULCON.

THE *Gerfaulcon* is a very fair *Hawk*, and of great force, eſpecially being mewed: She is ſtrong-armed, having long Stretchers and Singles: She is fierce and hardy of nature, and therefore difficultly to be reclaimed. She is a lovely Bird to behold, larger than any kind of Faulcon: Her Eyes and Head are like the *Haggard*'s.

Her Beak is great and bending: She hath large Nares, and a Male like a *Lanner*'s: Her Sails are long and ſharp-pointed, her Train much like the *Lanner*'s: She hath a large Foot marble-feared, and is plumed blank, brown, and ruſſet. She expects great civility from her Keeper, who muſt exerciſe a great deal of patience on her.

The *Gerfaulcon*'s Eyrie is in ſome parts of *Pruſſia*, and on the Borders of *Ruſſia*; and ſome come from the Mountains of *Norway*, and from *Germany*: Theſe may be alſo called *Paſſengers*.

By

By reason of the fierceness and hardness of this Bird, she is very hardly manned and reclaimed; but being once over come, she proves an excellent *Hawk*, and will scarce refuse to fly at any thing.

Their Beaks are blue, so are the Sears of their Legs and Feet, having Pounces and Talons very long.

These *Hawks* do not fly the River, but always from the Fist fly the Herns, Shovelers, &c.

In going up to their Gate they do not hold that course or way which others do; for they climb up upon the Train when they find any Fowl, and as soon as they have reacht her they pluck her down, if not at the first, yet at the second or third encounter. You must feed and reward them like other Faulcons.

They are very crafty, and covet to keep their Casting long through sloth; therefore instead of Cotton, give them a Casting of Tow, and be sure to keep them sharp set.

In the manning and reclaiming you must by kindness make her gentle and familiar with you. When you have taught her to be lured loose, then learn her to come to the Pelts of Hens, or any other Fowl: but let her not touch any living Flesh, for fear that draw her Love away from your Voice and Hand.

All this time you must be close by her, about her, and upon your Knees using your Voice unto her, with her Dinner and Supper clean dresst and washt, giving her still some bits thereof with your Hand, that she may the more delight therein. By doing thus frequently you will so win her, that should she be guilty of Carrying, yet by this means she will be reclaimed, and forget that Error.

Let the Ostrager have special care how he make his *Gerfaulcon* at first, and indeed all other *Hawks*; for as they are made then, he shall ever find them after; and if they are well made, they are twice made, and for ever made; and therefore have a care of too much

precipitation in posting them forward, from one lesson to another, before they are perfect in any thing.

If you train her with Doves, she will not carry a Feather from you: But first before you spring her any Doves, let her kill four or five at Lure close by your Foot, having a pair of short Creances at your Lure.

Here note, that the *Gerfaulcon* is most desired for her high flying, and is best at Hern and the Mountee; And that you may bring her to perfection herein, play with your entermewed *Gerfaulcon* the first Year, shewing her all imaginable kindness, and shew all possible means to make her love you. When you have brought her forward, give her often Castings to cleanse and purge her, also to prevent the growth of too much glut and fatness in her inward parts, which will endanger her Life.

Of the SAKER.

THE *Saker* is a Passenger or Peregrin Hawk, for her Eyrie hath not been found by any. They are found in the Isles of the *Levant*, *Cyprus*, *Rhodes*, and *Candia*, and in several other Islands in the Sea.

She is somewhat larger than the *Haggard-faulcon*; her Plume is rusty and ragged; the Sear of her Foot and Beak like the Lanner; her Pounces are short, however she hath great strength, and is hardy to all kind of Fowl. She is more disposed to the Field a great deal than to the Brook, and delights to prey on great Fowl, as the Hern, the Goose, *&c.* As for the Crane, she is not so free to fly at her as the *Haggard-faulcon*. The *Saker* is good also for lesser Fowl, as Pheasant, Partridge, *&c.* and is nothing so dainty of her Diet as *Hawks* long-winged.

This

This *Hawk* will make excellent ſport with a Kite, who, as ſoon as ſhe ſees the *Saker* (the Male thereof is called a *Sakaret*) caſt off, immediately betakes her ſelf to, and truſts in the goodneſs of her Wings, and getteth to her pitch as high as poſſibly ſhe may, by making many turns and wrenches in the Air; which if well obſerved, together with the variety of conteſts and bickerings that are between them, it cannot but be very pleaſant and delightful to the beholder. I have known in a clear day and little wind ſtirring, that both the *Saker* and Kite have ſoar'd ſo high that the ſharpeſt Eye could not diſcern them, yet hath the *Saker* in the encounter conquered the Kite, and I have ſeen her come tumbling down to the ground with a ſtrange precipitancy.

Of all Birds the *Saker* hath the longeſt Train. This *Hawk* will fly at Hern, Kite, Pheaſant, Partridge, Quail, and ſometimes at the Hare; but her chiefeſt excellency conſiſts in her flying at the Crane. Now becauſe we have but few of them in *England*, I ſhall deſiſt from ſpeaking farther of the *Saker*, only that ſhe is made to the Lure as other *Hawks* are: and indeed all Faulcons are made after the ſame manner, yet are not flown withal alike; for *Sakers*, *Lanners*, *Gerfaulcons*, *Mylions*, and *Merlins* do not fly the River; if any do, it is very rarely.

Of the LANNER, LANNERET, *and* TUNISIAN.

THE *Lanner* is a *Hawk* common in all Countries, eſpecially in *France*, making her Eyrie on high Trees in Foreſts, or on high Cliffs near the Sea-ſide.

She is leſſer than the *Faulcon-gentle*, fair-plumed when an Enter-mewer, and of ſhorter Talons than any

any other Faulcon. Thoſe who have the largeſt and beſt-ſeaſoned Heads are the beſt *Lanners*.

With the *Lanner* or *Lanneret*, you may fly the River, and both are very good alſo for the Land.

They are not very choice in their Food, and can better away with groſs Victuals than any other *Hawk*.

Mew'd *Lanners* are hardly known from the *Soar-Hawks* (and ſo likewiſe the *Saker*) becauſe they do not change their Plume.

You may know the *Lanners* by theſe three tokens. 1. They are blacker *Hawks* than any other. 2. They have leſs Beaks than the reſt. 3. And laſtly, They are leſs armed and pounced than other Faulcons.

Of all *Hawks* there is none ſo fit for a young Faulconer as the *Lanner*, becauſe ſhe is not inclined to Surfeits, and ſeldom melts Greaſe by being over-flown.

There are a ſort of *Lanners* which Eyrie in the *Alps*, having their Heads white and flat aloft, large and black Eyes, ſlender Nares, ſhort and thick Beaks, and leſſer than the *Haggard* or *Faulcon gentle*. Some are indifferent large, ſome leſs, and others middle-ſized.

Their Tail is marble or ruſſet; their Breaſt Feathers white and full of ruſſet Spots; the points and extremities of their Feathers full of white drops; their Sails and Train long: They are ſhort leg'd, with a Foot leſs than that of a Faulcon, marble-ſeer'd; but being mew'd, the Seer changeth to a yellow.

The *Lanner* never lieth upon the Wing after ſhe hath flown to Mark, but after once ſtooping ſhe maketh a Point, and then, like the *Goſhawk*, waits the Fowl.

If ſhe miſs at the firſt down-fall and kill not, ſhe will conſult her advantage to her greateſt eaſe.

Theſe kind of *Hawks* are highly prized in *France* and *Italy*, neither is ſhe deſpiſeable in *England*; but

we

we look upon them as ſlothful and hard metled: and therefore if you intend to have any good of her, keep a ſtrict hand over her; for ſhe is of an ungrateful diſpoſition, and will ſlight your Kindneſſes, contrary to the nature of the *Faulcon-gentle*, who for one good uſage will return a treble courteſie, and the better ſhe is rewarded, the better ſhe will fly.

They are flown at Field or Brook, and are *Hawks* that maintain long Flights, whereby much Fowl is killed (and more than by a better *Hawk*) by reaſon of Dogs and Hawking-poles.

If you will fly with a *Lanner*, you muſt keep her very ſharp; and becauſe they keep their Caſtings long, by reaſon they are hard-metled *Hawks*, give them therefore hard Caſtings made of Tow and knots of Hemp.

In the reclaiming the *Lanner* and the *Lanneret* much pains and labour muſt be taken, and the chiefeſt thing is to make her well acquainted with the Lure, which muſt be garniſhed with hard waſht Meat, and let her receive the major part of her Reward in bits from your Hand: As for the reſt of her Training, take the ſame courſe which I have directed in the manning and ordering of the *Haggard-faulcon*. But above all, take pains to ſtay her, and by your utmoſt Art reſtrain her from dragging or carrying any thing from you, to which ill quality ſhe is more inclined than any other *Hawk* whatever.

To conclude this Chapter, I come next to the *Tuniſian-Faulcon*, which is not much different in nature from the *Lanner*, yet ſomewhat leſs, but in Foot and Plume much alike. She hath a large round Head, and is more creeſe than the *Lanner*, and more heavy and ſluggiſh in her flight.

She is called a *Tuniſian-Faulcon*, from *Tunis* the Metropolis of *Barbary*, the Country where ſhe uſually makes her Eyrie.

They

They are excellent *Hawks* for the River, lying long upon the Wing, and will fly the Field alſo very well.

They naturally delight to ſeize upon the Hare, and will ſtrike boldly at her. Much more might be ſaid of her, which I here omit, ſhe being a *Hawk* not very common in *England*.

Having curſorily diſcourſt in as good a Method as I could of the ſeven ſorts of Faulcons, with their Manning, Reclaiming, Luring, Training, Staying, *&c.* I ſhall proceed to give you an account of ſome other *Hawks*, which I propounded and promiſed in the beginning of this Treatiſe. Take them thus in order.

Of the MERLIN.

THE *Merlin* in Plume is much like the *Haggard-Faulcon*, alſo in the Seat of the Foot, Beak, and Talons, and is much alike in Conditions.

A *Merlin* well mann'd, lur'd, and carefully lookt after, will prove an excellent *Hawk*. Their flight is ſwifter than any other *Hawk*, and naturally they fly at Partridge, Thruſh, and Lark.

It is a Bird very buſy and unruly, and therefore the Faulconer ought to take ſpecial heed and care of them, leſt unnaturally they eat off their own Feet and Talons, which ſeveral of them have been known to do, and die thereby. For which cauſe *Merlins* ought not to be mew'd or intermew'd, becauſe in the Mew they often ſpoil themſelves.

She is accounted a *Hawk* of the Fiſt, and not of the Lure; but to my knowledge ſhe may be brought to love the Lure very well.

She is very venturous and hardy, which may appear by her flying at Birds as big or bigger than her ſelf,

ſelf with ſuch eagerneſs, as that ſhe will purſue them even into a Town or Village.

If you will fly with a *Merlin* at a Partridge, chuſe the *Formal*, which is the Female. The *Jack* is not worth the Training.

When you have made her to the Lure, and that ſhe will patiently endure the Hood, then make her a Train with a Partridge: If ſhe foot and kill it, reward her well, ſuffering her to take her pleaſure thereon. After this, fly her at the wild Partridge; if ſhe take or mark it at firſt or ſecond flight, being retrieved by the Spaniels, feed her upon it with a reaſonable Gorge, chearing her with your Voice in ſuch a manner that ſhe may know it another time. If ſhe prove not hardy at firſt Train, try her with a ſecond or third: If ſhe prove not then, ſhe will prove nothing worth.

If you fly the *Merlin* at Lark or Linnet, let it be with a Caſt of *Merlins* at once, becauſe they love to fly in company: beſides, it is a greater delight to the Spectators to ſee them fly together; you ſhall obſerve the one climb to the Mountee above the Lark, and the other to lie low for her beſt advantage.

When your *Merlin* is throughly manned and made gentle, (which you muſt bring to paſs according to the method propounded for other *Hawks*) I ſay, when ſhe is reclaimed, you may then carry her into the Fields, where having found a Lark or Linnet, get as near as you can into the Wind to the Bird; and as ſoon as the Bird riſeth from the ground, unhood your Caſt of *Merlins*, and caſt them off, and when they have beaten down the Lark, let them feed a little thereon.

There is a ſort of Larks which I would not adviſe the Faulconer to fly at, and they are called *Cut-larks*, which do not mount as the long-ſpur'd Field Lark, but fly ſtraight forward, to the endangering the loſs of your *Hawk* without any paſtime or pleaſure.

Of

Of the Mewing of Merlins, Faulcons, Gerfaulcons, *and* Mylions *at Stock or at Large; and which is the beſt way of Mewing.*

It is the opinion of ſome (but how commendable, I will leave the Reader to judge) that *Merlins* cannot be mew'd, or if they be, that they are very rarely good afterwards. Experience tells me the contrary: for if they be hardy, and have flown well in their Soarage, they have proved much better after mewing than before.

The time of mewing for Faulcons ſhould be about the latter end of *April*, at which time ſet down your Faulcons, diligently obſerving whether they be louzy or not: If they are, pepper them, and that will infallibly kill the Lice. You muſt alſo ſcour them, before you caſt them into the Mew.

Mewings are of two ſorts; the one looſe and at large, the other at the Stock or Stone.

Mewing at large is thus in ſhort: If your Room be large, by diviſions you may mew four Faulcons at once, each Partition conſiſting of about twelve foot ſquare, and as much in height, with two Windows two foot broad, the one opening to the North, for the benefit of cold Air; the other to the Eaſt, for the beneficial warmth of the Sun. At your Eaſt Window let there be a Board two foot broad, even with the bottom of the Window, with a Lath or Ledge round; in the middle ſet a green Turff, laying good ſtore of Gravel and Stones about it, thus your *Hawk* may take them at her pleaſure.

If your Faulcon be a great Bater, let your Chamber be on the ground, which muſt be covered four fingers thick with groſs Sand, and thereon ſet a Stone ſomewhat taper, of about a Cubit in height, on which they love to ſit, by reaſon of its coolneſs.

Make

Make her two Perches, at each Window one, to retreate her self as she pleaseth, either with Heat or Cold.

Every week or fortnight set her a Bason of Water to bathe in; and when she hath bathed therein, take it away the night following.

Your Mew must have a Portal to convey in the Hack, a thing whereon the Meat is served. I need not prescribe the manner how to make it, since it is a thing so generally known already.

You ought to keep one set hour in feeding; for so will she mew sooner and better. When she hath fed and gorged her self, then remove the Stick from the Hack on which the Meat was fastened, to keep her from dragging it into the Mew.

In the opinion of most, it is better Mewing at the Stock or Stone, which must be performed thus: Make choice of a Ground room remote from noise or concourse of People, and therein set a Table of what length you think is most convenient for the number of your Faulcons, and of about six foot in breadth, with thin Boards along the sides and ends about four fingers high from the Superficies of the Table, which must stand on Tressels about three foot high from the Ground. Let this Table be covered indifferently thick with great Sand mixt with small Pebbles, in the midst whereof place a pyramidal Free-stone about a yard in height, unto which tye your Faulcon, Gerfaulcon, Merlin, or Mylion: Then take a small Cord of the bigness of a Bow string, and put it through a Ring or Swivel, and bind it about the Stone in such sort that the Swivel may go round the Stone without let or hindrance, and thereunto tye the Lease of your *Hawk*.

Here note, that if you mew more than one *Hawk* in one Room, you must set your Stones at that distance, that when they bate they may not crab one another.

The

The reaſon of placing this Stone is, becauſe the Faulcon delights to ſit thereon for its coolneſs ſake, and the little gravelly Stones the *Hawk* frequently ſwallows to cool her within. The Sand is neceſſary to preſerve their Feathers when they bate, and their Mewets are the more eaſily cleanſed. The little Cord with the Swivel tyed about the Stone, is to keep the *Hawk* from tangling when ſhe bateth, becauſe the Ring will ſtill follow her.

All day let your *Hawk* ſtand hooded, only when you take her on your Fiſt to feed: At night unhood her, and leſt any Accident ſhould happen in the night, prejudicial to the *Hawk*, the Faulconer ought to lie in the Mew.

Of the HOBBY.

THE *Hobby* is a *Hawk* of the Lure, and not of the Fiſt, and is a high flier, and is in every reſpect like the *Saker*, but that ſhe is a much leſſer Bird.

The *Hobby* hath a blue Beak, but the Seer thereof and Legs are yellow; the Crinets or little Feathers under her Eye are very black; the top of her Head is betwixt black and yellow, and ſhe hath two white Seams on her Neck; the Plumes under the Gorge and about the Brows, are reddiſh, without ſpot or drop; the Breaſt-feathers are brown for the moſt part, yet powdered with white ſpots; her Back, Train, and Wings are black aloft, having no great Scales upon the Legs, unleſs it be a few beginning behind the three Stretchers and Pounces, which are very large in reſpect of her ſhort Legs; her Brail-feathers are engoured betwixt red and black; the Pendant-feathers (which are thoſe behind the Thigh) are of a ruſty ſmoaky complexion. The daring *Hobby* may be well called ſo, for ſhe is nimble and light of Wing, and dares encoun-

encounter Kites, Buzzards, or Crows, and will give ſouſe for ſouſe, blow for blow, till ſometimes they ſeize and come tumbling down to the ground both together.

They are chiefly for the Lark, which poor little creature ſo dreads the ſight of a *Hobby* ſoaring in the Air over her, that ſhe will rather chuſe to commit her ſelf to the mercy of Man or Dogs, or to be trampled on by Horſes, than venture her ſelf into that Element where ſhe ſees her mortal Enemy ſoaring.

The *Hobby* makes excellent ſport with Nets and Spaniels, which is performed after this manner. The Dogs range the field to ſpring the Fowl, and the *Hobbies* ſoar over them aloft in the Air: the ſilly Birds, fearing a Conſpiracy between the Hawks and Dogs to their utter deſtruction, dare not commit themſelves to their Wings, but think it ſafer to lie cloſe to the ground, and ſo are taken in the Nets. This ſport is called *Daring*.

Of the GOSHAWK.

THere are ſeveral ſorts of *Goſhawks*, and they are different in goodneſs, force, and hardneſs, according to the diverſity of their choice in Cawking: at which time when *Hawks* begin to fall to liking, all Birds of Prey do aſſemble themſelves with the *Goſhawk*, and flock together.

The Female is the beſt: and although there be ſome *Goſhawks* which come from *Sclavonia*, *Sardinia*, *Lombardy*, *Ruſſia*, *Puglia*, *Germany*, *Armenia*, *Perſia*, *Greece*, and *Africa*; yet there are none better than thoſe which are bred in the North parts of *Ireland*, as in the Province of *Ulſter*, but more eſpecially in the County of *Tyrone*.

Take these Rules as to the goodness of her proportion or shape.

She ought to have a small Head, her Face long and straight, a large Throat, great Eyes, deep set, the Apple of the Eye black, Nares, Ears, Back, and Feet large and blank; a black long Beak, long Neck, big Breast, hard flesh, long Thighs, fleshy, the bone of the Leg and Knee short, long large Pounces and Talons. From the Stearn or Train to the Breast forward she ought to grow round; the Feathers of the Thighs towards the Train should be large, and the Train-feathers short, and soft, somewhat tending to an Iron Mail. The Baryl-feathers ought to be like those of the Breast, and the Covert-feathers of the Train should be spotted and full of black rundles; but the extremity of every Train feather should be black-streaked.

The sign of force in a *Goshawk* is this: Tye divers of them in several places of one Chamber or Mew, and that *Hawk* that doth slise and Mewt highest and fartherst off from her, is without question the strongest *Hawk*; for the high and far mewting argues a strong Back.

I might tell you the ill shape of a *Goshawk*; but since I have declared the good, the bad may be collected from thence: *Contraria contrariis dignoscunter.* However take this general rule, That *Goshawk* that hath pendant Plumes over her Eyes, the whites whereof are waterish and blank, that is red mail'd or bright tawny, hath the most assured tokens of a *Hawk* that is ill conditioned.

The *Goshawk* preyeth on the Pheasant, Mallard, Wild-goose, Hare, and Coney; nay, she will venture to seize on a Kid or Goat; which declareth the inestimable courage and valour of this *Hawk*.

She ought to be kept with great care, because she is very choice and dainty, and looks to have a nice hand kept over her.

*How to make the Soar or Haggard-*Goſhawk.

Firſt trim them with Jeſſes, Bewets, and Bells, as ſoon as they come to your hands; keep them ſeeled ſome time, hooding and unhooding them often, teaching them to feed on the Fiſt three or four days, or till they have left their Rammageneſs and become gentle: having ſo done, unſeel them by Candle-light at night, cauſing them to tire or plume upon a Wing or Leg of a Pullet; and be ſure to deal gently and mildly with them until you have won and throughly manned them: then you may go into ſome pleaſant field, and firſt give them a bit or two hooded on your Fiſt, and the like unhooded, caſt them down fair and ſoftly on ſome Perch, and make them come from it to your Fiſt, calling to them with a Faulconer's uſual terms; and when they come, feed them, calling all the while in the ſame manner to make them acquainted with your voice. The next day you may call them with a Creance at a farther diſtance, feeding them as before.

When you have thus called your *Goſhawk* abroad three or four days, and that you find her grow cunning, then take her on your Fiſt, and mount on Horſeback, and ride with her an hour or two, unhooding and hooding her ſometime, giving her a bit or two in ſight of your Spaniels, that ſhe may not be afraid of them: this being done, ſet her on a Tree with a ſhort Creance tied to her Loins, and going half a ſcore yards from her on Horſeback, call her to your Fiſt according to art; if ſhe come, reward her with two or three bits, and caſt her up again to the Tree; then throw out a dead Pullet (to which ſhe was uſed before) about a dozen yards from her; if ſhe fly to it and ſeize it, let her feed three or four bits upon it; ride the mean while about her on Horſeback, and rate back your Spaniels, becauſe they ſhall not rebuke her at firſt,

and make her ever after afraid of them: then alight, and gently take her on your Fist, feed her, hood her, and let her plume or tire.

Here note, that the *Goshawk* is a greater Poulterer, and therefore it would be more requisite to throw out a dead Partridge, or one made artificially with its Wing, Tail and Plumage; which will cause her to know Partridge better, and Poultry less.

How to make a Goshawk *fly to a Partridge.*

Having manned your *Goshawk*, go into the field with her, carrying with you a Train-Partridge, and unhooding your *Hawk*, bear her as gently as you can; and you will do well to let her plume or tire, for that will make her the more eager.

If the Partridge spring, let her fly: if she mark one, two, three, or more on the ground, than go to her and make her take Pearch on some Tree thereby: then if you can retrieve the Partridge with your Spaniels, as soon as they spring it, you must cry, *Howit, howit*, and retrieve it the second time, crying when it springeth as aforesaid: if your *Hawk* kill it, feed her upon it.

If it so happen your Spaniels should take it (as it is very frequent for hot Spaniels to light upon the Partridge, being either flown out of breath, or overcharged with fear) then alight from your Horse, and taking it speedily from the Dogs, cast it out to your *Hawk* crying, *Ware Hawk, ware*, and let her feed thereon at her pleasure.

After this you must not fly her in two days: for having fed on bloody meat, she will not so soon be in good case to fly again; for such meat is not so easily endewed by a *Hawk* as the Leg of a Chicken or the like. Using her thus three or four times, she will be well in blood, and become an excellent Flier at this pleasant Field flight.

Here

Here note, that you muſt do at firſt with her as with other *Hawks*, that is, ſeel and watch her, and win her to feed, to the Hood, to the Fiſt, *&c.* and then enter her to young Partridges till *November*, at which time both Trees and Fields become bare and empty: then you may enter her to the old *Rewen*, ſetting her ſhort and eager; if ſhe kill, feed her up with the Partridge three or four times, and this will bring her to perfection.

If your *Hawk* be a good Partridger, let her not fly at the Powt or Pheaſant, for they fly not ſo long a Flight as the Partridge; and therefore the *Goſhawk*, being more greedy of Prey than any other *Hawk*, (yet deſirous of eaſe) would always covet ſhort Flights, not caring to hold out: not but that there are ſome good both for long and ſhort flights, but they are rarely found.

Beſides, you muſt have a great care in keeping them in good order, with Flying, Bathing, Weathering, Tiring, and Pluming.

How to help a Goſhawk *that turneth Tail to Tail, and giveth over her Game.*

It is uſual for a *Goſhawk* to fly at a Partridge, yet neither kill it nor fly it to mark, but to turn *Tail to Tail*; that is having flown it a Bow-ſhot or more, ſhe giveth over her Game, and takes a Tree: then muſt you call in your Spaniels to the Retrieve that way your *Hawk* flew the Partridge; let the Faulconer draw himſelf that way alſo, and carrying with him a quick Partridge, let him caſt it out to her, which will make her believe it is the ſame ſhe flew at. When you caſt it out, cry, *Ware Hawk, ware*; make her ſeize it, and feed her upon it: and this will encourage her to fly out her Flight another time. If the next time you fly her (which muſt be the third day) ſhe ſerve you ſo

again, then must you do as aforesaid with a live Partridge carried about you for that purpose: if she serve you so the third time, I would advise you to rid your hands of her as soon as you can.

How to make a Goshawk *fly quickly.*

The *Goshawk* (especially Soars and Niasses) are very loving to and fond of man, and therefore should be flown with a little more Rammage, else frequently, after two or three stroaks with their Wings, they will give over the flight, and return to the Keeper: wherefore you must fly with them as soon as you can. And yet there is an evil which attends this direction, and that is, by flying over-soon you will pull down your *Hawk* and make her poor, from whence proceeds fearfulness and cowardise. To remedy which, you must give your *Hawk* some respite, and set her up again before you fly her. There are some *Goshawks* (but very few) which will not fly when they are in good plight: then must you bate your flesh, and pinch them with scouring, washt meat, and the like. But the best way of flying such a one is when he is lusty and high: and to add to her vivacity and courage, let her be set abroad in the morning an hour or two, when the weather is not very cold; for being so weather'd, when she hath flown a Partridge to the Mark, she will not away until it be retrieved by the Spaniels.

How to fly a Goshawk *to the River.*

A *Goshawk* (but no *Tiercel*) may fly the River at Mallard, Duck, Goose, or Hern, with other large Water-fowl: She is made for that purpose after this manner.

First, make her to the Fist, as is prescribed in her making to the Field: then carry her into the field without Bells, and with a live Duck, which you must give

give to one of the company, who muſt hide himſelf in ſome Ditch or Pit with the Duck tied to a Creance: then muſt you draw near him with your *Hawk* unhooded on your Fiſt, and giving him ſome private notice to throw out the Duck, caſt off your *Hawk*: and if ſhe take it at the Source, let him reward and feed her with a reaſonable Gorge: then take her upon your Fiſt and hood her, permitting her to tire and plume upon the Leg or Wing of the Duck. The third day go again with her into the Field in like manner, or elſe find out ſome Plaſh or Pool where Wild-Fowl lie, taking the advantage of the riſing Bank: being near the Fowl, let ſome of the company raiſe them up, and your *Hawk* being unhooded, caſt her off; if ſhe kill any of them at Source, make in to her quickly, and croſs the Fowl's Wings, ſo that ſhe may Foot and plume it at her pleaſure, reward her as before. After this, take her on your Fiſt, and let her tire and plume the Leg or Wing of the Fowl aforeſaid.

When your *Goſhawk* is throughly nouzled, and well in blood, you may fly her twice a day or oftner, rewarding her as above.

An excellent way to preſerve a Goſhawk *in the time of her flying, eſpecially in hot weather.*

Take a pint of Red-roſe Water, put it into a Bottle, bruiſe one ſtick or two of green Liquoriſh and put in it, likewiſe a little Mace, and the quantity of a Wallnut of Sugar-candy, and draw her meat through it twice or thrice a week, as you ſhall find occaſion: It prevents the Phantaſs, and ſeveral Diſeaſes they are ſubject to: beſides, it gives a huge Breath, and gently ſcoureth her.

How to fly the Wild gooſe or Crane with the Goſhawk.

Having mann'd your *Goſhawk*, brought her to the Fiſt, and train'd her with a Gooſe in the Field, then ſeek out where Wild-geeſe, Cranes, or other large Wild-fowl lie: having found them afar off, alight and carry your *Hawk* unhoded behind your Horſe, ſtalking towards them until you have got pretty nigh them, holding down your *Hawks* covert under the Horſe's Neck or Body, yet ſo that ſhe may ſee the Fowl; then you muſt raiſe them, and caſting off your *Hawk*, if ſhe kill, reward her. And thus ſhe may kill four or five in a day.

In like manner, you may make her to the Crane, and may ſtalk to Fowl which lie in Ponds or Pits as aforeſaid.

Here note, that if you can fly at great, ſlight the leſſer Flights, which will make your *Hawk* the bolder.

How to mew a Goſhawk, *and draw her out of the Mew, and make her Flying.*

Having flown with a *Goſhawk*, *Tiercel*, *Soar*, or *Haggard* till *March*, give her ſome good Quarry in her Foot, and having ſeen her clean from Lice, cut off the Buttons of her Jeſſes, and throw her into the Mew; which Room ſhould be on the ground, and ſcituated towards the North, if poſſible.

Let the Pearchers therein be lined with Canvas or Cotton; for otherwiſe by hurting her Foot ſhe may get the Gour or Pynn.

Let the Mew have alſo a Window towards the Eaſt, and another Northward. There muſt be alſo a Baſon of Water in the Mew for bathing, which muſt be ſhifted every three days. Feed your *Hawk* with

with Pigeons, or elſe with the hot Fleſh of Weather-Mutton.

About the beginning of *October*, if you find your *Goſhawk* fair mew'd and hard penn'd, then give her Chickens, Lambs-hearts or Calves-hearts, for about twenty days together, to ſcour her, and make her fliſe out the ſlimy ſubſtance and glitt out of her Pannel, and enſeam her.

Having done thus, ſome Evening draw her out of the Mew, and new furniſh her with Jeſſes, Bells, Bewets, and all other things needful for her: then keep her ſeel'd two or three days, till ſhe will endure the Hood patiently; for mewed Hawks are impatient of the Hood as thoſe newly taken.

When you have won her to endure the Hood, then in an Evening by Candle-light you may unſeel her, and the next day ſhew her the Fiſt and Glove, making her to tire and plume morning and evening, giving her ſometimes in the morning (when her Gorge is empty) a little Sugar-candy, which will help her in an excellent manner to endew.

When you find your *Goſhawk* feed eagerly, and that you think in your Judgment ſhe is enſeamed, and that you may boldly fly with her, then go with her into the Field; ſhe will then bate, (if empty) and fly of her own accord: if ſhe kill, feed and reward her; but if ſhe fly to the mark with a Partride, then muſt you retrieve it, and ſerve her as afore declared.

Some general Obſervations for an Oſtrager or Falconer in Keeping and Reclaiming a GOSHAWK.

It frequently happens that a *Goſhawk* or *Tiercel*, where good in their Soarage, become worſe after they are mewed; and the reaſon may be, becauſe ſhe was

was not cheriſhed nor encouraged, to make her take delight in her Soarage.

For in a manner the major part of a Faulconer's skill conſiſts in coying and kind uſage of his *Hawk*, ſo cheriſhing her that ſhe may take delight in her Flight.

At the firſt entring of his *Hawk* he ought always to have a Train-Partridge in his Bag, to ſerve her with when need requires, to purchaſe her love: and let him take ſuch obſervations which may keep his *Hawk* always in good order. As firſt, he muſt know naturally all *Goſhawks* are full of moiſt humours, eſpecially in the Head, and therefore let him ply them with Tiring and Pluming morning and evening; for that will open them in the Head, and make them caſt water thereat. Let the *Goſhawks* tiring be a Rum of Beef, a Pinion or the Leg of a Chicken, given by the fire, or in the warm Sun: this not only opens her Head, but keeps her from ſlothfulneſs and good exerciſe.

Give her every night Caſting of Feathers or Cotton, and in the morning mark whether it be wrought round or not, whether ſweet or not, whether moiſt or dry, and of what colour the water is that drops out of her Caſting: by theſe means he ſhall know what condition his *Hawk* is in.

He alſo ought to regard her Mewts, to ſee whether they be clean or not, and give remedies accordingly. He ought alſo to conſider the ſeaſon; for in cold weather he muſt ſet his *Hawk* in ſome warm place where fire is made, he muſt line the Pearch with Canvas or Cotton, and muſt ſet it ſo far from the Wall that the *Hawk* hurt not her Feathers when ſhe bateth. If the weather be temperate, he may then ſet her in the Sun-ſhine for an hour or two in the morning.

Let no Hens or Poultry come near the place where your *Hawk* doth Pearch; and in the Spring offer her water every week, or elſe ſhe will ſoar away from you when ſhe flieth, and you may go look her.

If

If your *Hawk* hath her ſelf ſpontaneouſly in cold weather after her flight, go preſently to the next houſe and weather her with Back to the fire, and not her Gorge, for that will make her ſick: and dry your *Hawk* if you have carried her in the Rain.

A good Faulconer will always keep his *Hawk* high and luſty, yet ſo that ſhe may be always in a condition to fly beſt.

Alſo he muſt keep his *Hawk* clean, and her Feathers whole: and if a Feather be broken or bruiſed, he muſt preſently imp it, and to that end he muſt have his Imping-needles, his Semond, with other Inſtruments always in readineſs.

The firſt year it is moſt requiſite to fly your *Goſhawk* to the Field, and not to the Covert; for ſo they will learn to hold, and not turn tail in the midſt of their flight: and when they are mewed *Hawks*, you may make them do what you will: and it is better to let her be a little rammage than to be overmanned.

Her feeding is beſt on hot meats: and if you would inſtruct her to kill great Fowl, make her Trains thereof; and if you would have her continue thoſe Flights, never fly her at leſs, for that will take her off from them and ſpoil her. If you will make her to fly with a Dog to aſſiſt her, then feed your *Hawk* with great Fowl, and your Dogs with fleſh tied under their Wings. If you train your *Hawk* with them, rewarding her upon the Train, and your Dog with her, this will make them acquainted together.

Thus continue doing till your Dog throughly knows his duty: and be ſure to keep your Dog tied up; for if you let him go looſe, it will ſpoil the beſt Dog that is: and never give him a reward, but when he maketh in at ſuch Fowls to reſcue the *Hawk*.

Call your *Goſhawk* to no other thing than your Fiſt, and oftentimes ſpurt good wine on your *Goſhawks* Sears: And note, that in all her Diſtempers ſweet things

things are beſt to be adminiſtred in her Medicines.

Of the SPARROW-HAWK.

THE laſt *Hawk* which we ſhall treat of, is the *Sparrow-hawk*, of which there are ſeveral kinds, and of different Plumes.

For the kinds, there is the *Sclavonian*, *Calabrian*, *Corſican*, *German*, *Vicentian*, and *Veronian*, *Alpiſan*, *Sabbean*, and *Bergamaſcan*, in the black Vale near the Confines of *Valtolina*. It is needleſs to give you a particular account of them.

Their Plumes are different: ſome are ſmall plumed and blank *Hawks*, others of a larger Feather, ſome plumed like the Quail, ſome brown or Canvas-mail'd, and others have juſt thirteen Feathers in their Train, *&c.*

To be ſhort, this Character I may juſtly give the *Sparrow-hawk* in general, that ſhe is in her kind, and for that Game her ſtrength will give her leave to kill, a very good *Hawk*. Beſides, he that knows how to man, reclaim, and fly with a *Sparrow hawk*, may eaſily know how to keep and deal with all other *Hawks*.

And herein lieth an excellency in the *Sparrow-hawk*, ſhe ſerves both for Winter and Summer with great pleaſure, and will fly at all kind of Game more than the Faulcon. If the Winter *Sparrow-hawk* prove good, ſhe will kill the Pie, the Chough, the Jay, Wood-cock, Thruſh, Black-bird, Felfare, with divers other Birds of the like nature.

How

How to make a Sparrow-hawk, *whether Eyeſs, Brancher, Soar, Mew'd, or Haggard.*

Sparrow-hawks are to be conſidered as all other kinds of *Hawks* are, according to their age and diſpoſition.

The ſeveral kinds of *Sparrow-hawks* may be comprehended under theſe five heads; the *Eyeſſes* or *Nyeſſes*, *Branchers*, *Soars*, *Mew'd*, and *Haggards*.

Eyeſſes, are mewed in the wood, and are taken in the Eyrie.

Branchers, are thoſe which have forſaken the Eyrie, and are fed near it by the old ones on Boughs and Branches.

Soar-hawks, are ſo called, becauſe, having forſaken the Eyrie, and beginning to prey for themſelves, they ſoar up aloft for pleaſure.

Mew'd Haws, are ſuch which have once or more ſhifted the Feather.

Laſtly, *Haggards*, are they which prey for themſelves, and do alſo mew in the Wood or at large.

This diviſion of kinds is not peculiar to the *Sparrow-hawk*, but common to all: give me leave to run them over in order as I have ſet them down.

For the *Eyeſs* or *Nyeſs*, (which is of greateſt difficulty to bring to any perfection) you muſt firſt feed her in ſome cool Room which hath two Windows, the one to the North, and the other to the Eaſt, which muſt be open, and barred over with Laths, not ſo wide for a *Hawk* to get out, or Vermin to come in: ſtrow the Chamber with freſh Leaves, and do in every reſpect to this Room as I have ordered in a former Chapter for the Mewing the Faulcon.

You muſt feed your *Eyeſs* with Sparrows, young Pigeons, and Sheeps-hearts. Whilſt ſhe is very young and little you ſhould cut her meat, or ſhred it into

ſmall

ſmall pallets, and feed her twice or thrice a day, according as you find her endew it or put it over.

When ſhe is full ſummed and flieth about, then give her whole ſmall Birds and ſometimes feed her on your Fiſt, ſuffering her to ſtrain and kill the Birds in your hands; and ſometimes put live Birds into the Chamber where ſhe is, that ſhe may learn to know to foot and to kill them; and let her feed upon them in your preſence: by this courſe you will not only neul her, but take her off from that ſcurvy quality of hiding her Prey when ſhe hath ſeized it, a natural property belonging to all Eyeſſes. Likewiſe every morning go into the Room, call her to your Fiſt, whiſtle and uſe ſuch terms as you would have her hereafter acquainted with. When ſhe hath put forth all her Feathers and is full ſummed, then take her out of the Chamber, and furniſh her with Bells, Bewets, Jeſſes and Lines.

It will be altogether requiſite to ſeel her at firſt, that ſhe may the better endure the Hood and handling: and let it be a Ruſſet-hood that is large and eaſie, which you muſt pull off and put on frequently, ſtroaking her often on the head, till ſhe will ſtand gently.

In the Evening by Candle-light unſeel her, giving her ſomewhat to tire upon, handling and ſtroaking her Feathers gently, hooding and unhooding her as often as you think fit.

Before I proceed any farther, I ſhall inform you how to Seel a *Hawk* after the beſt manner. Take a Needle threaded with untwiſted Thread, and caſting your *Hawk* take her by the Beak, and put the Needle through her Eye-lid, not right againſt the ſight of the Eye, but ſomewhat nearer the Beak, that ſhe may have liberty to ſee backward; and have eſpecial care that you hurt not the Web: then put your Needle through the other Eye-lid, drawing the ends of the Thread together, tie them over the Beak not with a

ſtraight

ſtraight knot, but cut off the Threads near to the end of the knot, and ſo twiſt them together, that the Eye-lids may be raiſed ſo upwards that the *Hawk* may not ſee at all, but as the Thread ſhall ſlacken, ſhe ſhall be able to ſee backwards only, which is the cauſe that the Thread is put nearer the Beak.

When your *Eyeſs* is well won to the Hood, and to the Fiſt, let her kill ſmall birds thereon; then call her two or three days or longer, till ſhe will come far off; then take a live Pidgeon tied by the Foot with a Creance, and ſtir it till your *Hawk* will bate at it and ſeize it, but not far off, that you may quickly help her at the firſt, leſt the Pidgeon ſtruggling with her ſhe prove too ſtrong, and diſcourage your young *Hawk*: then let her plume and feed her thereupon, whiſtling the while, that ſhe may know it another time; then hood her, and let her plume and tire a little.

You may uſe her to Trains of Chicken and Quail: and when ſhe will ſeize readily by often Training, ride out with her in the morning into the Fields, where calling your *Sparrow-hawk* to your Fiſt, and giving her a bit or two, go with your Spaniels to ſeek ſome Beavy of young Quails, advancing your Fiſt aloft, that your *Hawk* may ſee them when they ſpring, flying her at advantage: if ſhe kill reward her, *&c.* if ſhe miſs, ſerve her with the Train of a Quail.

Let your Dogs hunt on your right hand when they range, but eſpecially when they queſt and call, to the end you may the better caſt off your *Hawk*. When your *Hawk* is throughly entred and well nouzled, you may then hold your hand low, for ſhe will now bate at the Whur: but whatſoever you do, have a quick eye and a good regard to the Spaniels, not coveting to be too near them, but a little above them, that you may let your *Hawk* fly coaſting at the advantage when the Game ſpringeth.

Of the Brancher, Soar, Mew'd, and Haggard Sparrow-hawk.

Having ſpoken of the firſt kind of *Sparrow hawks*, viz. the *Eyeſs*, and other four in the Title of this Chapter, muſt conſequently be diſcourſed of.

I ſhall give you but few inſtructions, for in effect the ſame Precepts that ſerve for the *Eyeſs* will ſerve alſo for the *Brancher*, *Soar*, *Mew'd*, and *Haggard Hawks*, only this, theſe four laſt require not ſo much pains to be taken to make them know their Game as the *Eyeſs*, becauſe they have been accuſtomed to prey for themſelves.

Above all things, the Faulconer muſt take them off from their ill cuſtom of carrying, and that may be done by ſerving them with great Trains, whereby, they will learn to abide on the Quarry.

Be very mindful of coying them as much as you can, for they will remember a kindneſs or injury better than any other *Hawk*.

If the *Hawk* be newly taken, and will not feed, then rub her Feet with warm fleſh, and whiſtling to her, and ſometimes putting the fleſh unto her Beak: if ſhe will not yet feed, rub her Feet with a live Bird; if at the crying of the Bird the *Hawk* ſeizeth it with her Feet, it is a ſign ſhe will feed; then tear off the Skin and Feathers of the Bird's Breaſt, and put the Bird to her Beak, and ſhe will eat.

When ſhe will feed upon your whiſtle and chirp, then hood her with a Rufter-hood, and feed her betimes in the morning; and when ſhe hath endewed, give her a Beaching in the day time, and every time you hood her, give her a bit or two; at evening give her the Brains of a Hen for her ſupper: and in every thing elſe order theſe *Hawks* aforeſaid, as you do the Faulcon and the reſt.

Others

How to mew Sparrow-hawks.

Some uſe to put their *Sparrow-hawk* into the Mew as ſoon as they leave flying her, cutting off both her Bewets, Lines, and knots of her Jeſſes, and ſo leave them in the Mew till they are clean mewed.

If you will have your *Sparrow-hawk* to fly at Quail, Partridge, or Pheaſant-powt, then you muſt draw her in the beginning of *April*, and bear her on the Fiſt till ſhe be clean and throughly enſeamed.

Others keep their *Sparrow-hawks* on the Pearch until *March*, and then throw them into the Mew, peppering them for Lice, if they have any. Her Mew ſhould be a Chamber aloft from the ground, eight or nine foot long, and about ſix foot broad, her Windows and Pearches muſt be like the Goſhawks.

Her Mew being thus provided, in *May* go in to her in an Evening by Candle-light, and taking her up ſoftly, pull out all her Train feathers one after another, this ſhall make her mew the faſter, eſpecially if you feed her with hot meat and Birds, obſerving a certain hour to feed her in.

Once in fourteen days ſet water before her in the Mew, if you perceive ſhe hath any Feathers or Down which ſtand ſtaring upon her Back, ſitting as if ſhe would rouze, then ſet her water ſooner. If you put water by her continually, it delays her Mewing, and to keep it always from her, cauſeth her to mew her feathers uncleanly, but water once in a fortnight is the beſt Medium for her Mewing between thoſe two extreams.

Thus having given you a ſummary account of moſt *Hawks* commonly in uſe in *England*, and in moſt parts of *Europe*, ſhewing their Shapes, Complexions, Natures, manner of Manning, Reclaiming, Ordering,

Luring, Flying, Mewing, &c. I ſhall next give you an account of the ſeveral Diſeaſes and Maladies they are ſubject to, with their proper Cures and Remedies; but before I ſhall enter thereon, give me leave to inform the Oſtrager or Faulconer of his neceſſary duties.

The Duty of a Faulconer; with neceſſary Rules and Obſervations for him to follow.

A Faulconer ought to conſult and conſider the quality and mettle of his *Hawks*, and to know which of them he ſhall fly with early, and with which late.

He muſt be fond of his *Hawk*, patient, and cleanly, in keeping her from Lice, Mites, and the like Vermin. He muſt rather keep his *Hawks* high and full of fleſh, than poor and low, which makes them more ſubject to infirmities than when they are in very good plight.

Every night after flying, he muſt give his *Hawk* Caſting, ſometimes Plumage, ſometimes Pellets of Cotton, and ſometimes Phyſick, as he ſhall find her diſeaſed by her Caſting or Mewt.

Every night he muſt make the place very clean under her Pearch, that he may know by her Caſting whether the *Hawk* ſtands in need of Scourings upwards or downwards.

Let him remember every Evening to weather his *Hawk*, excepting ſuch days wherein ſhe hath bathed, after which, in the Evening ſhe ſhould be put into a warm Room on a Pearch with a Candle burning by her, where ſhe muſt ſit unhooded, if ſhe be not rammage, to the intent ſhe prune and pick her ſelf, and rejoyce by enoiling her ſelf after bathing, and in the morning he ought to weather her, and let her caſt, if ſhe

ſhe hath not done it already, keeping her ſtill hooded till he carry her in the field.

In feeding his *Hawk* he muſt have a care of feeding her with two ſorts of meat at one time, and what he giveth her muſt be very ſweet.

If he have an occaſion to go abroad, let him have a care that he pearch not his *Hawk* too high from the ground for fear of bating and hanging by the Heels, whereby ſhe may ſpoil her ſelf.

He ought to carry to the Field with him Mummy in powder, with other Medicines, for frequently the *Hawk* meets with many accidents, as bruiſes at encounters, *&c.* neither muſt he forget to carry with him any of his neceſſary Hawking implements.

Laſtly, he muſt be able to make his Lures, Hoods, of all ſorts, Jeſſes, Bewets, and other needful Furniture for his *Hawk*: neither muſt he be without his Coping-Irons to cope his *Hawk*'s Beak, if it be overgrown, and to cope her Pounces and Talons, as need ſhall require, neither muſt he be without his Cauterizing-Irons.

Let theſe inſtructions ſuffice, I being willing to leave the reſt to the care and obſervation of the ingenious Faulconer.

Of Diſeaſes *and dangerous* Accidents *incident to* HAWKS, *and their ſeveral* Cures.

IT is neceſſary for a skilful Faulconer not only to know how to Man, Reclaim, Keep, Fly, Imp, and Mew his *Hawk*, with other things pertinent to that purpoſe, but alſo to know their Diſeaſes, with the proper Cures of them, and other Accidents frequently befalling *Hawks*, both in their Flights and otherways.

Before we ſhall characterize their Maladies and preſcribe rules for their Cures, it will not be irrequiſite to tell you what *Hawks* as well as men, (which ſeems ſomewhat ſtrange) have four Complexions, the true indicators of their natures, and as in man his natural Complexion and Conſtitution is known by his Skin, ſo is the Temperament and natural Diſpoſition of a *Hawk* by her Coat and Plume. This opinion hath not been only averr'd by the Ancients, but confirmed by the modern experience of the Skilful in the Noble Art of Hawking. Take it in this manner.

Faulcons that are *black* are *Melancholick*, and are to be Phyſicked with hot and moiſt Medicines, becauſe their Complexion is cold and dry, for which purpoſe Aloes, Pepper, Cocks-fleſh, Pidgeons, Sparrows, Goats-fleſh, and the like, are very good.

Faulcons *blank* are *Phlegmatick*, and muſt have Phyſick hot and dry, becauſe Phlegm is cold and moiſt, to which purpoſe Cinamon, Gloves, Cardamomum, Goats-fleſh, Choughs, *&c.* are very good.

Faulcons *Ruſſet* are *Sanguine* and *Cholerick* indifferently mixed, and their Phyſick muſt be cold, moderately moiſt and dry, as Myrtle, Caſſia-fiſtula, Tamarinds, Vinegar, Lambs-fleſh, and Pullets.

Thus much for the Complexions. Now for the Diſeaſes and their Cures.

Of Caſtings, *and* Mewtings, *either good or bad according to their ſeveral Complexions and Smells.*

Caſtings are of two ſorts, *Plumage*, or *Cotton*, the latter is moſt commonly given in Pellets, which muſt be about the bigneſs of an Hazle-nut, made of fine ſoft white Cotton, after ſhe hath ſupped you muſt convey this into her Gorge.

In the morning diligently obſerve how ſhe hath rolled and caſt it, whereby you ſhall know whether ſhe

ſhe be in a bad or good condition, for example, if ſhe caſt it round, white, not ſtinking, nor very moiſt or wateriſh, you may conclude her ſound, but if ſhe roll it not well, but caſt it long, with properties contrary to the former, then ſhe is unſound and full of Diſeaſes.

Beſides, if her *Caſting* be either black, green, yellowiſh, ſlimy, or ſtinking, it denotes your *Hawk* to be diſeaſed. The former *Caſting* is remedied by hot meats, the latter by feeding her well, and waſhing her meats in cool water, as of Endive, *&c.* and give her one or two *Caſtings* of Cotton, incorporating therewith Incenſe and Mummy. But if ſhe continue notwithſtanding in this condition, give her an upward Scowring made thus. Take Aloes pulverized one ſcruple, powder of Clove four grains, powder of Cubebs three grains, incorporate theſe, and wrap them in Cotton, and give it your *Hawk* empty, having no meat in her Pannel.

Caſting of *Plumage* is to be obſerved as the formed *Caſting*, that is, if in the morning you find them round and not ſtinking, it is a good ſign, but if long, ſlimy, with indigeſted fleſh ſticking to the ſame, and having an ill ſcent, it is very bad. Here note, that by how much the more ſweet or ſtinking the *Caſting* is, by ſo much is the *Hawk* in a better or worſe condition.

Mewts muſt be obſerved as well as *Caſtings*, in this manner: If the Mewt be white, not very thick nor clear, having no black ſpot in it, or but very little, it is a ſign of the healthy conſtitution of the *Hawk*, but if it be white and very thick in the middle, though it doth not import ſickneſs, yet it ſheweth her to be too groſs and over-full of Greaſe, which you muſt remedy by giving her moiſt meats, as the Heart of a Calf or Lamb, *&c.* and for two mornings after give her ſome Sugar-candy, or elſe the Gut of a Chicken well waſht and fill'd with Oyl-Olive, either of theſe will ſcour her and make her to ſlice freely.

It is a very bad and mortal ſign, to ſee your *Hawk's* Mewt full of variety of colours, therefore you muſt ſpeedily prevent enſuing miſchiefs by giving her Mummy purified and beaten to powder, wrapping it in Cotton.

If the Mewt be more yellow than white, then doth ſhe abound with Choler, proceeding from great Flights in hot weather, alſo from much Bathing. This is remedied by waſhing her meat in Bugloſs, Endive, Borage, and ſuch like cold Waters, wringing the ſaid meat after you have ſo waſhed it.

The *black* Mewt is a moſt deadly ſign, and if it continue four days ſhe will peck over the Pearch and die. If the mewt ſo but once, there is no great danger, for it proceeds either from the Blood or Guts of the Fowl in tiring, or elſe from being gorged with filthy meats, in this caſe give her good warm meat and Cotton-caſting, with the powder of Cloves, Nutmeg, and Ginger, or Mummy alone.

If the mewt be *green*, it is a bad ſign, and denotes her troubled with an infected and corrupt Liver, or with ſome Apoſtume, unleſs ſhe be a Rammage-*Hawk*, and then that ſign holds not good. Her cure is, by feeding her with meat powdered with Mummy, if ſhe will not take it with her Food, then give it her in a Scowring or Caſting, but if this ill-colour'd mewting continue ſtill, then give her a Scowring of Agarick, and after that another of Incenſe pulverized to comfort her.

The dark *ſanguine* Mewt with a black in it is the moſt deadly ſign of all, and differs but little, if any thing, from the former black mewt. A *Hawk* mewing after this manner is irrecoverable, and therefore it is needleſs to preſcribe a Cure.

Laſtly, the *gray* Mewt like four Milk, is a mortal token, yet curable as ſhall be ſhewen hereafter.

Thus you may ſee how requiſite it is for a Faulconer to obſerve diligently every morning his *Hawks* Caſtings,

ings and mewtings, that knowing thereby their Maladies, he may timely find out their Remedies. Let us now proceed to their particular Diſeaſes.

Of the Cataract.

The *Cataract* in the Eyes of a *Hawk*, is a malady not eaſily removed, and ſometimes incurable, when it is too thick, and of a long continuance.

It proceedeth from groſs Humours in the Head, which frequently do not only dim, but extinguiſh the ſight, and ſometimes the Hood is the cauſe of this miſchief.

The cure muſt be effected by Scowring her two or three days with Aloes or Agarick, then take the powder of waſht Aloes finely beaten one ſcruple, and two ſcruples of Sugar-candy, mingle theſe together, and with a Quill blow it into your *Hawks* Eye afflicted as aforeſaid three or four times a day. This is the gentleſt and moſt Soveraign Medicine of any yet I have tried. But if this will not do, you muſt uſe ſtronger Medicines as the juice of Celandine roots, bathing their eyes often with warm Roſe-water, wherein hath been boil'd the ſeed of Fenugreek.

Of the Pantas *or* Aſthma.

The *Pantas* is a dangerous Diſtemper, and few *Hawks* eſcape which are afflicted therewith. It happens when the Lungs are as it were ſo baked by exceſſive heat, that the *Hawk* cannot draw her breath, and when drawn, cannot well emit it again. You may judge of the beginning of this Diſtemper by the *Hawks* labouring much in the Pannil, moving her Train often up and down at each motion of her Pannel, and ſhe cannot many times mewt or ſlice, or if ſhe do, ſhe drops it faſt by her. It is known likewiſe by your *Hawks* frequent opening her Clap and Beak.

The best Remedy is, to scour your *Hawk* with good Oyl Olive well washed in several Waters till it become clear and white, which you must do after this manner: Take an earthen Pot with a small hole in the bottom thereof, which you must stop with your Finger, then pour therein your Oyl with a quantity of Water, and coil these together with a Spoon till the Water grow darkish, after which remove your Finger, and the Water will run out, but the Oyl remain behind, floating on the top, thus do seven or eight times, till you have throughly purified the Oyl: Then take a Sheeps Gut above an Inch long for a Faulcon and Goshawk, but of less length for lesser *Hawks*, and fill it with this Oyl, and fasten it with a Thread at both ends. Your *Hawk* having first cast, convey this Gut into her Throat, holding her on the Fist till she make a Mewt, an hour after she hath done mewting feed her with a Calf's Heart or a Pullet's Leg, giving her every third or fourth day a Cotton casting with Cubebs and Cloves. I shall only add one Receipt more for the *Pantas* or *Asthma*, and that is the Oyl of sweet Almonds poured into a washt Chicken's Gut, and given the *Hawk*, which is of great efficacy in the cure of this Disease.

Of Worms.

There are a sort of Worms an Inch long, which frequently afflict *Hawks*, proceeding from gross and viscous Humours in the Bowels, occasioned through want of natural heat and ill digestion.

You may knowwhen she is troubled with them by her casting her Gorge, her stinking Breath, her trembling and writhing her Train, her croaking in the night, her offering with her Beak at her Breast or Pannel, and by her Mewt being small and unclean.

You may cure her of them with a Scowring of washt Aloes, Hepatick, Mustard-seed, and Agarick, of each

each an equal quantity, or the powder of Harts-horn dried, or laſtly, a Scowring of white Dittander, Aloes, Hepatick waſht four or five times, Cubebs, and a little Saffron wrapt in ſome fleſh, to cauſe her to take it the better.

Of the Filanders.

There are ſeveral ſorts of *Filanders*, but I ſhall ſpeak but of one ſticking to the Reins. They are Worms as ſmall as a Thread, and about an Inch long, and lie wrapt up in a thin Skin or Net near the Reins, of a *Hawk*, apart from either Gut or Gorge.

You ſhall know when your *Hawk* is troubled with them, by her poverty, by ruffling her Train, by ſtraining the Fiſt or Pearch with her Pounces, and laſtly, by croaking in the night when the Filanders prick her. You muſt remedy this Malady betimes, before theſe Worms have enlarged themſelves from their proper ſtation, roving elſewhere to your *Hawks* ruine and deſtruction.

You muſt not kill them as other Worms, for fear of Impoſtumes from their corruption, being incapable to paſs away with the *Hawks* Mewt, but only ſtupifie them, that they may be offenſive but ſeldom, and that is done thus: Take a head of Garlick, taking away the utmoſt rind, then with a Bodkin heated in the fire, make holes in ſome Cloves, then ſteep them in Oyl three days, and after this give her one of the Cloves down her Throat, and for forty days after ſhe will not be troubled with the Filanders. Wherefore a Faulconer will ſhew himſelf prudent, if ſeeing his *Hawk* low and poor, he gave her once a month a Clove of this Garlick for prevention of the Filanders.

Another

Another approved Medicine for Filanders or Worms in Hawks.

Take half a dozen Cloves of Garlick, boil them in Milk until they are very tender, then take them out and dry the Milk out of them, then put them into a ſpoonful of the beſt Oyl of Olives you can get, and when ſhe hath caſt, in the morning give theſe to your *Hawk*, feed her not in two hours after, and be ſure it be warm meat, and not much, and keep her warm that day for fear of taking cold, give her the Oyl with the Garlick, they muſt ſteep all night.

Of Hawks *Lice.*

Theſe *Lice* do moſt infect the Head, the Ply of a *Hawks* Wings, and her Train. In the Winter you may kill them thus: Take two drams of Pepper beaten to powder, and mingle it with warm Water, and with this Lotion waſh the places infeſted with theſe Lice or Mites, then ſet your *Hawk* on a Pearch with her Back and Train againſt the Sun, then hold in your hand a ſmall Stick about an handful long, with a piece of ſoft Wax at the end of it, and with that (whilſt the *Hawk* is weathering her ſelf) take away thoſe Vermin crawling upon the Feathers. You may do well to add to the Pepper and Water ſome Staves-acre.

In the Summer-time you may kill the Lice with *Auripigmentum* beaten to powder, and ſtrowed on the places where they lie.

A ſafe and eaſie way to kill Lice in Hawks.

Mail your *Hawk* in a piece of Cotton, if not in ſome Woollen-Cloth, and put between the Head and her Hood a little Wooll or Cotton, then take a pipe of

of Tobacco, and, putting the little end in at the Tream, blow the Smoak, and what Lice escape killing will creep into the Cloath. This is a certain way.

How to keep and maintain all manner of Hawks *in health, good plight and liking.*

In the first place, never give them a great Gorge, especially of grois meats, as Beef, Pork, and such as are hard to be endewed and put over.

Secondly, never feed them with the flesh of any Beast that hath lately gone to Rut, for that will insensibly destroy them.

Thirdly, if you are constrained to give your *Hawk* gross food, let it be well soaked first in clean Water, and afterwards sufficiently wrung; in Summer with cold Water, in Winter with luke-warm Water.

Ever observe to reward your *Hawks* with some good live meat, or else they will be brought low, however, the serving them with washt meats is the way to keep them in health.

I shall conclude how to keep *Hawks* in perfect health with this most excellent Receipt. Take Germander, Pelamountain, Basil, Grummer-seed, and Broom flowers, of each half an ounce, Hyssop, Sassafras, Polpodium, and Horse mints, of each a quarter of an ounce, and the like of Nutmegs, Cubebs, Borage, Mummy, Mugwort, Sage, and the four kinds of Mirobolans, of each half an ounce, of Aloes Succotrine the fifth part of an ounce, and of Saffron one whole ounce. All these you must pulverize, and every eighth or twelfth day give your *Hawks* the quantity of a Bean thereof with their meat. If they will not take it so, put it into a Hens Gut tied at both ends, and let him stand empty an hour after.

Of the Formica.

This is a Diſtemper which commonly ſeizeth on the Horn of *Hawks* Beaks, which will eat the Beak away, and this is occaſioned by a Worm, as moſt men are of opinion.

You may perceive it by this, the Beak will grow rugged, and it will begin to ſeparate from the Head.

To remedy this Malady, you muſt take the Gall of a Bull, and break it into a Diſh, and add thereto the powder of Aloes Succatrine, mingle theſe well together, and anoint the Clap or Beak of your *Hawk* therewith, and the very place where the *Formica* grows, twice a day, but touch not her Eyes or Nares, continue thus doing till your *Hawk* be perfectly cured, and bathe her with Orpiment and Pepper to keep her from other Vermin.

Of the Frownce.

This *Frownce* proceedeth from moiſt and cold Humours which deſcend from the *Hawks* Head to the Palate and root of the Tongue, by means whereof they loſe their appetite, and cannot cloſe their Clap. This by ſome is called the *Eagles-bane*, for ſhe ſeldom dieth of age, but of the over-growing of her Beak.

You may know if your *Hawk* be troubled with this Diſtemper, by opening her Beak, and ſeeing whether her Tongue be ſwoln or not, if it be ſhe hath it.

There are ſeveral ways to cure this Diſtemper, but the beſt that ever yet I could find for it, is only to take the powder of Alum reduced to a Salve, with ſtrong wine-vinegar, and waſh the *Hawks* Mouth therewith.

To cure the dry Frownce.

Take a Quill and cut it in the ſhape of a Pen, and at the other end tie a fine little Rag, with one end ſcrape off the white Skin, which you will ſee in the Mouth or Throat of your *Hawk* until it bleedeth, then with the other end waſh it with the juice of Lemon or White-wine-Vinegar very clean, then take a little burnt Alum, and ſome of a Shooe-ſoal burnt upon Wood-coals and beaten to powder, mix them, and lay them on the place or places, but let your *Hawk* have no meat above, nor be ready to befed, by this I have cured many.

Of the Pip.

The *Pip* frequently troubleth *Hawks*, as it doth Chickens, and proceedeth from cold and moiſtneſs of the Head, or from feeding on groſs meat not well waſht in warm Water in the Winter, and cold Water in the Summer.

The Symptoms of this Diſtemper are the *Hawks* frequent Sniting, and making a noiſe twice or thrice in her Sniting.

For the Cure hereof, you muſt caſt your *Hawk* gently, and look upon the tip of her Tongue, and if you find the Pip there, you muſt ſcour her with a Pill made of Agarick and *Hiera picra* given two or three days together with her Caſting at night, this will cleanſe her Head, and the ſooner if ſhe be made to tire againſt the Sun in the Morning: Then bind a little Cotton to the end of a Stick, and dipping it in good Roſe-water waſh her Tongue therewith, after this anoint it three or four days with Oyl of ſweet Almonds and Oyl-olive well waſhed as aforeſaid. Having ſo done, you find the Pip all white and ſoft, then take an Awl, and with the point thereof lift up

up the Pip ſoftly, and remove it, as Women pip their Chickens, but remove it not till it be throughly ripe, and wet her Tongue and Palate twice or thrice a day with the aforeſaid Oyl, till ſhe be throughly cured.

How to remedy that Hawk *which Endeweth not, nor putteth over as ſhe ſhould do.*

This happens either by being foul within, or by a Surfeit, or elſe when ſhe was low and poor, her Keeper over-gorged her, by being too haſty to ſet her up, and ſhe being weak was not able to put over and endew, and ſurfeited thereupon.

The Cure whereof is this: You muſt feed her with light meats, and a little at once, as with young Rats and Mice, Chickens or Mutton dipt in Goats milk or otherwiſe, or give her a quarter of a Gorge of the yolk of an Egg.

If you feed her with the fleſh of any living Fowl, firſt ſteep it well in the blood of the ſame Fowl, ſo ſhall your *Hawk* mount her fleſh apace, if you alſo ſcour her with Pills made of Lard, Marrow of Beef, Sugar and Saffron mix'd together, and given her three mornings together, giving her alſo a reaſonable Gorge two hours after.

How to make a Hawk *feed eagerly that hath loſt her Appetite, without bringing her low.*

A *Hawk* may loſe her Appetite by taking too great Gorges in the Evening, which ſhe cannot well endew, or by being foul in the Pannel, or ſometimes by Colds.

To remedy which, take Aloes Succotrina, boil'd Sugar, and Beef marrow, of each alike, only leſs of the

the Aloes, incorporate theſe, and make them into Balls or Pills as big as Beans, and give of them to your *Hawk* and hold her in the Sun till ſhe hath caſt up the filth and ſlime within her, then feed her not till noon, at which time give her good meat, and three days after for the ſame Diſeaſe it is good tiring on Stock-doves, ſmall Birds, Rats or Mice.

How to raiſe a Hawk *that is low and poor.*

The Poverty of a *Hawk* happens ſeveral ways, either by the ignorance of the Faulconer of ſome latent lurking diſtemper, or by her ſoaring away, and ſo being loſt four or five days, in which time, finding little or no Prey, ſhe becomes poor and lean.

To ſet her up, you muſt feed her a little at once, and often, with good meat and of light digeſtion, as ſmall Birds, Rats, Mice, *&c.* Or thus, take two ſpoonfuls of Honey, four of freſh Butter, and boil them together in a new earthen pot of Water, then take Pork well waſhed, and ſteep it in that Water, giving your *Hawk* a reaſonable Gorge thereof twice a day, warming the ſaid Water when you intend to feed your *Hawk*, and get ſome Snails that breed in running Waters, and give them her in the morning, and they will not only ſcour away the groſs ſlimy humours which are within, but alſo nouriſh her exceedingly.

How to remedy a Hawk *that is ſlothful, and is averſe to flying.*

A *Hawk* frequently hath no mind to fly, either by reaſon of her ill keeping, that is, when ſhe is kept by thoſe who know not how to give her her Rights, as bouzing, bathing, *&c.* or becauſe the *Hawk* is too high and full of greaſe, or too poor and low, by the

firſt ſhe becomes proud and coy, and by the latter ſo weak that ſhe wants ſtrength and ſpirit to perform it.

For the curing of which Diſtemper, ſhe ought to be thoroughly view'd by ſome skilful Faulconer, by whom ſuch Remedies ſhould be adminiſtred to her as are needful for her, but above all, there is nothing like giving her in a morning three or four Pills of Celandine well waſht.

Of Swoln Feet in a Hawk.

Hawks have Swelling in their Feet upon ſeveral accounts, ſometimes by chafing their Feet in flying their Prey, ſtriking it, and taking cold thereupon, ſometimes for want of rolling or lining the Pearch with ſome ſoft warm cloath, or elſe through groſs humours and foulneſs within, which through exerciſe drop down into their Feet, and ſo cauſe them to ſwell. Laſtly, this ſwelling happens by pricks when they fly fiercely into Buſhes after Game.

For a Remedy, you muſt ſcour your *Hawk* three mornings together with the Pills of Lard, Marrow, Sugar and Saffron, and ſet her in the Sun, two days after this feed her with good meat, then take Bole-Armoniack, and half the quantity of *Sanguis Draconis*, and having made them into powder, temper them well together with the White of an Egg and Roſe-water, and anoint her Feet twice a day three or four days together, ſetting her on ſome Cloth to keep her Feet warm.

How to ſcour Hawks *before you caſt them into the* Mew.

When Mewing time is come, you muſt ſcour and cleanſe your Hawks, for in luring and flying time by foul feeding they ingender Filanders and other Diſtempers, whereof they die for want of timely care and cure.

When

When you ſet down your Hawk uſe the ſame as you find Page 246, which will not only kill the Worm, but ſcour a Hawk alſo.

The beſt way is, (when you mean to caſt a Hawk into the Mew) firſt to ſcour her well according to former directions, to cope her, and ſet her up well in fleſh to diſcharge her as near as we can of all Diſeaſes, alſo to free her from Mites and Lice, to ſet her Water, ſometimes to feed her with young Rats, Mice, Dogs-fleſh, Pigeons, Rabbets, and now and then with ſome liquid thing and meats laxative.

Take notice of this ſpecial Obſervation: A Haggard is not to be caſt in looſe to the Mew, but is to be mewed on the Fiſt; for otherwiſe ſhe will become too coy and ſtrange; and if ſhe fall to baring and beating her ſelf for heat, then muſt you hood her up, or beſpout her with cold water, which is the readieſt way to make her leave Bating.

You muſt continue her on the Fiſt till ſhe begin to ſhed her Feathers; then ſet her down, and tie her to a Stone or Pearch, as you do the reſt; and after ſhe hath mewed and comes to fly, then let her ſtand on a Block or Billet caſed or rolled. In the ſame manner mew Goſhawks, Tierces, and Sparrow hawks; only they will not be born on the Fiſt, but be at liberty in the Mew, and very cleanly ſerved.

Fifteen or twenty days before you draw your Hawk out of the Mew, you muſt begin to abate her of her diet, the ſooner and better to enſeam her. And forget not to feed her with waſhed meat, which will prevent many dangers that may follow.

Many more diſeaſes there are incident, and Accidents happening to Hawks, of which with their cures there are large Diſcourſes written in *Italian*, *French*, and *Engliſh*, and therefore I thought fit to inſert in this place no other Maladies than what moſt uſually occur: If you deſire to be further ſatisfied, I ſhall refer you to thoſe larger and (it may be) leſs uſeful Volumes.

THE GENTLEMAN'S Recreation:

OF

FOWLING:

With a ſhort Account of

Singing-Birds.

What Fowling *is*; *with the Nature and Diverſity of all manner of* Fowl.

FOWLING is uſed two manner of ways: either by Enchantment, or Enticement; by winning or wooing the Fowl unto you by Pipe, Whiſtle, or Call; or elſe by Engine, which unawares ſurprizeth them.

Fowl are of divers ſorts, which alter in their nature as their Feathers; but by reaſon of their multiplicity, I ſhall for brevity-ſake diſtinguiſh them only into two kinds, Land and Water-Fowl.

The

The Water-fowl are ſo called from the natural delight they ſtill take in and about the Water, gathering from thence all their food and nutriment.

Here note, that Water-fowl are in their own nature the ſubtileſt and wiſeſt of Birds, and moſt careful of their own ſafety: Hence they have been formerly compared to an orderly and well-governed Camp, having Scouts on land afar off, Courts of Guards, Sentinels, and all ſorts of other watchful Officers ſurrounding the body, to give an alarm on any approach of ſeeming danger.

For in your obſervation you may take notice, that there will be ever ſome ſtraggling Fowl, which lie aloof from the greater Number, which ſtill call firſt. Now it is the nature of Water fowl to fly in great Flocks, having always a regard to the general ſafety; ſo that if you ſee a ſingle Fowl, or a couple fly together, you may imagine they have been ſomewhere affrighted from the reſt by ſome ſudden amazement or apprehenſion of danger: but ſo naturally are they inclined to Society, that they ſeldom leave wing till they meet together again. And this is occaſioned not only by the near approach of Men, but alſo by the beating of Haggards on the Rivers, as alſo by the appearance of the very bold *Buzzard* and *Ring-tail*.

Of Water-fowl there are two ſorts; ſuch as live of the water, and ſuch as live on the water: the one taking their ſuſtenance from the water without ſwimming thereon, but wading and diving for it with their long Legs: The other are Web-footed and ſwim, as the *Swan*, *Gooſe*, *Mallard*, &c.

Of the Haunts of Fowl.

THE thing of greateſt moment for the Fowler to underſtand, is the Haunts of Fowl. In order thereunto you are to underſtand, that all ſorts of greater Fowl, *viz.* thoſe who divide the foot, have

their reſidence by the edge of Rivers that are ſhallow, Brooks, and Plaſhes of water: and theſe appear not in Flocks, but you ſhall ſee here one ſingle, there a couple, and the like; which makes them difficult to be taken by Engine or Device; but they are the beſt flights for *Hawks* that can be imagined.

Likewiſe theſe Fowl delight in low and boggy places; and the more ſedgie, mariſh and rotten ſuch grounds are, the fitter they are for the hunting of theſe Fowl.

They love alſo the dry parts of drowned Fens, which are overgrown with tall and long Ruſhes, Reeds, and Sedges.

Laſtly, they delight in half drowned Moors, or the hollow vales of Downs, Heath, or Plains, where there is ſhelter either of Hedges, Hills, Tufts of Buſhes or Trees, where they may lurk obſcurely.

Now the leſſer Fowl, which are Web-footed, haunt continually drowned Fens, where they may have continually plenty of Water, and may ſwim undiſturbed by Man or Beaſt: Their haunt is likewiſe in the main Stream of Rivers, where the Current is ſwifteſt and leaſt ſubject to freez; and the broader and deeper ſuch Rivers are, the greater delight theſe Fowl take therein, the *Wild-gooſe* and *Barnacle* excepted, who abide no Waters above their ſounding; for when they cannot reach the Ouze, they inſtantly remove thence, ſeeking out more ſhallow places. Theſe two laſt named are infinitely delighted with green Winter corn, and therefore you ſhall ſee them evermore where ſuch Grain is ſown, eſpecially if the ends of the Lands have much water about them.

Likewiſe theſe ſmaller Fowl do very much frequent ſmall Brooks, Rivers, Ponds, drowned Meadows, Paſtures, Moors, Plaſhes, Meres, Loughs and Lakes, eſpecially if well ſtored with Iſlands unfrequented, and well furniſhed with Shrubs, Buſhes, Reeds,

Reeds, &c. and then they will breed there, and frequent ſuch places both Summer and Winter.

The readieſt way of taking great Fowl with NETS.

THE firſt thing you are to conſider, is the making of your Nets, which muſt be of the beſt Packthread, with great and large Meſhes, at leaſt two Inches from point to point: for the larger the Meſhes are, (ſo that the Fowl cannot creep through them) the better it is; for they more certainly intangle them.

Let not your Nets be above two fathom deep, and ſix in length, which is the greateſt proportion that a man is able to overthrow. Verge your Net on each ſide with very ſtrong Cord, and extend it at each end upon long Poles made for that purpoſe.

Having thus your Nets in readineſs, let the Fowler obſerve the haunts of Fowl, that is to ſay, their Morning and Evening feedings, coming at leaſt two hours before thoſe ſeaſons; then ſpreading his Net ſmooth and flat upon the ground, ſtaking the two lower ends firm thereon, let the upper ends ſtand extended upon the long Cord, the farther end thereof being ſtaked faſt down to the Earth two or three fathom from the Net; and let the ſtake which ſtaketh down the Cord ſtand in a direct and even line with the lower Verge of the Net, the diſtance ſtill obſerved: then the other end of the Cord, which muſt be at leaſt ten or twelve fathom long, the Fowler ſhall hold in his hand at the uttermoſt diſtance aforeſaid, where he ſhall make ſome artificial ſhelter either of Graſs, Sods, Earth, or ſuch like matter, whereby he may lie out of the ſight of the Fowl.

Obſerve to let the Net lie ſo ready for the Game, that upon the leaſt pull it may riſe from the Earth and fly over.

Strew over all your Net, as it lies upon the ground, ſome Graſs, that you may hide it from the Fowl. It will not be amiſs (but altogether requiſite) to ſtake down near your Net a live *Hern*, or ſome other Fowl formerly taken, for a *Stale*. When you obſerve a competent number of Fowl come within the verge of your Net, then draw your Cord ſuddenly, and ſo caſt the Net over them: Continue thus doing till the Sun be near an hour high, and no longer; for then their feeding is over for that time; and ſo do at Evening from about Sun-ſet till Twilight. By this means you may not only take great quantities of larger Wild-fowl, but alſo *Plover*, which takes his food as much from Land as Water.

How to take ſmall Water-fowl with Nets.

LET your Nets be made of the ſmalleſt and ſtrongeſt packthread, and the Meſhes nothing near ſo big as thoſe for the greater Fowl, about two foot and a half or three foot deep; line theſe Nets on both ſides with falſe Nets, every Meſh being about a foot and a half ſquare each way, that as the Fowl ſtriketh either through them or againſt them, ſo the ſmaller Net may paſs through the great Meſhes, and ſo ſtreighten and entangle the Fowl.

Theſe Nets you muſt pitch for the Evening-flight of Fowl before Sun-ſet, ſtaking them down on each ſide of the River about half a foot within the water, the lower ſide of the Net being ſo plumb'd that it may ſink ſo far and no farther: Let the upper ſide of the Net be placed ſlantwiſe, ſhoaling againſt the water, yet not touching the water by near two foot; and let the ſtrings which ſupport this upper ſide of the Net be faſtned to ſmall yielding Sticks prickt in

the

the Bank, which as the Fowl ſtrikes may give liberty to the Net to run and entangle them. Thus place ſeveral of theſe Nets over divers parts of the River, about twelveſcore one from another, or as the River or Brook ſhall give leave; and be confident, if any Fowl come on the River that night, you ſhall have your ſhare.

And that you may the ſooner obtain your deſire, take your Gun and go to all the Fens and Plaſhes that are a good diſtance from your Nets, and fire it three or four times; which will ſo affright the Fowl, that they will inſtantly poſt to the Rivers; then plant your Nets upon theſe Fens and Plaſhes.

In the Morning go firſt to the River and ſee what Fowl are there ſurprized; and having taken them up with your Nets, if you eſpy any Fowl on the River, diſcharge your Gun, which will make them fly to the Fens and Plaſhes, and then go and ſee what you have taken: Thus you ſhall be ſure to be furniſhed with ſome, tho there be never ſo few abroad.

How to take all manner of ſmall Birds, with Bird-Lime.

IN cold weather, that is to ſay, in Froſt or Snow, all ſorts of ſmall Birds do congregate in Flocks, as *Larks*, *Chaffinches*, *Lennets*, *Gold-finches*, *Yellow-hammers*, *Buntings*, *Sparrows*, &c. all theſe but the *Lark* do pearch on Trees or Buſhes as well as feed on the ground: If you perceive they reſort about your Houſe or Fields adjacent, then uſe your Bird-lime that is well prepared, and not over old; order it after this manner: Take an Earthen diſh and put the Bird-lime into it, and add thereunto ſome freſh Lard, or Capons-greaſe, putting an ounce of either to a quarter of a pound of Bird-lime: then ſetting it over the fire, let it melt gently together; but let it not boil by any means, for if you do, you will take away the ſtrength

of the Bird-lime, and ſo ſpoil it. Having thus prepared it, get a quantity of Wheat-ears, as many as you think you ſhall conveniently uſe, and cut the Straw about a foot long beſides the Ears; then from the bottom of the Ears to the middle of the Straw lime it about ſix inches: the Lime muſt be warm when you lime the ſtraw, that ſo it may run thin upon the ſtraw, and therefore the leſs diſcernable, and conſequently not ſuſpected by the Birds.

Having thus got your Limb'd-ſtraws in this manner ready, go into the field adjacent to your houſe, and carry a bag of Chaff and threſht Ears, and ſcatter theſe together twenty yards wide, (it is beſt in a ſnow) then take the Limb'd ears and ſtick them up and down with the Ears leaning, or at the end touching the ground; then retire from the place, and traverſe the grounds all round about; the Birds hereupon being diſturbed in their other haunts fly hither, and pecking at the Ears of Corn, finding that they ſtick upon them, they ſtraightways mount up from the Earth, and in their flight the Bird-limb'd-ſtraws lay under their Wings, and falling are not able to diſengage themſelves from the Straw, and ſo are certainly taken.

By the way take this caution; do not go and take up five or ſix you ſee entangled, for that may hinder you it may be from taking three or four dozen at one time. If they be *Larks* that fall where your Bird-lim'd Straws do lie, go not a near them till they ſpontaneouſly riſe of themſelves, and flying in great Flocks; I can aſſure you I have caught five dozen at one lift.

You may lay ſome nearer home to take *Finches*, *Sparrows*, *Yellowhammers*, &c. who reſort near to Houſes, and frequent Barn doors, where you may eaſily take them after the ſame manner as aforeſaid. The taking of *Sparrows* is a very great benefit to the Husbandman, for they are his and the Farmers principal Enemies, of all ſmall Birds; inſomuch as I dare

aſſure

aſſure them, that every dozen of *Sparrows* taken by them in the Winter, ſhall ſave them a quarter of Wheat before Harveſt be ended. In the taking of them, you may ſtick the top of your houſe if thatcht; and tho' you never have the Birds, yet the deſtruction of them will be a great advantage. Before a Barn door if you lay your Twigs, or Lim'd-ſtraws, you may there take them with abundance of other ſmall Birds. The *Sparrow* is excellent food and a great reſtorer of decayed Nature. You may alſo take them at rooſt in the Eaves of Thatcht-houſes, by coming in the night with a Clap-net, and rubbing the Net againſt the hole where they are flying out, you Clap the Net together, and forſake them; the darkeſt night with a Lanthorn and Candle is the chiefeſt time to take them.

Having performed your Morning Birding-recreation, go bait the ſame place where you were before, and bait it with freſh Chaff and Ears of Corn, and let them reſt till next Morning; then take ſome freſh Wheat-ears again, and ſtick them as aforeſaid: and when you bait in the Afternoon, take away all your Lim'd Ears, that ſo the Birds may feed boldly, and not be frighted or diſturbed againſt next Morning.

How to take Great Fowl with LIME-TWIGS.

YOU muſt ſupply your ſelf with good ſtore of Rods, which are long, ſmall, and ſtraight-grown Twigs, being light and apt to ply to and fro.

Lime the upper-part of theſe Twigs, holding the Bird-lime before the fire, ſo that it may melt, for the better beſmearing them.

Having firſt well acquainted your ſelf, where theſe Fowl do frequent Morning and Evening, you muſt then obſerve before Sun-ſet for the Evening-flight, and

and before day, for the Morning, that you plant your Lime-twigs where theſe Fowl haunt, pinning down for a Stale one of the ſame Fowl alive (which you have formerly taken for that purpoſe) which you intend to catch with your Bird-lime. Round about the Stale (giving the Fowl liberty to flutter to and fro) prick your Twigs in rows a foot diſtant one from the other, till you have covered all the place ſo haunted, that there ſhall be no room left, but that they muſt certainly fall foul with the Lime-twigs.

Prick the Rods ſloaping with their heads bending into the Wind about a foot or ſomewhat more above ground: If you pleaſe (and I think it the beſt way) you may croſs-prick your Rods, that is, one point into the wind, and another againſt the wind; by which means you may take the Fowl which way ſoever they come.

Place alſo a Stale ſome diſtance from your Lime-twigs, and faſten ſmall ſtrings to it, which upon the ſight of any Fowl you muſt pull, then will your Stale flutter, which will allure them down.

If you ſee any taken, do not run inſtantly and take them up if you ſee any Fowl in the Air; for by their fluttering others will be induced to ſwoop in among them. It will not be amiſs to have a well-taught Spaniel with you for the retaking of ſuch Fowl (as it is common) which will flutter away with the Limetwigs about them.

If you intend to uſe the Twigs for ſmaller Wild-fowl, and ſuch as frequent the water only, then muſt you fit them in length according to the depth of the River; and your Lime muſt be very ſtrong Water-lime, ſuch as no wet or froſt can injure. Prick theſe Rods in the water, as you did the other on the Land, as much of the Rod as is limed being above water; and here and there among your Rods you muſt ſtake down a live Stale, as a *Mallard*, a *Widgeon*, or *Teal*: and this you may do in any ſhallow Plath or Fen.

You

You need not wait continually on your Rods, but come thrice a day, and see what is taken, *viz.* early in the Morning, at high Noon, and late in the Evening; but come not unattended with your Water-Spaniel: for if you perceive any of your Rods missing, you may conclude some Fowls are fastned to them which are crept in some Hole, Bush, or Hedge by the River side, and then will your Dog be very necessary for the discovery.

Do not beat one Haunt too much, but when you find their numbers fail, remove and find out another, and in three weeks time your first will be as good as ever.

Of the greater and lesser SPRINGIES.

HAving noted the Morning and Evening feeding of divided-footed-Fowl, observing the Furrows and Water-Tracts where they usually stalk and paddle to find Worms, Float-Grass roots, and the like; you must mark where many Furrows meet in one, and break out as it were into one narrow passage, which so descending, afterwards divides it self into other parts and branches; then mark how every Furrow breaketh and cometh into this Centre or little Pit which is most paddled with the Fowl, or which is easiest for Fowl to wade in: This being done, take small and short Sticks, and prick them cross-wise athwart over all the other passages, one Stick within half an Inch of the other, making as it were a kind of Fence to guard every way but one which you would have the Fowl to pass: if they stand but somewhat more than a handful above the Water, such is the nature of the Fowl that they will not pass over them, but stray about till that they find the open way.

Having

Having thus hemmed in all ways but one, take a ſtiff Stick cut flat on the one ſide, and prick both ends down into the Water, and make the upper part of the flat ſide of the ſtick to touch the water, and no more: then make a Bow of ſmall Hazel or Willow made in the faſhion of a pear, broad and round at one end, and narrow at the other, at leaſt a foot long, and five or ſix Inches broad, and at the narrow end made a ſmall nick: then take a good ſtiff-grown plant of Hazel, clean without knot, three or four Inches about at the bottom, and an Inch at the top, and having made the bottom end ſharp, at the top you muſt faſten a very ſtrong Loop of about an hundred Horſe-hairs plaited very faſt together with ſtrong Packthread, and made ſo ſmooth that it will run and ſlip at pleaſure: Let the Loop be of the juſt quantity of the hoop, made Pearwiſe as aforeſaid: then hard by this Loop you muſt faſten a little broad Tricker within an Inch and half of the end of the Plant, which muſt be made equally ſharp at both ends: thruſt the bigger ſharp end of the Plant into the ground cloſe by the edge of the water, the ſmaller end with the Hoop and the Tricker muſt be brought down to the firſt Bridge, and then the Hoop made Pearwiſe being laid on the Bridge, one end of the Tricker muſt be ſet upon the nick of the Hoop, and the other end againſt a nick made on the ſmall end of the Plant, which by the violence and bend of the Plant ſhall make them ſtick and hold together until the Hoop be moved. This done, lay the Swickle on the Hoop in ſuch a faſhion as the Hoop is proportioned; then from each ſide of the Hoop prick little Sticks, making an impaled path to the Hoop; and as you go farther and farther from the Hoop or Springe, ſo make the way wider and wider, that the Fowl may enter a good way before it ſhall perceive the Fence. By this means the Fowl will be enticed to wade up to the Springe, which ſhall be no

ſooner

ſooner toucht, but that part of the Bird ſo touching will be inſtantly enſnared: And thus according to the ſtrength of the Plant you ſhall take any Fowl of what bigneſs ſoever.

The Springe for leſſer Fowl, as *Woodcock*, *Snipe*, *Plover*, &c. is made after the faſhion aforeſaid, only differing in ſtrength according unto the bigneſs of the Birds you intend to catch.

The main plant or Sweeper you may make of Willow, Oſier, or any ſtick that will bend and return to its proper ſtraightneſs.

This device is for the Winter only, when much wet is on the ground, and not when the Furrows are dry. Now if the waters be frozen, you muſt make Plaſhes; and the harder the Froſt, the greater reſort will there be of theſe ſmaller Fowl.

Of the FOWLING-PIECE, *and the* STALKING-HORSE.

THat is ever eſteemed the beſt Fowling-piece which hath the longeſt Barrel, being five foot and a half or ſix foot long, with an indifferent bore, under Harquebuſs.

Provide the beſt ſort of Powder as near as you can, and let it not be old, for keeping weakens it much, eſpecially if it grow damp; therefore when you have occaſion to uſe it, dry it well in a Fire-ſhovel, and ſift it through a fine Searcher to take away that duſt which hindreth the more forcible effects, and fouleth your piece.

Let your Shot be well ſized, and of a moderate bigneſs; for if it be too great, then it ſcatters too much; if too ſmall, it hath not weight nor ſtrength ſufficient to do execution on a large Fowl.

Shot

Shot being not to be had at all times, and in all places, ſuitable to your occaſions and deſires, I ſhall therefore here ſet down the true proceſs of making all ſorts and ſizes under Mould ſhot.

Take what quantity of Lead you pleaſe, and melt it down in an Iron Veſſel, and as it melts keep it ſtirring with an Iron Ladle, and clear it of all impurities whatſoever that may ariſe at the top by skimming them off. Then when the Lead begins to be of a greeniſh colour, ſtrew on it *Auripigmentum* finely powdered, as much as will lie on a Shilling to 12 pound of Lead. Then ſtir them together, and the *Auripigmentum* will flame.

Your Ladle ought to have a Notch on one ſide of the Brim for the more eaſie pouring out of the Lead, and the Ladle ought to remain in the melted Lead, that the heat may be agreeable to it, to prevent all inconveniencies which may happen through exceſs of heat or cold. Then try your Lead by dropping it into water. If the drops prove round, then the temper of the heat is right; but if the ſhot have Tails, then there is want both of heat and *Auripigmentum*.

Then take a Copper plate about the ſize of a Trencher plate, with an hollowneſs in the midſt about three inches compaſs, with about forty holes bored according to the ſize of the Shot you intend to caſt. The hollow bottom ſhould be thin, but the thicker the brim the better, becauſe it will longer retain the heat. Place it on an Iron frame over a Bucket of water, about four Inches from it, and ſpread burning Coals on the plate to keep the Lead melted upon it.

Then take up ſome Lead and pour it gently on the Coals on the plate, and it will force its way through the holes into the water, and form it ſelf into Shot. Thus do till all your Lead be run through the holes of the plate: obſerving to keep your Coals alive, that the Lead may not cool, and ſo ſtop up the holes.

Whilſt

Whilſt you are caſting Shot, another perſon may catch ſome of the ſhot with another Ladle, placed four or five inches (underneath the bottom of the plate) in the water, and by that means you may diſcern if there are any defects in your proceſs, and rectify them.

The chief buſineſs is to keep your Lead in a juſt degree of heat, that it be not ſo cold as to fill up the holes, nor ſo hot as to make the Shot crack. To remedy the coolneſs of your Lead and Plate, you muſt blow your Coals; to remedy the heat, you muſt refrain working till it be cool enough, obſerving, that the cooler your Lead, the larger your Shot; the hotter, the ſmaller.

When you have caſt your Shot, take them out of the water and dry them over the fire with a gentle heat, and be ſure to keep them continually ſtirred that they melt not. When they are dry you are to ſeparate the great Shot from the ſmall, by the help of Sieves made on purpoſe, according to their ſeveral ſizes. If you would have very large Shot, you may with a ſtick force the Lead to trickle out of your Ladle into the water without the place.

If it ſtop on the plate, and yet the plate be not too cool, give but the plate a little knock, and it will run again. Take care that none of your Inſtruments be greaſie. When you have ſeparated your Shot, if any prove too large for your purpoſe, or any ways imperfect, 'tis only your pains loſt, and it will ſerve again at your next operation.

In ſhooting, obſerve always to ſhoot with the wind, if poſſible, and not againſt it; and rather ſide-ways, or behind the Fowl, than full in their faces.

Next, obſerve to chuſe the moſt convenient ſhelter you can find, as either Hedge, Bank, Tree, or any thing elſe which may abſcond you from the view of the Fowl.

Be ſure to have your Dog at your heels under good command, not daring to ſtir till you bid him, having firſt diſcharged your Piece: for ſome ill-taught Dogs will upon the ſnap of the Cock preſently ruſh out, and ſpoil all the ſport.

Now if you have not ſhelter enough, by reaſon of the nakedneſs of the Banks and want of Trees, you muſt creep upon your hands and knees under the Banks, and lying even flat upon your Belly, put the noſe of your Piece over the Bank, and ſo take your level; for a Fowl is ſo fearful of man, that tho an Hawk were ſoaring over her head, yet at the ſight of a man ſhe would betake her ſelf to her wing, and run the riſque of that danger.

But ſometime it ſo happeneth that the Fowl are ſo ſhie, there is no getting a ſhoot at them without a Stalking horſe, which muſt be ſome old Jade trained up for that purpoſe, who will gently, and as you will have him, walk up and down in the water which way you pleaſe flodding and eating on the Graſs that grows therein.

You muſt ſhelter your ſelf and Gun behind his fore-ſhoulder, bending your body down low by his ſide, and keeping his body ſtill full between you and the Fowl: being within ſhot, take your level from before the forepart of the Horſe, ſhooting as it were between the Horſes Neck and the water; which is much better than ſhooting under his Belly, being more ſecure, and leſs perceivable.

Now to ſupply the want of a Stalking-horſe, which will take up a great deal of time to inſtruct and make fit for this exerciſe, you may make one of any pieces of old Canvas, which you muſt ſhape into the form of an Horſe, with the head bending downwards as if he grazed. You may ſtuff it with any light matter; and do not forget to paint it of the colour of an horſe, of which the brown is the beſt; and in the midſt let it be fix'd to a ſtaff with a ſharp Iron at the end, to ſtick

into

into the ground as you ſhall ſee occaſion, ſtanding faſt whilſt you take your level.

It muſt be made ſo portable, that you may bear it with eaſe in one hand, moving it ſo as it may ſeem to graze as you go. Let the ſtature of your artificial Stalking-horſe be neither too low nor too high; for the one will not abſcond your body, and the other will be apt to frighten the Fowl.

Inſtead of this Stalking horſe, you may faſhion out of Canvas painted an Ox or Cow: and this change is neceſſary, when you have ſo beaten the Fowl with your Stalking-horſe, that they begin to find your deceit, and will no longer endure it, (as it frequently falls out.) Then you may ſtalk with an Ox or Cow, till the Stalking-horſe be forgotten, and by this means make your ſport laſting and continual.

Some there are that ſtalk with Stags or Red Deer form'd out of painted Canvas, with the natural Horns of Stags fixt thereon, and the colour ſo lively painted, that the Fowl cannot diſcern the fallacy; and theſe are very uſeful in low Fenny ground, where any ſuch Deer do uſually feed; and are more familiar with the Fowl, and ſo feed nearer them than Ox, Horſe, or Cow: by which means you ſhall come with a far nearer diſtance.

There are other dead Engines to ſtalk withal, as an artificial Tree, Shrub or Buſh, which may be made of ſmall Wands, and with painted Canvas made into the ſhape of a Willow, Poplar, or ſuch Trees as grow by Rivers and Water ſides; for theſe are the beſt.

If you ſtalk with a Shrub or Buſh, let them not be ſo tall as your Tree, but much thicker; which you may make either of one entire Buſh, or of divers Buſhes interwoven one with another, either with ſmall Withy-wands, Cord, or Pack-thread, that may not be diſcerned: and let not your Buſh exceed the height of a Man, but be thicker than four or five, with a

Spike at the bottom to ſtick into the ground whilſt you take your level.

How to take all manner of Land-fowl by day or night.

SInce the diſſolution and ſpoil of Paradiſe, no man hath either ſeen, or can give the names of all Land-fowl whatever, there being ſuch great variety, every Country producing ſome particular ſorts which are unknown to other Nations.

To avoid prolixity, I ſhall rank them under two heads.

The firſt are ſuch who are either fit for Food or Pleaſure, either for eating or ſinging: for eating, *Pigeons* of all ſorts, *Rook*, *Pheaſant*, *Partride*, *Quails*, *Rail*, *Felfares*, &c. and for eating or ſinging, the *Blackbird*, *Throſtle*, *Nightingale*, *Linnet*, *Lark*, and *Bull-finch*.

Secondly, ſuch as are for Pleaſure only, and they are all manner of birds of Prey, as *Caſtrels*, *Ring-tails*, *Buzzards*, &c.

The general way of taking theſe Land-fowl of ſeveral ſorts together, is either by day or by night. If by day, it is done with the great Net, commonly called the *Crow-net*, and not at all differs in length, depth, bigneſs of Meſh, manner of laying, &c. from the *Plover-net*; only it will not be amiſs if the Cords be longer.

This Net you may lay before Barn-doors, or where Corn hath been winnowed, alſo in Stubble-fields, ſo concealing the Net that the Fowl may not diſcern the Snare. When you perceive a quantity within the Net ſcraping for food, and you lie concealed afar off, with your Cord in your hand, ſuddenly pull the Net over upon them.

You may do well to take notice of their Morning and Evening Haunts, to worm and feed upon the Green-

Greenſwarth; and here lay your Net, and it will prove as effectual as in other places, ſo that you obſerve to abſcond your ſelf in ſome Covert ſo as not to be deſcribed: in the next place, pull not too haſtily, but wait for a good number of Fowl within the Net, and then pull freely and quickly; for the leaſt deliberation after the Net is raiſed, is the ruin of your deſign.

Thus much for Day-fowling with the Net: now if you will proſecute your ſport by Night, you muſt do it according to the nature and manner of the Country, or ſituation or faſhion of the ground, whether Woody, Mountainous, or Champain.

In plain and Champain Countries you muſt uſe the *Low bell*, from the end of *October* until the end of *March*; and this method you muſt follow.

The day being ſhut in, the air mild without Moonſhine, take a *Low bell*, (which muſt have a deep and hollow ſound, for if it be ſhrill it is ſtark naught) and with it a Net whoſe Meſh is twenty yards deep, and ſo broad, that it may cover five or ſix Lands or more, according to the company you have to carry it. With theſe Inſtruments go into any ſtubble Cornfield, but Wheat is the beſt. He that carries the Bell muſt go foremoſt, tolling the Bell as he goes very mournfully, letting it but now and then knock on both ſides: after him muſt follow the Net, born up at each corner and on each ſide by ſeveral perſons; then another muſt carry ſome Iron or ſtony Veſſel, which may contain burning, but not blazing Coals, and at theſe you muſt light bundles of ſtraw: or you may carry Links with you. And having pitcht your Nets where you think the Game lies, beat the ground and make a noiſe, and as the Fowl riſe they will be entangled in the Net. Thus you may take good ſtore of *Partridge*, *Rails*, *Larks*, *Quails*, &c.

Having ſo done, extinguiſh your Light, and proceed, laying your Net in ſome other place as before-mentioned.

Here note, that the ſound of the *Low-bell* makes the Birds lie cloſe, ſo as they dare not ſtir whilſt you are pitching the Net, for the ſound thereof is dreadful to them; but the ſight of the Fire much more terrible, which makes them inſtantly to fly up, and ſo they become entangled in the Net.

Furthermore, if you intend to have the full fruition of your ſupport, you muſt be very ſilent, and nothing muſt be heard but the ſound of the *Low-bell* till the Net is placed and the Lights blazing; but as ſoon as they are extinguiſhed, a general ſilence muſt be again.

The Trammel is much like this Net for the *Low-bell*, and may be neceſſarily uſed on the ſame grounds; only it ought to be longer, tho not much broader.

When you come to a place fit for your purpoſe where Birds lodge on the Earth, you ſhall then ſpred your Trammel on the Ground; and let the fartheſt end thereof, being plumb'd with Lead, lie looſe on the ground; but let the foremoſt ends be born up by two men, and ſo trail the Net along, keeping the foremoſt ends a yard or more diſtance from the ground.

On each ſide of the Net carry Wiſps of Straw lighted, or Links, and let ſome beat the ground with long Poles; and as the Birds riſe under the Nets, take them. And thus you may continue doing as long as you pleaſe, to your great profit and pleaſure.

Of BAT-FOWLING.

BAT-FOWLING is the taking of all manner of Birds, great and ſmall, by night, which rooſt in Buſhes, Shrubs, Hawthorn trees, *&c.*

The manner is: you muſt be very ſilent till your Lights are blazing, and you may either carry Nets or none: if none, you muſt then have long Poles with great

great bushy tops fixt to them; and having from a *Cresset* or vessel to carry fire in, lighted your Straw, or other blazing combustible matter, then must you beat those Bushes where you think birds are at roost; which done, if there be any in those Bushes or Trees, you will instantly see them fly about the Flames: for it is their nature, through their amazedness at the strangeness of the Light, and extream darkness round about it, not to depart from it, but they will even scorch their Wings in the same, so that those who have the bushy Poles may beat them down as they please, and take them up. Thus may you continue your sport as long as it is very dark, and no longer.

Of the DAY-NET, *and how to take Birds therewith.*

THE *Day Net* is generally used for the taking of *Larks*, *Buntings*, *Merlins*, *Hobbies*, or any Birds which play in the Air, and will stoop either to Stale, Prey, Gig, Glass, or the like.

The season for these Nets is from *August* to *November*: the time you must plant these Nets must be before Sun-rising. Where note, the milder the Air, the brighter the Sun, and the pleasanter the Morning is, the better will your sport be, and of longer continuance.

Let the place you elect for this purpose be plain and Champain, either on Barley-stubbles, green Lays, or level and flat Meadows; and the places must be remote from any Villages, but near adjacent to Corn-fields.

The fashion of a Day-net is this: you must make them of fine Packthread, the Mesh small, and not above half an Inch square each way; let the length be about three fathom, the breadth one fathom and no more: the shape is like the Crow-net, and it must be verg'd about in the same manner with a strong small

Cord, and the two ends extended upon two ſmall long Poles ſuitable to the breadth of the Net, with four ſtakes, Tail-ſtrings, and Drawling-lines, as afore-mentioned: only whereas that was but one ſingle Net, here muſt be two of one length, breadth and fathion. Theſe Nets muſt be laid oppoſite to each other, yet ſo cloſe and even together, that when they are drawn and pulled over, the ſides and edges may meet and touch one the other.

Theſe Nets being ſtaked down with ſtrong Stakes very ſtiffly on their Lines, ſo as with any nimble twitch you may caſt to and fro at your pleaſure; you ſhall then to the upper ends of the foremoſt ſtaves faſten your Hand-lines, or drawing Cords, which muſt be at the leaſt a dozen, a fathom long; and ſo extend them of ſuch a reaſonable ſtreightneſs, as with little ſtrength they may raiſe up the Nets and caſt them over.

When your Nets are laid, ſome twenty or thirty paces, beyond them place your Stales, Decoys, or playing Wantons, upon ſome pearching Boughs, which will not only entice Birds of their own Feather to ſtoop, but alſo *Hawks* and Birds of Prey to ſwoop into your Nets.

Remember to keep the firſt half dozen you take alive for Stales, and to that end have a Cage or Linnen-bag to put them in: The reſt ſqueeze in the hinder-part of the head, and ſo kill them. And thus do every day.

Of taking ſmall Birds which uſe Hedges and Buſhes with Lime-twigs.

THE great Lime-buſh is beſt for this uſe, which you muſt take after this manner: Cut down the main Arm or chief Bough of any buſhy Tree, whoſe bran-

branches or Twigs are long, thick, ſmooth and ſtraight without either pricks or knots; of which the Willow or Birch-tree are the beſt, when you have pickt it and trimm'd it from all ſuperfluity, making the Twigs neat and clean; take then of the beſt Bird-lime, well mixed and wrought together with Gooſe-greaſe or Capon's-greaſe, which being warmed, lime every Twig therewith within four fingers of the bottom. The body from whence the branches have their riſe, muſt be untouch'd with Lime.

Be ſure you do not daub your Twigs with too much Lime, for that will give diſtaſt to the Birds; yet let none want its proportion, or have any part left bare which ought to be toucht: for, as too much will deter them from coming, ſo too little will not hold them when they are there.

Having ſo done, place your Buſh on ſome Quick-ſet or dead Hedge near unto Towns ends, back-yards, old houſes, or the like; for theſe are the reſort of ſmall Birds in the Spring-time: in the Summer and Harveſt in Groves, Buſhes, White-thorn-trees, Quick-ſet-hedges near Corn-fields, Fruit-trees, Flax and Hemp lands; and in the winter about Houſes, Hovels, Barns, Stacks or thoſe places where ſtand ricks of Corn, or ſcattered Chaff, *&c.*

As near as you can to any of theſe haunts plant your Lime-buſh, and plant your ſelf alſo at a convenient diſtance undiſcovered, imitating with your mouth the ſeveral Notes of Birds, which you muſt learn by frequent practice, walking the Fields for that very purpoſe often, obſerving the variety of ſeveral birds ſounds, eſpecially ſuch as they call one another by. I have known ſome ſo expert herein, that they could imitate the Notes of twenty ſeveral ſorts of Birds at leaſt, by which they have caught ten Birds to anothers one that was ignorant therein.

But if you cannot attain to it by your induſtry, you muſt then buy a *Bird-call*, of which there are ſeveral

ſorts, and eaſie to be framed, ſome of Wood, ſome of Horn, ſome of Cane, and the like.

Having firſt learned how to uſe this Call, you ſhall ſit and call the Birds unto you; and as any of them light on your Buſh, ſtep not to them till you ſee them ſufficiently entangled: Neither is it requiſite to run for every ſingle Bird, but let them alone till more come, for the fluttering is as good at a Stale to entice more.

This Exerciſe you may uſe from Sun-Riſing till ten a clock in the Morning, and from one till almoſt Sun ſet.

You may take theſe ſmall Birds with Lime twigs only, without the Buſh. When I was a boy, I have taken two or three hundred ſmall Twigs about the bigneſs of Ruſhes, and about three Inches long, and have gone with them into a field where were Hemp-cocks; upon the tops of half a ſcore, lying all round together, I have ſtuck my Twigs, and then have gone and beat that field, or the next to it, where I ſaw any Birds; and commonly in ſuch fields there are infinite numbers of *Linnets* and *Green-birds* which are great lovers of Hemp-ſeed. I ſay, they fly in ſuch vaſt flocks, I have caught at one fall of them upon the Cocks eight dozen at a time.

But to return, there is a pretty way of taking Birds with Lime-twigs, by placing near them a Stale or two made of living *Night-baits*, placing them aloft, that they may be viſible to the Birds thereabouts; which will no ſooner be perceived, but every Bird will come and gaze, wondering at the ſtrangeneſs of the ſight: then they having no other convenient lighting place but where the Lime-twigs are, you may take what number you liſt of them.

But the *Owl* is a far better Stale than the *Bat*, being bigger, and more eaſily to be perceived; beſides, he is never ſeen abroad, but he is followed and perſecuted by all the birds near adjacent.

If

If you have not a living *Bat* or *Owl*, their skins will ſerve as well being ſtuffed, and will laſt you twenty years. There are ſome have uſed an *Owl* cut in Wood, and naturally painted, with wonderful ſucceſs.

It is ſtrange to me that this Bird above all others ſhould be ſo perſecuted by all Birds whatſoever, eſpecially by the *Gooſe*; and therefore ſome arch Cracks in *Lincoln-ſhire* and other places, where a great quantities of *Geeſe*, obſerving their tempers, have made great advantage of them; for by only throwing a live *Owl* among a flock of *Geeſe*, they got as many Quills as they know what to do with; for the *Geeſe* endeavouring to beat the *Owl* with their wings, never left till they did beat the Quills out of their wings, and commonly the beſt, which are Seconds.

How to make the beſt ſort of Bird-lime, and how to uſe it.

TAke at Midſummer the bark of Holly, and pill it from the Tree, ſo much as will fill a reaſonable big Veſſel; then put to it running Water, and ſet it over the fire, and boil it till the grey and white bark riſe from the green, which will take up ſixteen hours in the boiling: then take it from the fire, and ſeparate the barks after the water is very well drain'd away: then take all the green bark, and lay it on the ground in a cloſe place and moiſt floor, and cover it over with all manner of green Weeds, as Hemlock, Docks, Thiſtles, and the like; thus let it lie ten or twelve days, in which time it will rot, and turn to a filthy ſlimy matter. Then take it and put it into a Mortar, and there beat it till it become univerſally thick and tough, without the diſcerning of any part of the bark or other ſubſtance; then take it out of the Mortar, and carry it to a running Stream, and there waſh it exceedingly, not leaving any mote or foulneſs within it; then put it up in a very cloſe Earthen pot, and let it

ſtand

ſtand and purge for divers days together, ſcumming it as often as any foulneſs ariſes for four or five days; when you perceive no more Scum, you ſhall then take it out of that Pot, and put it into another clean Earthen Veſſel, cover it cloſe, and keep it for your uſe.

When you are about to uſe your Lime, take what quantity you think fit and put it into a Pipkin, adding thereto a third part of Gooſe-greace or Capons-greace finely clarified, and ſet them over a gentle fire, and there let them melt together, and ſtir them continually till they are well incorporated: then take it from the fire and ſtir it till it be cold.

When your Lime is cold, take your Rods and warm them a little over the fire; then take your Lime and wind it about the tops of your Rods, then draw your *Rods* aſunder one from the other, and cloſe them again, continually plying and working them together, till by ſmearing one upon another, you have equally beſtowed on each Rod a ſufficient proportion of Lime.

If you Lime any ſtrings, do it when the Lime is very hot and at the thinneſt, beſmearing the Strings on all ſides, by folding them together and unfolding them again.

If you Lime Straws, it muſt be done likewiſe when the Lime is very hot, doing a great quantity together, as many as you can well graſp in your hand, roſſing and working them before the fire till they are all beſmear'd, every Straw having his due proportion of Lime: having ſo done, put them up in caſes of Leather till you have occaſion to uſe them.

Now to prevent the freezing of your Lime either as it is on Twigs, Buſhes, or Straws, you muſt add a quarter as much of the Oyl called *Petrolium* as of your Capons-greaſe, mix them well together, and then work it on your Rods, *&c.* and ſo it will ever keep ſupple, tough, and gentle, and will not be prejudiced ſhould it freez never ſo hard.

The

The best and most Experienced way of making Water-Bird-Lime.

BUY what quantity you think fit of the ſtrongeſt Bird-lime you can procure, and waſh it as long in a clear Spring-water till you find it very pliable, and the hardneſs thereof removed; then beat out the water extraordinary well, till you cannot perceive a drop to appear, then dry it well; after this, put it into a Pot made of Earth, and mingle therewith Capons greaſe unſalted, ſo much as will make it run; then add thereto two ſpoonfuls of ſtrong Vinegar, a ſpoonful of the beſt Sallet-Oyl, and a ſmall quantity of *Venice*-Turpentine: This is the allowance of theſe Ingredients which muſt be added to every pound of ſtrong Bird-lime, as aforeſaid. Having thus mingled them, boil them all gently together over a ſmall fire, ſtirring it continually; then take it from the fire and let it cool: When at any time you have occaſion to uſe it, warm it, and then anoint your Twigs or Straws, or any other ſmall things, and no Water will take away the ſtrength thereof. This ſort of Bird-lime is the beſt, eſpecially for *Snipes* and *Felfares*.

In what manner a man may take Snipes *with this* Bird lime.

TAke what number you ſhall think moſt expedient for your purpoſe of Birch-twigs, and lime fifty or ſixty of them very well together. After this, go and ſeek out thoſe places where *Snipes* do uſually frequent, which you may know by their Dung.

In very hard froſty or ſnowy Weather, where the Water lies open, they will lie very thick: Having obſerved the place where they moſt feed, ſet two hundred of your Twigs, more or leſs, as you pleaſe, at a yard diſtance one from the other, and let them

them ſtand ſloaping ſome one way and ſome another then retire a convenient diſtance from the place, and you ſhall find there ſhall not one *Snipe* in ten miſs your Twigs, by reaſon they ſpread their Wings, and fetch a round cloſe to the ground before they light. When you ſee any taken, ſtir not at firſt, for he will feed with the Twigs under his Wings; and as others come over the place, he will be a means to entice them down to him. When you ſee the Coaſt clear, and but few that are not taken, you may then take up your Birds, faſting one or two of them, that the other flying over, may light at the ſame place. If there be any other open place near to that where your Twigs are planted, you muſt beat them up: The reaſon why they delight to haunt open places, and where Springs do gently run, is becauſe they cannot feed, by reaſon of their Bills, in places that are hard and ſtony; and about theſe Plaſhes, in ſnowy Weather, they very much reſort.

The manner of taking Felfares *by Water-Bird-lime.*

ABout *Michaelmas*, or when the cold Weather begins to come in, take your Gun and kill ſome *Felfares*; then take a couple of them, or one may ſerve, and faſten them to the top of a Tree, in ſuch manner that they may ſeem to be alive: Having ſo done, prepare two or three hundred Twigs, take a great Birchen-bough, and therein place your Twigs, having firſt cut off all the ſmall Twigs; then ſet a *Felfare* upon the top of the bough, making of him faſt, and let this bough be planted where the *Felfares* do reſort in a Morning to feed; for they keep a conſtant place to feed in, till there is no more food left. By this means others flying but near, will quickly eſpie the top-bird, and fall in whole flocks to him. I have ſeen at one ſall three dozen taken.

Few

How to take Pigeons *with Lime-Twigs.*

Pigeons are great devourers and deſtroyers of Corn; wherefore when you find any ground much frequented by them, get a couple of *Pigeons*, either dead or alive; if dead, put them in ſuch a ſtiff poſture as if they were living and feeding; then at Sun-riſing take a quantity of Twigs, as many as you think fit, let them be ſmall, (but I judge Wheaten-ſtraws are better for this purpoſe) and lay them up and down where your *Pigeons* are placed, and you ſhall find ſuch ſport at every fall that is made, that you may quickly be rid of them without offending the Statute: If there come good flights, you may eaſily take four or five dozen of them in a morning.

How to take Mag-pies, Crows, *and* Gleads *with Lime-twigs.*

WHen you have found any Carrion on which *Crows*, *Pies*, *Kites*, &c. are preying upon, over night ſet your Lime-twigs every where about the Carrion; but let them be ſmall, and not ſet too thick; if otherwiſe, being ſubtile Birds, they will ſuſpect ſome danger or miſchief deſigned againſt them. When you perceive one to be faſt, advance not to him preſently; for moſt commonly when they are ſurely caught, they are not ſenſible thereof.

You may take them another way, and that is by joyning to a Packthread ſeveral Nooſes of Hair up and down the Packthread, and peg it down about a yard from the Carrion; for many times when they have gotten a piece of Fleſh, they will be apt to run away to feed by themſelves, and if your Nooſes be thick, it is two to one but ſome of the Nooſes catch him by the Legs.

How

How to take Rooks, *when they pull up the Corn by the Roots.*

TAke ſome thick Brown-paper, and divide a ſheet into eight parts, and make them up like Sugar-loaves; then lime the inſide of the Paper a very little; (let them be limed three or four days before you ſet them) then put ſome Corn in them, and lay three-ſcore or more of them up and down the ground; lay them as near as you can under ſome clod of Earth, and early in the Morning before they come to feed; and then ſtand at a diſtance, and you will ſee moſt excellent ſport; for as ſoon as *Rooks*, *Crows*, or *Pigeons* come to peck out any of the Corn, it will hang upon his head, and he will immediately fly bolt upright ſo high, that he ſhall ſoar almoſt out of ſight; and when he is ſpent, come tumbling down as if he had been ſhot in the Air. You may take them at Ploughing-time when the *Rooks* and *Crows* follow the Plough; but then you muſt put in Worms and Maggots of the largeſt ſize.

How to take Birds with BAITS, *either Land or Water-fowl.*

IF you have a deſire to take *Houſe-dove*, *Stock-doves*, *Rooks*, *Coughs*, or any other like Birds, then take Wheat, Barley, Fetches, Tares or other Grain, and boil them very well with good ſtore of *Nux vomica* in ordinary running water: when they are almoſt boil'd, dry and ready to burſt, take them off the fire, and ſet them by till they be throughly cold. Having ſo done, ſcatter this Grain in the Haunts of thoſe Birds you have a mind to take; and as ſoon as they have taſted thereof, they will fall down into a dead *ſound*, and ſhall not be able to recover themſelves in a good while.

And

And as you take theſe great Land-fowl with this drunken device, ſo you may take the middle and ſmaller ſort of Birds, if you obſerve to boil with what food they delight in, a quantity of this *Nux vomica*.

Some, inſtead of *Nux vomica*, uſe the Lees of Wine, the ſharper and quicker they are, the better, boiling their Grains in theſe Lees, alſo Seeds or any other food, and ſtrewing them in the Haunts of thoſe Birds you would ſurprize. Theſe do as effectually as *Nux vomica*, and it's the cleanlier and neater way, there being not that poyſonous quality in them.

You may chuſe whether you will boil your Grain or Seed in the aforeſaid Lees; for they will be every whit as effectual if only ſteeped a conſiderable while therein, giving them leave to drink in the Lees till they are ready to burſt before you uſe them.

Others, having neither *Nux vomica*, nor Wine-lees, take the Juice of Hemlock, and ſteep their Grains therein, adding thereto ſome Hebane-ſeed or Poppy-ſeed, cauſing them to be infuſed therein four or five days; then draining the Grain or Seed from the Liquor, ſtrew them as aforeſaid. The Birds having taſted hereof, are immediately taken with a dizzineſs, which will continue ſome hours, ſo that they cannot flie; but they will recover again, if you kill them not. If you intend them for food, let them be firſt recovered.

Thus much for the Land; now let us ſpeak of the Water-fowl.

The ready way by Bait to take ſuch Fowl as receive part of their food by land, and part by water, as *Wild-Geeſe*, *Barnacles*, *Grey plover*, *Mallard*, *Curlew*, *Shoveler*, *Bitter*, *Buſtard*, with many more; I ſay, the beſt way my experience hath found out is, to take Bellenge-leaves, Roots and all, and having cleanſed them very well, put them into a Veſſel of clear running Water, and there let them lie in ſteep twenty four hours; then never ſhift them from the Water, but boil them together till the Water be almoſt conſumed:

ſumed: then take it off, and ſet it a cooling. Then take a quantity hereof, and go to the Haunts of any of the aforeſaid Fowl, and there ſpread of this Bait in ſundry and divers places; and thoſe that ſhall taſt hereof will be taken with the like drunken dizzineſs as the former. To make this Confection the more effectual, it will be requiſite to add a quantity of Brimſtone thereunto in its boiling.

How to recover Fowl thus entranced.

If you would reſtore of theſe entranced Fowl to their former health, take a little quantity of Sallet-oyl, according to the ſtrength and bigneſs of the Fowl, and drop it down the Throat of the Fowl; then chaſe the head with a little ſtrong White-wine-Vinegar, and the Fowl will preſently recover, and be as well as ever.

And thus much for taking Fowl of all ſorts by Baits.

A moſt excellent and approved way how to take the HERN.

A *Hern* is as great a devourer of Fiſh as any is; nay ſome dare affirm, ten times as much as an *Otter*, and ſhall do more miſchief in one week than an *Otter* ſhall do in three months: for I have been told by one that hath ſeen a *Hern* that hath been ſhot at a Pond, to have had ſeventeen *Carps* at once in his Belly, which he will digeſt in ſix or ſeven hours, and then betake himſelf to fiſhing again. I have been informed by another, that he ſaw a *Carp* taken out of a *Herns* Belly which was nine Inches and an half long.

Several Gentlemen that have kept *Herns* tame, have put Fiſh in a Tub, and tried the *Hern* how many ſmall *Roaches* and *Dace* he would eat in a day, and they have found him to eat about fifty in a day, one day with another.

One

One *Hern* that haunts a Pond, in a Twelvemonths time, ſhall deſtroy a thouſand Store *Carps*, and when Gentlemen ſue their Ponds, they think their Neighbours have robbed them, not in the leaſt conſidering an *Hern* is able to devour them in half a years time, if he put in half as many more.

Now ſince this ravenous Fowl is ſo deſtructive to Ponds and Fiſh of the River, it will be very neceſſary to find out a way to deſtroy that, that deſtroys ſo many, which may be done in this manner.

Having found out his haunt, get three or four ſmall *Roaches* or *Dace*, and have a ſtrong Hook with Wyre to it, draw the Wyre juſt within the skin of the ſaid Fiſh, beginning without ſide of the Gills, running of it to the Tail, and then the Fiſh will live five or ſix days. Now if the Fiſh be Dead, the *Hern* will not meddle with him. Let not your Hook be too rank, then having a ſtrong Line with Silk and Wyre, about two yards and a half long, (if you twiſt not Wyre with your Silk, the ſharpneſs of his Bill will bite it in two immediately) and tye a round Stone about a pound weight to the Line, and lay three or four Hooks, and in two or three nights you ſhall not fail to have him if he comes to your Pond. Lay not your Hooks in the water ſo deep that the *Hern* cannot wade unto them. Colour your Line of a dark green, for an *Hern* is a ſubtile Bird. There are ſeveral other Fowl devourers of Fiſh, as *Kings-fiſhers*, *More-hens*, *Balcoots*, *Cormorant*, &c. but none like the *Hern* for Ponds and ſmall Rivers.

How to take PHEASANTS *ſeveral ways.*

THe taking of *Pheaſants* is to be performed three ſeveral ways, by Nets, by Limebuſh, or elſe by other particular Engines, which ſhall be diſcours'd of hereafter.

The taking of *Pheaſants* with Nets, is done either generally or particularly, generally, when the whole eyre of *Pheaſants* is taken, that is the old Cock and the Hen with all their Powts, as they run together in the obſcure Woods, or particularly, when you take none but the old *Pheaſants*, or the young being of an age fit to couple or pair.

For the greater facility of taking *Pheaſants*, you muſt firſt underſtand their Haunts, which are never in open Fields, but in thick young Copſes well grown, and not in old high Woods.

Having thus found out their Coverts, which muſt be ſolitary and untraced by Men or Cattel, the next thing will be how to find out the Eye or Brood of *Pheaſants*.

The firſt way, is by going into theſe young Copſes, and carefully viewing the ſame, ſearching every where, and by that means at laſt finding where they run together, as Chickens after a Hen. Or ſecondly, you muſt riſe early in a Morning, or come late in the Evening, and obſerve how and when the old Cock and Hen call their young ones to them, and how the young ones anſwer back unto them again, and ſo from that ſound direct your Path as near as you can to the place where they are, lying there down ſo cloſe you may not be diſcerned, by which means you will know where they meet, and how accordingly you may place your Nets.

But the moſt certain way of finding them out, is to have a natural *Pheaſant* call, which you muſt learn how to uſe, underſtand all their Notes, and how to apply them: For they have ſeveral Notes, and different, one to cluck them together when the Hen would feed them, another to chide them when they ſtraggle too far, a third to call them to meat when ſhe hath found it, a fourth to make them look out for food themſelves, and a fifth to call them about her to ſport withal. You muſt uſe your Call in the morning early,

at

at which time they ſtraggle abroad to find Provender, or elſe in the Evening juſt about Sun-ſetting, which is their time likewiſe for feeding.

Now altho theſe are the beſt times to uſe your Call, yet you may call them at any other time of the day, only altering your Note. Juſt at, or before Sun-riſing, your Note muſt be to call them to feed, and ſo at Sun-ſet, but in the Forenoon and Afternoon your Notes muſt be to cluck them together to brood, or to chide them for ſtraggling, or to give them notice of ſome approaching danger.

Knowing your Notes, and how to apply them, with the places where *Pheaſants* haunt, which you ſhall know by the ſtrength of the under-groth, obſcureneſs, darkneſs, and ſolitarineſs of the place, you muſt then lodge your ſelf as cloſe as poſſible, and then call at firſt very ſoftly, leſt the *Pheaſants* being lodged very near you, ſhould be affrighted at a loud Note, but if nothing reply, raiſe your Note higher and higher, till you extend it to the utmoſt compaſs, and if there be a *Pheaſant* within hearing, ſhe will anſwer in a Note as loud as your own, provided it be not untunable, for that will ſpoil all.

As ſoon as you hear this Anſwer, if it be from afar, and from one ſingle Fowl, creep nearer and nearer unto it, ſtill calling, but not ſo loud, and as you approach nearer to it, ſo will the *Pheaſant* to you, and as you alter your Note, ſo will ſhe, and in all points you muſt endeavour to imitate her, and in fine you will get ſight of her, either on the Ground or Pearch. Then ceaſe your calling, and ſpread your Net between the *Pheaſant* and your ſelf, in the moſt convenient place you can find, with all ſecrecy and ſilence, making one end of the Net faſt to the ground, and holding the other end by a long Line in your hand, by which, when any thing ſtraineth it, you may pull the Net cloſe together, which done, call again, and as ſoon as you perceive the *Pheaſant* come underneath

your Net, then riſe up and ſhew your ſelf, that by giving the *Pheaſant* an affright, he may offer to mount, and ſo be entangled within the Net.

Now if it ſo fall out that you hear many Anſwers, and from divers corners of the Wood, then ſtir not at all, but keep your place, and as you hear them by their ſounds to come nearer and nearer unto you, ſo ſhall you in the mean time prepare your Nets ready, and ſpread them conveniently about you, one pair of Nets on the one ſide, and another on the other ſide, then lie cloſe, and apply your ſelf to the Call till ſuch time as you have allured them under your Nets, then ſtand up and ſhew your ſelf, which will affright them and make them mount, whereby they will be entangled.

The faſhion of Pheaſant-*Nets*.

You muſt make theſe Nets of double-twined brown Thread died blue or green, let the Meſh be reaſonably large and ſquare, almoſt an inch between Knot and Knot, let the length of it be about three fathom, and the breadth about ſeven foot, and verge it on each ſide with ſtrong ſmall Cord and let the ends be alſo ſo, that it may lie compaſs-wiſe and hollow.

Some make theſe Nets of a much larger ſize, but then they are too cumberſome, and hardly to be ruled with one hand, but the other are readier to pitch, and better to take, alſo more nimble for any purpoſe you ſhall employ them too.

Of Driving of Pheaſant-powts.

The driving and taking young *Pheaſants* in Nets is done after this manner. Having either by your eye or Call found out an Eye of *Pheaſants*, you muſt then (taking the wind with you, for they will naturally run down the wind) place your Nets croſs the little Pads

Pads and ways which you ſee they have made, (for they will make little Paths like Sheeps tracks) and as near as you can, come to ſome ſpecial Haunts of theirs, which you ſhall know by the bareneſs of the ground, Mutings, and looſe Feathers which you ſhall find there: and theſe Nets muſt be placed hollow, looſe, and circularwiſe, the neither part thereof being faſtened to the ground, and the upper ſide lying hollow, looſe, and bending, ſo that when any thing rufheth into it, it may fall and entangle it, which done, you muſt go before where you find the Haunt, and there with your Call (if you find the Eye is ſcattered and ſeparated one from the other) you muſt call them together.

Then take your Inſtrument called a *Driver*, which is made of ſtrong white Wands or Oſiers ſet faſt in a handle, and in two or three places twiſted about and bound with other Wands, bearing the ſhape of thoſe things Cloath-dreſſers uſually dreſs their Cloath withal. I ſay, with this Driver you muſt make a gentle noiſe, raking upon the Boughs and Buſhes round about you, which as ſoon as Powts do hear, they will inſtantly run from it a little way, and then ſtand and liſten, keeping all cloſe together, then give another take, at which they will run again as before: And by thus raking, you will drive them like ſo many Sheep before you which way or whither you pleaſe, and conſequently at laſt into your Nets.

In uſing your Driver there are two things to be obſerved. The firſt is Secrecy, in concealing your ſelf from the ſight of the *Pheaſants*, for if they chance to ſee you, they will inſtantly hide themſelves in Holes and bottoms of Buſhes, and will not ſtir from thence by any means whatever, as long as any day endureth.

The other thing to be obſerved, is Time and Leiſure in the work, for there is nothing obſtructs this Paſtime more than too much haſte, for they are very

fearful Creatures, and are soon startled, and when once alarm'd, their fears will not suffer them to argue or dispute with the affrighting object, but the very first apprehension is sufficient to make them all fly at an instant, without staying to behold what they are so much afraid of.

Of taking Pheasants *with a Limb-bush.*

Having observed their Haunts as aforesaid, take a Bush, or single Rods, and trim them with the best and strongest Lime that can be got, let your Rods be twelve inches, your Lime-bush must not contain above eight Twigs, being the Top branch of some Willow-tree, with an indifferent long Handle, made sharp either to stick into the ground, or into shrubs and Bushes. You may may plant your Bush near the branch of some little Tree which the *Pheasant* usually percheth on.

When you have placed your Bush or Rods, take out your Call, but remove not from your place, lying close without discovery. If your Call be good, and you have skill to use it, you will quickly have all the *Pheasants* within hearing about you, and if one happen to be entangled, she will go near to entangle all the rest, either by her extraordinary fluttering, or their own amazement and confusion. And as they are taken by the Rods on the ground, so you will surprize them with your Bushes, for being scared from below, they will mount to the Pearch or Bushes, to see what becomes of their Fellows, and be there taken themselves.

Here note, That it is very requisite to count all your Rods, and when you have gathered up your Pheasants, see what Rods you have missing, and then conclude from the miss of them, that some Pheasants are run with them into the Bushes and therefore it will be necessary to have a Spaniel which

which will fetch and carry, and one that will not break nor bruiſe either Fleſh or Feather.

The Seaſon for the uſe of Nets or Lime.

The Lime is only for the Winter-ſeaſon, beginning from *November*, when the Trees have ſhed their Leaves, (and then Lime-buſhes and Branches of Trees are alike naked and of the ſame complexion) and ending at *May*, at which time the Trees begin to be furniſhed with Leaves.

The true uſe of the Nets is from the beginning of *May* till the latter end of *October*.

So that there is no time of the year but their Breeding-time, which may not be exerciſed in this pleaſure, whence what profit may ariſe, I ſhall leave to the judgment of thoſe who keep good houſes, and ſuch as have good Stomacks.

How to take PARTRIDGES *ſeveral ways, either by Net, Engine, Driving, or Setting.*

Partridges are naturally cowardly, fearful, ſimple, and fooliſh, and therefore moſt eaſily to be deceived or beguiled with any Train, Bait, Engine, or other Device whatever, whether by Enticement, Call, or Stale.

It will be neceſſary in the firſt place to conſider their Haunts, which are not (like the *Pheaſants*) certain, but various, any covert will ſerve their turn, and ſometimes none at all.

The places they moſt delight in are the Corn-fields, eſpecially whilſt the Corn grows, for under that cover they ſhelter, ingender and breed. Neither

ther are theſe places untrequented by them when the Corn is cut down, by reaſon of the Grain they find therein, eſpecially in Wheat-ſtubble, and the height thereof they delight in, being to them as a covert or a ſhelter. Now when the Wheat-ſtubble is much trodden by Men or Beaſts, then they betake themſelves to the Barley-ſtubble provided it be freſh and untrodden, and they will in the Furrows amongſt the Clots, Brambles, and long Graſs, hide both themſelves and Covies, which are ſometimes twenty in number, ſometimes five and twenty: nay, I have heard of thirty in a Covie.

Now after the Winter-ſeaſon is come, and that theſe Stubble-fields are plough'd up, or over ſoiled with Cattle, then do theſe *Partridges* reſort into the up-land Meadows, and do lodge in the dead Graſs or Fog under Hedges, amongſt Mole-hills, or under the Roots of Trees: Sometimes they reſort to Copſes and Underwoods, eſpecially if any Corn-fields are near adjacent, or where grows Broom, Brakes, Fern, or any Covert whatſoever.

In the Harveſt-time, when every Field is full of Men and Cattle, then you ſhall find them in the day-time in the Fallow-fields which are next adjoyning to the Corn-fields, where they lie lurking till the Evening, and then they feed among the Shocks or Sheaves of Corn, and ſo they do likewiſe early in the Morning.

When you know their Haunts according to the ſituation of the Country and ſeaſon of the year, your next care muſt be to find them out in their Haunts, which is done ſeveral ways. Some do it by the Eye only, and this Art can never be taught, but learned by frequent Experience, diſtinguiſhing thereby the colour of the *Partridge* from that of the Earth, and how and in what manner they lodge and couch together: for which purpoſe you may come near enough

enough to them, for they are a very lazy Bird, and ſo unwilling to take the Wing, that you may even ſet your foot upon them before they will ſtir, provided you do not ſtand and gaze on them, but be in continual motion, otherwiſe they will ſpring up and be gone.

There is another way to diſcover them, and that is by going to their Haunts very early in the Morning, or at the cloſe of the Evening, which is called the *Jucking-time*, and there liſtening for the calling of the Cock *Partridge*, which will be very loud and earneſt, and after ſome few calls the Hen will anſwer, and by this means they meet together, which you ſhall know by their rejoycing and chattering one with another, upon the hearing of which take your range about them, drawing nearer and nearer to the place you heard them *juck* in, then caſt your eye towards the Furrows of the Lands, and there you will ſoon find where the Covie lies, and ſo take them as your fancy ſhall lead you.

The beſt, ſafeſt, and eaſieſt way for finding of *Partridges*, is by the Call, having firſt learn'd the true and natural Notes of the *Partridge*, knowing how to tune every Note in its proper Key, applying them to their due time and ſeaſons.

Being perfect herein, either Mornings or Evenings (all other times being improper) go to their Haunts, and having convey'd your ſelf into ſome ſecret place where you may ſee and not be ſeen, liſten a while if you can hear the *Partridges* call, if you do, anſwer them again in the ſame Notes, and as they change or double their Notes, ſo muſt you in like manner: thus continue doing till they draw nearer and nearer unto you. Having them in your view, lay your ſelf on your back, and lie as if you were dead without motion, by which means you may count their whole number.

Having

Having attained to the knowledge of diſcovering them where they lie, the next thing will be a ready way how to catch them.

Of taking Partridges *with Nets.*

The Nets wherewith you enſnare *Partridges* muſt be every way like your *Pheaſant* nets, both for length and breadth, only the Meſh muſt be ſmaller, being made of the ſame Thread, and died of the ſame colour.

Having found out the Covie, draw forth your Nets, and taking a large circumference, walk a good round pace with a careleſs eye, rather from than towards the *Partridges*, till you have trimmed your Nets, and made them ready for the purpoſe, which done, you muſt draw in your circumference leſs and leſs, till you come within the length of your Net, then pricking down a Stick about three foot in length, faſten one end of the Line of your Net, and make it faſt in the Earth as you walk about, (for you muſt make no ſtop nor ſtay) then, letting the Net ſlip out of your hands, ſpread it open as you go, and ſo carry and lay it all over the *Partridges*.

But if they ſhould lie ſtraggling, ſo that you cannot cover them all with one Net, then you muſt draw forth another, and do with that as you did with the former, doing ſo with a third, if occaſion require, having ſo done, ruſh in upon them, who affrighted, will flie up, and ſo be entangled in the Nets.

How to take Partridges *with Bird-lime.*

Take of the faireſt and largeſt wheat-ſtraws you can get, and cut them off between Knot and Knot, and lime them with the ſtrongeſt Lime. Then go to the Haunts of *Partridges*, and call, if you are anſwered,

ſwered, then prick at ſome diſtance from you your lime Straws in many croſs rows and ranks croſs the Lands and Furrows, taking in two or three Lands at leaſt, then lie cloſe and call again, not ceaſing till you have drawn them towards you, ſo that they be intercepted by the way by your limed Straws, which they ſhall no ſooner touch, but they will be enſnared, and by reaſon they all run together like a brood of Chickens, they will ſo beſmear and daub one another, that very few of them will eſcape.

This way of taking *Partridges* is only to be uſed in Stubble-fields from *Auguſt* till *Chriſtmas*, But if you will take them in Woods, Paſtures, or Meadows, then you muſt lime Rods, as was before expreſſed for the *Pheaſant*, and ſtick them in the ground after the ſame manner.

How to drive Partridges.

The Driving of *Partridges* is more delightful than any other way of taking them: The manner of it is thus.

Make an Engine in the form and faſhion of a Horſe, cut out of Canvas, and ſtuff it with Straw, or ſuch light matter; with this artificial Horſe and your Nets you muſt go to the Haunts of *Partridges*, and having found out the Covie, and pitcht your Nets below, you muſt go above, and taking the advantage of the Wind, you muſt drive downward: Let your Nets be pitcht ſloop-wiſe and hovering. Then, having your Face covered with ſomething that is green, or of a dark blue, you muſt, putting the Engine before you, ſtalk towards the *Partridges* with a ſlow pace, raiſing them on their Feet, but not their Wings, and then they will run naturally before you.

If they chance to run a | by-way, or contrary to your purpoſe, then croſs them with your Engine, and

and by ſo facing them, they will run in to that track you would have them: Thus by a gentle ſlow pace you may make them run and go which way you will, and at laſt drive them into your Net, and ſo diſpoſe of them at your pleaſure.

How to take Partridges *with a Setting-dog.*

There is no Art of taking *Partridges* ſo excellent and pleaſant as by the help of a Setting dog, wherefore, before we proceed to the Sport, we ſhall give you an account what this Setting-dog is.

You are to underſtand then, that a Setting-dog is a certain luſty Land-Spaniel, taught by nature to hunt the *Partridge* more than any chace whatever, running the fields over with ſuch alacrity and nimbleneſs, as if there was no limit to his fury and deſire, and yet by Art under ſuch excellent command, that in the very height of his career by a Hem or ſound of his Maſters voice he ſhall ſtand, gaze about him, look in his Maſters face, and obſerve his directions, whether to proceed, ſtand ſtill, or retire: nay, when he is even juſt upon his Prey, that he may even take it up in his mouth, yet his obedience is ſo framed by Art, that preſently he ſhall either ſtand ſtill, or fall down flat on his belly, without daring either to make any noiſe or motion till his Maſter come to him, and then he will proceed in all things to follow his directions.

Having a Dog thus qualified by Art and Nature, take him with you where *Partridges* do haunt, there caſt off your Dog, and by ſome word of encouragement which he is acquainted with, engage him to range, but never too far from you, and ſee that he beat his ground juſtly and even, without caſting about, or flying now here now there, which the mettle of ſome will do, if not corrected and reproved: And therefore when you perceive this fault,

you

you muſt preſently call him in with a Hem, and ſo check him that he dare not do the like again for that day, ſo he will range afterwards with more Temperance, ever and anon looking in his Maſter's Face, as if he would gather from thence whether he did well or ill.

If in your Dogs ranging you perceive him to ſtop on the ſudden, or ſtand ſtill, you muſt then make in to him (for without doubt he hath ſet the *Partridge*) and as ſoon as you come to him, command him to go nearer him, but if he goes not, but either lies ſtill or ſtands ſhaking of his Tail, as who would ſay, Here they are under my noſe, and withal now and then looks back, then ceaſe from urging him further, and take your circumference, walking faſt with a careleſs Eye, looking ſtraight before the Noſe of the Dog, and thereby ſee how the Covy lie, whether cloſe or ſtragling.

Then commanding the Dog to lie ſtill, draw forth your Net, and prick one end to the ground, and ſpread your Net all open, and ſo cover as many of the *Partridges* as you can, which done make in with a Noiſe, and ſpring up the *Partridges*, which ſhall no ſooner riſe, but they will be entangled in the Net. And if you ſhall let go the Old Cock and Hen, it will not only be an act like a *Gentleman*, but a means to increaſe your Paſtime.

How to take RAILS, QUAILS, MOREPOOTS, *&c.*

FRom what is contain'd in the foregoing Chapters, you may collect a method how to take other Fowl, as *Rails*, *Quails*, *Morepoots*, &c. all which are very good flights for *Hawks*.

Their haunts are much alike with those of the *Partridges*, only the *Quail* loves most the Wheat-fields, the *Morepoot* most the Heath and Forest-grounds, and the *Rails* love the long high Grass where they may lie obscure.

The way of finding them is like that of the *Partridge* by the Eye, the Ear and Haunt, but the chief way of all to find them out is the Call or Pipe, to which they listen with such earnestness, that you can no sooner imitate their Notes, but they will answer them, and will pursue the Call with such greediness, that they will play and skip about you, nay run over you, especially the *Quail*.

The Notes of the Male and Female differ very much, and therefore you must have them both at your command, and when you hear the Male call, you must answer in the Females Note, and when the Female calls, you must answer in the Males Note, and thus you will not fail to have them both come to you, who will and listen the Net is cast over them.

The way of taking these Birds is the same with that of the *Partridge*, and they may be taken with Nets or Lime, either Bush or Rod, or Engine, which you must stalk with, or by the Setting-Dog, which I shall treat of in the next Chapter.

How

How to Elect and Train a SETTING-DOG *from a Whelp till he come to Perfection.*

THE Dog which you elect for Setting muſt have a perfect and good ſcent, and be naturally addicted to the hunting of Feathers, and this Dog may be either Land-Spaniel, Water-Spaniel, or Mungrel of them both, either the ſhallow-flewed Hound, Tumbler, Lurcher, or ſmall Baſtard Maſtiff. But there is none better than the Land-Spaniel, being of a good and nimble ſize, rather ſmall than groſs, and of a courageous Mettle, which tho' you cannot diſcern being young, yet you may very well know from a right breed, which have been known to be ſtrong luſty and nimble Rangers, of active Feet, wanton Tails and buſie Noſtrils, whoſe Tail was without wearineſs, their Search without changeableneſs, and whom no delight did tranſport beyond Fear or Obedience.

When you have made choice of your Dog, begin to inſtruct him about 4 months old, or ſix months at the uttermoſt.

The firſt thing that you ſhall teach your Dog, is to make him loving and familiar with you, knowing you from any other perſon, and following you where-ever you go. To effect this the better, let him receive his food as near as you can from no other hand but your own, and when you correct him to keep him in awe, do it rather with words than blows.

When you have ſo inſtructed your Dog that he will follow none but your ſelf, and can diſtinguiſh your frown from your ſmile, and ſmooth words from tough, you muſt then teach him to couch and lie down cloſe to the ground, firſt, by laying him often on the ground, and crying, *Lie cloſe.* When he hath done

done any thing to your mind and pleaſure, you muſt then reward him with a piece of Bread, if otherwiſe, chaſtize him with words, but few blows.

After this you muſt teach him to come creeping unto you with his Belly and Head cloſe upon the ground, as far or as little a way as you ſhall think fit; And this you may do by ſaying, *Come nearer*, *Come nearer*, or the like, and at firſt, till he underſtand your meaning, by ſhewing him a piece of Bread or ſome other food to entice him to you. And this obſerve in his creeping to you, if he offer to raiſe his Body or Head, you muſt not only thruſt the riſing-part down, but threaten him with your angry voice, which if he ſeem to ſlight, then add a ſharp jerk or two with a Whipcord-laſh.

You muſt often renew his Leſſons till he be very perfect, ſtill encouraging him when he does well.

If you walk abroad with him, and he take a fancy to range, even when he is moſt buſie ſpeak to him, and in the height of his paſtime make him fall upon his Belly and lie cloſe, and after that make him come creeping to you.

After this teach him to lead in a String or Line, and to follow you cloſe at your heels without trouble or ſtraining of his Collar.

By that time he hath learned the things aforeſaid, I conceive the Dog may be a twelvemonth old, at which time the ſeaſon of the Year being fit, take him into the Field and permit him to range, but ſtill in obedience to your command. But if through wantonneſs he chance to babble or open without cauſe, you muſt then correct him ſharply, either with a Whipcord-laſh, or biting him hard at the Roots of his Ears.

Having brought him to good temper and juſt obedience, then, as ſoon as you ſee him come upon the Haunt of any *Partridge*, (which you ſhall know by his greater eagerneſs in Hunting, as alſo by a kind of whim-

wimpering and whining in his voice, being very deſirous to open, but not daring) you ſhall ſpeak to him, bidding him take heed, or the like: but if notwithſtanding he either ruſh in and ſpring the *Partridge*, or opens, and ſo the *Partridge* eſcapeth, you muſt then correct him ſeverely, and caſt him off again, and let him hunt in ſome haunt where you know a Covy lies, and ſee whether he hath mended his fault: And if you catch any with your Nets, give him the Heads, Necks, and Pinions for his future encouragement.

Many more obſervations there are, which are too numerous here to recite; wherefore I ſhall deſiſt, and give you an account of a Water-dog, and ſo finiſh this preſent Diſcourſe.

How to train a WATER-DOG, *and the uſe thereof.*

I Shall begin with the beſt proportion of a *Water-dog*, and firſt of his colour. Although ſome do attribute much to the colour, yet experience lets us know they are uncertain obſervations.

To proceed then, your Dog may be any colour and yet excellent; but chuſe him of Hair long and curled, not looſe and ſhagged: his Head muſt be round and curled, his Ears broad and hanging, his Eye full, lively and quick, his Noſe very ſhort, his Lip Hound-like, his Chaps with a full ſet of ſtrong Teeth, his Neck thick and ſhort, his Breaſt ſharp, his Shoulders broad, his Forelegs ſtraight, his Chine ſquare, his Buttocks round, his Belly gaunt, his Thighs brawny, *&c.*

For the training this Dog, you cannot begin too ſoon with him; and therefore as ſoon as he can lap, you muſt teach him to couch and lie down, not daring to ſtir from that poſture without leave. Obſerve in his firſt teaching to let him eat nothing till he deſerve it;

it; and let him have no more Teachers, Feeders, Cherishers, or Correctors but one; and do not alter that word you first use in his information, for the Dog takes notice of the sound, not the language.

When you have acquainted him with the word suitable to his Lesson, you must then teach him to know the word of Reprehension, which at first should not be used without a Jerk. You must also use words of cherishing, to give him encouragement when he does well: and in all these words you must be constant, and let them be attended with spitting in his mouth, or cherishing of the hand. There is also a word of Advice, instructing him when he does amiss.

Having made him understand these several words, you must next teach him to lead in a string or Collar orderly, not running too forward, nor hanging backward. After this you must teach him to come close at your heels without leading; for he must not range by any means, unless it be to beat Fowl from their Covert, or to fetch the wounded.

In the next place you must teach him to fetch and carry any thing you throw out of your hands. And first try him with the Glove, shaking it over his Head, and making him snap at it; and sometimes let him hold it in his mouth, and strive to pull it from him; and at last throw it a little way, and let him worry it on the ground: and so by degrees make him bring it you where ever you throw it. From the Glove you may teach him to fetch Cudgels, Bags, Nets, *&c.*

If you use him to carry dead Fowl, it will not be amiss; for by that means he will not tear or bruise what Fowl you shoot.

Having perfected this Lesson, drop something behind you which the Dog doth not see; and being gone a little way from it, send him back to seek it, by saying, *Back, I have lost.* If he seem amazed, point with

with your Finger, urging him to ſeek out, and leave him not till he hath done it. Then drop ſomething at a greater diſtance, and make him find out that too, till you have brought him to go back a mile.

Now may you train him up for your Gun, making him ſtalk after you ſtep by ſtep, or elſe couch and lie cloſe till you have ſhot.

Many more neceſſary Rules there are, which for brevity ſake I muſt omit.

The laſt uſe of the Water-dog is in moulting-time, when Wild-fowl caſt their Feathers and are unable to fly, which is between Summer and Autumn: at this time bring your Dog to their Coverts, and hunt them out into the ſtream, and there will your Nets ſurprize them, driving them into them; for at this time ſheep will not drive more eaſily. And though ſome may object, that this ſickly time is unſeaſonable; yet if they conſider what excellent food theſe Fowl will prove when cramm'd, the taking of them may be very excuſable. I have eaten of them after they have been fed a while with Livers of Beaſt, Whey, Curds, Barley, Paſte, ſcalded Bran, and ſuch-like; they have proved exceeding fat, and have taſted not ſo fiſhy as they do by their natural feeding, but exceeding ſweet, and deſerve to be preferred before any Fowl whatſoever.

How to take, preserve, and keep all sorts of Singing-birds that are commonly known in England, *Giving also an account of their Nature, Breeding, Feeding, Diseases of the same, with their* Remedies.

IN the preceding Discourse I have given you a Summary account of the several ways and artifices which are used to take either Land-fowl, or Fowl properly belonging to the Water. Upon second thoughts I look upon this Third part of the *Gentlemans Recreation*, called a *Treatise of Fowling* imperfect, if I add not now what I omitted before, a small Essay as to the Taking, Preserving, and Keeping all sorts of Singing birds commonly known in these her Majesties three Kingdoms. They are thus called.

The *Nightingal.*	The *Starling.*	The *Gold finch.*
The *Black-bird.*	The *Tit-lark.*	The *Green finch,*
The *Wood-lark.*	The *Bull-finch.*	The *Wren.*
The *Linnet.*	The *Canary-bird.*	The *Red start.*
The *Chaff-finch.*	The *Throstle.*	The *Hedge-sparrow.*
The *Rob Red-breast.*	The *Skie-lark.*	

Lastly, their Diseases and Cures.

Of

Of the NIGHTINGAL.

ACcording to the judgment of moſt men, the *Nightingal* carries the Bell from all other Singing-birds, opening her charming Mouth not only ſweetly, but with much variety of pleaſant Notes: It is but a ſmall Bird, yet hath a loud Voice; which made the Poet call her —— *Vox, & præterea nihil.* They are ſo well known, a deſcription of them would be needleſs; and are not only eſteemed of here, but in *Italy* and other parts.

They appear to us at the latter end of *March*, or beginning of *April*, and very few know where they inhabit all the Winter; ſome think they ſleep all that ſeaſon.

She makes her Neſt commonly about two foot above ground either in thick Quick ſet-hedges, or in Beds of Nettles where old Quick-ſet hath been thrown together. She hatcheth her young ones about the beginning of *May*, and naturally delights to frequent cool places, where ſmall Brooks are garniſhed with pleaſant Groves, and Quick-ſet hedges are not far diſtant.

That *Nightingale* which in my opinion is the beſt to keep, is he that is the earlieſt Bird of the Spring; for he will ſing the better, having more time to hear the Old one ſing than thoſe that are hatched later.

The young *Nightingales* muſt be taken out of their Neſts when they are indifferently well fledg'd in a mediocrity: for if well feathered, they will become ſullen; and if too little they are ſo tender the cold will kill them.

For their meat give them lean Beef, Sheeps-heart or Bullocks-heart, taking away firſt the fat Skin that covereth it, and take away the Sinews; after this

ſoak the like quantity of white Bread in water, and ſqueeze out ſome of the water; then mince it ſmall, then feed them with a Stick, taking upon the point thereof the quantity of a Grey Pea, and give every one of them three or four ſuch gobbets in an hour, as long as they ſhall endure to be in the Neſt: when they are able to flie out of the Neſt, then put them into a Cage with ſeveral Pearches for them to ſit upon, and line them with ſome green Bays, for they are very ſubject to the Cramp at firſt; and at the bottom of the Cage put in ſome Moſs or Hey, as well for other Birds as the *Nightingale*: it is ſafe to line their Cages againſt Winter, or keep them in ſome warm place. When they are firſt Caged, continue for a while to put ſome of their Meat by them mingled with Ants, which will induce them to feed themſelves.

In the Summer you muſt feed them every day with freſh Meat, otherwiſe it will quickly grow ſtale or ſtink. When they begin to moult, give them half Egg hard boiled, and half Sheeps heart mingled with Saffron and Water. Here note, Duck-eggs will kill them: you may give them ſometimes red Worms, Caterpillars, and Hog lice, Meal-worms; make them familiar, ſuffering them to take them out of your hand.

The way of taking Old and Young is thus: For the Young, obſerve where the Cock ſings; and if he ſings long, the Hen is not far from that place, who oftentimes betrays her Off-ſpring by being too careful; for when you come near her Neſt, ſhe will *Sweet* and *Cur*: if notwithſtanding this, you cannot find her Neſt, ſtick a Meal-worm or two upon a Thorn, and then lying down or ſtanding, obſerve which way it is carried by the Old one, and drawing near, you will hear the young ones when ſhe feeds them. When you have found out the Neſt, touch not the young; for if you do, they will not tarry in the Neſt.

The

The way to take *Branchers*, by others called *Pushers*, (becauſe when throughly fleg'd the Old ones puſh them out of the Neſt) I ſay you muſt take them after this manner: When you have found where they are, which you ſhall know by their *Curring* and *Sweeting*; for if you call true, they will anſwer you immediately:) having your Tackle all ready, ſcrape, in the Ditch or Bank-ſide, the Earth about three quarters of a yard ſquare, that it may look freſh; then take a Bird-trap, or Net-trap, which you muſt make after this faſhion.

How to make a Net-trap for Nightingales.

Take a Net made of green Silk or Thread, about the compaſs of a yard, made after the faſhion of a Shove-net for Fiſhes; then get ſome large Wyre, and bending it round, joyn both ends, which you muſt put into a ſhort Stick about an Inch and an half long; then muſt you have a piece of Iron with two Cheeks and a hole on each ſide, through which you muſt put ſome fine Whip cord three or four times double, that ſo it may hold the piece of Wood the better, into which the ends of the Wyre are put, and with a Button on each ſide of the Iron, twiſt the Whip cord that ſo the Net may play the quicker: you muſt faſten the Net to the Wyre as you do a Shove-net to the Hoop; then get a Board of the compaſs of your Wyre, and joyn your two cheeks of Iron at the handle of your Board; then make a hole in the middle of your Board, and put a piece of Stick about two Inches long, and a Hole at the Top of your Stick, which you muſt have a Peg to put in with two Wyers, an Inch and half long, to ſtick your Meal-worm upon; then tye a String in the middle of the top of your Net, drawing the Net up, having an eye at the end of the handle to put your Thread through, pull it till it ſtands upright, then pull it through the hole of the Stick that ſtand;

in the middle of your board, and put your Peg in the hole, and that will hold the String that the Net cannot fall down. you muſt put Worms upon the Wyres, before you put it into the hole, and ſet it as gently as you can, that it may fall with the firſt touch of the *Nightingale*: When you have your Net and Worm ready, having firſt ſcraped the place, then put ſome Ants in your Trap-cage, and upon your Board put ſome Worms upon Thorns, and ſet them at the bottom of your Trap-cage, little holes being made for the ſame purpoſe to ſtick in the ends of your Thorns: Then plant your Trap near to the place where you heard them call, either in the Ditch, or by the Bank-ſide, or corner of a Hedge, and then walk away; you may ſet what number of Trap-cages you think convenient. Do what is here propoſed, and you need not doubt the having of your deſires ſatisfied.

Having taken your *Nightingales*, (the time is in *July* or *Auguſt*) tye the ends of their Wings with ſome brown Thread, that ſo they may be diſenabled to hurt themſelves by beating their tender bodies againſt the top and Wyres of the Cage.

Let the Cage be covered above half with green Bays, and for four or five days let him be very little diſturbed by company; but withal forget not to feed them half a dozen times a day with Sheeps-heart and Egg ſhred very fine, and mingle red Ants therewith, and a few red Earth worms would not do amiſs.

Here note, that no *Nightingale* at firſt taking will eat any other food than what is living, as Worms, Ants, Flies, or Caterpillars; which through ſullenneſs if he will not eat, then take him out, and upon the point of a Stick (firſt opening his Bill) give him four or five gobbets one after another; then turn him into the Cage, ſtrowing the bottom thereof with Egg and minced Sheeps heart mingled with ſome Piſmires.

These

These *Nightingales* that are taken at this time of the year, will not sing till the middle of *October*, and then they will hold in song till the middle of *June*: But the *Nightingales* that are taken from the first of *April* to the twentieth, are the best Birds for Song in the whole Universe; and these are taken with Trap-cages or Trap-nets, as the Branchers aforesaid, in *June*, *July*, and *August*. Here observe, that Nestlings nor Branchers (except they have an old Bird to sing over them) have not the true Song for the first 12 Months. When you have so tamed them that they begin to *Cur* and *Sweet* with chearfulness, and record softly to themselves, it is a certain sign that they eat, and then you need not trouble your self with feeding them; but if they sing before they feed, they commonly prove most excellent Birds: Those Birds that are long a feeding, and make no *Curring* nor *Sweeting*, are not worth the keeping. If you have a Bird that will flutter and bolt up his head in the Night against the top of the Cage, keep him not, for he is not only good for nothing, but his bad example will teach the best of your Birds to do the like.

Now to the intent you may not keep Hens instead of Cocks, and so not only be at useless charge, but be frustrated of your expectation, you shall distinguish their Sexes by these observations. The Cock, in the judgment of some, is both longer and bigger: others say, the Cock hath a greater Eye, a longer Bill, and a Tail more reddish; others pretend to know them by the Pinion of the Wing, and Feathers on the Head. These rules I look not upon as infallible, having found them contrary to truth by my own experience: Now to undeceive you, take these true Experimental Observations. First, take notice, that if any of your Nestlings (before they can feed themselves) do Record a little to themselves, and in their Recording you perceive their Throats to wag, you need not doubt that they are Cocks; but when they

come

come to feed themſelves, the Hen will Record as well as the Cock; therefore mark them when young, for it is very difficult to diſtinguiſh afterwards.

Branchers, whether Cocks or Hens (when taken and do feed themſelves) will Record; but the Cock does it much longer, louder and oftener.

The beſt ſort of *Nightingales* frequent High-ways, Orchards, and ſing cloſe by Houſes; theſe when taken will feed ſooneſt, being more acquainted with the company of People; and after their feeding will grow familiar, and ſing ſpeedily. Obſerve, not to untye too ſoon the Wings of your *Nightingale*; for if he be not very familiar and tame when he is untyed, he will be apt to beat himſelf againſt the Cage, and ſo ſpoil himſelf.

Now as to the Diſeaſes and Cures, obſerve this, that at the latter end of *Auguſt* they grow very fat, either abroad or in the Cage: when it begins to abate when they do not ſing, it is a dangerous ſign; wherefore to remedy this, keep them very warm, giving them Saffron in their meat or water: when you perceive the growth of their fat, purge them thrice a Week for a Month, either with a Worm which is found in *Pigeon*-houſes, or with a ſpeckled ſpider, which you may find plentifully about Vines, Currants, or Gooſe-berry-buſhes in *Auguſt*, and at no time elſe. If they are melancholly, put into their Drinking-pot ſome Liquoriſh, with a little white Sugar candy, giving them to feed on Sheeps-heart ſhred ſmall, ſome Meal-worms, and Eggs mingled with Piſmires. It is ſtrange that ſome of theſe Birds, when fat, will faſt three Weeks, which I have known; but it is better when they eat.

Nightingales kept in a Cage two or three years, are ſubject to the Gout: for their Cure, take freſh Butter and anoint their Feet four or five days, and they will be well again. Here note, that for want of keeping them clean, their Feet are clog'd, and then their

Claws

Claws will rot off, and are ſubject to Gout and Cramp, and will take no delight in themſelves; to prevent theſe miſchiefs, put dry Sand into the bottom of their Cages.

They are likewiſe troubled with Apoſthumes and breaking out about their Eyes and Neb; for which, uſe Capon's-greaſe. And thus much of the Diſeaſes of the *Nightingale*.

Of the CANARY-BIRD.

THough many of theſe Birds are lately brought from *Germany*, and therefore are called by the name of that Country, yet undoubtedly their Original proceed from the *Canary* Iſlands. They are in colour much like our *Green-birds*, but differ much in their Song and Nature; and, in this, they differ from all Birds: For, as others are ſubject to be fat, the Cocks of theſe never are, by reaſon of the greatneſs of their mettle, and their laviſh ſinging; either of theſe will not ſuffer him to keep hardly fleſh on his back.

The beſt of them are ſhaped long, ſtanding ſtraight and boldly.

Before you buy either theſe *German* or *Canary-birds*, hear them ſing, and then you will know how to pleaſe your Ear or Fancy, either with Sweet-ſong, Laviſh-note, or Long-ſong, which is beſt, having moſt variety of Notes. Some like thoſe that *whiſk* and *chew* like unto a *Tit-Lark*; others are for thoſe that begin like a *Skie-Lark*, and ſo continue their Song with a long, yet ſweet Note; a third ſort are for thoſe that begin their Song with the *Skie-Lark*, and then run upon the Notes of the *Nightingale*, which is very pleaſant if he does it well: The laſt is for a loud Note and laviſh, regarding no more in it than a noiſe.

If you would know whether your *Canary-bird* be in health before you purchaſe him, take him out of the Store-

Store-cage, and put them into a clean Cage alone; where, if he ſtand boldly without crouching, without ſhrinking Feathers, and his Eyes looking brisk and chearfully; theſe are good ſigns of a healthy Bird: But now obſerve, if he bolts his Tail like a *Nightingale* after he hath dunged, it ſhews he is not well; though he ſeem lively for the preſent, there is ſome Diſtemper near attending: likewiſe if he either dung very thin and watry, or of a ſlimy white, and no blackneſs in it; theſe are dangerous ſigns of death approaching.

Theſe Birds are ſubject to many Diſeaſes, as Impoſthumes which afflict their head, and are of a yellow colour, cauſing a great heavineſs, and withal a falling from the Pearch, and death enſuing, if this Malady be not ſpeedily cured. The moſt approved Cure is to make an Ointment of freſh Butter and Capon's greaſe melted together, and anoint therewith the Bird's Impoſthume three or four days together: if it become ſoft, open it gently, and let out the matter; then anoint the place with ſome of the ſame Ointment, and this will immediately cure him: during the Cure, give him Figs, and Liquoriſh, and White Sugar-candy in his Water.

Canary-birds above three years old are called *Runts*, at two years old they are called *Eriffs*; and thoſe of the firſt year are called *Branchers*; when they are new flown and cannot feed themſelves, they are called *Puſhers*; and thoſe that are brought up by hand, *Neſtlings*. Now ſince there are but few *Canary-birds* which breed in *England*, it being ſo great a trouble to look after them, I ſhall here inſert nothing concerning the ordering when they intend or begin to build; what things are neceſſary for them when they begin to breed; how to order them when they have young ones; or how to breed the young ones when taken out of the Neſt: Thoſe who intend to be informed of every thing hereunto belonging, may eaſily

fily be inſtructed by applying themſelves to ſeveral *Germans* in and about the City, who make it their buſineſs to breed *Canary-birds* after the beſt (*German*) faſhion.

Of the BLACK-BIRD.

AS ſome do eſteem the *Nightingale* to be the beſt Singing-bird in the World, ſo in my opinion the *Black-bird* is the worſt; yet they are as frequently kept as their betters, and are in great eſtimation amongſt the Vulgar; for no other reaſon that I know, than for the loudneſs and coarſeneſs of his Song; as they are Boriſh in their Speech, and have little but ruſticity in their Conditions. To be ſhort, he is better to be eaten than kept, and is much ſweeter to the Palate when dead, than to the Ear when living.

She builds her Neſt upon old Stumps of Trees by Ditch-ſides, or in thick Hedges. As they begin betimes, that is, in the beginning of *March*, (when many times the Woods are full of Snow) ſo they breed often, that is, three or four times a year, according as they loſe their Neſt.

The young *Black birds* are brought up almoſt with any Meat whatſoever; but above all, they love Ground-worms, Sheeps-heart, hard Eggs, and white-bread and Milk mixt together.

This Bird ſings ſomewhat more than three months in the year; his Note, as I ſaid, is harſh, therefore to add a value to him, let him be taught to Whiſtle; yet put Song and Whiſtle together, in my judgment it is fitter for a large Inn than a Lady's Chamber.

Of the THROSTLE.

OF *Throſtles* there be five kinds; the *Miſtle-throſtle*, the *Northern-throſtle* or *Felfare*, the *Wind-throſtle*, the *Wood-ſong-throſtle*, and the *Heath-throſtle*.

The firſt is the largeſt of all the five, and the moſt beautiful: it feeds, for the moſt part, on the Berries of *Miſleto*: and ſince that they are ſo good againſt the Falling ſickneſs and Convulſions; theſe *Throſtles*, when dried and pulverized, and drank in the water of *Miſletoe*, or *Black-cherry-water*, are much more effectual againſt thoſe two Diſtempers. He ſings but little, and therefore though the young ones are eaſie to be brought up, being hardy, yet he is not worth the keeping; for his Notes are rambling, and confuſed, yet not laviſh neither.

The ſecond is the *Felfare*, who comes into *England* before *Michaelmas*, and goes away about the beginning of *March*. In hard weather they feed on Hips and Haws; but when it is indifferently warm, there being neither Froſt nor Snow on the ground, they feed on young Graſs and Worms.

They breed upon certain Rocks near the *Scotiſh* Shore three or four times a year, and are there in very great numbers: They are not ſo fit for the Cage as the Spit, having a moſt lamentable untun'd chattering tone: in Froſt and Snow they are very Fat, and then are moſt delicate Food; but being killed in open weather, they are ſo bitter that they are not worth the eating.

Thirdly, The *Wind-throſtle*, (or *Whindle*) which travels with the *Felfare* out of the North, is a ſmaller Bird, with a dark-red under his Wing. He breeds in Woods and Shaws as *Song-Throſtles* uſe to do, and hath an indifferent Song, exceeding the two former; but

but yet they are fitter for the pot or Spit than for a Cage or Avery.

The Fourth is the *Wood-song throstle*, and sings most incomparably, both lavishly, and with variety of Notes: To add to his estimation, he sings at least nine of the twelve months in the year.

They build about the same time, place, and manner as the *Black-bird* does: her policy in the building of her Nest is much to be admired, since the composure cannot be mended by the art of Man: besides the curious building, she leaves a little hole in the bottom of her Nest, as I conceive to let out the Water, if a violent shower should come, that so her Eggs or young ones may not be drowned.

They go very soon to Nest if the Weather favour them, and breed three times a year, that is, in *March* or *April*, *May* and *June*; but the first Birds usually prove the best.

Take them in the Nest when they are fourteen days old, and keep them warm and clean, not suffering them to sit on their Dung, but so contrive it, that they dung over the Nest. Feed them with raw Meat and some Bread chopped together with bruised Hemp seed, wetting your Bread before you mingle it with the Meat.

Being throughly fledg'd, put them into a Cage where they may have room enough, with two or three Pearches, and some Moss at the bottom of the Cage, to keep them clean; for otherwise they will be troubled with the Cramp, and for want of delighting in themselves the singing will be spoil'd.

Bread and Hemp-seed is as good food for them as can be given: and be mindful of furnishing them at least twice a week with fresh water, that they may bathe and prune themselves therein, otherwise they will not thrive.

The Fifth and last is the *Heath-throstle*, which is the least we have in *England*, having a dark breast. Some

are

are of opinion, that this Bird exceeds the *Song-throſtle*, having better Notes, and neater Plume.

The Hen builds by the Heath-ſide in a Furn-buſh, or ſtump of an old Haw-thorn, and makes not Shaws and Woods her haunt as other *Throſtles* do. She begins not to breed till the middle of *April*, and breeds but twice in a year; and if kept clean and well fed, will ſing three parts in four of the whole year. Their manner of breeding is in like-ſort as the former.

To know the Cock from the Hen, according to old Country-judgment, is to chuſe the Top-bird of the Neſt, which commonly is moſt fledg'd. Others think that to be the Cock which hath the largeſt eye, and moſt ſpeckles on his breaſt. Others chuſe the Cock by the pinion of his Wing, if it hath a very dark black that goes a-croſs it; but above all, chuſe him thus: If his Gullet be white, with black ſtreaks on each ſide, his ſpots on his Breaſt large and black, having his head of a light ſhining brown, with black ſtreaks under each Eye, and upon the pinion of the Wing; theſe are the beſt marks that ever I obſerved.

Of the ROBIN-RED-BREAST.

IT is the opinion of ſome, that this little King of Birds, for ſweetneſs of Note, comes not much ſhort of the *Nightingale*. It is a very tender Bird, and therefore muſt have its Cage lined. They breed very early in the Spring, and commonly thrice a year.

When the young are about ten days old, take them from the old ones, and keep them in a little Bower-basket: if they tarry long in the Neſt, they will be ſullen, and therefore more difficultly brought up: you muſt feed them as you feed the *Nightingale* in all reſpects: finding them grow ſtrong, put them into a Cage, put Moſs in the bottom thereof, and let them ſtand warm.

The

The way of taking a *Robin-red-breast* is ſo eaſie and common, that every boy knows how to take him in a Pit-fall, but with a Trap-cage and a Meal-worm you may take half a ſcore in a day: Hearing them ſing, keep thoſe birds which moſt delight you. If you take any without hearing them ſing, thus you ſhall know whether he be Cock or Hen, if a Cock, his breaſt will be of a darker red, and his red will go farther up upon the head than the Hens.

Of the WREN.

THis Bird in my opinion is a pretty ſweet dapper Songſter, being of a nature chearful, as he is pleaſant to the Ear, ſo he is to the Eye, and when he ſings cocks up his Tail, and throws out his Notes with ſo much alacrity and pleaſure, that I know not any bird of its bigneſs more delights the ſenſe of Hearing.

This bird builds twice a year, about the latter end of *April*, in ſhrubs where Ivy grows thick, and ſometimes in old Hovels and Barns. They lay a numerous quantity of Eggs, and I can aſſure you I have ſeen a Neſt containing two and twenty, herein are two things greatly to be wondred at, firſt, that ſo ſmall a bird ſhould cover ſuch a great quantity of Eggs, ſecondly, when they have hatched to feed them all, and not to miſs one bird, and in the dark alſo.

Their ſecond time of breeding is in the middle of *June*; of either breed, what you intend to keep muſt be taken out of the Neſt at thirteen or fourteen days old. Let their food be Sheeps-heart and Egg minced very ſmall, or Calves or Heifers-heart, but be ſure to clear them of the Fat and Sinews which muſt be a general rule to be obſerved for all Meat-birds. Feed them in the Neſt every day very often, but a little at a

time, let the inſtrument you feed them with be a Stick, and when you obſerve them to pick it off of their own accord, then cage them, and putting meat to them in a little Pan, and about the ſides of the Cage, to entice them to eat, however, have a care to feed them too, leſt they neglect themſelves and die. When they can feed themſelves very well, give them once in three days a Spider or two. You may teach them to whiſtle tunes if you ſo deſire it, for they are eaſily taught, being a bird that's very docible. Here note, if they be fed with Paſte, they will live longer than if they fed upon Hearts. The browneſt and largeſt of the young *Wrens* are the Cocks.

Of the WOOD LARK.

SOme prefer the *Wood-lark* before the *Nightingale*, but it is of this bird as all others, ſome are more excellent in length and ſweetneſs of Song.

This bird breeds the ſooneſt of any we have, by reaſon of his extraordinary mettleſomeneſs: and therefore if they are not taken in the beginning of *February* at leaſt, they grow ſo rank that they will prove good for nothing.

The places this bird moſt delights in are gravelly grounds, and Hills lying towards the Orient, and in Oat-ſtubs. Their building is in your Laiers grounds, where the Graſs is rank and ruſſet, making their Neſts of Bennet Graſs, or dead Graſs of the field under ſome large Tuffet, to ſhelter them from the injury of the weather.

This Bird hath very excellent pleaſant Notes, with great variety, inſomuch that I have obſerved ſome have had almoſt thirty ſeveral Notes, which if they ſing laviſh, is a moſt raviſhing melody or harmony, if the *Nightingale* joyn in conſort.

Theſe

These Birds are never bred from the Nests as ever I could hear, I have several times attempted it, but to no purpose, for notwithstanding my greatest care, they died in a Week, either of the Cramp or Scowring.

The times of the year to take them are *June*, *July*, *August*, and then they are called young *Branchers*, having not yet moulted. They are taken likewise at the latter end of *September*, but having then moulted, the young and old are not distinguishable.

Lastly, they are taken from the beginning of *January* to the latter end of *February*, at which time they are all coupled and returned to their Breeding-places.

The way to take them in *June*, *July*, and *August*, is with an Hobby after this manner, get out in a dewy Morning, and go to the sides of some Hills which lie to the rising of the Sun, where they most usually frequent, and having sprung them, observe where they fall, then surround them twice or thrice with your Hobby on your Fist, causing him to hover when you draw near, by which means they will lie still till you clap a Net over them, which you carry on the point of a Stick.

If three or four go together, take a Net like one made for *Partridges*, when you go with a Setting-dog only, the Mesh must be smaller, that is, a *Lark*-mesh, and then your Hobby to the *Lark* is like a Setting-dog to *Partridges*, and with your Net at one draught you may take the whole flock.

The *Wood-lark* that is taken in *June*, *July*, and *August* will sing presently, but will not last long, by reason of their moulting. That which is taken in *January* and *February* will sing in five or six days, or sooner, and these are the best, being taken in full stomack, and are more perfect in their Song than those taken at other seasons.

If in the Cage you find him grow poor at the beginning of the Spring, give him every two or three days a Tuft of Three leav'd-graſs, (as is uſed to the *Skie-lark*) and boil him a Sheeps heart, and mince it ſmall, mingling it among his Bread, *Egg*, and Hemp ſeed, which will cauſe him to thrive extraordinary.

If he be troubled with Lice, (a Diſtemper he is commonly afflicted withal) take him out of the Cage, and ſmoak him with Tobacco, give him freſh gravel, and ſet him in a hot place where the Sun ſhines, and this will cure him if he have ſtrength to bask in the Sand.

If you would have him ſing laviſh, feed him with Sheeps heart, *Egg*, Bread and Hemp ſeed mixt together, and put into his water a little Liquoriſh, white Sugar-candy, and Saffron; Let this be done once a week.

Upon the firſt taking of your *Wood-lark* thus muſt you do, you muſt put into your Cage two Pans, one for minc'd meat, and another for Oat-meal and whole Hemp ſeed. Then having boil'd an Egg hard, take the crumbs of white Bread, the like quantity of Hemp-ſeed pounded in a Mortar, and mingle your Bread and it with your *Egg* minc'd very ſmall, and give it him. Let there be at the bottom of the Cage fine red Gravel, and let it be ſhifted every week at fartheſt; for he delights to bask in the Sand, which will not be convenient if foul'd with his Dung. Let the pearch of the Cage be lin'd with green Bays, or which is better, make a pearch of a Mat, and leaſt they ſhould not find the Pan ſo ſoon as they ſhould do, to prevent famine, ſtrew upon the Sand ſome Oat meal and Hemp ſeed.

How to know the Cock is thus, firſt, the largeneſs and length of his Call: Secondly, his tall walking: Thirdly, at Evenings the doubling of his Note, which Artiſts call *Cuddling*; but if you hear him ſing ſtrong, you cannot be deceived. Here

Here note, that if a Bird ſings not that is taken in *February* and *January*, within one month after, you may conclude him not worth the keeping, or elſe is an Hen infallibly.

The *Wood-lark* as it is naturally endewed with incomparable notes, ſo it is a tender Bird, and difficult to be kept, but if rightly ordered, and well look'd to will be a moſt delightful Songſter to its Maſter, growing better and better every year to the very laſt.

Theſe Birds are very ſubject to the Cramp, Giddineſs in the Head, and to Louzineſs. The beſt remedy to prevent the Cramp, is to ſhift the Cage often with freſh Gravel, otherwiſe the Dung will clog to the feet, which cauſeth the Cramp. The giddineſs of the Head proceedeth from feeding upon much Hemp-ſeed, perceiving this diſtemper, give him ſome Gentles, (the common Bait for Fiſhermen) Hog-lice, Emmets and their Eggs, with Liquoriſh, all put into water, will ſerve in their ſtead, and will cure immediately. Louzineſs (which cauſeth leanneſs in this bird) is cured as I ſaid before by ſmoaking Tobacco.

Of the SKIE-LARK: *The ſeveral ways to take them; and when taken, how to order them.*

THere is great difference between one *Skie-lark* and another, for one may not be worth two pence, when another ſhall be worth two pounds.

This bird is very hardy, and will live upon any food in a manner, ſo that he have but once a week a Turff of three-leav'd graſs. As the *Wood-lark* hath young ones in *March*, the *Skie-lark* hath rarely any till the middle of *May*. They commonly build in Corn, or thick high graſs Meadows, and ſeldom have more

than four: take them at a fortnight old, and at firſt give them minced ſheeps-heart with chopt hard Egg mingled, when they can feed alone, give them Bread, Hemp-ſeed, and Oat-meal; let the Bread be mingled with Egg, and the Hemp-ſeed bruiſed: Let them have ſand in the bottom of their Cage; Pearches therein are to no purpoſe.

As the *Wood-lark* is taken with Net and Hobby, ſo may the *Skie lark* be taken alſo. They are taken likewiſe in dark nights with a Trammel, this Net is about ſix and thirty yards long, and ſix yards over, run through with ſix ribs of Pack-thread, which ribs at the ends are put upon two Poles ſixteen foot long, made taper at each end, and ſo is carried between two men half a yard from the ground; every ſix ſteps touching the ground, to cauſe the Birds to fly up, otherwiſe you may carry the Net over them without diſturbing them, hearing them fly againſt the Net, clap it down, and they are ſafe under it. This is a very murdering Net, taking all ſorts of birds that it comes near, as *Partridges*, *Quails*, *Woodcocks*, *Snipes*, *Felfares*, and what not, almoſt in every dark night.

The next way of taking them is with a pair of Day-nets and a Glaſs, which is incomparable paſtime in a Froſty Morning. Theſe Nets are commonly ſeven Foot deep, and Fifteen long, knit with your French Meſh, and very fine Thread. Theſe Nets take all ſorts of ſmall Birds that come within their Compaſs, as *Bunting larks*, and *Linnets* in abundance.

Theſe *Larks* are alſo taken by a Low-bell, with a great light carried in a Tub both by one man, and the Net by another, this Bell and light ſo amazeth them, that they lie asdead, and ſtir not till the Net overcaſt them. By this Bell are all ſorts of Fowls and Birds taken, as *Partridge* and *Pheaſant*, and if the Bell be loowed, or very deep *Duck*, *Millard*, *Woodcock*, and *Snipe* may be taken. The

The laſt way of taking *Larks* is in a great Snow by taking an hundred or two hundred yards of Packthread, faſtning at every ſix inches a Nooſe made with Horſe-hair, two hairs are ſufficient. Now ſince I have already deſcribed this way of taking *Larks*, I ſhall deſiſt, and only inform you that thoſe *Larks* you intend to preſerve for ſinging muſt be taken in *October* or *November*: Chuſe the ſtraighteſt, largeſt, and loftieſt Bird, and he that hath moſt white on his Tail, for theſe are the marks of the Cock. Obſerve in this Bird as in all others, that you give no ſalt Meat nor Bread ſeaſon'd with ſalt.

Of the LINNET.

THeir Neſts are uſually in thorn-buſhes and Furz-buſhes, and ſome of the hotter ſort of them will breed four times a year. The young ones may be taken at four days old, if you intend to teach them to whiſtle, or learn the Song of other Birds, for being ſo young, they know not the tune of the old Bird. Being ſo young, keep them very warm, and feed them often, and a little at a time, there muſt be bruiſed ſoaked Rape ſeeds, with the like quantity of white bread, of which there muſt be freſh made every day to prevent ſowring, which will make them ſcour to death, let not their Meat be too dry, for fear of being vent-burnt. If you intend they ſhall whiſtle, do you whiſtle to them in the time of feeding, being more apt to learn before they can crack hard ſeeds. Whatever Bird you intend your *Linnet* ſhall learn his Notes of, hang him under it, and he will perfectly imitate him, nay, ſo docible this Bird is, as I have been credibly informed, that ſome of them have been taught to ſpeak. To know the Cock from the Hen, muſt not always be diſcovered by their Breaſts; but the Cock is beſt known by the brownneſs of his Back and the white

in his Wing, that is to ſay, take your young *Linnet* when the Wing-feathers are grown, and ſtretch out his Wing, holding his body faſt with the other hand, and then obſerve the white upon the fourth, fifth, and ſixth Feather, if it caſt a gliſtering white, and the white goes cloſe to the Quil, this is a ſure ſign of a Cock.

Many are the Diſeaſes of this Bird, as the Ptiſick, known by his panting, ſtaring Feathers, lean Breaſt, and ſpilling his Seeds up and down the Cage; and this Diſeaſe happens for want of Water, or for want of Green Meat in the Spring: He is troubled alſo with Streins or Convulſions of the Breaſt: Sometimes he is afflicted with hoarſneſs in his voice, being over-ſtrein'd in Singing; he is ſometimes melancholy, at other times afflicted with ſcowring, of which there are three ſorts, the firſt is thin and with a black or white ſubſtance in the middle, not very dangerous; the ſecond is between a black and white, clammy and ſticking, this is bad, but the third and laſt is moſt mortal, which is the white clammy ſcowring; The ſeveral Cures I ſhall not here ſet down for brevity ſake, but refer you to the care of the Bird merchant.

Of the GOLD-FINCH, *or* CHRIST-MAS-FOOL, *ſo called in* Norfolk.

THey are taken in great plenty about *Michaelmas*, and will ſoon become tame. The beauty of this Birds ſeverally coloured Feathers is not much taken notice of, becauſe they are ſo common among us, but they have been ſo noted and valued beyond Sea, that they have been tranſported in Great quantities for Great Rarities.

They

They breed commonly in Apple-trees and Plum-trees thrice a year. You must take the young ones with the nest at ten days old, and feed them after this manner: Take some of the best Hemp-seed, pound it, sift it, and mix it with the like quantity of white bread, with some flower of Canary-seed, and taking up the quantity of a white Pea upon a small Stick, feed them there with three or four bits at a time, making fresh every day. You must keep these Birds very warm till they can feed themselves, for their nature is very tender.

For the purgation of this Bird, as well as all others which feed on Hemp-seed, take the seeds of Mellons, Succory, and Mercury, which is a principal Herb for the *Linnet*, but the best for the *Gold-finch* are Lettice and Plantain, and nothing can be more wholsome for him than Wall or Loom-earth, and some fine Sand, and a lump or two of Sugar put always into his Cage.

Of the TIT-LARK.

THis Bird is very short in his Song, and no variety in it, yet some fancy him for his *Whisking*, *Turring*, and *Chewing*. He commonly appears at that time of the year that the *Nightingale* does, which is the beginning of *April*, and leaves us at the beginning of *September*: They are fed when taken as the *Nightingale*; you must cram him at first, for he will not feed himself, by reason he always feed on live meat in the field, for which cause he is unacquainted with the meat we offer him, when he comes to feed of himself he will eat what the *Wood-lark* eats, or almost any other meat.

This Bird breeds about the latter end of *April*, or beginning of *May*, and builds her Nest on the ground by some Pond-side or Ditch-side, and feeds her young with

with Caterpillars or Flies. They are eaſily brought up being hardy, and are not ſubject to Colds or Cramps as other Birds are, but live long if preſerved with care. If you breed up this Bird young and cleanly, you may pleaſe your ſelf with his Song, all that I can ſay of it is, *Short and ſweet.*

Of the CHAF-FINCH.

THere is no ſcarcity of this Bird, and in my mind fitter for the Spit than a Cage, having but one ſhort plain Song, yet for that he is admired by ſome, and kept very charily.

They build their Neſts in Hedges and Trees of all ſorts, and have young ones twice or thrice a year, they are ſeldom bred up from the Neſt, becauſe they are not apt to take another Birds Song, or to whiſtle. The *Eſſex-finch* is beſt both for length of Song, and variety, concluding it with ſeveral Notes very prettily. He is very little ſubject to any Diſeaſe, only he is inclinable to be very louſie, if he be not ſprinkled with a little Wine twice or thrice a month.

Of the STARLING.

THis Bird is generally kept by all ſorts of people above any other bird for whiſtling, but their greateſt fault is, they have them too fledg'd out of the neſt, and that makes them retain commonly ſo much of their own harſh Notes, therefore thoſe who do intend to have them excellent, and avoid their own ſqueaking Notes, muſt take them from the old ones at the end of three or four days, and thus you muſt do to all birds you would learn to whiſtle, or ſpeak, or learn another Birds Song by hanging under him.

Of

Of the RED-START.

THis Bird is a Fore-runner of the *Nightingale*, and is of a very ſullen dogged temper in a Cage; but abroad is very chearful, and hath a very pleaſant kind of Whiſtling Song.

The Cock is fair and beautifully coloured, and is delightful to the eye. They breed thrice a year, the latter end of *April*, in *May*, and towards the latter end of *June*.

They build uſually in holes of hollow Trees, or under houſe-eaves: She is the choiceſt Bird I know of her building; for when ſhe is about her Neſt, if ſhe perceives any to look on, ſhe forſakes it, and if ſhe have young ones and you do the like, ſhe will either ſtarve them, or break their Necks over the Neſt. Now tho' the old ones be thus dogged, yet if you bring up their young, their nature will alter, and become very tame.

You muſt take them out of the Neſt about ten days old, if they ſtay longer, they will learn ſomewhat of the old one's ſullen temper. You muſt feed them with Sheeps heart and Eggs chopped and mixt together, about the quantity of three white Peas, upon the end of a ſtick, when they open their mouths, when they will thus feed, put them into a Cage with meat about it, and a Pan of meat therein, and though he feed himſelf, yet it will be very ſparingly for four or five days, wherefore you muſt now and then feed him your ſelf. Keep him warm in the Winter, and he will ſing as well in the night as the day.

Of the BULL-FINCH.

THe *Bull-finch* hath no Song of his own, nor Whiſtle neither, but is very apt to learn any thing almoſt, if taught by the mouth.

Of the GREEN-FINCH.

THis Bird is not worth keeping for his Song, but for his colour, and being a hardy heavy Bird to ring the Bells.

They breed very ſillily by the High way ſide, and early, before the Hedges have leaves upon them, which cauſes every one to ſee their Neſts at firſt, ſo that ſeldom their firſt Neſts come to any thing. They breed three times a year, and the young ones are very hardy Birds to be brought up. You may feed them with white Bread and Rape bruiſed and ſoaked together: He is apter to take the Whiſtle than another Birds Song. All that can be ſaid of him, he is a very dull Bird, and will never kill himſelf either by Singing or Whiſtling.

Of the HEDGE-SPARROW.

THis is not ſo deſpicable a Bird as ſome would have it; for if you will mind its Song, you will find very delightful Notes, and Sings early in the Spring with great variety. Old or young become tame very quickly, and will Sing in a ſhort time, after they are taken, ſo that you take them at the latter end of *January*, or beginning of *February*: they will feed almoſt on any thing you can give them.

They

They commonly build in a White-thorn, or private Hedge, laying *Eggs* much different from other Birds, being of a very fine blue colour. This Bird is very tractable, and will take any Birds Song almoſt if taken young out of the Neſt. I ſhall only ſpeak a few Experiments of others, and deliver ſome Obſervations of my own concerning the length of Birds lives, and which are moſt proper for Whiſtling, and ſo ſhall end this Treatiſe.

Firſt, As to the length of Birds Lives: Among *Nightingales* ſome live but one year, ſome three, ſome five, ſome eight, and ſome twelve, ſinging better and better for the firſt ſeven or eight years, and after that decline by little and little: They muſt have careful keepers that can preſerve their lives to the fifth year; experience informs us, where one lives to that age, an hundred die.

The *Wood-lark* ſeldom lives in a Cage above ſix years, and hardly five.

The *Robin-red-breaſt* rarely lives above ſeven years, for he is a tender Bird, and much ſubject to the Falling-ſickneſs, Cramp, and Oppreſſion of the Stomack.

The *Skie-lark*, as he is a hardy Bird, ſo he is long liv'd alſo. All ſorts of Seed birds live longer than any ſoft-beaked Birds, eſpecially the *Canary* and *Linnet*. I have known a *Canary bird* live and ſing within a year of Twenty, in like manner the *Linnet*.

So much as to the Lives of Singing Birds, let us now conſider which are moſt fit for Whiſtling.

In the firſt place I look upon the *Starling* to be the beſt, and never heard better than at the *Greyhound* in St. *Mary Ax*, taught and ſold by the ingenious Maſter of that Houſe. But ſince I have ſpoken of the *Starling* and *Bull finch* already, I ſhall inſiſt no further.

The *Black bird* hath a kind of rude Whiſtle, and if young taken out of the Neſt, is very apt to learn.

The

The *Robin red-breaſt* is a moſt incomparable Bird for the Whiſtle, and to Speak alſo. A *Robin* is a hot-mettled Bird, and therefore he muſt not be in the hearing of another, wherefore if you breed two, let them be ſeparated into two ſeveral Rooms, that they may not hear, and ſo conſequently ſpoil each other.

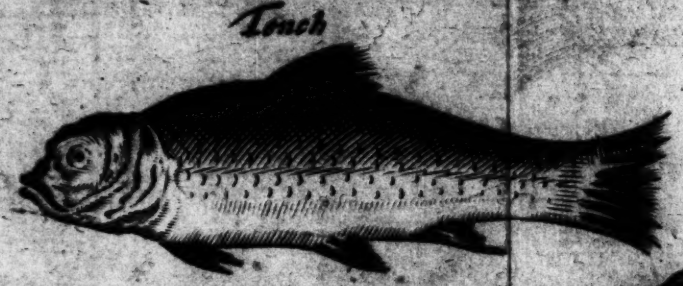
The *Canary-bird* will learn to Whiſtle any thing almoſt, if taken young out of the Neſt, otherwiſe not, for being a very hot-mettled Bird, he will run upon his own Song do what you can.

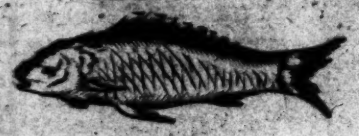
The *Linnet* will learn any Tune almoſt, if not too long, and too full of variety. Learn him one Tune firſt, then another, keeping him dark and ſtill, out of the noiſe of other Birds.

Take this for a general Rule for all Birds, That the younger they be, the better they will prove, and anſwer your expectation for all your trouble and pains in bringing up and keeping them.

THE


Barbel


Tench

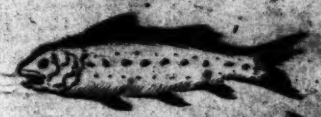

Roach

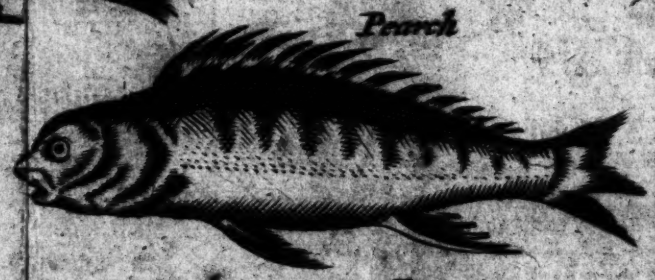

Dace

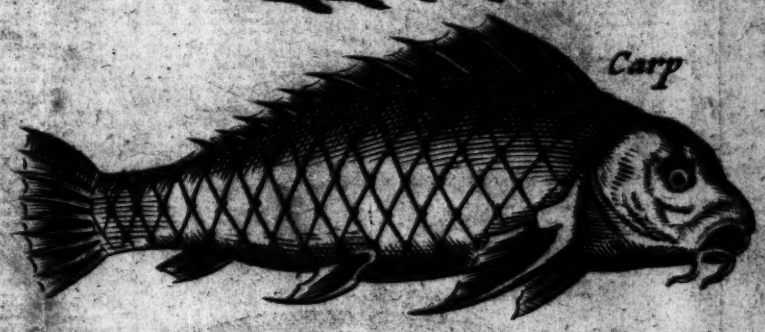

Eele

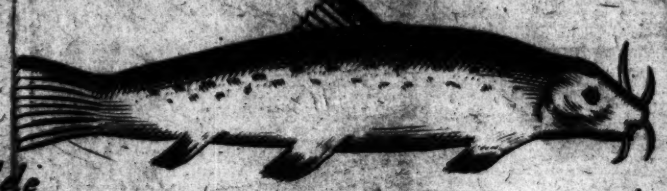

Gudgion

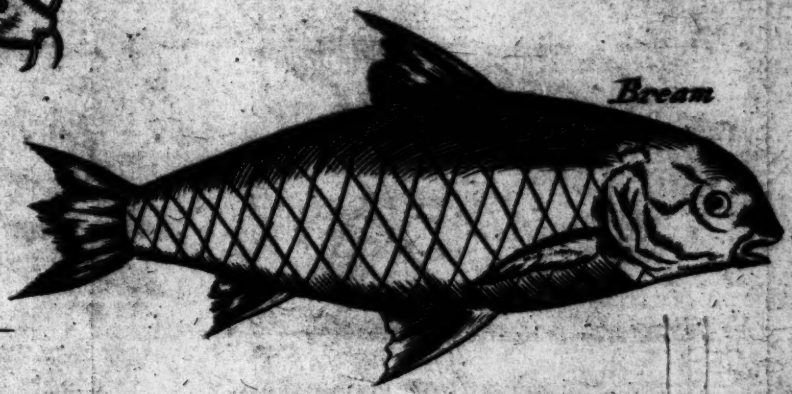

Salmon


Trout


Pearch


Carp


Loach


Bream


Grayling


Pike

W Dolle-fec

THE GENTLEMAN'S RECREATION,

FOR THAT

Noble and Delightful *ART*

OF

Angling.

The Introduction.

ANGLING is an excellent Art, which, as it pleads great Antiquity, ſo the knowledge thereof is with much difficulty to be obtained, and indeed it bears ſome ſimilitude to Poetry in this, that as it is ſaid, *Poeta naſcitur, non fit*, ſo ought the *Piſcator*, or Fiſherman, to have a natural inclination unto the Art of Angling, or his knowledge

knowledge therein will be always dull and imperfect, not but that it may be much heightned by practice and experience.

Now he that intends to be his Crafts-master in this harmless Pastime or Recreation, must not only diligently search and enquire into the mysteries and depths of this Art, but must also be furnished, as aforesaid, with a natural propensity thereunto, attended with Hope and Patience: And having gotten by observation and practice a competent knowledge, or having conquer'd the difficulties of Angling, it will then not only prove pleasant, but profitable, and be like vertue, a Reward to it self.

Now that I may farther commend this ingenious profession, be pleased to take notice of the Antiquity thereof, some saying it is as ancient as *Deucalion*'s Flood. Some attribute it to the invention of one *Belus*, the first Author of vertuous Recreations. Others say that *Seth* left the knowledge of Angling to his posterity ingraven on brazen Pillars with the first Rudiments of the Mathematicks, and other useful Arts, by which means they were preserved from perishing in the universal deluge.

Divers are the opinions of men concerning the Antiquity of this Art, let it suffice, that certainly it is older than *Christ*'s Incarnation, for both *Job* and the Prophet *Amos* make mention of Fish-hooks, and consequently there must be Anglers then in those days.

The next thing that offers it self in the commendation of this Art, is the benefit of Contemplation, which is acquired hereby, which is a thing (according to the opinion of some learned Cloister'd men) to be preferred before Action, because say they, it makes us mortals the nearer to come to the Creator by way of imitation, for he is all Contemplation of his own Infinite Power, Goodness, *&c.*

But

But waving this, I cannot let slip the expression of an ingenious Forreiner, who said, *That Rivers and the Inhabitants of the watry Element were made for wise men to contemplate, and fools to pass by without consideration.* Modesty will not permit me to rank my self in the number of the first, and I shall endeavour to clear my self from the scandal of the last, by giving you a short account of Rivers and their watry Inhabitants.

I shall first discourse of Rivers: One whereof I have read of, scituate in *Epirus*, which hath a strange double and contrary property; the one is, that it will extinguish any Torch that is lighted: and the other is, to light a Torch never lighted before.

The River *Silarus* in a few hours will (as report saith) convert a Rod into Stone. And I my self know a Lough in *Ireland*, that in some years will convert Wood into Stone, of which are made the best Hones. *Cambden* makes mention of a Well near *Kerby* in *Cumberland*, that ebbs and flows several times every day.

The same Author makes mention of the River *Mole* in *Surrey*, which, running several miles under ground, being opposed by Hills, at last breaks out again so far off, that the Inhabitants thereabout boast (as the *Spaniards* of the River *Ama*) that they feed several Flocks of Sheep on a green Bridge. There is such another green Bridge in *Wales*, the River running a great way under ground, and there disemboguing it self into the Sea. Some thereabout report, that they have put a living Goose into the Hole where the Water falls, and she hath swam out at the other end; but with no Feathers on her back.

Mr. *Thomas May* in his History of *the Reign of King Henry* II. relates two strange things from *Gricaldus Cambrensis*, of certains Wells in *Ireland*. His words are these:

A Well there is in Munſter *to be ſeen,*
Within whoſe Waters, whoſoe're had been
Once drench'd, his Hair ſtreight takes an hoary dye.
Another Fountain of quite contrary
Effect to that in Ulſter *Springs, for there*
Thoſe that have waſhed once how old ſoe're
Shall never after have an hoary Hair.

Another thing, though againſt Nature, yet for the ſtrangeneſs of it I cannot chooſe but relate, and that is of a certain River near *Harwood* in *Bedfordſhire*; which in the year of our Lord, 1399, (a little before the Civil Wars between the Houſes of *York* and *Lancaſter* burſt forth) of a ſudden ſtood ſtill, and divided it ſelf aſunder, ſo that men might paſs three miles together on foot down the midſt of the Channel, leaving the Waters like a Wall behind them. *Speed* in his Deſcript. *Bedford.*

I ſhall conclude with two of the ſtrangeſt Rivers that ever were heard of. The firſt is a River called *Eleuſina*, which is ſo merrily diſpoſed, (if you will believe a man of no leſs Authority than *Ariſtotle*) that it will dance to a Fiddle, bubling at the noiſe of Muſick, and will grow very muddy; but as ſoon as the Muſick ceaſeth, it ceaſeth its motion, returning to its former calmneſs and clearneſs. The other is as wonderful, and (if you will believe *Joſephus* that learned *Jew*) it is a River in *Judea*, which runs very ſwiftly all the ſix days of the Week, but reſteth on the Seventh, which is the Jewiſh Sabbath.

And now a word or two concerning Fiſh: *Pliny* ſaith, That Nature's great and wonderful power is more demonſtrated in the Sea than on the Land: and this may appear by thoſe numerous and various Creatures which inhabit in and about that Element, which will appear more at large, if you will read the Hiſtory written either by *Rondeletius*, *Geſner*, *Johnſtonus*, or

or *Aldrovandus*. The number and the various ſhapes of theſe Fiſhes are not more ſtrange than their different Natures, Inclinations and Actions. Give me leave to ſpeak a little hereof.

There is a Fiſh called the *Cuttle-fiſh*, which will caſt a long Gut out of her Throat, with which ſhe angles: For lying obſcurely in the Mud, ſhe permits ſmall Fiſh to nibble at it, and by that means draws them near her by little and little, till coming within her reach, ſhe leaps upon them and devours them: Hence ſhe is called the *Sea-Angler*.

The *Hermit* is a Fiſh that when ſhe grows old will ſeek out a dead Fiſh's ſhell, fit for her purpoſe, and there dwell ſecluded from all company, ſtudying nothing more than how to defend her ſelf againſt the injuries of Wind and Weather.

The *Sargus* is a Fiſh ſo laſcivious, (as *Du-Bartas* expreſſeth it rarely well) that when he cannot find change of Mates enough in the Sea, he will get aſhoar and Cuckold a Goat.

Goes courting She-Goats on the graſſy Shore,
Horning their Husbands that had Horns before.

Whereas it is reported that the *Muller* is ſo chaſt, that when ſhe is deprived of her Mate, ſhe will follow him to the ſhore and dye.

The *Torpedo*, or *Cramp fiſh*, is a Fiſh of ſo baneful and poyſonous a nature, that all other Fiſh that come within her reach are immediately ſtupified and without motion, ſo that they eaſily become her Prey; nay, ſhe will ſo ſuddenly convey her Poyſon up the Rod and Line of the Angler, when ſhe feels her ſelf entangled, that his Hands and Arms immediately loſing their ſtrength, become nummed and ſenſeleſs.

The *Scolopendra* hath as rare and ſtrange a way of defending her ſelf from the Anglers ſubtilty, as any Fiſh whatever, if we may credit the Relation of *Du Bartas*, whoſe words are theſe:

But if the Scolopendra *have ſuckt in*
The ſowre ſweet morſel of the barbed Pin,
She hath as rare a Trick to rid her from it;
For inſtantly ſhe all her Guts will vomit;
And having clear'd them from the danger, then,
She fair and ſoftly ſups them in again,
So that not one of them within her Womb,
Changeth his Office or his wonted room.

The *Remora* is a Fiſh of ſo ſtrange and ſecret a property (and for that reaſon is often uſed for a Metaphor) that as the ſame *Du Bartas* ſaith,

Let all the Winds in one Wind gather them,
And (ſeconded with Neptune's *ſtrongeſt ſtream)*
Let all at once blow all their ſtiffeſt gales,
Aſtern a Galley under all her ſails;
Let her be holpen with an hundred Oars,
Each lively handled with five luſty Rowers;
The Remora *fixing her feeble Horn*
Into the Tempeſt beaten Veſſels Stern,
Stays her Tone ſtill.

In the year of our Lord 1180, near *Orford* in *Suffolk*, there was a Fiſh taken in the perfect ſhape of a Man; he was kept by *Bartholomew de Glanvile* in the Caſtle of *Orford* above half a year; but at length not being carefully looked to, he ſtole to the Sea, and was never ſeen after. He never ſpake, but would eat any Meat that was given him, eſpecially raw Fiſh, when he had ſqueezed out the juice: He was often had to Church, but never ſhewed any ſign of Adoration.

Let

Let what is already ſpoken of Fiſh ſuffice, ſince it will not only be impertinent to enlarge farther, but impoſſible here to give an account of the natures of all Fiſh: I ſhall therefore refer you to ſuch Authors who have made it their buſineſs to write large Volumes.

Before I put an end to this Introduction, permit me to inſert ſomething in the praiſe of *Fiſhermen* and *Fiſhing*.

A ſhort Encomium, or ſomewhat in Praiſe of Fiſhermen *and* Fiſhing.

IT is very remarkable, that amongſt the Twelve Holy Apoſtles there were four of them Fiſhermen, whom our Saviour elected and inſpired to preach the Goſpel. And the reaſon that ſome give for this choice is, that he knew and found the hearts of ſuch men naturally more fitted for Contemplation and quietneſs, having Spirits mild, ſweet, and peaceable.

Beſides, our Saviour ſeems to have a more than common reſpect for their Occupation, for two reaſons. Firſt, He never reproved theſe for their profeſſion, as he did others, *viz.* the Scribes and Money-changers. Next, He dignified theſe poor Fiſher men with the priority of Nomination in the Catalogue of his Twelve Apoſtles. Nay, that which is more obſervable is this, that our Saviour took only three of theſe Fiſher-men with him when he aſcended the Mount to bear him company at his Transfiguration.

Now as to the lawfulneſs of Fiſhing, I think none can ſpeak againſt it, ſince our Saviour himſelf commanded St. *Peter* to fiſh to pay *Cæſar* his Tribute.

And as the Ancients have highly applauded and approved of this ingenious Exercise, several of the Hero's of old, in the height of their glory, having exercised themselves herein: so several of our eminent late Divines have done the like; as Dr. *Whitaker*, learned *Perkins*, Dr. *Nowel* Dean of St. *Pauls*, *London*, and the incomparable Sir *Henry Wotton* Provost of *Eaton* Colledge, who was a great lover of Angling, and would frequently say thereof, that it was after his Study a Rest to his mind, a chearer to his Spirits, a diverter of sadness, a Calmer of unquiet thoughts, a Moderator of Passions, a procurer of Contentedness; and that it begot habits of Peace and Patience in those that profess and practice it. And thus I conclude the praise of *Angling*, tho much more might be spoken thereof.

How to Improve Fish-ponds, and the Fish therein contained.

BEfore I shall lay down such Observations and Instructions, which with much pains and cost I have collected, to render a Fisher-man compleat in that delightful Exercise of taking Fish: I shall give an account of Ponds, and how they may in the best manner be improved.

Imprimis. Consider the scituation of your Pond, and the nature of those Currents which run into it. In the next place, observe whether it be a Breeder, or not: if it be a Breeder, experience will instruct you never to expect any large *Carps* from such Ponds, for the greatness of the number of the Spawn will overstock the Pond, therefore for large *Carps* a Store-pond is ever accounted best.

Now to make a Breeding-pond become a Store-pond, when you cannot make a Store-pond become a Breeding-pond, thus you must do. When you sue your

your Pond, consider what quantity of *Carps* it will maintain; then put in all Milters, or all Spawners, by which means in a little time you will have Carps that are both large and fat beyond your expectation. By putting in but one Sex of them, there is an impossibility of encreasing of them; but of the *Roach* it will notwithstanding multiply abundantly: Therefore it is needful, and altogether necessary for such who keep Breeding-ponds, to sue them once in three years, for fear of the encrease of *Roaches*, tho none were ever put in, which may seem very strange, if the truth thereof could not be made manifest; as thus, there are several Ponds frequented by Wild-ducks, which usually come at night to feed with the Tames ones there abiding: Now those Wilds ducks bring these *Roaches* with them, for their feeding amongst weeds in Rivers.

Besides the Spawn of *Roaches* will hang about their Feet and Feathers, which is washed off by the water of those Ponds they are accustomed to haunt, by which means in a few years they become so numerous though you your self did not put one into the Breeding-pond, for which cause you find your *Carps* so lean, and almost hunger-starved.

By the way, give me leave to insert this true story. A Gentleman not far from the City of *London*, had a large pond of about four Acres of ground, a Gentleman standing by at the suing thereof, and seeing not only a great quantity of Fish, but the best grown that ever he saw, he advised him to put in two or three hundred of stores of *Carp*, about three or fours years growth, out of a pond that was overstocked, and to put Sixty of those he had taken out which accordingly he saw done, fancying to see stately *Carps* at the next suing.

After the expiration of four years, this Gentleman was advised to sue his Pond, to see what Monsters four years addition to their growth would produce,

for those sixty *Carps* were from Eye to Fork from fifteen Inches to eighteen Inches when he put them in: now having sued his Pond, he found almost the whole number of his *Carps*; but they were in such a lean condition, that he did not know them; for they were Monsters in Nature, their heads being bigger than their whole bodies, and almost as heavy, and this happened it seems by his own folly, by putting in but twenty *Roaches*; and when the Pond was sued, there were bushels of small *Roaches*, and these *Roaches* eat up all the sweet feed from the *Carps*; for *Roaches* are like sheep to great Cattle, which eat up and devour all the sweet feed, and what affords the greatest nutriment. This Gentleman was very much frustrated of his expectation; and the Fish monger which came from *London* to buy a penny-worth, as soon as he perceived the Monsters, he mounted his Horse, and rid as if the Devil drove him, not so much as bidding the Gentleman farewel. Here is to be noted, that Ponds which will not breed one *Carp*; *Roaches* in one year will multiply by thousands; therefore you must be careful every year to view your Pond, and observe if any such fry appears, lest when you come to sue your Pond, you be deceived in your expectation.

How to make Carps *grow to an extraordinary bigness in a Pond.*

PErceiving about the month of *April* that your pond begins to grow low in Water, then with an Iron-Rake, rake all the sides of your pond where the water is fallen away; then sow some Hay-seeds, and rake it well; by this means at the latter end of Summer there will be a great growth of Grass, which when winter comes, and the pond being raised by Rain to the Top, will overflow all that Grass; and then the *Carps* having water to carry them to the

feed,

feed, will fill themselves, and in a short time become as fat as Hogs that are kept up for that purpose. Do this every Summer till you sue your Pond, and you will find no River *Carp* to surpass them either in fatness or sweetness.

General Observations to be understood by all such who desire to attain to the compleat and perfect Art of Angling.

BY no means fish in light and dazling Apparel but let your Cloathing be of a dark dusky colour.

Wheresoever you use to Angle (for the Angler hath his peculiar haunt) cast in once in four or five days Corn boiled soft, if for *Carp* and *Tench* oftner, also you may cast in Garbage, Livers of Beasts, Worms chopt in pieces, or Grains steeped in Blood and dried. This will attract the Fish unto the place, and to keep them together as you fish, throw in half a handful of Grains of ground Malt. This must be done in still water, but in a Stream you must cast your Grains above your Hook, and not about it, for as they float from your Hook, so will they draw the Fish after them.

If you will bait a Stream, get some Tin-boxes made full of holes no bigger than just fit for a Worm to creep through; then fill these Boxes with them, and having fastned a Plummet to sink them, cast them into the Stream with a String fastned thereto, that you may draw them forth when you please, by the smalness of the holes aforesaid, the Worms can crawl out but very leasurely, and as they crawl the Fish will resort about them.

If you would bait for *Salmon*, *Trout*, *Umber* and the like, in a Stream, then take some blood, and there-

therewith incorporate fine Clay, Barley, and Malt ground, adding thereto some Water, make all in a Paste with Gum of Ivy; then form it into Cakes, and cast them into the Stream. Some will knead or stick Worms therein fast by the head. If you find your bait take no effect in the attracting of the Fish, you may then conclude some *Pike* or *Pearch* lurketh thereabout to seize his Prey, for fear of which the Fish dare not venture thereabout: you must therefore remove these obstructions of your sport, by taking your Trowl; and let your Bait be either Brandlings or Lob-worms; or you may use Gentles or Minows, which they will greedily snap at.

Keep your Rod neither too dry nor too moist, lest the one make it brittle, and the other rotten. If it be very soultry dry Weather, wet your Rod a little before you Angle, and having struck a good Fish, keep your Rod bent, and that will hinder him from running to the end of the Line, by which means he will either break his hold or the Hook.

If you would know what Bait the Fish loves best at the time of your fishing, having taken one, slit his Gill, and take out his Stomach and open it without bruising, and there you will find what he last fed on and had a fancy to, by which means you may bait your Hook accordingly.

When you fish, shelter your self under some Bush or Tree, or stand so far from the brink of the River that you can only discern your Float: for Fish are timerous, and are affrighted at the least sight or motion. The best way of Angling with the Fly is down the River, and not up, as you will find by experience.

You never need make above half a dozen tryals in one place, either with Fly or Ground-bait, when you Angle for *Trout*; for by that time he will either offer to take, or refuse the Bait, and not stir at all.

If

If you will have Fish bite eagerly and freely, and without suspicion, you must present them with such Baits as naturally they are inclined to, and in such manner as they are accustomed to receive them.

If you use Pastes for Baits, you must add Flax or Wool, mix a little Butter therewith, and that will preserve the Paste from washing off your Hook.

The Eyes of such Fishes as you kill, are most excellent Baits on the Hook for almost any sort of Fish.

Lastly, make not this or any other Recreation your daily practice, lest your immoderate Exercise therein bring a Plague upon you rather than a pleasure.

Astrological Elections for Angling. in general.

IF as the Wise man saith, (and I think there is none that dare question his Authority) that *There is a proper time and season for every action under the Sun*, I hope it will not be offensive nor impertinent to show what time and seasons the intelligent Angler ought to make choice of, that may answer his expectation. For my own part, I have so often experimented the truth of these Rules, that by my good will I would never Angle but at an elected time: the ingenious will not despise them, and for others they were not intended: And they are these;

If you would Neptune's *scaly Subjects get,*
Nights horned Queen in the Midheaven set: ☽
Thence let her on the Paphian *Goddess shine* ♀
I th' West, and greet her with a friendly Trine.
Be sure you always fortify the East,
And let the Maiden Star possess the West.

How-

However let some Aquatick Sign ascend, ♋ ♏ ♓
And let all power his happy Lord attend.
Then see the setting Constellation be
Afflicted by some hateful Enemy, ♂
At least his Lord, the sixth with strength defend;
Let active power his Radiant Lord attend.
Then may you boldly venture to the Flood,
And take from thence what Fishes you see good.

What provision is to be made for Angling-Tools.

THE time of providing Stocks is in the Winter-Solstice, when the Trees have shed their Leaves, and the Sap is in the Roots. For after *January* it ascends again into the Trunk and Branches, at which time it is improper to gather Stocks or Tops.

Let your Stocks be taper-grown, and your Tops the best Rush-ground shoots you can get, not knotty, but proportionable and slender; otherwise they will neither cast nor strike well, and by reason of their unpliableness your Line will be much endanger'd.

Having gathered your Stocks and Tops all in one season, and as streight as you can, bathe them, saying the Tops, over a gentle fire, and use them not till fully seasoned, till about a year and four months; they are better if kept two years.

Now to preserve these stocks or Tops from rotting, or worm-eating, rub them over thrice a year with Sallet or Linseed-oyl; sweet Butter will serve, if never salted, and with any of these you must chase well your Rods: if bored, pour in either of the Oyls, and let them bathe therein twenty four hours, then pour it out again; and this will preserve your Tops and Stocks from injury.

How

How to joyn the Stock or Top together, or how to make all ſorts of Rods for Fly, Ground, or otherwiſe, with what length are beſt for ſeveral ſorts of Fiſhing, I need not here relate, ſince without putting your ſelf to the trouble, you may purchaſe them of ſuch as ſell them at no dear rates.

How to make a Line after the beſt manner.

LET your Hair be round, and twiſt it even, for that ſtrengthens the Line; and let your Hair, as near as you can, be of an equal bigneſs: then lay them in Water for a quarter of an hour, by which means you will find which of the Hairs do ſhrink, then twiſt them over again.

Some intermingle Silk in the twiſting, but I cannot approve of it; but a Line of all Silk is not amiſs, alſo a Line made of the ſmalleſt Lute-ſtring is very good, but that it will ſoon rot by the Water.

The beſt colour for Lines is the ſorrel, white, and grey; the two laſt for clear waters, and the firſt for muddy Rivers: neither is the pale watry green to be contemned, which colour you may make after this manner.

Take a pint of ſtrong Ale, half a pound of Soot, a ſmall quantity of the juice of Walnut-leaves, with the like quantity of Alum; put theſe into a Pipkin, and boil them together about half an hour: Having ſo done, take it off the fire, and when it is cold put in your Hair. Or thus:

Take a Bottle of Alum-water, ſomewhat more than a handful of Marigold-flowers, boil them till a yellow ſcum ariſe; then take half a pound of green Copperas, with as much Verdegreace, and beat them together to a fine powder: put theſe with the Hair into the Alum-water, and let it lie ten hours or more, then take the Hair out, and let it dry.

In

In the maki g your Line leave a *Bough* at both ends, the one to put it to and take it from the Rod, the other to hang your loweſt link upon to which your Hook is faſtened; and ſo you may change your Hook as often as you pleaſe.

Of the Hook, Flote, *and other things worth the Obſervation.*

YOur Hook ought to be long in the ſhank, ſomewhat round in its circumference, the point ſtanding even and ſtraight; and let the bending be in the ſhank.

Uſe ſtrong, but ſmall Silk, in the ſetting on of your Hook, laying the Hair on the inſide of your Hook: for if it be on the outſide, the Silk will fret and cut it aſunder.

As for the Flotes, there are divers ways of making them: Some uſe your *Muſcovy*-Duck quills, which are the beſt for ſtill Waters, but for ſtrong ſtreams, take good ſound Cork without flaws or holes, and bore it through with a hot Iron; then put into it a Quill of a fit proportion; then pare your Cork into a Pyramidal form of what bigneſs you think fit; after this grind it ſmooth.

To plum your Ground, you muſt carry with you a Muſquet-bullet with a hole made through it, or any other ſort of Plummet, tying this to a ſtrong twiſt, hang it on your Hook, and ſo you will find the depth of the Water.

And that you may not incommode your Tackle, it will be very requiſite to make ſeveral partitions in pieces of Parchment ſowed together, by which each Utenſil may have a place by it ſelf.

In any wiſe forget not to carry a little Whetſtone with you to ſharpen your Hooks if you find them blunt and dull.

I need not advise you how to carry your BOB and PALMER, or put you in mind of having several Boxes of divers sizes for your Hooks, Corks, Silk, Thread, Lead, Flies, &c. or admonish you not to forget your Linnen and Wollen Bags for all sorts of Baits, but let me forewarn you not to have a PAUNDER that is heavy, for it can never be light enough: Those which are made of Oliers I think are the best.

Lastly, Forget not to carry with you a small Pole with a Loop at the end thereof, to which you may fasten a small Net to land great Fish withal.

There is another way much better, and that is by the Landing-hook, which hath a Screw at the end of it to screw it into the Socket of a Pole: to which Socket may be fitted also two other Hooks, the one to pull out Wood, and the other sharp to cut away Weeds.

Of Flies *Natural and Artificial, and how to use them.*

NAtural Flies are innumerable, there being as many kinds as there are different sorts of Fruits; to avoid prolixity, I shall only name some of them, *viz.* the *Dun-fly*, the *Stone* or *May-fly*, the *Red-fly*, the *Moor-fly*, the *Tawny-fly*, the *Shel-fly*, the *Cloudy* or *Blackish-fly*, the *Flag-fly*, the *Vine-fly*; also *Caterpillers*, *Canker-flies*, and *Bear-flies*, with Thousands more which frequent Meadows and Rivers, for the contemplation of all, but particularly the recreation of Anglers.

These come in sooner or later, according to the season of the year, that is, sooner, or later according to the forwardness or backwardness of the Spring, for Flies being bred of Putrefaction, commence their being according as the Heat doth further their seminel vertue unto animation.

I cannot preſcribe you Rules to know when each Fly cometh in, and is moſt grateful to every ſort of Fiſh; and therefore I ſhall leave the knowledge hereof to your own obſervation.

Moreover, there are ſeveral ſorts of Flies according to the ſeveral natures of divers Soils and Rivers, or diverſity of Plants; yet ſome there are common to all, altho but few.

All Flies are very good in their ſeaſons for ſuch Fiſh as riſe at the Fly; but ſome more peculiarly good, as being better beloved by ſome ſort of fiſh.

Fiſh generally riſe at theſe Flies moſt eagerly when moſt ſort of Flies reſort to the Water-ſide, hanging in a manner in cluſters on Trees and Buſhes, delighting themſelves to skip thence and play upon the water, and then do the fiſh ſhew their craft in catching them.

To the intent you may the better know what kind of Fly the Fiſh then moſt covet, obſerve thus to do, coming in the Morning to the River-ſide, beat the Buſhes with your Rod, and take up what variety you may of all ſorts of Flies, and try them all, by which means you will quickly know which are in greateſt eſtimation among them. Not but that they will change their Fly ſometimes, but then it is when they have glutted themſelves therewith for five or ſix days together, which is commonly upon the going out of that Fly: for Fiſh never covet that Fly more then when there is greateſt plenty, contemning them at their firſt coming in.

There are two ways to fiſh with theſe natural Flies; either on the ſurface of the water, or a little underneath it. Now when you Angle for *Chevin*, *Roach*, or *Dace* with the natural Fly, move it not ſwiftly when you ſee the Fiſh make at it, but rather let it glide ſpontaneouſly towards it with the Stream. If it be in a ſtill and ſlow water, draw the Fly ſlow-

slowly sideways by him, that will make him eager in pursuit of it; whereas if you should move it swiftly, they will not follow it, being a lazy fish and slow of motion. These fish delight to shew themselves in a Sun-shiny-day almost on the very surface of the Water, by which means you pick and choose.

The *Artificial Fly* is seldom used but in blustering weather, when by the Winds the Waters are so troubled, that the Natural Fly cannot be seen, nor rest upon them.

There are (according to the opinion of Mr. *Walton*, a very ingenious Man, and an excellent Angler) twelve sorts of Artificial Flies to Angle with on the top of the Water, of which these are the principal.

The first is (to use his own words) the *Dun-fly*, in *March*, made of dun Wool, and the Feathers of a Partridge's Wing.

The second is a *Dun-fly* too, and made of black Wool, and the Feathers of a black Drake; the Body made of the first, and the Wings of the latter.

The third is the *Stone fly*, in *April*; the Body is made of black Wool made yellow under the Wings and Tail.

The fourth is the *Ruddy fly*, in the beginning of *May*; the Body being made of red Wool, and bound about with black Silk, with the Feathers of a red Capon, which hang dangling on his sides next his Tail.

The fifth is the *Yellow* or *Greenish Fly*, in *June*; the Body is made with black Wool, with a yellow List on either side, and the Wings taken off the Wings of a Buzzard, bound with black-waxed Hemp.

The sixth is the *Moorish-fly*; the Body made of duskish Wool, and the Wings made of the blackish Mail of the Drake.

The seventh is the *Tawny-fly*, good until the middle of *June*; the Body made of tawny Wool, the

Wings made contrary one against another, of the whitish Mail of the white Drake.

The eighth is the *Wasp-fly*, in *July*; the Body made of black Wool lapt about with yellow Silk, the Wings made with Drake-feathers.

The ninth is the *Shell-fly*, good in the middle of *July*; the body made of greenish Wool lapt about with the Herle of a Peacock's Tail, and the Wings made of Buzzards Wings.

The tenth and last is the *Drake-fly*, good in *August*; the Body made of black Wool lapt about with black Silk, his Wings of the Mail of the black Drake with a black head.

And then having named two more, he concludes wittily, *Thus have you a Jury of Flies, likely to betray and condemn all the* Trouts *in the River.*

This in my opinion seems a tedious and difficult way. I should rather think it better to find the Fly proper for every season, and that which the fish all that time most eagerly covet, and make one as like it as possibly you may, in colour, shape, and proportion; and for your better imitation lay the natural Fly before you.

There are several ways of making these artificial Flies, which I shall forbear here to relate, thinking it more proper to leave it to the ingenuity of every particular person, which will be very much help'd by seeing and observing the Artist's method in their composition.

The best Observations I can collect for artificial Fly-Fishing, are these:

First, Observe to fish in a River somewhat disturbed by Rain, or in a cloudy day, when the Waters are moved by a gentle breeze: the South wind is best, the West indifferent, but the East is stark naught. But as to this I give not much credit; for let the Sky be cloudy, and the Season not too cold, I'll bid defiance to any Wind that blows not too hard. If

it

it blow high, yet not ſo high but that you may conveniently guide your Tackle, they will riſe in plain Deeps, where you ſhall kill the beſt Fiſh: but if the Wind be ſmall, then is the beſt angling in ſwift Streams; and be ſure to keep your Fly in continual motion.

Secondly, Keep as far from the Water ſide as you can, whether you fiſh with a Fly or Worm; and fiſh down the Stream, having the Sun on your back, not ſuffering your Line to touch the Water but your Fly only. Here note, that the light Fly makes moſt ſport in a dark night, and the darkeſt or leaſt Fly in clear day.

Thirdly, in clear Rivers ever Angle with a ſmall Fly with ſlender Wings; but in ſuch as are muddied by Rain, uſe a Fly that is larger bodied than ordinary.

Fourthly, When the water beginneth to clear after Rain, and becomes browniſh, then uſe a Red or Orange Fly; if the day be clear, a light coloured Fly, and a dark Fly for dark Waters; if the Water be of a wheyiſh complexion, then uſe a black or brown Fly. I will not ſay theſe Directions or Rules are without exceptions.

Fifthly, Let your Line for Fly fiſhing be twice as long as your Rod, unleſs the River be cumbred with Wood.

Sixthly, For every ſort of Fly, have ſeveral of the ſame differing in colour, to ſute with the different complexions of ſeveral waters and weathers.

Seventhly, You muſt have a nimble eye, and an active hand to ſtrike preſently with the riſing of the fiſh, or elſe he will be apt to ſpew out the Hook, finding his miſtake.

Eighthly, Let your Fly fall firſt into the Water; for if your Line fall firſt, it ſcares the fiſh, and therefore you muſt draw again and caſt.

Ninthly, When you Angle in slow Rivers or still places with your Artificial Fly, cast it over cross the River, and let it sink a little in the water, and draw it gently back again, so as you raise no Circles, nor break the Water; and let the Fly float gently with the Current, and hereby you will find excellent sport.

Lastly, Take notice that your Salmon-flies must be made with their Wings standing one behind the other, whether two or four. He delights in the finest gawdiest colours you can choose, in the Wings chiefly, which must be long, and so must the Tail.

Of Ground Angling.

IF you fish under the Water for a *Trout*, it must be without a Float, only with a Plumb of Lead, or a Bullet, which is better, because it will rowl on the ground. And this way of fishing is very good in cold weather when the Fish swim very low: you must place this Bullet about nine Inches from the baited Hook; your top must be very gentle, that the Fish may more easily run away with the Bait, and not be scared with the stiffness of the Rod. You must not strike as soon as you feel the Fish bite, but slack your Line a little, that he may the better swallow the Bait and Hook. When you strike do it gently, for the least matter does it.

Let your Tackle be fine and slender, for that is better than your big and strong Lines, which serve only to fright the Fish.

You will find it a better way of Angling to do it without Float or Lead, only making use of a Garden-worm, drawing it up and down the Stream; by which you will take more *Trouts* than any other way, especially if it be in a clear day. The Morning and Evening are the chiefest seasons for the Ground-

Line

Line for *Trout*: but if the day prove Cloudy, or the Water muddy, you may Angle at Ground all the day.

Of Night-Angling.

GReat Fish (especially *Trouts*) are like Bucks, wary and circumspect in their self-preservation, and know the season most fit for them to feed without danger; and that is the Night, as they suppose, thinking then that they most securely range abroad.

In your Night-angling take two great Garden-worms of an equal length, and place them on your Hook; then cast them a good distance, and draw them to you again upon the superficies of the Water, not suffering them to sink; to which end you must not use a Plummet. You may easily hear the Fish rise, and therefore give him some time to swallow your Bait, then strike him gently. If he will not take it at the top, sink your Bait by adding some Lead, and order your self as at a Day-angling on the Ground.

I have frequently experienced it, that the best *Trouts* bite in the Night, rising most commonly in the still Deeps, but usually in the Streams.

Instead of these Garden-worms you may use a black Sneil, or a piece of Velvet in its likeness: this is a most excellent Night-bait for a *Trout*, and nothing like the black Snail for a *Chub* in the Morning early.

You may bait your Hook with a *Minnow* for a *Trout* thus: put your Hook through the point of his lower Chap, and draw it through; then put your Hook in at his Mouth, and bring the point to his Tail, then draw your Line straight, and it will bring him into a round compass: But be sure you so order his Mouth that the Water get not in.

What times are seasonable, and what unseasonable to Angle in.

CAlm and clear weather is very good to Angle in, but cool cloudy weather in Summer is best; but it must not be so boisterously windy as that you cannot guide your Tackle. The cooler the weather is in hottest Months, the better it is: and if a sudden violent shower hath disturbed and muddied the River, then is your time to Angle in the Stream at the ground with a red Worm.

Likewise a little before the Fish spawn is a very good time for Angling; for then their Bellies being full they come into sandy Fords and there rub their Bellies to loosen them, at which time they will bite very freely.

If you intend to fish for *Carp* and *Tench*, you must commence your sport early in the Morning, fishing from Sun-rising till eight of the Clock, and from four in the Afternoon till Night; and in hot Months till it be very late.

In the heat of Summer *Carps* will shew themselves on the very Rim of the Water; at which time if you fish with a Lob-worm as you do with a Fly natural, you have excellent sport, especially if it be among Reeds.

In *March*, *April*, *September*, and all the Winter, (in which season Fish swim deep very near the *Ground*) I say, in those Months it is best fishing in a clear serene warm day, for then they bite fastest: But all the Summer-time Mornings, Evenings, and cool cloudy weather are the best times for Angling.

Here note, that by experience you will find that Fish rise best at the Fly after a shour of Rain that hath only beaten the Gnats and Flies into the River without muddying them. The proper Months and times of the day for the Fly, are *March*, *April*, *May*, and

and the beginning of *June*; in which Months let your times be in the Morning about nine, and between three and four in the Afternoon. A warm Evening is very seasonable, if the Gnats play much.

After a clear Moon-shiny night, if the day succeeding prove cloudy, it is a very good time for Angling; for having abstained from food all the night, (for they will not stir for fear in bright nights) the next day they become hungry and eager, and the gloominess of the day makes them bite boldly.

At the opening of Sluces or Mill-dams go along with the course of the water and you will find *Trouts* and other fish will then come out to seek for what food the water brings down with it.

Having shewn you what seasons are most proper and profitable to Angle in, I will demonstrate to you such as are not.

And *First*, In the extremity of Heat, when the Earth is parched with Drought, there is little sport to be obtained, especially in muddy or clear shallow Rivers.

Secondly, In the Winter or Spring-time, when there happeneth any hoary Frost, then will not the fish bite kindly all that day, unless it be in the Evening, and if that prove serene and pleasant: but it is not convenient to fish at any time when the wind bloweth so high that you cannot manage your Tools to advantage.

Thirdly, Sheep-shearing time is an Enemy to the Angler, for then the Fish glut themselves with what is washt off the Sheep, and will scarcely bite till that season be over. Likewise sharp East and North nipping-winds do very much prejudice the Anglers Recreation; neither is it good to fish immediately after Spawning-time; for at that time their appetite is much abated.

It is a very strange thing to consider the natural instinct in Fish in foreknowing the approach of a

shower of Rain; for I have tried, that upon the ufe of a Cloud that threatned a sudden shower, they would not bite; from which observation I have often fav'd my self from being wet to the Skin.

Lastly, If the proceeding night prove dark and cloudy, the succeeding day will prove ineffectual for fishing, unless for small fish; for at such times the great ones prey abroad for the lesser, who, by instinct knowing the danger, hide themselves till the Morning; and having fasted all night become then very hungry, whilst the great ones having gorg'd themselves, lie absconded all the day long.

The next thing we shall insist on, is the way of taking several sorts of fish (as they are here alphabetically set down) with several proper Baits according to the best of experiences.

Of the BARBEL.

THE *Barbel* is so called by reason of the Barb which is under his Nose or Chaps. He is a leather mouth'd fish, that is, such a one as will not break his hold when hook'd; but will frequently break, if big, both Rod and Line.

They swim together in great Shoals, and are at worst in *April*, though not very good at any time.

The places where he loves most to resort, are where Weeds grow, or in a gravelly rising ground, wherein he will dig and root like a Hog with his Nose: not but that he frequents the strongest swifts of water sometimes, as deep Bridges or Wears, where he will so settle himself among the Piles and hollow places, or amongst Mois of Weeds, that let the water be never so swift, he will remain immoveable. This is his custom in the Summer time; after which times he retires into deep waters, and there helps

the Female to dig a hole in the Sand for her to hide her Spawn from being devoured by other Fish.

This Fish is of a delicate Cast and handsom shape, with small Scales placed after a most curious manner; and as his shape is curious so is his palate, for he will not eat any thing but what is clean; and therefore if you intend to make any sport with him your Bait must be very well scowred. The best for him is a Lob-worm, at which he will bite boldly, if you bait your Ground the night before with big worms cut in pieces. For him you can never bait the Ground too much, nor can you fish for him too early or too late.

Gentles also are a very good Bait for him, if green; and so is Cheese made tough by keeping it in a wet Linen Bag a day or two; This Cheese steeped in clarified Honey, and the Ground where you intend to fish, baited therewith, will give you an opportunity to catch store enough of *Barbles*, if there be any thereabout. You may do well to bait your Hook with Cheese that is soft, and Sheeps-tallow wrought into a Paste: but there is no bait like the well-scowred Lob-worm, or Cheese steeped in Honey an hour or two.

When you fish for this *Barbel*, let your Rod and Line be both long and strong; on your Line let there be a running Plummet, that is, a Bullet with a hole through the middle, let a knot or little bit of Lead be placed a Foot or more above your Hook, to keep your Bullet from falling down on it: so your Worm will lie at the bottom where they always bite, and when he takes your bait the Plummet will lie and not check the fish, and you may know by the bending of the top of your Rod when he bites, and likewise feel him with your hand make a strong snatch, then strike and you rarely fail, if you play him well and tire him; for as he is very subtle, so is he extraordinary strong and dogged to be dealt withal, and will so struggle, that if you manage him not dextrously, he will break your Line.

His

His best time of biting is about nine of the Clock, and the chiefest time of fishing for him is at the latter end of *May*, *June*, *July*, and the beginning of *August*.

Of the BREAM.

THere are two sorts of *Breams*, the one a fresh and the other a salt water Fish, yet neither differ much in shape, nature, or taste.

I shall only speak of the fresh-water *Bream*, which at full growth is a large and stately Fish, and breeds either in Ponds or Rivers; but chiefly delights in the former, which if he likes he will not only grow exceeding fat, but will fill the Pond with his issue, even to the starving of the other Fish.

As for his shape, it is very broad, and thick scaled very excellently, with a forked Tail; his Eyes are large, but he hath a little sucking Mouth, disproportionate to his Body.

The flesh of this Fish is accounted more pleasant than wholesome by some: but as for my part, I am of the Judgment of the *French*, who have a great estimation for it; and if you will but taste his Belly or Head, you will say it is most excellent food.

The *Bream* spawneth in *June*, or the beginning of *July*, and is easily taken; for after one or two gentle turns he will fall upon his side, and so you may draw him to Land with ease. The best time of Angling for him, is from St. *James*-tide till *Bartholomew*-tide; for having had all the Summers food, they are exceeding fat.

The *Bream* is a great lover of red Worms, especially such as are to be found at the root of a great Dock, and lie wrapt up in a round clue; also he loves Paste, Flag-worms, Wasps, green Flies, Butter-flies, and a Grass-hopper with his Legs cut off.

The

The way of taking *Breams* is thus; First bait the ground (where you know they resort) with a convenient quantity of sweet-ground Barley-malt, boyled but a little while, and strained when it is cold: go with it to the place about nine a Clock at night, then take your Malt, and squeezing it between your Hands, throw it into the River, and it will sink: If the stream run hard, cast in your squeezed Balls a little above the place you intend to Angle in. Having thus baited your ground, in the Morning bait your Hook with the greatest red Worm you can get; you may find them in Gardens or Chalky Commons after a shower of Rain; of which you must store your self beforehand, keeping them a Month at least in dry Moss, changing the Moss every three days. Having baited your Hook so that the Worm may crawl to and fro, for the better inticing of the Fish to bite without suspicion, observe where your fish play most and stay longest, which commonly is in the broadest, deepest and stillest part of the River generally in deep and still black Waters, then plumb your ground, and fish within half an Inch of it; for although you shall see some *Breams* play on the top of the water, yet these are but the Sentinels for them beneath.

You may have three or four Rods out at a time stuck in the Bank-side, and let them be long, the Floats Swan or Goose-quills, which must be sunk with Lead, the tops bearing above water about half an Inch. Let your Rods be cast in one above the other about a yard and half distant, and then withdraw your self from the Bank so far that you can perceive nothing but the top of the Float; and when you perceive it sink, then creep to the water-side, and give it as much Line as you can: if it be a *Carp* or *Bream*, they will run to the other side; then strike gently, and hold your Rod at a bent a little while, but do not pull, for then you spoil all; but you must

first

first tire them before you can land them, being very shie. Of the two, the *Carp* is the worst, being more brisk and strong.

Here take notice by the way, if *Pike* or *Pearch* be thereabout it will be but a folly to think of killing *Carp* or *Bream*; and therefore you must remove those obstacles, by fishing them out at first. And to the intent you may know whether there be those Fish of Prey thereabout, take a small *Bleak* or *Gudgeon*, and bait it, setting it alive among your Rods, two foot deep from your Float, with a little red Worm at the point of your Hook: if a Pike be there, he will certainly snap at it.

Of the BLEAK.

THE *Bleak* is an eager fish, and is cought with all sorts of Worms bred on Trees or Plants, also with Flies, Paste, Sheeps-blood, *&c.* You may Angle for them with half a score Hooks at once, if you can fasten them all on. Also in an Evening the *Bleak* will take the natural or artificial Fly.

If it be a warm clear day, there is no Bait so good for the *Bleak* as a small Fly at the top of the water, which they will take at any time of the day, but especially in the Evening: there is no fish that yields better sport for a young Angler than this, for they are so eager that they will leap out of the water at the Bait.

If the day be cold and cloudy, Gentles or Cadice are best about two foot under water.

This same *Bleak* by some is called a Fresh-water-sprat, or River-swallow, by reason of his continual motion.

Some would have him called *Bleak* from the whitish colour, and that is only under his Belly, for his Back is of a pleasant Sea-green.

There

There is another way of taking *Bleaks*, by whipping them in a Boat or on a Bak-side in swift Water in a Summers evening, with a Hazel-top about five or six foot long, and a Line twice the length of the Rod; but the best way is with a Drabble, that is, tie eight or ten small Hooks along a Line two Inches above one another, the biggest Hook the lowermost, by which you may sometimes take a better Fish, and bait them with Gentles, Flies, or small red Worms, by which means you may take half a dozen or more at one time.

Of the BULL-HEAD, *or* MILLER'S-THUMB.

THE *Bull-head* is a Fish which hath a broad Head and wide Mouth, with two broad Fins near his Eyes, and two Fins under his Belly; instead of his Teeth his rough Lips assist them in nibbing at the bait. He hath Fins also on his Back, and one below the Vent; and his Tail is round, his body being all over covered with whitish, blackish, and brownish spots.

They begin to spawn about *April*, and are full of Spawn all the Summer season. The *Bull-head*'s common habitation is in Holes, or among Stones in clear Water in Summer; but in the Winter he takes up his quarters with the *Eel* in the Mud: So doth the *Loach* and *Minnow*; or we cannot guess otherwise where their Winter-abode should be.

He is easily taken in the Summer, for he is lazie and simple. You may see him in hot weather lie Sunning himself on a flat Stone or gravelly Ground, at which time you may put your Hook (which must be baited with a small Worm) very near the Mouth, at which he seldom refuseth to bite, so that the veriest bungling Angler may take him.

He

He is an excellent fish for taste, but of so ill a shape, that many women care not for dressing him, he so much resembles a Toad.

Of the CHEVIN.

THE *Chevin* spawneth in *March*, and is a very strong (yet unactive) fish, yielding in a very little time after he is struck. The larger he is, the quieter he is taken.

As for his food, he loveth all sorts of Worms and Flies, also Cheese, Grain, black Worms, slitting their Bellies that the white may appear: he loveth to have his Bait large, and variety of Baits at one Hook. He delights very much in the Pith that grows in the bone of an Ox-back, of which you must be careful in taking off the tough outward Skin, without breaking the tender inward Skin.

Early in the Morning Angle for your *Chevin* with Snails; but choose some other Bait for him in the heat of the day, for then he will not bite at them. In the Afternoon fish for him at Ground or Flie. There is no Flie he loveth better than a great Moth with a great head, whose Body is yellow, with whitish Wings, which is to be found commonly in Gardens about the Evening. He will not stick sometimes to snap a Lamprey!

Of the CHAR.

I Could never read nor hear that the *Char* was taken any where but in a Mere in *Lancashire*, called *Winander mere*, the largest, according to report, that is in the Kingdom of *England*, being ten miles in length, and as smooth as a Bowling-green at the bottom.

This *Char* is spotted like a *Trout*, and its dimension seldom exceeds seventeen Inches or a foot and half.

half. This Fish is delicate food, having scarce a Bone but what is on the Back. Now since the place is so remote from *London* where these *Chars* are taken, I shall forbear to trouble our City Angler with Rules and Directions how to Angle for him, and pass to such Fish as are frequently found in every River here near adjacent.

Of the CHUB.

THis Fish hath several appellations; for he is called a *Chub*, a *Chavender* by the *French*, by some a *Villain*, by others a *Cheven*. As for my part, call him what you please, I like him not for these reasons: first, he is full of small forked Bones dispersed every where throughout his Body; next, he eats very waterish; and lastly, this Fish is unfirm, and (in my opinion) in a manner tastless.

Of all fish he is the best to enter a young Angler, for he is very easily taken: however give me leave to prescribe you some more Rules than what I have already shewn in the Angling for the *Cheven*, which is the same with the *Chub* or *Chavender*.

You must find out some hole, where you shall have twenty or more of them together in a hot day floating almost on the very surface of the water: let your Rod be long and strong, and your Line not above a yard or two long, very strong, and an indifferent large Hook; then bait your Hook with a Grashopper, bob your Grashopper up and down on the top of the water, and if there be any Chub near he will rise; but so abscond your self that you may not be seen, for he is a very fearful fish, and therefore the least shadow will make him sink to the bottom of the water, yet he will rise again suddenly: this is called Bobing.

Having baited your Hook drop it gently some two foot before that *Chub* you have elected by your eye

to

to be the best and fairest, and he will instantly bite greedily thereat, and be held so fast by reason of his Leather-mouth, that he can seldom break his hold: and therefore you may do well to give him play enough, and so tire him; otherwise you may endanger your Line.

If you cannot find a Grashopper, then bait your Hook with any kind of Fly or Worm, as I said before, as Dors, Beetles, Bobs, Cod or Case-worms.

When you fish for the *Chub* with a Fly, Grashopper, or Beetle, it must be at the top of the water; if with other baits, underneath.

In *March* and *April* Angle for your *Chub* with Worms; in *May*, *June* and *July*, with Flies, Snails, or Cherries. Where note, he will rarely refuse a Grashopper on the top of a swift Stream, nor at the bottom the young Humble-bee. In *August*, *September*, &c. Make use of a Paste made of Parmisan, or *Holland* cheese pounded with Saffron in a Mortar, adding thereunto a little Butter. Others make a Paste of Cheese and Turpentine for the Winter-season, at which time the *Chub* is in his prime; for then his forked Bones are either lost, or converted into a Gristle; and he is excellent meat baked.

In hot weather Angle for him in the middle of the water, or near the top thereof; but in cold weather fish for him near the bottom.

To finish all other discourse of this *Chub*, *Cheven*, or *Chavender*, I shall only say that his Spawn is excellent; and if he be large, the Head, when the Throat is well washt, is the best part of the Fish.

Of the CARP.

IT is confest by all, that the Carp is the Queen of all Fresh-water-fish, being not only a good, but subtil fish, and living longest of all fish (excepting the

he *Eel*) out of his proper Element. Those that die soonest are *Hearings*, for salt-water; and for fresh-water, *Trouts*.

Carps are observed to breed several months in one year; and for this reason you shall hardly ever take either Male or Female without Melt or spawn. They breed ever more naturally in Ponds than in running water: in the latter very seldom or never; and where they breed, they breed innumerably.

He that intends to Angle for a *Carp*, must arm himself with a world of patience, by reason of the extraordinary subtilty and policy of that Fish: They always choose to lie in the deepest places either of Ponds or Rivers where is but a small running Stream. Next, you are to observe that the *Carp* will seldom bite in cold weather; and in hot weather you cannot be too early or too late at your sport; and if he bite, you need not fear his hold, for he is one of those leather-mouth'd Fish, who have their Teeth in their Throat.

When you angle for the *Carp* your Rod and Line must be strong; and because he is so very wary, it is good to intice him by baiting the ground with course Paste: In *March* he seldom refuseth the red Worm, the Cadice in *June*, nor the Grashopper in *July*, *August*, and *September*.

The *Carp* takes delight in Worms or sweet Pastes, of which there are great variety; the best are made up of Honey and Sugar, and ought to be thrown into your Water some hours before you intend to angle; or if you throw in your Past made into small Pellets two or three days before, it will not be the worse, especially if you throw in also Chicken's-guts, Garbage, or Blood incorporated with Bran or Cow-dung.

You may make your Paste in this manner: Take a convenient quantity of Bean-flour, or any other Flour, and mingle it with the flesh of a Cat cut

small; make up this Compositon with Honey, and then beat them altogether in a Morter so long, till they are so tough as to hang upon a Hook without washing off. For the beter effecting thereof, mingle therewith some whitish Wool; and if you would keep it all the year, add there-unto some Virgins-wax and clarified Honey.

If you fish with Gentles, anoint them with Honey, and put them on your Hook with a piece of Scarlet dipt in the like. This is the most approved way to deceive and captivate the subtil *Carp*. Honey, and crumbs of White bread mixt together is a very good Paste for a *Carp*.

An approved way how to take Carp *in a muddy Pond.*

Vide *Chap. of the Tench.*

Of the DACE *and* DARE.

THE *Dace*, *Dare* and *Roach*, are much of a kind, both in manner of feeding, cunning, goodness and commonly in size.

The *Dace* or *Dare* will bite at any Fly, but especially at the Stone-cadice fly or May-fly, the latter end of *April*, and the beginning, or most part of *May* is a most excellent bait, floating on the top of the water; which you may gather great quantities of from the Reeds and Sedge by the water side, or from Hawthorn bushes which grow near the bank of a shallow Gravel-stream, on which they very much delight to hang: also at Ant-flies, of which the blackish is the best, which are found in Mole-hills about the Months of *June*, *July*, *August* and *September*. The way of preserving them for your use is, to put them alive into a Glass-bottle, having first laid therein some of the moist Earth from whence you gather'd them, with some of the Roots of the Grass of the said Hillock: having laid your Ant-flies in gently without prejudicing their Wings,

lay

lay a clod of earth over it: thus you may keep them a Month, if you bruise them not. If you would keep them longer, put them into a large Rundlet, having first wash'd the inside with Water and Honey: having thus kept them three Months, they are an incomparable Bait in any Stream and clear Water, either for *Dace*, *Dare*, or *Roach*, and are good also for a *Chavender*, fishing within a handful from the bottom.

The best time for making use of the Ant flie, is when they swarm, and that is generally about the latter end of *July*, and beginning of *August*: they will cover a Tree or Bush with their multitude, and then if you make use of them, you may load your self with *Roach* or *Dace* in a small time.

In a warm day he rarely refuseth a fly at the top of the water: but remember that when you fish under water for him, it is best to be within an handful of something more of the ground.

If you would fish for *Dace* or *Dare* in winter, then about *Alhallondtide*, where-ever you see Heath or sandy grounds ploughing up, follow the Plough, and you will find a white Worm with a red head, as big as the top of a Mans little finger. You may know where most of them are, by the number of Crows and Rooks which sit on the ploughed land. The worm is very soft, and is by some termed a Grub, which is nothing but the spawn of a Beetle. Gather what quantity you think fit, and put them into a Vessel with some of the Earth from whence they were taken, and you may keep them all the Winter.

Lastly, the young brood of Wasps and Bees having their heads dipt in Blood, are an excellent bait for *Dace* or *Dare*.

Of the EEL.

I Shall not trouble you with variety of Discourses concerning the being of an *Eel*, whether they breed by some Generation, or Corruption as Worms, or by certain glutinous dew drops, which falling in *May* and *June* on the Banks of some Ponds or Rivers, are by the heat of the Sun turned into *Eels*: and these are by some called *Yelvers*, of which I have seen Cakes made, and have eaten thereof when fried, with much satisfaction. I say, waving away all Discourses of this nature, I shall only tell you that some have differenced *Eels* into four sorts chiefly: namely, the Silver *Eel*, a Greenish *Eel*, (which is called a *Greg*) a blackish *Eel*, with a broad flat head; and lastly an *Eel* with reddish Fins.

I shall only speak of the first, which is the Silver *Eel*. This *Eel* is generally believed to have its being from Generation, but not by spawning, but the young coming from the Female alive, and not bigger than a small Needle.

This *Eel* may be caught with several sorts of Baits, but principally with powder'd Beef. A Garden-worm or Lob, or a *Minnow*, or Hen's-gut, or Garbage of Fish, is a very good bait: but some prefer a *Pride*, which others call a *Lamprey*, beyond any yet named.

As *Eels* abscond themselves in Winter, taking up their constant residence in the Mud, without stirring out for six Months; so in the Summer they take no delight to be abroad in the day, and therefore the most proper time to take them is in the night, with any of those Baits aforesaid, fastning your Line to the Bank-side with your Laying-hooks in the water. Or you may throw in a Line with good store of Hooks baited, and plumb'd with a float to discover where the Line lieth, that in the morning

morning you may take it up with your Drag-hook.

There is another way of taking *Eels*, and that is by *Sniggling*. This Sniggling is nothing else but taking in the day-time a strong Line and Hook baited with a Lob or Garden-worm, and making such holes and places where the *Eels* use to abscond themselves in the day-time near Wears, Mills, or Flood gates, and gently by the help of a stick putting your bait into such holes where you imagin *Eels* are: and if there be any, you shall be sure to have a bite; but then have a care you pull not too hard, lest you spoil all. Here note, that the top of your stick must be cleft, wherein you must put a strong Hook, but of a narrow compass; which stick must guide the Bait into the hole where the *Eel* is, by which means, if your Tackling hold, you may get as large *Eels* as any are in the River, Mill-pond, or Flood gate, *&c.* And as this way of fishing is called *Sniggling*, so it is called *Broggling* for *Eels*.

Bobbing for *Eels* is done after another manner; that is, Take very large Lobs, scower them well, and with a Needle run some strong twisted Silk through them from end to end; take so many as that you may wrap them about a board a dozen times at least, then tie them fast with the two ends of the Silk, that they may hang in so many Hanks; then fasten all to a strong Cord, and about a handful and a half above the Worms fasten a Plumb of three quarters of a pound in weight, and fasten your Cord to a strong Pole: having so done, fish in muddy water, and you will feel the *Eels* tug lustily at them. When you think they have swallowed them as far as they can, gently draw up your Line, till you have brought your *Eels* to the top of the water, and then bring them ashore as fast as you can. The Gentleman (and an experienc'd Angler) from whom I received this Instruction, told me, he hath taken six or seven large *Eels* at a time this very way.

There is another way also for taking of *Eels*, (though it be somewhat laborious, and for that reason is best to be made use of in cold weather) and that is by an Instrument called an *Eel-spear*; it is made for the most part with three Forks or Teeth, jagged on the sides, but those are better that have four. This you are to strike into the Mud at the bottom of the River; and if you chance to light where they lie, you need not fear taking them if your Instrument be good.

If you would take very large *Eels* indeed, bait your Night-hooks with small *Roaches*, and let the Hooks lie in the Mouth of the Fish.

Of the FLOUNDER.

I Shall not go about to tell you the nature of a *Flounder*, or give you his description, since he is a Fish so well known to every one.

In *April*, *May*, *June*, and *July*, you may fish for the *Flounder* all day long, either in a swift Stream or in the still Deep, but best in the Stream. Your most proper Baits are all sorts of red Worms, Wasps, and Gentles.

Of the GRAILING.

WHen you angle for the *Grailing*, you must head your Hook upon the Shank with a very slender narrow plate of lead, and let it be slenderest at the bent of the Hook, that the Bait, which must be a large Grashopper, may with more facility come over it. At the point let there be a Cad Bait, and keep the Bait in continual Motion; and forget not to pull off the Gashopper's Wings which are uppermost.

In the Months of *March* and *April*, there is an excellent Bait for the *Grailing*, which is called a *Tag-*

tail

This worm is of a pale fleſh colour, with a yellow Tag on his Tail, ſomewhat leſs than half an inch long, which is to be found in Marled Grounds and Meadows in fair weather, but not to be ſeen in cold weather, or after a ſhower of Rain.

Of the GUDGEON.

THE *Gudgeon*, though ſmall, is a fiſh of ſo pleaſant a taſte, that in my opinion it is very little inferiour to the *Smelt*. I need not deſcribe him, he is ſo well known.

He ſpawns three or four times in the Summer ſeaſon. His feeding is much like the *Barbels*, in ſharp Streams and on Gravel, ſlighting all manner of Flies. He is eaſily taken with a ſmall red Worm, fiſhing near the ground.

This Fiſh is Leather-mouthed, and will not eaſily be loſt off the Hook when ſtruck. You may fiſh for him with Float, your Hook being on the ground; or by hand with a running line on the ground, without Cork or Float.

Waſps, Gentles and Cad-bits are good baits for the *Gudgeon*, but the ſmall Red worm the beſt; you may fiſh for them with two or three hooks at once, and find very pleaſant ſport where they riſe any thing large. When you Angle for them, ſtir up the Sand or Gravel with a long Pole, which will make them gather to that place, and bite faſter and with more eagerneſs.

Of the GUINIAD.

I Cannot ſay much of this fiſh, only that it is excellent food; and therefore I ſhall conclude my diſcourſe of the *Guiniad* with a very ſtrange obſervation; and that is, This Fiſh is not found any where but in a large Water called *Pemble-Mere*: but that

which is most remarkable is this, That the River which runs by *Chester* hath its Head or Fountain in *Merionoth-shire*, and in its course runs through this *Pemble-Mere*, which abounds as much with *Guiniads*, as the River *Dee* doth with *Salmon*, of each both affording great plenty; and yet it was never known that any *Salmon* was ever caught in the *Mere*, nor ever any *Guiniads* taken in the River.

When Dee *that in his course fain in her lap would lie,*
Commixion with her store, his stream she doth deny,
By his complexion prov'd, as he through her doth glide,
Her Wealth again from his she likewise doth divide:
Those white fish that in her do wondrously abound,
Are never seen in him; nor are his Salmons *found*
At any time in her; but as she him disdains,
So he again from her as wilfully abstains.

Draytons Polyolb. *Song* 9.

Of the LOACH.

THE *Loach*, though a small yet a dainty fish: his breding and feeding is in little and clear swift Brooks or Rivulets; here and in sharp Streams Gravel is his usual food. He is small and slender, seldom exceeding three Inches in length: he is bearded like a *Barbel*, having two Fins at his sides, four at his Belly, and only one at his Tail, and is freckled with many black or brown spots.

This *Loach* is commonly full of Spawn, which is, with the flesh, a very grateful food to weak Stomachs, affording great Nourishment. He is to be taken with a very small Worm near the ground, for he delights to be near the Gravel, and therefore is seldom seen on the top of the water.

Of

Of the MINNOW.

THE *Minnow* is a fish without Scales, and one of the least of the watry Inhabitants; but for excellency of meat he may (in my opinion) be compared to any fish of greatest value and largest size; and little things should not be dispised. The Spawners are usually full of Spawn all the Summer long, for they breed often, as it is but necessary, being both Prey and Baits to other fish. They come into the Rivers generally about *March* and *April*, and there continue till the cold weather drive them into their winter quarters again.

Of colour this fish is greenish, or wavy sky-coloured; his Belly is very white, but his Back is blackish. This Fish will bite sharply at a small Worm; and if you will trouble your self to catch enough of them you may make an excellent Tansie of them, cutting off their Heads and Tails, and frying them in Eggs, saucing them with Butter, Sugar and Verjuice.

Anglers use to find him oftner than they would: deep places he seldom frequents. It is a fish no way curious of his feeding, for any Bait pleaseth him if he can but swallow it, he will strain hard for what he cannot gorge. The chiefest food he loveth is a small red Worm, Wasps, or Cad-baits.

Of the POPE, *or* RUFF.

THis Fish, with a double name is small, and seldom grows bigger than a *Gudgeon*; in shape he is not unlike a *Pearch*, but esteemed better food, being of taste as pleasant and delightful as any fish whatever.

The *Ruff* frequents the deepest running places in a Gravel River, the exact bottom of which being

ing

ing found by plumbing, and your Hooks being baited with small red or brandling Worms, (for I would have fish with two or three) you will have incomparable sport as long as you desire.

The *Ruff* makes excellent sport with an unexperienced Angler, for he is a greedy biter; and they are in great Shoals together where the Water is deep, smooth, and calm. If you would catch a good round quantity, bait your ground with Earth, and angle for them with a small red Worm.

Of the PIKE.

THE *Pike* is a very long-liv'd creature, and if we may credit Sir *Francis Bacon*, or *Gesner* that famous Brutologist, he out-lives all other fish, which is pity, he being as absolute a Tyrant of the Fresh-waters, as the *Salmon* is, the King thereof. The larger the *Pike*, the courser the food, the smaller being ever best, contrary to the nature of *Eels*, which improve their goodness by their bulk and age.

He is a melancholick Fish, because he never swims in Shoals, but rests himself alone, and he is as bold as any fish whatever, if we may believe report, which informs us a *Pike* hath been known to fight with an Otter for a *Carp* he had taken, and was carrying out of the water. Another bit a Mule by the Lip as he was drinking, and stuck thereunto so fast, that by that means the owner of the Mule took him. Another bit a Maid by the foot as she was washing. He will frequently devour his own kind unnaturally; from whence I suppose he may obtain the name of a *Fresh-water-Wolf*.

As the *Pike* is in nature like the Hawk, a Bird of Prey, so he is like her in generation, neither of them breeding but once a year: and when the *Pike* spawns it is between *February* and *March*. The best *Pikes* are found in Rivers, the worst in Meres or Ponds.

His

His common food is either Pickerel-weed Frogs or what Fish he can procure. This Pickerel-weed some say both feeds and breeds them.

There are two ways of fishing for the *Pike*; first by the Ledger, secondly by the Walking-bait.

The Ledger-bait is fix'd in one certain place, whilst the Angler may be absent; and this must be a living Bait, either Fish or Frog. Of Fish the best are a *Dace*, *Roach*, or *Pearch*: for Frogs, the yellowest are the best. How to keep them alive on your Hook, your own ingenuity will inform you.

When you intend to use the Ledger-bait, if it be a Fish, stick your Hook through his upper Lip, and then fasting it to a strong Line at least twelve or fourteen yards in length, tie the other end of the Line either to some Stake in the ground, or to some bough of a Tree near the *Pike*'s usual haunt, or where you think 'tis like he may come. Then wind your Line on a forked stick, (big enough to keep the bait from drawing it under water) all except about half a yard, or somewhat more; and your stick having a small cleft at the end, fasten your Line therein; but so, that when the *Pike* comes, he may easily draw it forth, and have Line enough to go to his hold and pouch.

If your Bait be a Frog, put the Arming-wire in at his Mouth, and out at his Gills; and then with a fine Needle and Silk sow the upper part of his Leg with one stich only to your Arming-wire, or tie his Leg above the upper joint to the Wire; but as gently as you can, lest you hurt him.

I have seen excellent sport with living baits tied about the bodies of two or three couple of Ducks, driven over a place where store of *Pikes* have frequented. I have observed the *Pike* to strike so violently at the living bait, that being hung he hath drawn the Duck clear under water. The like may be done with such baits tied to bladders, suffering them

them to float down the River, whilst you mind your sport walking on its bank.

The next way of angling for a *Pike* is with a *Trowl* with a Winch to wind it up withal. As this Fish is very strong, so must your Tackle; and your Rod must not be very slender at top, where must be placed a Ring for your Line to run through. Your Line must be Silk two Yards and a quarter next the Hook, which must be double, and strongly armed with a Wire about seven inches: the rest of your Line may be strong Shoemakers-thread. Upon the shank of the Hook fasten some smooth Lead; and having placed your Hook in the Mouth of a *Minnow*, *Dace*, or *Roach*, with your Lead sink your bait with his Head downward. Having so done, cast your bait up and down: if you feel him at the Hook, give him length enough to run away with the bait and pouch it; which when you think he hath done, strike him with a smart jerk, and so continue your sport with him as long as you shall think fit. Take likewise this next direction from a friend that speaks not much different.

When you intend to Trowl, you may make choice either of *Roach*, *Dace*, *Bleak*, or *Gudgeon* to bait withal, (but for my own part I always prefer the *Gudgeon*) which you must do thus: put your Arming-wire in at the Mouth, and thrusting it along by the Back bring it out again at the Tail, and there fasten it with a Thread, having your Reel in your hand, and your Line fastned to your Hook through a Ring at the top of your Rod, cast your bait into some likely place, and move it up and down in the water as you walk gently by the River-side: when you have a bite (which you may easily feel, for he will give a good tug) be sure to give him Line enough. You may let him lie almost a quarter of an hour before you strike; and then have a care you do it not too fiercely, lest you

you endanger your Tackle and lose the Fish to boot.

If you fish at Snap, you must give him leave to run a little, then strike, striking the contrary way to which he runneth. For this way of angling, a Spring Hook is best; and your Tackle must be much stronger than that for the Trowl, because you must strike with greater force.

Here note, that a large Bait more invites the *Pike* to bite, but the lesser takes him more infallibly, either at Snap or Trowl.

If you fish with a dead bait for a *Pike*, this is a most excellent bait; Take a *Minnow*, Frog that is yellow, *Dace*, or *Roach*, and having dissolved Gum of Ivy in Oil of Spike, anoint your Bait therewith, and cast it where *Pikes* frequent. Having lain a little while at bottom, draw it to the top, and so up the Stream, and you will quickly perceive a *Pike* follow it with much eagerness.

A *Pike* will bite all baits, excepting the Fly, and bites best about three in the afternoon in clear water with a gentle gale, from the middle of Summer to the latter end of *Autumn*; he then bites best in still places or a gentle Stream: but in Winter he bites all the day long. In the latter end, and beginning of the Spring, he bites most eagerly early in the morning, and late in the evening.

Of the PEARCH.

THE *Pearch* is a Fish that is hook-backt, somewhat like a Hog, and armed with stiff Gristles, and his sides with dry thick Scales. He is a bold biter, which appears by his daring to adventure on one of his own kind with more courage than the *Pike* by much.

Some say there are two sorts of *Pearches*, the one salt water, and the other fresh: the first hath but one Fin on his Back, the latter two, which is more than most Fishes have.

He

He spawns but once a year, and that is in *February* or *March*, and seldom grows longer than two foot. His best time of biting is when the Spring is far spent, at which time you may take at one standing all that are in one hole, be they never so many.

His Baits are a *Minnow*, or little Frog; but a Worm called a *Brandling* is best, if well scoured. When he bites give him time enough, and that can hardly be too much.

The *Pearch* biteth well all the day long in cool cloudy weather; but chiefly from eight in the Morning till ten, and from three till almost six.

You may angle for him with Lob-worms, well scoured, Bobs, Oak-worms, Gentles, Colwort-worms, *Minnows*, Dors, Wasps, and Cad baits.

He will not bite at all the seasons of the year, especially in Winter, for then he is very abstemious; yet if it be warm he will bite then in the midst of the day; for in Winter all Fish bite best about the heat of the day.

If you rove for a *Pearch* with a *Minnow*, (which of all baits yields the most delightful recreation to the Angler) it must be alive, sticking your Hook through his upper Lip or back Fin, and letting him swim about mid-water, or somewhat lower; for which purpose you must have an indifferent large Cork with a Quill on your Line.

I always make use of a good strong Silk Line, and a good Hook arm'd with Wire, so that if a *Pike* do come I may be provided for him, and have by this means taken several. I use also to carry a Tin-pot of about two quarts or three pints, in which to keep my *Minnows* or *Gudgeons* alive: the Lid of the Pot is full of little holes, so that I can give them fresh-water without opening it; which ought to be about every quarter of an hour, lest they die.

If you take a small Casting-net with you, you may at a cast or two take baits enough to serve you all day without farther trouble. When

When you fish with a Frog you must fasten the Hook through the skin of his Leg towards the upper part thereof.

The *Pearch* is none of the Leather mouth'd sort of Fishes; and therefore when he bites give him time enough to pouch his bait, lest when you think all sure, his hold break out, and you lose your Fish and your patience too.

The best place to fish for *Pearches* is in the turning of the water, or Edwing in a good Gravel Scoure, where you will not fail of them, and Ruffs before spoke of.

He that will take a *Pearch* must first take notice that this Fish feeds weil, and bites freely. Let the Angler over-night bait his ground with Lob-worms chopt in pieces; and in the morning let him come to the place, where he must first plumb his ground, then gage his Line, and bait his Hook with a red knotted worm, or a *Minnow*, which is better in my opinion: the Hook must be put in at the back of the *Minnow* betwixt the fish and the skin, that the *Minnow* may swim up and down alive, being buoyed up with a Cork or Quill, that the *Minnow* may have liberty to swim a foot off the ground. Let these directions be carefully observed and followed, and the Angler need not fear the frustration of his expectations.

Of the RUD.

THE *Rud* hath a forked Tail, and is small of size: some say he is bred of the *Roach* and *Bream*, and is found in Ponds; in some they are in a manner innumerable.

There is little less difference between the *Rud* and *Roach*, than there is between the *Herring* and *Pilchard*, their shape being much alike, only differing in bulk or bigness. Since the *Rud* is but a Bastard-

ſtard *Roach*, I ſhall ſpeak no more of him, but diſcourſe of the genuine *Roach* only.

Of the ROACH.

THE *Roach* is not looked on as any delicate Fiſh at all; if there be any thing prizeable, it is his Spawn.

The *Roach* is a very ſilly fiſh, being every whit as ſimple as the *Carp* is crafty. They are more to be eſteemed which are found in Rivers than in Ponds, altho thoſe that breed in the latter are of a much larger ſize; yet the *Thames* below Bridge abounds with very large fat *Roach*, ſuch as I may confidently affirm exceed in magnitude all others either in Ponds or Rivers.

The *Roach* is a Leather-mouth'd fiſh, having his Teeth (as I ſaid before) in his Throat, as all Leather-mouth'd fiſh have.

In *April* the Cads or Worms are proper Baits to angle for *Roaches*; in Summer fiſh for them with ſmall white Snails or Flies: but note, they muſt be under water, for he will not bite at the top. Or, take a *May fly*, and with a Plumb ſink it where you imagin *Roaches* lie, whether in deep water, or near the Poſts and Piles either of Bridge or Wear: having ſo done, do not haſtily, but gently pull your Fly up, and you will ſee the *Roach* (if any there) purſue and take it near the rim of the water, leſt by ſlight it ſhould eſcape.

In Autumn you may fiſh for them with Paſte only made of the crums of fine white bread, moulded with a little water and the labour of your hands into a tough Paſte, coloured not very deep with Red-lead, with which you may mix a little fine Cotton or Lint, and a little Butter; theſe laſt will make it hold on, and not waſh off your Hook, with which you muſt fiſh with much circumſpection, or you loſe your bait.

In

In like manner in Winter you may angle for *Roach* with Paste; but Gentles are then the better bait.

Take these next observations experimentally tried by some of us, *viz.* There is another excellent bait, either for Winter or Summer, and that is this: Take an handful of well dried Malt, and put it into a Dish of Water, and then having grubbed and washed it betwixt your hands till it be clean and free from Husks, put that water from it, and having put it into a little fresh water, set it over a gentle fire, and let it boil till it be pretty soft; then pour the water from it, and with a sharp Knife, turning the sprout end of the Corn upward, take off the back-part of the Husk with the point of your Knife, leaving a kind of inward Husk on the Corn, or else you spoil all: then cut off a little of the sprout-end, that the white may appear, and also a very little of the other end for the Hook to enter. When you make use of this bait, cast now and then a little of it into the water; and then, if your Hook be small and good, you will find it an excellent bait either for *Roach* or *Dace*.

Another good bait is the young brood of Wasps or Bees, if you dip their Heads in Blood. So is the thick blood of a Sheep being half dried on a Trencher, and then cut into such small pieces as will best fit your Hook: a little Salt will keep it from turning black, and make it the better.

Or you may take a handful or two of the largest and best Wheat you can get, boil it in a little Milk till it be soft, then fry it gently with Honey and a little beaten Saffron dissolved in Milk.

The *Roach* spawns about the middle of *May*; and the general baits by which he is caught are these: small white Snails, Bobs, Cad-baits, Sheeps blood, all sorts of Worms, Gnats, Wasps, Paste, and Cherries.

The way of fishing for *Roach* at *London* bridge is after this manner: In the Months of *June*, and *July*, there is great resort of those Fish to that place, where those that make a trade of it take a strong Cord, at the end whereof is fastened a three-pound weight; a foot above the Lead they fasten a Pack-thread of twelve foot long to the Cord, and unto the Pack-thread at convenient distances they add a dozen strong Links of Hair with *Roach*-hooks at them, baited with a white Snail or Perriwinkle: then holding the Cord in their Hands, the biting of the Fish draweth the Packthread, and the Packthread the Cord, which admonisheth them what to do: whereby sometimes they draw up half a dozen, sometimes less, but commonly two or three at one draught.

Of the STICKLEBAG.

THis Fish is small, prickly, and without Scales, and not worth the consideration, but that he is an excellent bait for *Trouts*, especially if his Tail on the Hook be turned round, at which a *Trout* will bite more eagerly than at *Penk*, *Roach*, or *Minnow*. The *Loach* is every whit as good a bait as the *Sticklebag*, provided you place either aright on the Hook. To the intent you may do it, take this observation: the nimble turning of the *Penk*, *Minnow*, *Loach*, *Sticklebag*, is the perfection of that sort of fishing. That you may attain thereunto note, that you must put your Hook into the mouth of any the aforesaid baits, and out at his Tail, tying him fast with white thread a little above it, in such manner that he may turn: after this sow up his Mouth, and your design is accomplished. This way of baiting is very tempting for large *Trouts*, and seldom fails the Angler's expectation. This fish in some places is called a *Banstickle*.

Of

Of the SALMON.

THE *Salmon* evermore breed in Rivers that are not brackish, yet discharge themselves into the Sea, and spawn commonly in *August*, which become *Samlets* in the Spring following. The Melter and Spawner having both performed their natural duty, they then betake themselves to the Sea. I have known that when they have been obstructed in their passage, they have grown so impatient, that, clapping their Tails to their Mouths, with a sudden spring they have leapt clear over Wear, or any other obstacle which stood in their way: Some having leapt short, have been taken by that means. If they are so obstructed that they cannot find their way to the Sea, they become sick, lean, and pine away, and die in two years. If they spawn in the mean time, from thence proceeds a small *Salmon* called a *Skegger*, which will never grow great. It is the Sea that makes them grow big; but it is the fresh Rivers that makes them grow fat; and so much the farther they are from the Sea up in the River, the fatter they grow, and the better their food.

From a *Samlet* (which is but little bigger than a *Minnow*) he grows to be a *Salmon*, in as short time as a Gosling will grow to be a Goose.

A *Salmon* biteth best at three of the clock in the Afternoon, in the Months of *May*, *June*, *July*, and *August*, if the water be clear, and some little breeze of Wind stirring, especially if the Wind bloweth against the Stream, and near the Sea.

Where note, that he hath not his constant residence, like a *Trout*, but removes often, coveting to be as near the Spring-head as he may, swimming generally in the deepest and broadest parts of the River near the ground; and he is caught like a

Trout, with Worm, Fly, or *Minnow*. The Garden-worm is an excellent bait for the *Salmon*, if it be well ſcoured, and kept in Moſs about twenty days, after which time thoſe Worms will be very clear, tough and lively.

There is a way of fiſhing for *Salmon* with a Ring of Wyre on the top of the Rod, through which the Line may run to what length is thought convenient, having a Wheel alſo near the hand.

I have been told that there is no bait more attractive of and eagerly purſued by the *Salmon* and moſt other Fiſh, than Lob-worms ſcented with the Oil of Ivy-berries, or the Oil of Polypodies of the Oak mixt with Turpentine; nay, *Aſſa Fœtida* they ſay is incomparably good.

The Artificial Fly is a good bait for a *Salmon*; but you muſt then uſe a Trowl as for the *Pike*, he being a ſtrong Fiſh. As the *Salmon* is a large Fiſh, ſo muſt your Flies be larger than for any other, with Wings and Tails very long.

You ſhall obſerve, when you ſtrike him, that he will plunge and bounce, but doth not uſually endeavour to run to the length of the Line, as the *Trout* will do; and therefore there is leſs danger of breaking your Line.

If you will angle for *Salmon* at ground, then take three or four Garden-worms well ſcoured, and put them on your Hook at once, and fiſh with them in the ſame manner as you do for *Trouts*.

Be ſure to give the *Salmon* (as well as all other fiſh) time to go gorge the Bait, and be not overhaſty, unleſs your bait be ſo tender it will not endure nibbing at. Much more may be ſaid of *Salmon*-fiſhing, which I ſhall paſs by, leaving the reſt to your own practice and obſervation.

Of

Of the TENCH.

I Shall now discover an approved way how to take *Tench* and *Carp* in a muddy pond; but know, I do not make publick this following secret, to teach Knaves how to rob Gentlemens Ponds, but that the proper Owners may be able upon cases of necessity to supply themselves with Fish without being put to so much trouble and charge as to sue their Ponds. But to the purpose. In the first place you must provide your self with a very good large Casting-net, well leaded; let not the Meshes from the Crown to a full yard and a half be too small; for then if the Pond be any thing of a depth, the fish will strike away before the Net comes to the ground; the whole Net ought to have a large Mesh, well leaded, and deep Tucked.

The second thing to be done is, to make the place clean from Stakes and Bushes, and try with the Net before you intend for the sport: if your Net happen to hang, then all your pains will prove ineffectual; therefore you must be sure before you cast in your Net that you clear and cleanse the place very well twice or thrice with a Rake. Then take a quarter of a peck of Wheat, baking it well in an Oven, putting in near 3 quarts of Water; when it is well baked, take 5 pints of Blood, and incorporate the Wheat and Blood together, adding thereto as much Bran as is sufficient to make a Paste thereof: and that it may the better hold together, put some Clay to it; after this, knead it well together with a quart of Lob-worms chopt in pieces, and worked into a Paste as aforesaid: then roll it into balls as big as a Goose-egg, and throw it into a Pond within the circumference of your Casting-net; and between whiles throw in some Grains; and when you think the fish have found out the Baiting-place, then come in

the close of the evening (having baited very early in the morning) and cast your Net over the baited place; then take a long pole with a large Fork made for the purpose, and stir all about the Net; for the *Carps* and *Tench* are stuck up beyond their Eyes in mud, and stand exactly upon their Heads: let the Net lie near half an hour, still stirring with your pole, if the place be not too deep: when you have covered the Fish, you may go into the Pond, and take them out with your hands; but if the water be deep, when you find the *Carps* begin to stir, (for they cannot stand long on their heads in the Mud) then lift up the Crown of your Net bolt upright with a long staff, that so the fish may play into the tuck of the Net.

Here note, that should you draw up your Net suddenly after you have cast it in, it is an hundred pound to a penny whether you should take one *Carp* or *Tench*; but letting the Net lie, the Mud will choak them if they remove not out of it.

Now here I cannot omit a very pleasant story in my opinion: A Gentleman having special *Carps* in his Pond, but not knowing how to take one of them, unless it were by chance with Hook and Line; I desired him that we might taste of his *Carps*, and modestly told him, a brace of them would serve our turns: He answered, I might freely have them, if I knew how to catch them. Hereupon I prepared some ingredients, and having baited a convenient place very early in the Morning; at the dusk of the Evening we came with a Casting-net, and at the first throw covered a great quantity of fish, as hereafter will appear; but not one seem'd to stir a jot under the Net, being all struck into the Mud. Hereupon the Gentleman fell a laughing heartily, saying, *Sir, if I had no other provision to trust to but what fish you shall catch this night, I believe I shall go supperless to Bed.* Hearing him say so, I desired that he would have

have a little patience, for the fish were asleep, and I was as yet loath to disturb them; but half an hour hence, if he would stay so long, I should make bold to awake them with a witness: So the Gentleman having smoaked a Pipe of Tobacco a *Carp* began to play in the Net; and after this in a very little time a great many more began to dance and skip: whereupon I lifted up the Crown, that they might play in the Tuck; and when I thought they were all got out of the Mud I began to draw, and at one draught drew up in the Net Seventy odd *Carps*, great and small, to the admiration and great satisfaction of the Owner and the rest of the company, having in all their life-time not seen the like before.

The *Tench* hath but small Scales, (and they smooth) yet very large Fins, with a red Circle about his Eyes, and a little Barb hanging at each corner of his Mouth.

The Slime of a *Tench* is very medicinal to wounded Fishes; and therefore he is commonly called the *Fishes Physician.*

The *Pike* is so sensible of his vertue, that he will not injure the *Tench*, though he will seize on any other fish of his size that comes in his way: And when the *Pike* is sick or hurt, he applies himself to the *Tench*, and finds cure by rubbing himself against him.

The *Tench* hath a greater love for Ponds than clear Rivers, and delights himself amongst Weeds, and loves to feed in very foul Water; and yet his food is nourishing and pleasant.

The time of Angling for him is early and late, both morning and evening, in the months of *June*, *July* and *August*, or all night in the still parts of the River.

He is a great lover of large red Worms, and will bite most eagerly at them, if you first dip them in Tar. The *Tench* loves also all sorts of Paste made up with strong scented Oils, or with Tar, or a Paste

made of brown Bread and Honey. He will bite also at a Cad-worm, a Lob-worm, a Flag-worm, green Gentle, Cad-bait, Marsh-worm, or soft boiled Bread-grain.

Of the TORCOTH.

THE *Torcoth* is a fish having a red Belly, but of what estimation I know not; for that, let the *Welshman* speak, who best know him: for as I have heard he is only to be found in the Pool *Linperis* in *Carnarvanshire*. I only name him that you may know there is such a fish.

Of the TROUT.

IT is observed that the *Trout* comes in and goes out of season with the Stag and Buck, and spawns about *October* and *November*: which is the more to be wondred at, because most other fish spawn in warm weather, when the Sun by his heat hath adapted the Earth and Water, making them fit for generation.

All the Winter the Trout is sick, lean and unwholsome, and you shall frequently then find him louzy. These Trout-lice are a small Worm with a big Head sticking close to his sides, and sucking moisture from him that gave them being; and he is not freed from them till the Spring or the beginning of Summer, at which time his strength increaseth; and then he deserteth the still deep waters, and betakes himself to gravelly ground, against which he never leaves rubbing till he hath cleansed himself of his Louziness; and then he delights to be in the sharp Streams, and such as are swift, where he will lie in wait for *Minnows* and *May-flies*; at the latter end of which month he is in his prime, being better and fatter in that month, especially at the latter end thereof, than in any other throughout the whole year.

There

There are several sorts of *Trouts* highly prizable; as the *Fordidge Trout*, the *Amerly-Trout*, the *Bull-Trout* in *Northumberland*, with many more which I shall forbear to mention, but only tell you what is generally observed; and that is, that the red and yellow *Trouts* are the best, and as to the Sex, the Female is the best, having a less head and deeper body than the Male. By their Hog-back you shall know that they are in season, with the like note for all other fish.

The *Trout* is usually caught with a Worm, Minnow, or Fly natural or artificial. There are several sorts of Worms which are baits for the Angler; the Earth-worm, the Dung-worm, the Maggot or Gentle; but for the *Trout*, the Lob-worm and Brandling are the best, or Sqirril-tail, having a red head, streakt down the back and a broad tail. The Brandling is found commonly in an old Dung hill, Cow-dung, Hogs-dung, or Tanners-bark. Here note, that whatever Worms you fish withal are the better for keeping; which must be in an Earthen pot with Moss, which you must change often in Summer, that is, once in three or four days, and in twice as long time in Winter.

When you fish for a *Trout* by hand on the ground, take a Lob-worm and clap your Hook into him a little above the middle, and out again a little below the same; then draw your Worm above the arming of your Hook, making your first entrance at the Tail end, that the point of the Hook may come out at the Head-end.

When you fish with a *Minnow*, take the whitest and middle sized, for those are the best, and place him so on your Hook, that he may turn round when he is drawn against the Stream.

The best Instructions (for putting the *Minnow* on the Hook) which I can law down are these: Put your Hook in at his Mouth and out at his Gill, drawing

drawing it through about 3 Inches; then put the Hook again into his Mouth, and let the point and beard come out at his Tail; then the Hook and his Tail you muſt tie about with a fine white Thread, and let the body of the *Minnow* be almoſt ſtraight on the Hook: then try againſt the Stream whether it will turn; where note, it cannot turn too faſt. If you want a *Minnow*, a ſmall *Loach* or *Stickleback* will ſerve the turn: if none of theſe can be gotten, you may in their ſeaſon have an Artificial one made of Cloath by one that is living, which I have found to be every whit as good a Bait as what are natural.

If you fiſh with a Natural or Artificial Fly, then follow ſuch directions as I have already preſcribed in a foregoing Chapter, which particularly diſcourſes of Flies Natural and Artificial.

Of the UMBER.

IT is the opinion of ſome, that the *Umber* and *Grailing* differ only in Names, and are of a *Trout*-kind, but ſeldom grow to the bigneſs of a *Trout*, I having never ſeen nor heard any exceed the length of eighteen Inches.

He frequents ſuch Rivers as the *Trouts* do, and is taken with the ſame Baits, eſpecially the Fly; and, being a ſimple Fiſh, is more bold than the *Trout* is.

In the Winter he abſconds himſelf, but after *April* he appears abroad, and is very gameſome and pleaſant. He is very tender-mouth'd, and therefore quickly loſt after he is ſtruck. For what more may be ſaid, I refer you to the Chapter of the *Grailing*.

THus have I given you an Alphabetical and ſummary account of the nature of fiſh, and the ſeveral ways to take them, according to ancient and modern

modern experience: I shall only give you a more short discovery of their Haunts: and so I shall conclude this Treatise.

Next to the Art of taking fish, the knowledge of their haunts and proper places to find them in according to their kinds is rightly to be consider'd: for not knowing what Rivers or what parts of them are fittest for your Baits, or what Baits best suite with each River and the fish therein contained, you only angle at adventure, and instead of reaping satisfaction, you only lose your pains and your labour.

Wherefore in the first place you are to understand, that fishes change places with the season. Some in the Summer keep always near the top or rim of the Water; others are continually at the bottom. For the first, you may angle with a Float or Fly; the latter are to be found at the Arches of Bridges, Mill-ponds, Wears, Flood-gates, *&c.* In Winter all fish in general fly into deep Waters.

The *Barbel*, *Roach*, *Dace*, and *Ruff* delight in sandy gravelly ground. The deepest part of the River and the Shadows of Trees are equally grateful.

The *Bream*, *Pike*, and *Chub* choose a Clay and Ouzie ground. The *Bream* delights most in the midst of a River whose stream is not too rapid, but gently gliding: the *Pike* is for still Waters full of Fry; and that he may the better and securer seize his Prey, he frequently absconds himself amongst Water-docks, under Bushes or Bull-rushes.

Carp, *Tench*, and *Eel* frequent still Waters, and what are foul and muddy. *Eels* lie lurking under Roots or Stones: The *Carp* is for the deepest place of the Water; and where there are green Weeds the *Carp* and *Tench* delight most of all.

Pearch delight in gentle Streams not too deep, yet they must not be shallow; and a hollow Bank is their chiefest refuge.

Gudgeons

Gudgeons love sandy ground in gentle Streams, they affect small Rivers above the large, or small Brooks, and bite best in the Spring till they Spawn.

The *Salmon* delights most in Rivers which ebb and flow, are large, and have a swift current; in such Rivers are the greatest plenty. If the Rivers are rocky or weedy, so much the better.

Shad, *Thwait*, *Plaice*, and *Flounder* have the greatest love for salt or brackish Waters which ebb and flow.

The *Umber* affects Marly Clay grounds, clear and swift Streams: but they must then be far from the Sea, for they seldom come near it.

There are many more rules to be observed, which generally hold good, but I will not conclude them infallible, since I have found some of them (well credited) very false; wherefore let every man's experience be his guide in the knowledge of the nature of Rivers, and the Fish their Inhabitants. And therefore it will be very requisite for him that would be compleat in the Art of Angling, diligently to observe whatever River or Water he fisheth in, whether it be muddy, slimy, stony, gravelly, swift, or of a slow motion. And as he must have a competent knowledge in the Rivers, Ponds, or all fishable Waters he is acquainted with; so must he know the nature of each fish, and what baits are most proper for every kind, or he shall never attain to the reputation of a good experienced ANGLER.

I shall conclude this Treatise with the experimental observations of an ingenious Gentleman, who hath practised the Art of fishing many years, and therefore the more fit to give Directions for the right use of the Angle.

Expe-

Experimental Observations and useful Directions for the right use of the Angle; and is a true and brief Epitome of the whole Art and Mystery of the Fishing Recreation.

NOne certainly is so ignorant to address himself to the River for Recreation but he will be mindful to carry necessary Tackle with him: being compleatly furnished therewith, let him in the first place consult Sun, Wind, Moon, Stars, and change of Air; for without observing Times and Seasons, his Tackle tho' never so good, will prove ineffectual.

Wherefore observe, if the Sun be obscured with Clouds, and his Face hidden from your Eyes, then set forth your Ground-baits, and use your brightest Flies. If the Sun shine out gloriously, then use the darkest of your Flies. Here note,

If that the Wind be in the South,
It blows the Fly in the Trout's *Mouth.*

If the weather be warm, it is no matter in what point of the Compass the Wind lieth, so that it blow not too high; the same observation holds good at Night as well as Day. If the Sun shine bright, the Moon prove clear, or the Stars glitter, there is but little sport to be expected.

Gentlemen, I write to you that have more than common experience in the Art of Angling, and therefore I hope you will not expect that I should here inform you how to prosecute the little recreation of the *Thames*, how to catch *Bleak*, *Dace*, &c. since there is hardly any young beginner that is ignorant thereof: wherefore omitting such trifling discourse, I shall fall upon that which is somewhat more material, and first, how to take *Eels*. When the Angler lays

ſtays a night or two, let him take 5 or 6 Lines (of what number he thinks fit) each of them about 16 yards long, and at every 2 yards long make a Nooſe to hang on a hook armed either to double Thread, or Silk-twiſt, for it is better than Wyre. His Hooks muſt be baited with *Millers-thumbs*, *Loaches*, *Minnows* or *Gudgeons*: to every Nooſe there muſt be a Line baited, and all the Lines muſt lie croſs the River in the deepeſt place, either with Stones or pegged lying in the bottom, you muſt watch all night, or riſe as ſoon as ever it is break of day (or elſe you will loſe divers that were hung) and draw up the Lines, on each of which I have known 2 or 3 *Eels* or *Grigs*.

Every one that delights in Fly-fiſhing ought to learn the way of making two ſorts of Artificial Flies, the Palmer ribbed with Silver or Gold, and the *May-fly*, both which are the grounds of all Flies.

In the making of the Palmer-fly he muſt arm his Line on the inſide of the Hook; then with a pair of Sizers let him cut ſo much of the brown of a Mallards Feathers as he ſhall think ſufficient to make the Wings; then let him lay the outermoſt part of the Feather next the Hook, and the point of the Feather towards the Shank of the Hook; let him whip it 3 or 4 times about the Hook with the ſame Silk he armed the Hook, then make his Silk faſt: then let him take the Hackle of the neck of a Cock or a Capon (but a Plovers top is beſt) and let him take off the one ſide of the Feather; and then he muſt take the Hackle-ſilk, or Gold or Silver thred; and let him make all theſe faſt at the bent of the Hook, working them up to the Wings; every bout ſhifting his Fingers, and making a ſtop, then the Gold will fall right, and let him make faſt: then work up the Hackle to the ſame place, and make it faſt: after this let him take the Hook betwixt his Finger and Thumb in the left hand with Needle or Pin, and part the Wings in twain; then with

with the Arming-ſilk (having faſtned all hitherto) let him whip it about as it falleth croſs between the Wings, and with his Thumb he muſt turn the point of the Feather towards the bent of the Hook, then let him work it 3 or 4 times about the ſhank, ſo faſten it, and view the proportion for other Flies.

If he make the grounds of Hogs-wool, ſandy, black, or white, or Bears-wool, or of a red Bullock two years old, he muſt work theſe grounds on a waxed Silk, and muſt arm and ſet on the Wings as aforeſaid.

The body of the *May-fly* muſt be wrought with ſome of theſe grounds which will be admirably well when ribbed with black Hair. The *Oak-fly* he muſt make with Orange-Tawny and Black, for the body; and the brown of the Mallards Feather for the Wings.

The next thing to be obſerved, is the Floating for Scale-fiſh in Pond, or River: Firſt, take notice that the Feed brings the Fiſh together, as the Sheep to the Pen; and there is no better in all Angling for Feed, than Blood and Grains; though Paſte is good, yet inferiour to theſe.

Next, let him obſerve to plumb his ground, Angling with fine Tackle, as ſingle hair for half the Line next the Hook, round and ſmall plumbed according to his Float. There is a ſmall red worm with a yellow tip on his Tail, which is an excellent bait for this ſort of Fiſh or any other. Other ſpecial baits are theſe: Brandlings, Gentles, Paſte or Cadice (otherwiſe called Cock-bait.) They lie in gravelly husk under the ſtones in the River.

There is a way of Trowling for *Pike* with an Hazle rod of twelve foot long, with a Ring of Wyre on the top of the Rod for the Line to run through: within two foot of the bottom of the Rod, there is a hole made to put in a Wind to turn with a Barrel, to gather up the Line and looſe it at pleaſure: This is the beſt manner of Trowling. There

There is another way to take more *Pikes* either in Meer, Pond, or River, than any Trowler with his Rod can do, which is done after this manner.

Take a forked stick with a Line of Twelve yards long wound upon it; at the upper end leave about a yard, either to tie a bunch of Flags, or a Bladder to buoy up the Fish, and to carry it from the ground. The Bait must be a live Fish, either *Dace*, *Gudgeon*, *Roach*, or small *Trout*: The forked stick must have a slit in the one side of the Fork to put in the Line, that he may set his live Fish to swim at a gage, that when a *Pike* taketh the Bait, he may have the full liberty of the line for his feed. He may turn these loose either in Pond or River, in the Pond with the wind all day long; the more the better: at night let him set some small weight that he may stay the Buoy till the Fish taketh it.

For the River he must turn all loose with the Stream; the Hooks must be double, the Shanks must be somewhat shorter than ordinary; for the shorter the Hook is off the Shank, without doubt it will less hurt the fish: and it must be armed with small Wyre well softned; but certainly a Hook armed with twisted Silk is better.

If you arm your Hook with Wyre, the Needle must be made with an Eye; then must he take one of those living Baits, and with one of his Needles enter within a Straws breadth of the Gill of the Fish, so pull the Needle betwixt the Skin and the Fish, then pull the Needle out at the hindmost Fin, and draw the Arming through the Fish, until the Hook come to lie close to the Fishes Body: having so done, let him put off in Meere or Pond with the Wind; in the River with the Stream: the more that he pulls off in the Meere or Pond, he is the likelier to have the greater Pastime.

There is a time when *Pikes* go a Frogging in Ditches, and in the River to Sun them, as in *May*, *June*

June, and *July*; at theſe times you ſhall hardly miſs one in twenty; and thus muſt the Angler deal with them. Let him take a Line of Seven or Eight foot, and let him arm a large Hook of the largeſt ſize that is made, and arm it to his Line; let him lead the ſhank of his Hook neatly, of ſuch a weight that he may guide the Hook at his pleaſure. He may ſtrike the Pike that he ſees with the bare Hook where he pleaſes. This Line and Hook doth far exceed Snaring.

In the taking of a *Carp* either in Pond or River, if the Angler intends to add Profit to his Pleaſure, he muſt take a Peck of Ale-Grains and a good quantity of any Blood, and mix the Grains together, with which let him bait the Ground wherein he intends to Angle. This feed will wonderfully attract the Scale-fiſh, as *Carp*, *Tench*, *Roach*, *Dace*, and *Bream*. In the morning early let him proſecute his paſtime, plumbing his Ground, and Angling for a *Carp* with a ſtrong Line: the bait muſt be either Paſte, or a knotted red Worm; by this means he ſhall find ſport enough.

In the Taking of a *Trout* with Ground-baits thus muſt the Angler do: In the firſt place he muſt have a neat taper Rod, light before, with a tender Hazle top. He may angle with a ſingle hair of five lengths, one tied to the other for the bottom of the Line, and a Line of three hair'd links for the upper part; and ſo if he have room enough he may take the largeſt *Trout* that ſwims in the River. He that angles with a Line made of three hair'd links at the bottom, and more at the top, may take *Trouts*; but he that Angles with one Hair, ſhall take five Trouts to the others one: For this Fiſh is very quick-ſighted; therefore the Angler both day and night muſt keep out of ſight. He muſt Angle with the point of his Rod down the Stream.

He muſt begin to Angle in *March* with the

Ground-baits all day long: but if it prove clear and bright, he must take the Morning and Evening, or else his labour will be in vain.

He that Angles with Ground-baits, must fit his Tackle to his Rod, and begin at the upper end of the Stream, carrying his Line with an upright hand, feeling the Plummet running on the ground some ten Inches from the Hook, plumbing his Line according to the swiftness of the Stream that he Angles in, for one Plummet will not serve for all Streams.

For his Bait let him take the red knotted Worm, which is very good where Brandlings are not to be had. The *Minnow* (or as some call it a *Penk*) is a singular Bait for a *Trout*, for he will come as boldly at it as a Mastiff-dog at a Bear. It will be advantageous to him in his angling to use a Line made of three Silks and three Hairs twisted for the uppermost part of the Line, and two Silks and two Hairs twisted for the bottom next the Hook, with a Swivel nigh to the middle of his Line, with an indifferent large Hook. Let him bait his Hook with a *Minnow*, putting the Hook through the lowermost part of his mouth, so draw the Hook through; then put the Hook in at the mouth again, and let the point of the Hook come out at the hindmost Fin; then let him draw his Line, and the *Minnows* mouth will close, that no Water will get into his Belly. As I said before, he must angle with the point of his Rod down the Stream, drawing the *Minnow* up the Stream by little and little nigh the top of the Water: the *Trout* seeing the bait will come most fiercely at it; but the Angler must not then presently strike: this is a true way without Lead; for many times they will come to the Lead, and forsake the *Minnow*.

The next direction is how to angle with a Fly for a *Trout*. In the first place let the Angler fit himself with a Hazle of one piece or two set conveniently together,

together, light and pliable. The lower part of his Line next the Fly muſt be of three or four hair'd Links; but if he can attain (as aforeſaid) to angle with a ſingle Hair, he ſhall meet with more Profit and Pleaſure.

Before he begin to angle, having the wind on his back, let him try how far he can caſt his Line, or at what length his Fly, and let him be careful that the Fly fall firſt on the Water; for if any of the Line light upon the Water, he had better to have ſtood ſtill than to have thrown at all. He muſt always caſt down the Stream, with the Wind behind, and the Sun before him; it is a great advantage to have either Sun or Moon before him.

March is the month for him to begin to angle with the Fly; but if the weather prove windy or cloudy, there are ſeveral ſort of Palmers that are good at that time: The firſt is a black Palmer ribbed with Silver; The ſecond a black Palmer with an Orange-tawny body: Thirdly, a Palmer whoſe body is all black: Laſtly, there is a red Palmer ribbed with Gold, and a red Hackle mixed with Orange Cruel. Theſe Flies ſerve all the year long morning and evening, whether windy or cloudy weather. But if the Air prove ſerene, he may then imitate the Hawthorn-fly, which is all black and very ſmall, and the ſmaller the better.

In *May* let him take the *May* fly and imitate that, which is made ſeveral ways: Some make them with a ſhammy body; 'tis beſt with black Hair: Others make them with ſandy Hogs-wool, ribbed with black Silk, and winged with a *Mallards* Feather ſeveral ways, according to the humour of the Angler. Another called the *Oak* fly, is made of Orange coloured Cruel, and black, with a brown Wing. Laſtly, there is another Fly, the body whereof is made of the ſtrain of a Peacock's Feather, which is very good in a bright day. Theſe,

ſeveral ſorts of Flies will ſerve the whole year, obſerving the times and ſeaſons.

Here note, that the lighteſt Flies are for cloudy and dark weather, the darkeſt for bright and light, and the reſt for indifferent ſeaſons, for which his own Judgment, Diſcretion, and Experience muſt guide him. Of late days the Hogs wool of ſeveral colours, the Wool of a red Heifer and Bears-wool are made uſe of, which make good grounds, and excellent paſtime.

The *Natural-fly* is a ſure way of Angling to augment the Angler's Recreation. Now how to find them, take notice that the *May-fly* is to be found playing at the River ſide, eſpecially againſt the Rain.

The *Oak-fly* is to be found on the But of an Oak, or an Aſh, from the beginning of *May* to the end of *Auguſt*: It is a browniſh Fly, and ſtands always with his head towards the Root of the Tree, very eaſy to be found.

The *Black-fly* is to be found on every Haw-thorn-buſh, after the Buds are come forth.

Now with theſe Flies he muſt uſe ſuch a Rod as to angle with the ground bait: the Line muſt not be ſo long as the Rod.

Let the Angler withdraw his Flie as he ſhall find it moſt convenient and advantageous in his Angling. When he comes to deep Water (whoſe motion is but ſlow) let him make his Line about two yards long, and drop his Fly behind a Buſh, and he ſhall find incomparable ſport.

The way to make the beſt Paſte, is to take a convenient quantity of freſh Butter, as much Sheeps-ſuet that is freſh, a ſufficient quantity of the ſtrongeſt Cheeſe can be gotten, with the pith of an old ſtale white Loaf: Let all theſe be beaten in a Mortar till they come to a perfect paſte; and when the Angler intends to ſpend ſome time in Angling, let him put hereof the quantity of a green Pea upon

his

his Hook, and let him observe what pleasant effects it will produce.

An Angling SONG.

COme lay by all cares, and hang up all sorrow,
Let's Angle to day, and ne're think of to morrow;
And by the Brook-side as we Angle along,
We'll cheer up our selves with our sport and a Song.

Sometimes on the Grass our selves we will lay,
And see how the watery Citizens play;
Sometimes with a Fly stand under a Tree,
And choose out what Fish our Captives shall be:

Thus void of all care we're more happy than they
That sit upon Thrones and Kingdoms do sway;
For Scepters and Crowns disquiet still bring,
But the Man that's content is more blest than a King.

The HUNTER.

CHAP. I.

Of Hunting-Horſes in general, Their Excellency and the neceſſity and benefit of the Art of Keeping.

I Shall omit to ſpeak in praiſe of *Hunting* in general, ſince I would avoid (as much as might be) Repetitions, and that it is already done at the beginning of the *foregoing Book*, with more *Addreſs* than I am *Maſter* of. But ſince that *Author* hath ſpoken nothing of the *Hunting Horſe*, which is a principal *Inſtrument* of that excellent *Recreation*, I deſire leave to ſpeak a *word* in his behalf. In behalf, I ſay, of this noble Creature, to whom all that are followers of Hunting are oblig'd: ſince it is by his *Strength* and *Vigour* that we gratify at eaſe our Eyes and Ears with all the Pleaſures that *Hunting* affords; and without whoſe aſſiſtance, a great part of us cou'd enjoy it a little more than in Imagination.

But 'tis not to us only, that are *Huntſmen*, but to all *Mankind*, that the *Hunter* is, (or may be) ſerviceable. Has our *Prince*, or *Country* occaſion for our Service in the Field: on what *Horſe* can we venture our Lives more ſecurely than on the *Hunter*? His *Readineſs to obey the Hand and Heel*, equal him to the *Mannag'd Horſe*. He being us'd to *gallop on all ſorts of Grounds*, as well ſteep places as deep Earths, has ſo *ſteel'd his Courage*, that he declines no *Military ſervice* you can put him on. Are there *Ambuſcado's*

to

to be laid, *Diſcoveries* to be made, ſpeedy and long *Marches* to be performed; or any other *Service*, wherein *Strength of Body*, *Purity of Wind*, or *Swiftneſs*, are requir'd? The *General* may in any of theſe caſes rely on the *Hunter*, with as much confidence, as on the *Horſe* that is *dreſs'd in the Mannage*.

In times of *Peace* he is equally Uſeful, not only for *Pleaſure*, but alſo for *Neceſſity* and *Profit*. How diverting to the Eyes is a *Beautiful Horſe* after a *Pack of Dogs*? and with how much eaſe to our Bodies, and delight to our Minds are we *carried up to them*; with ſo much *Vigour* and *Pride* to be diſcern'd in his *Countenance*, as if he emulated the *Hounds* in their Speed, and was deſirous to excel them, in his Obedience to their common Lord.

How *Neceſſary* is the Hunter beyond all other *Horſes*, if his *Maſters* urgent *Affairs* (where either *Life* and *Fortune* are in hazard,) exact the performance of a *long Journey* in a *ſhort* time. If his *Maſter*, in hopes of advantage, has *match'd* him againſt any other *Horſe*; how ready and willing is he, to perform the *utmoſt* that *Nature* is capable of, or his *Maſter* can reaſonably expect from him? and having *Art* joined to his *natural Abilities*, will not only excel all other *Horſes*, but accompliſh things beyond his *Maſters hopes* or *expectations*; for without its Aſſiſtance in *Dieting* and *Exerciſe*, no *Horſe* can *follow the Hounds*, or indeed undergo any other extream Labour, without hazarding the *melting his Greaſe*, the *breaking of his Wind*, or *foundering* him either in *Feet* or *Body*: all which are conſequences of immoderate Labour, and ignorance in this Art.

That I may therefore give you ſome light into its Myſteries, I ſhall firſt direct you how to breed ſuch *Horſes* that may be for *Training*; or elſe inſtruct you how otherwiſe to procure them. Secondly, how to know by *Shapes*, *Marks*, and other Tokens, what *Horſe* may be moſt convenient for your purpoſe.

Thirdly, how to *diet* him ſo, that he may perform all things within his Power, without danger. Laſtly what manner of *Exerciſe* is moſt conducive to this deſign: and on theſe Heads I intend to inlarge in my following *Diſcourſe*.

But before I enter upon my *Subject* propos'd, I think it neceſſary to anſwer 4 *Objections*, that may be made againſt this *Art of Dieting and Training Horſes*, that I may remove all prejudice from the minds of thoſe, who think they may have reaſon to oppoſe it; and that I may vindicate (with truth) this *Art*, and clear it from all Aſperſions.

The *firſt Objection* I ſhall mention is made by *de Grey* in his Epiſtle to the Reader, (*Edit. 4th*) where under the *Umbrage* of his love to *Horſes*, and in pity of the Hardſhips they undergo in *Hunting*, he extreamly inveighs againſt it, as the *Sourſe* of all their Miſeries. But that I may not be tax'd of *Prevarication* by my *Reader*, and for his ſatisfaction I ſhall ſet down his words, which are theſe.

If the Nobility and Gentry of this our Iſle of Great Britain, *did truly know how honourable, and how commendable Horſemanſhip were, and how much they are eſteem'd and admir'd, who are the true Profeſſors thereof, they would labour more than they now do, to breed and to have good Horſes; but it much troubleth me to ſee, how little eſteem Gentlemen have thereof. Some Horſes they have, though not for Mannage yet for Hunting: but what manner of Hunting? Fox hunting forſooth, or Harriers, which be as fleet as pretty Greyhounds, wherewith they do ſo much overſtrain the ſtrength of theſe poor Horſes, (forcing them over deep Fallows, tough Clays, and wet and rough Sands,) that albeit thoſe Horſes be ſtrong and able, yet are they ſo toil'd out therewith, as that when they come home at night they would pity the Heart of him that loveth an Horſe to ſee him ſo bemired, blooded, ſpurred, lamentably ſpent, and tired out; whereas if ſuch Horſes had been*

ridden

ridden to the Great-Saddle and Cannon, they would infinitely have delighted all men that ſhould have beheld them.

To this I anſwer, that for my own part I am not very fond of *Fox-hunting*; but I can ſee no *Reaſon* why *Perſons of Honour* ſhould not gratifie their *Fancies* with this *Recreation*, ſince *from the beginning* Horſes were made for the ſervice of *Man*; and doubtleſs for their *Recreation*, as well as more neceſſary uſes. And I am very confident, that if Horſes be *train'd*, *dieted*, and *ridden* according to *Art*, there will be left no ground for this *Objection*. For by *good Feeding*, Faintneſs would be prevented; and by *Airing*, and *due Exerciſe*, the Horſes *Wind* would be ſo improv'd, that no moderate Labour would hurt him; nay, though a Horſe by *immoderate Riding*, were reduc'd to ſuch *Tragical Exigencies*, as *de Grey* mentions, yet by the aſſiſtance of *Art*, *Nature* may be in *twenty four hours ſpace* ſo reliev'd, that all thoſe dangerous *Symptoms ſhall be remov'd*, and all the *Natural Faculties* act as formerly.

Now as to the laſt part of his *Argument*, I appeal to all the greateſt *Maſters of Academies* here, or in *Foreign Parts*; whether in the *Mannage*, the *Spurs* are not as much us'd (not to ſay more) as in *Hunting*; and the Duke of *Newcaſtle* in his *Methode Nouvelle* in oct. *p.* 85. ſays, *il n'y a point d' Exerciſe ſi violent pour les Chevaux que celui de manege*; that is, there is no *Exerciſe* ſo *violent* for *Horſes* as the *Mannege*; ſo that you ſee *Hunting* is not the only *violent* Exerciſe: and *Salamon de la Brove* goes further in his *Cavalariſe Frangoiſe*, telling us that *Mannag'd Horſes* ſhould ſometimes be uſed to the *Chaſe*, ſince *hunting* aſſiſts his *wind*, and brings him to a *civil Acquaintance* with other Horſes: inferring from hence, that *hunting* procures to an Horſe two Benefits, *viz. Speed* and *Strength*; and reforms in him two Vices, *Salvageneſs*, and *Reſtiveneſs*.

Secondly, there are others, that though they may ap-

approve of keeping their Horses *clean*, yet are not reconcil'd to *hunting*; but being either Admirers of *Coursing*, or else keeping Horses only for the benefit of their *health*, and the taking the *Air*, will not be perswaded, but that they can bring their Horses to the same *Perfection* without *hunting*, as with it.

To answer the first of these, I mean *Courfers*; I affirm, 'tis impossible to attend the end of this *Art* by that means: for being oblig'd in search of their Game to toil their Horses all day, over *deep Fallows*, in a foot pace only, they are likelier to bring their Horses to *Wearineſs* than *Perfection*.

And the same *answer* may serve the *others* likewise; for *Riding* a Horse up and down the *Field* after nothing, brings a *Wearineſs* and *Diſlike* to an Horse in his *Exerciſe*, thro his ignorance of the time, when his labour shall cease; whether, or to what end he is so labour'd. Whereas on the contrary, an Horse naturally takes delight in *following the Dogs*, and seems pleas'd with their *Muſick*, as is evident by his *pricking up his Ears*, gazing on them, and pressing to *gallop* towards them, whenever he hears them in *full cry*, (though at a distance.) Nay further, I have been *Maſter* of a *Stonehorſe*, that so entirely lov'd the *Hounds*, that when at any time (thro eagerness of Sport, and desire to save the *Hare* from being eaten) I have rid in amongst the Dogs, he would so carefully avoid treading on them; that he has more than once hazarded my Limbs (by making a *falſe ſtep*) to save *theirs*. From hence I infer, that doubtless Horses extreamly *delight in hunting*, and consequently, that it is a fit *Exerciſe* for them.

Thirdly, Others Object, That whatsoever *Pleaſure* there may be in *Hunting*, they had rather deny themselves that satisfaction than hazard the *laming their Horſes*, which, (as they are told) few, or no *Hunters* escape.

That *Hunters* are sometimes *lame*, I do not deny:

but

but cannot allow, that it proceeds always from this *Exerciſe*. For 'tis the *indiſcretion of the Riders* in *overſtraining their Horſes at Leaps*, and by that means ſometimes *claping them on the back-ſinews, catching in their Shoes*, and ſuch like, and not the *Sport*, that is the cauſe of *Lameneſs*. But on the contrary, I will undertake to ſhew any man twenty other Horſes lame (which never knew what belong'd to *Hunting*) for *one Hunter*. There are ſeveral other *Reaſons* beſides *Hunting* to be given for *Lameneſs*; as for inſtance, *Much Travel* (tho but moderate, if care be wanting) will produce *Wind-galls*, and *Splints*, which are the fore-runners of *Lameneſs*. Want of Exercife will *ſtraiten the Hoofs*, and *dry up the Sinews*: and too much negligence in *Travel* occaſions *Surbating*, *Foundring*, and *Graveling*. Horſes on the Road oftentimes *ſtumble*, and now and then *fall*, and ſo become *Lame*. Nay, a *Slip*, or an *Overreach* are as incident to the *Pad*, as to the *Hunter*. And to conclude, the *Horſe that is Dreſs'd*, is more liable to a *Strain in the Back, and Fillets*, than the *Hunter*; by means of his *ſhort turns*: ſo that you may perceive that *Lameneſs* is *Epidemical*, and therefore no more to be objected againſt *Hunting-horſes*, than the reſt of that Species.

Fourthly, Some again are Enemies to this *Art of Dieting Horſes in particular*: affirming, that ſuch *exact Diet* makes them tender, ſickly, and takes them off their Stomach: and that the *Charges* are not only great, but likewiſe unneceſſary.

To the *firſt part* of this *Objection*, I anſwer, that an Horſe is ſo far from being made tender, or loſing his Appetite, by ſuch extream and ſeveral Feedings, if he have proportionate Exerciſe, that it rather inures him to hardſhip. For much Labour (if not too violent) either in *Man* or *Beaſt*, inſtead of weakning the *Stomach*, and cauſing *Sickneſs*, does rather advance the *Appetite* and preſerve his *Health*; and it may be obſerved, that it doth oftner heighten than

decay

decay the Stomach. In like manner moderate Airings purifie his Wind, and both together render him healthy, and fit for Service.

As to the ſeveral ſorts of *Food*, we ſhall prove in the ſequel, that every part of it is both nouriſhing, and natural to all Horſes Conſtitution: ſo that conſequently, 'tis not only allowable, but neceſſary: And to prove this needs no more, than to ride an ordinary *Horſe drawn clean*, a days *Hunting*, or three *Heats*, and a *Courſe*, againſt the beſt of thoſe Horſes, which are kept by ſuch *Perſons* who think that half a Peck a Day, and fetching his water at the next Spring is *Horſemanſhip* ſufficient; and they will find by keeping and Exerciſe, the *Ordinary Horſe* will become long-winded, and *ſtick at Mark*; when the other that is *Foul-fed*, and fat, will ſoon give out for want of Wind; or otherwiſe if he be hardy will die under the *Spur*; whereas if the untrained *Horſe* had been rightly ordered he would have worſted twenty ſuch *Horſes*.

Now to the *Charges of Keeping*, *Fifty Shillings a Year*, disburs'd for *Bread*, beſides *Hay*, *Straw*, *Corn*, and *Phyſick*, (which all *Horſes of Value* muſt be allowed) is all that will be requiſite to keep an Horſe in as good ſtate for Ordinary Hunting, as any Horſe whatſoever. Laſtly by being skilful in the *Art of Keeping*, this Advantage will inſue; that no Diſtemper relating either to the *Head* or *Body* can conceal themſelves from his keepers knowledge, whoſe Skill will inform him, how to put a ſtop to them, before they have made any conſiderable *Advances* to the Horſes Prejudice. And he that grudges ſo ſmall an Expence on ſo noble and uſeful a Creature as an Horſe is, deſerves never to come on the back of one.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of Breeding, the Choice of a Stallion, *and* Mares, *with ſome general Remarks on Marks and Colours.*

SInce Creation and Generation preceded the *Art of Riding*, and that the firſt thing which is of courſe to be treated of, is the Choice of an Horſe fit for this exerciſe of Hunting, I ſhall ſpeak ſomething curſorily of the Art of *Breeding*, before I treat of the *Hunter* ready for ſervice. To them therefore that have grounds convenient for *Breed*, I ſhall direct this part of my diſcourſe; and lay them down ſome few Rules that may be ſerviceable to them, though I ſhall be as brief as poſſible, and refer them to *Markham*, *de Grey*, *Morgan*, *Almond*, and *Farring Compleated*, (which is collected from the forementioned Authors *Markham* and *de Grey*) all which have treated of the Art of *Breeding* more at large.

Firſt therefore I would adviſe you to buy either an *Arabian Horſe* (if you can procure him,) a *Spaniard*, a *Turk*, or a *Barb*, for your *Stallion*, that is well *ſhap'd*, of a good *Colour* to beautify your *Race*, and well *mark'd*, to agree with moſt mens Opinions; though otherwiſe they are not ſo ſignificative as Mr. *Blundeville*, and his *Italian* Author *Frederigo Griſſone*, would have us believe.

To begin with the *Arabian*; Merchants, and other Gentlemen that have travell'd thoſe parts, report, that the right *Arabians* are valued at an incredible, as well as an intolerable Rate; being prized at *five hundred*, others ſay at *one*, *two*, and *three thouſand pounds* an Horſe; that the *Arabs* are as careful of keeping the *Genealogies* of their Horſes, as *Princes* in keeping their *Pedigrees*; that they keep them with

Medals; and that each Sons Portion is uſually *two Suits of Arms*, *two Cymetars*, and *one* of theſe Horſes. The *Arabs* boaſt, that they will ride *four ſcour miles* a day, without drawing *Bitt*: which has been perform'd by ſeveral of our *Engliſh* Horſes. But much more was atchiev'd by a High-way-mans Horſe; who having taken a *Booty*, on the *ſame* day rode him from *London* to *York*, being *One hundred and Fifty Miles*. Notwithſtanding their great value, and the difficulty in bringing them from *Scanderoon* to *England* by Sea; yet by the care, and at the charge of ſome *Breeders* in the *North*, the *Arabian* Horſe is no ſtranger to theſe parts; where perſons who have the curioſity, may (as I preſume) at this day ſee ſome of the *Race*, if not a true *Arabian Stallion*.

The *Spaniſh* Horſe (according to the *Duke of Newcaſtle*) is the *Nobleſt* Horſe in the world, and the moſt *Beautiful* that can be; no Horſe is ſo curiouſly ſhap'd all over from *Head* to *Croup*, and he is abſolutely the *beſt Stallion* in the world, whether you deſign your *Breed* for the *Manage*, the *War*, the *Pad*, *Hunting*, or for *Running* Horſes. But as he is excellent, ſo he wants not for price, *Three* or *Four hundred Piſtols* being a common Rate for a *Spaniſh* Horſe. Several have been ſold for *Seven hundred*, *Eight hundred*, and a *Thouſand Piſtols* apiece; and *One* particular Horſe, called *el Bravo*, that was ſent to the Arch-Duke *Leopold*, was held worth as much as a Mannour of a *Thouſand Crowns* a year. The beſt *Spaniſh* Horſes are bred in *Andalouzia*, and particularly at *Cordova*, where the *King* has many *Studds* of *Mares*, and ſo have ſeveral of the *Spaniſh* Nobility and Gentry. Now beſides the great *price* at firſt, the *Charges* of the *Journey* from *Spain* to *England* will be very conſiderable: for firſt, he muſt travel from *Andalouzia* to *Bilbo*, or *St. Sebaſtian*, the neareſt Ports to *England*, and is at leaſt *Four hundred Miles*: and in that hot Country you cannot with ſafety *travel* your Horſe

Horſe above *twenty* miles a day, then there is the Expence of your *Groom* and *Farrier*, beſides the caſualty of *Lameneſs*, *Sickneſs*, and *Death*: ſo that tho he do prove an *Extraordinary good* Horſe, by that time he arrives at your own home he will likewiſe be an *Extraordinary dear* one.

The *Turk* is little inferior to the *Spaniſh* Horſe in Beauty, but ſomewhat odd-ſhap'd, his *Head* being ſomewhat like that of a *Camel*: he hath excellent *Eyes*, a thin Neck *excellently riſen*, and ſomewhat large of body: his *Croup* is like that of a *Mule*; his *Legs* not ſo *underlimb'd* as thoſe of the *Barb*, but very *ſinewy*, good *Paſterns*, and good *Hoofs*: They never *amble*, but *trot* very well; and are accounted at this preſent better *Stallions* for *Gallopers* than *Barbs*, as (when I come to ſpeak of them) I ſhall ſhew.

Some *Merchants* affirm, that there cannot be a more noble and divertive ſight to a *Lover* of Horſes, than to walk into the Paſtures near *Conſtantinople*, about *Soiling-time*, where he may ſee many *hundred* gallant Horſes *tethred*, and every Horſe has his *Attendant* or *Keeper*, with his little *Tent* (plac'd near him) to lie in, that he may look to him, and take care to *ſhift* him to freſh *Graſs*, as occaſion requires.

The Price of a Turk is commonly *One hundred* or *One hundred* and *fifty Pounds* a Horſe, and when bought 'tis difficult to get a *Paſs*; the *Grand Seignior* being ſo very ſtrict, that he ſeldom (but upon extraordinary occaſions) permits any of his Horſes to be *exported* his Dominions. But if (when obtain'd) you travel by *Land*, without a *Turk* or two for your *Convoy*, you will be ſure to have them ſeiz'd on by the way. Then, as in the former, ſo here, you will find the ſame difficulties of a *long Journey*, for you muſt come through *Germany*, (which is a long way) and the ſame charges attending it, I mean your *Groom* and *Farrier*, who muſt be careful that they entruſt no Perſons whatſoever with the care of

him

him, but themſelves, eſpecially in *ſhooing* of him: For 'tis the common practice beyond Sea, (as well as here) where they diſcover a *fine* Horſe, to hire a *Farier* to *prick* him, that they may buy him for a *Stallion*.

But ſome People chuſe to buy Horſes at *Smyrna* in *Anatolia*, and from thence, and likewiſe from *Conſtantinople*, tranſport them to *England* by Sea; which, if the Wind ſerve *right*, arrive in *England* in a *month*, though generally the *Merchants* make their Voyages little leſs than a *Quarter of a Year*.

The *Barb* is little inferior to any of the former in *beauty*, only he is accounted by our *Modern Breeders* too *ſlender* and *Lady-like* to *breed* on: and therefore in the North, at this inſtant, they prefer the *Spaniſh* Horſe and *Turk* before him. He is ſo lazy and negligent in his *walk*, that he will *ſtumble* on *Carpet-ground*. His *Trot* is like that of a *Cow*, his *Gallop* low, and with much eaſe to himſelf. But he is for the moſt part *ſinewy* and *nervous*, excellently *winded*, and good for a *Courſe*, if he be not *overweighed*.

The *Mountain-Barbs* are accounted the beſt, becauſe they are the ſtrongeſt and largeſt. They belong to the *Allarbes*, who value them as much themſelves, as they are priz'd by any other Nations, and therefore they will not part with them to any perſons, except to the *Prince of the Band* to which they belong; who can at any time at his pleaſure, command them for his own uſe. But for the other more ordinary ſort, they are to be met with pretty common in the hands of ſeveral of our *Nobility* and *Gentry*; or if you ſend into *Languedoc* and *Provence* in *France*, they may be there bought for *forty* or *fifty Piſtols* a Horſe. Or if you will ſend into *Barbary*, you may have one for *Thirty Pounds*, or thereabouts. But here too the *charges* and *journey* will be great; for though from *Tunis* to *Marſeilles* in *France* be no great

great Voyage, yet from *Marſeilles* to *Calais* by land meaſures the length of all *France*, and from thence they are ſhipt for *England*.

The next thing of courſe to be treated of is the choice of your *Mares*, and the fitteſt *Mare* to breed out of, according to the Duke of *Newcaſtle*'s opinion, is one that has been bred of an *Engliſh Mare*, and a *Stallion* of either of theſe Races; but if ſuch a Mare be not to be got, then make choice of a *right bred Engliſh Mare* by *Sire* and *Dam*, that is *well fore handed*, *well underlaid* and ſtrong put together in general; and in particular, ſee that ſhe have a *lean Head*, *wide Noſtrils*, *open Chaul*, a *big Weaſand*, and the *Windpipe ſtrait* and *looſe*, and chooſe her about *five* or *ſix years* old, and be ſure that the Stallion be not too old.

Now for the *Food* of the *Stallion*, I would have you keep him as high as poſſible for *four* or *five* months before the time of *Covering*, with *old clean Oats*, and *ſplit Beans*, well *hull'd*; to which you may add, if you pleaſe, *Bread*, (ſuch as in this Book ſhall be hereafter directed) and now and then, for variety, you may give him a *handful* of clean *Wheat*, or *Oats* waſh'd in ſtrong Ale; but as for *Bay ſalt*, and *Anniſeeds*, which Mr. *Morgan*, in his *Perfection of Horſemanſhip*, adviſes ſhould be ſcatter'd amongſt his Provender, I hold them ſuperfluous whilſt the Horſe is in health; but be ſure let him have plenty of good *old ſweet Hay*, well cleanſed from duſt, and good Wheat-ſtraw to lie on; and let him be watred twice every day at ſome fair running Spring, or elſe a clear ſtanding Pond-water, (where the other is not to be had) near ſome Meadow or level piece of Ground, where you may gallop him after he hath drunk. When you have brought him to the water, do not ſuffer him to drink his Fill at the firſt, but after he has taken his firſt draught, gallop and ſcope him up and down a little to warm it, and then bring him to the water again, and let

him drink what he pleaſe, and after that gallop him as you did before, never leaving the Water till you find he will drink no more. By this means you will prevent raw Crudities, which the Coldneſs of the Water would produce to the detriment of the Stomach, if you had permitted him to drink his fill at firſt; whereas you allowing him his fill (tho by degrees) at laſt, you keep his Body from drying too faſt. And this I take to be much better for your Horſes then (according to the forecited *Morgan*) to incourage his *Water* with *Whitewine*, to qualify the cold quality thereof: for *Nature* it ſelf is the beſt *Directreſs* for the expulſion of her *Enemies*, eſpecially in Brutes, where uſually ſhe can command the *Appetite*: and therefore I eſteem his own *natural heat*, for *warming his water*, to be better than that which proceeds from any other. Now as to *Morgan*'s direction of *Sweating* him every day early in the *morning*, which he ſays will not only perfect diſgeſtion, and exhauſt the moiſture from his Seed, but alſo ſtrengthen and cleanſe his Blood and Body from all raw and imperfect humors; I am of opinion 'twill both dry up the *radical Moiſture* too faſt, and likewiſe inſtead of heightning his Pride and Luſt, (which he alledges,) weaken him too much. Other *Rules* might be given as to the ordering them after *Water*, and the *hours* of *Feeding*, with the *quantity*, &c. but theſe will be fitter to be handled in another place, and therefore no more of them here.

Now when your *Stallion* is in Luſt, and the time for *Covering* is come, which is beſt to be in *May*, that the Foles may fall in *April* following, otherwiſe they will have little or no *Graſs*, if they ſhould be put *together* (according to *Markham*'s opinion) in the *middle* of *March*, tho he holds that *one Fole falling in March* is worth *two falling in May*, "becauſe '(ſaith he) he poſſeſſeth, as it were two Winters in 'a year, and is thereby ſo hardened, that nothing

'can

can almoſt after impair him. The time I ſay being come to put your *Stallion* and *Mares* together, pull off his *hinder Shoes*, and lead him to the place where the *Stud* of *Mares* are, which you intend for *covering*, which place ought to be *cloſe*, well *fenc'd*; and in it a little *Hut* for a *man* to lie in, and a larger *Shed* with a *Manger* to feed your *Stallion* with *Bread* and *Corn*, during his abode with the *Mares*, and ſhelter him in the *heat of the day* and in *rainy Weather*, and this Cloſe ought to be of ſufficient *largeneſs* to keep your Mares well for two *months*.

Before you pull off his *Bridle*, let him *cover* a Mare or two *in hand*, then turn him looſe amongſt them, and put all your Mares to him, as well thoſe which are with *Foal*, as thoſe which are not, for there is no danger in it; and by that *means* they will all be ſerv'd in their *height of Luſt*, and according to the *intention of Nature*. When your *Stallion* has *cover'd* them once, he tries them all over again, and thoſe which will admit him he *ſerves*; and when his buſineſs is finiſh'd he *beats the Pale*, and attempts to be at *Liberty*; which when your Man finds (who is Night and Day to obſerve them, and to take care that no other Mares are put to your Horſe, and to give you an Account, *which take the horſe*, and *which not*, &c.) let him be *taken up*, and let him be well *kept* as before; only you may at the firſt give him a good *Maſh* or two to help to *reſtore Nature*, for you will find him nothing but *Skin and Bones*, and his *Mane* and *Tail* will *rot off*. Be ſure give him never above *Ten* or *Twelve Mares* in a *Seaſon*, at moſt; otherwiſe you will ſcarce recover him againſt the next Years *Covering time*.

When your *Stallion* is paſt this uſe, than buy another; but be ſure never make uſe of a *Horſe* of your own Breed, for by ſo doing the *beſt kind* would in time *degenerate*: but you cannot do better (the Duke of *Newcaſtle* ſays) than to let your *own Mares*

be covered by their *Sire*, for (according to his own words and opinion) *there is no Inceſt in Horſes*: and by this means they are nearer *one degree* to the *Purity* and *Head* of the *Fountain*, from which they are deriv'd, ſince a *fine* Horſe *got* them, and the *ſame fine* Horſe *covers* them again.

Now though the Duke of *Newcaſtle* affirms this to be the true way for *covering* Mares, alledging that *Nature* is *wiſer* than *Art* in the *Act of Generation*, and that by this way, of a *dozen* Mares he dare affirm that *two* ſhall not *fail*: yet it may not correſpond with the *intereſt* of ſome *private Gentlemen* who turn *Breeders* for *Profit* as well as *Pleaſure*; for a good *Stallion* bearing ſuch an extraordinary rate, and they having but *one*, have reaſon to be cautious, to avoid as much as can be all hazardous Experiments; which (with ſubmiſſion to the *Duke*'s judgment) this in ſome caſes may prove. For firſt, there have been Horſes of great ſpirit, that have killed themſelves through *exceſs* of *Luſt*, being left to range at their *liberty*; and thoſe that have been confined to an *Incloſure*, and a ſelect number of Mares, have yet in one *weeks* ſpace ſo weaken'd *Nature*, that not above half the Mares have *held*. Secondly, ſome Mares are of ſo hot a conſtitution of *Nature*, and their *Luſt* ſo *violent*, that if they are permitted to run long with the Horſe, after they have conceived, will (if they be *high in fleſh* and luſty) deſire the Horſe again, which generally hazards the loſs of the *Embrio* they go with.

To prevent therefore theſe inconveniencies, I ſhall lay you down another *Method* (as briefly as may be,) which is called *covering in hand*, as the former is generally term'd *out of hand*, and the way is this, *viz.* when you have brought both your Horſe and Mare to as proper condition for breed by *Art* and *good feeding*, then ſet ſome ordinary *Ston'd-Nag* by her for a day or two to *woo* her, and

by

by that ſhe will be ſo prone to *Luſt*, that ſhe will readily receive your *Stallion*; which you ſhould *preſent* to her either *early* in a *morning*, or *late* in an *evening*, for a day or two together, and let him *cover in hand* once, or twice if you pleaſe, at each time, obſerving always to give the Horſe the *advantage of ground*, and that you have ſome one ready with a *Bucket* of *cold water* to throw on the Mare's *Shape*, immediately on the *diſmounting* of the Horſe, which will make her retain the *Seed* received the better, eſpecially if you get on her *back* and *trot* her about a quarter of an hours ſpace, but in any caſe have a care of *heating*, or *ſtraining* her: and it will not be amiſs, if after every ſuch act you let them *faſt two hours*, and then give each of them a warm *Maſh*; and 'tis odds but this way your Mares may be as well *ſerv'd* as the other, and yet your *Stallion* will laſt you much longer.

I ſhall ſay no more as to the *keeping* the Mares during the time of their being with *Foal*, nor of their *foaling*; only this, that if you take care to *houſe* them all the *Winter*, and to keep them well, their *Colts* will prove the better. When they are *foaled*, let them run with their *Dams* till *Martin-maſs*, then *wean* them, and keep them in a convenient *Houſe* with a low *Rack* and *Manger* on purpoſe; *litter* them well, and feed them with good *Hay*, and *Oats* and *Wheat-bran* mix'd, which will make them *drink* and *belly* well. The firſt year you may put them all together, but afterwards they muſt be ſeparated, the *Stone-Colts* from the *Fillies*; and if you have choice of Houſes, you may put *Yearings together*, *two years old* together, and ſo *three years old* together, for their better ſatisfaction and agreement; as *little Children* beſt agree together.

In a *warm* fair day you may grant them liberty to *run* and *ſcope* in ſome *incloſed* Court or Back ſide, but be ſure to take care to *put them up* again *carefully*,

that they be not *hurt*. When *Summer* is come and there is plenty of *Graſs*, put them out in ſome *dry Ground*, that hath convenient watering, and ſo let them run till *Martinmaſs* again; then *houſe* them as before, and order them in all points as *older* Horſes, till they are full 5 *years old*, then take them up *for good and all*, and let your Groom *back* them if he have *skill*, or elſe ſome *skilful Rider*. You may if you pleaſe juſt *break* your *Fillies* at *two years and a half old*, and let them be cover'd at *three*; and by that means they will be ſo tame and gentle, as not to injure themſelves or their *Foals*. But in caſe of *ſickneſs*, or any accidental calamity, as *Lameneſs*, &c. you muſt then commit them to the *Farrier*'s Care.

The reaſon why I propoſe the *Houſing* of them every Winter, with *dry* feeding and lodging, is, that they may be the *liker* their *Sire* in *Beauty* and *Shape*. For the *primary* Cauſe of the *fineneſs* of Shape and Beauty in Horſes is *Heat*, and *dry* feeding. And this is prov'd from the ſeveral *Races* we have already mentioned, *viz.* the *Spaniſh* Horſe, *Barb*, and *Turkiſh* Horſe, all which Countries are under an hot Climate, and by conſequence afford *little Graſs*: Therefore in our more moderate and cold Countries we are to aſſiſt *Nature* by *Art*, and to ſupply the want of *heat* by *warm* Houſing, and *dry* feeding. This is eaſily made evident by *example*. For take *two Colts* begot by the *ſame Sire*, on Mares of equal Beauty, and *houſe* the one every Winter, and feed him as directed, and expoſe the *other*, till they are *four years old*, and fit to be back'd; and you ſhall find the *former* like his *Sire* in all reſpects, and the other fitter for the *Cart* than *Hunting*, as being a *dull*, *heavy*, *flabby*, *ſcarce animated* Clod; and all this proceeds from the *Humidity* of the *Air* and *Earth*. From hence you may infer, that 'tis not only *Generation*, but, as I may term it, *Education*, that makes

a *compleat* Horse; and such *yours* will be, if you order them according to the former *Directions*; for you may with ease break the *Colt* that is by such good management made gentle, and *half back'd* to your hand.

But I have dwelt longer on this *Subject* than I intended, my business being chiefly to inform the *Groom* (not the *Master*) what belong'd to his Office; and therefore I will wander no further from my purpose, but leave it to the *Rider* to follow his own *method* in rendring *Colts* fit for his *masters* Service: whilst I give some few directions to those Gentlemen who will not bestow either trouble or charges on *Breeding*, or have the will but not the convenience to do it, how to elect an Horse for his *Exercise*.

The way for a Gentleman to furnish himself with an *Horse*, that may be worth *training* for *hunting*, is either to enquire out some *noted Breeder* (of which there are many in the North,) or else to go to some famous *Fair*, as *Malton*, and *Rippon* Fairs in *Yorkshire*, the former held on the 23d day of *September* yearly, and the latter on *May-day*: Or to *Richmond* in the same Shire, (which, as I am inform'd, does now of late years exceed both the fore-mentioned, being scituated in the middle of the most celebrated part of the *breeding Country*;) its Fairs are held in *Easter-week*, and at *Roode-tyde*. *Northampton* has several Fairs in the year likewise, as on the 13d day of *April*, the 8th of *September*, 17th of *November*, with several others. There are several Fairs, as *Lenton fair* in *Nottinghamshire*, *Pankridg-fair* in *Staffordshire*, *&c.* which for brevities sake I omit. At any of these places he may make choice of a Horse, which as near as can be ought to have these following Shapes: *viz.*

His *Head* ought to be lean, large, and long; his *Chaul* thin, and open; his *Ears* small, and pricked,

or if they be ſomewhat long, provided they ſtand upright like thoſe of a Fox, it is uſually a ſign of Mettle and Toughneſs. His *Forehead* long and broad, not flat, and as we term it *Mare-fac'd*, but riſing in the midſt like that of a Hare, the *feather* being plac'd above the top of his Eye, the contrary being thought by ſome to betoken *blindneſs*. His Eyes full, large, and bright; his *Noſtrils* wide, and red within, for an *open Noſtril* betokens a *good Wind*; his *Mouth* large, deep in the *Wykes* and hairy; his *Thropple*, *Weaſand* or *Windpipe* big, looſe, and ſtreight when he is rein'd in by the *Bridle*; for if, when he bridles, it bends in like a *Bow* (which is called *cack throppled*) it very much hinders the free paſſage of his Wind. His *Head* muſt be ſet on to his *Neck*, that there muſt be a ſpace felt between his *Neck* and his *Chaul*; for to be *Bull-neck'd* is uncomely to ſight, and prejudicial to the Horſes *wind*, as aforeſaid. His *Creſt* ſhould be firm, thin, and well riſen; his *Neck* long and ſtraight, yet not looſe, and pliant, which the *Northern-men* term *Withy-cragg'd*; his *Breaſt* ſtrong and broad, his *Cheſt* deep, his *Chine* ſhort, his *Body* large, and cloſe ſhut up to the *Huckle-bone*; his *Ribbs* round like a Barrel, his *Belly* being hid within them; his *Fillets* large, his *Buttocks* rather oval than broad, being well *let down* to the *Gaſcoins*; his *Cambrels* upright, and not bending, which is called by ſome *ſickle-hough'd*, tho ſome hold it a ſign of Toughneſs and Speed: his *Legs* clean, flat, and ſtraight; his *Joynts* ſhort, well knit, and upright, eſpecially betwixt the *Paſtorns* and the *Hoof*, having but little hair on his *Fetlocks*: his *Hoofs* black, ſtrong, and hollow, and rather long and narrow, than big and flat. And laſtly, his *Mane* and *Tail* ſhould be long and thin, rather than thick, which is counted by ſome a *mark* of *Dulneſs*.

As to the *Colour* and *Marks*, I rather incline to believe them grateful to the *Eye*, than any infallible

In-

Indexes of Goodneſs; for as the *Goodneſs* or *Badneſs* of a Man does not conſiſt in his *Complexion*, but in his *inward Vertues*, ſo neither do *Colour* or *Marks* certainly demonſtrate the *Goodneſs* or *Badneſs* of a Horſe, becauſe his *Qualifications* proceed from his inward *Diſpoſition*. But yet I wholly diſſent from the opinion of Mr. *Morgan*, p. 31. who holds, "That *Colour* and *Marks* are no more aſſurance of a *good Horſe*, than the having a *Feather* in a Mans *Hat* does prove him a *good Man* or a *bad*; inferring that *inherent Colours* are of no greater *Eminency* or *Value*, than thoſe external ones are which may be taken or laid aſide at a man's own will and pleaſure.

Now I ſay, that altho *Marks* and *Colour* do not abſolutely give teſtimony unto us of a *Horſes goodneſs*, yet *they* as well as his *ſhape* do imitate to us in ſome part his *Diſpoſition* and *Qualities*. For *Nature* not being defective, frames every part of the ſame matter whereof the whole is formed, and therefore the *Fœtus* being formed of the copulative Seed of its *Sire* and *Dam*, does from them derive as well the *accidental* as the more *eſſential* Qualities of its temperament and compoſition. And for this Reaſon *Hair* it ſelf may oftentimes receive the variation of its colour from the different temperature of the Subject out of which it is produced. And to confirm this, I dare paſs my word, that wherever you ſhall meet with an *Horſe* that hath no *White* about him, eſpecially in his *Fore-head*, though he be otherwiſe of the beſt reputed Colours, as *Bay*, *Black*, *Sorrel*, &c. That Horſe I dare affirm to be of a *dogged* and *ſullen diſpoſition*; eſpecially if he have a ſmall *pink Eye*, and a *narrow Face*, with a *Noſe* bending like a *Hawks Bill*.

But yet I am not poſitive, that Horſes even of the moſt *celebrated* Colours, and Marks anſwerable, do always prove the *beſt*; becauſe I have ſeen thoſe Horſes worſted by others, whoſe *Marks* and *Colour*

have

have been esteemed the *worst*; as *bright Sorrel* and *Mouse black* with *bald Faces*, and all the Legs *white* above the Knee. But I rather attribute the cause thereof to the *Ignorance* of the *Rider*, that had the *training* of those best marked Horses, than to any defect in *Nature*; for *Nature* is no Counterfeit, as *Art* often is, to make a thing shew to the Eye, contrary to what it is in reality. And therefore as I would not have men put too great confidence in *Marks* and *Colours*; so I would not have them esteemed of so lightly, as the former comparison of Mr. *Morgans* would make them; for it is a constant and inseparable quality for Horses to produce *Hair*, which is given them by Nature as a Tegument and Defence against the Cold: and if it be *shaved off*, *gall'd*, or any ways else removed or taken away, yet it will grow again; but a *Feather* may be put to, or taken from a Man's Hat at his pleasure.

Therefore since *Colour* seemeth to set forth the Beauty of an Horse, you may for Ornament sake and to please your Eye, make choice of an Horse that is either a *Brown bay*, *Dapple-bay*, *Black*, *Sad-Chessnut* with *flaxen* Mane and Tail, so that they have either a *White Star*, *Blaze*, or *Snip* with a *White Foot*; *Dapple-Grey*, or *White Lyard* with *Black Muzzle*, *Eye*, and *Ear*. Any of these are reputed by most men to give a *Grace* to *shape*; tho in themselves they are no perfect signs of Goodness.

But for his *internal* Endowments, they are more material, and therefore take care that he by Nature be of a *Gentle* Disposition, to his Keeper *tractable* and *docile*, free from those ill qualities of biting, striking, Restiffness, lying down in the Water, starting, running away with his Rider, plunging, leaping, *&c.* Not but that *most*, if not *all* these *ill* habits may be rectified by Art; For Experience has shewn us, that *Horses* which have not been of such a perfect *Natural* Composition, as might

might be desired, have yet been tempered by *Art*, and have not only been reclaimed from their vicious habits, but have been likewise brought to great performance in *Heats*, as well as *Hunting*, as I could instance in several if it were necessary.

And therefore since *Art* was invented to perfect *Nature*; if (notwithstanding your care) you have met with a *Horse* subject to any of these ill Qualities aforesaid, you must search into the causes of it, which *Art* will help you to discover and remove: and then *the cause being taken away the effect will cease*. So that probably, contrary to most people opinions, a *Vicious Horse*, by good Management and Government may be brought to *excel* an *Horse* that has a better Reputation and Fame in the judgment of the generality of Horsemen.

CHAP. III.

Of the Age a Hunter should be of before he be put to Hunting; of the Stable and Groom, and of the Horse's first taking up from Grass, in order to his further Dieting.

HAving gotten a *Horse* answerable either to the former Descriptions, or your own Satisfaction at least, I am to suppose that by a skilful *Rider* he is already grounded in the *Fundamentals* of this *Art*, by being taught such Obedience, as that he will readily answer to the Horseman's *helps* and *corrections* both of the *Bridle*, the *Hand*, the *Voice*, the *calf* of the *Leg*, and the *Spur*; that he can tell how to take his way forward, and hath gained a true temper of Mouth, and a right placing of his Head, and that he hath learn'd to *stop* and *turn* readily; for without these things are perfectly taught

ought and as it were laid for a Foundation he can never proceed effectually.

I had thoughts of enlarging upon this particular *Subject*, but I find my *Diſcourſe* is like to ſwell beyond its bounds, ſo that I am forced to omit it, and therefore I ſhall refer you to the Directions and Prudence of your *Rider*, and only tell you, that 'tis convenient your *Horſe* ſhould be *five years* old, and well *way'd* before you begin to *hunt* him. For though it be a general Cuſtom amongſt noted Horſemen to train up their Horſes up to hunting at *four years* old, and ſome ſooner, yet at that Age his Joints not being full knit, nor he come to his beſt ſtrength and courage, he is diſabled from performing any matter of ſpeed and toughneſs: and indeed being put to ſore Labour and Toil ſo young, he runs a very great hazard of *ſtrains*, and the putting out of *Splents*, *Spavins*, *Curbs*, and *Windgalls*, beſides the daunting of his Spirit, and abating his natural Courage, inſomuch that he will become melancholy, ſtiff, and rheumatick, and have all the diſtempers of *old Age*, when it might be expected he ſhould be in his *Prime*.

Your Horſe then being full five, you may if you pleaſe put him to graſs from the middle of *May* till *Bartholomew-tide*, or at leaſt from the middle of *Summer* till that time; for then the Seaſon being ſo *vio-lent hot*, it will not be convenient to work him: where whilſt he is ſporting himſelf at liberty in his *Paſture*, we will if you pleaſe take care to provide a good *Stable* for his Reception at his *taking up*, and a good *Groom* to look after him; both which are more eſſentially neceſſary to the *Hunter* than to other Horſes, which require not that exact care in *keeping*.

Firſt then as to the *Stable*, I could wiſh every Gentleman would be careful to ſituate it in a good Air, and upon hard, dry, and firm ground, that in

the

the Winter the Horſe may go and come clean *in and out*: and if poſſible let it be ſeated on an Aſcent, that the Urine, foul Water, or any wet, may be convey'd away by *Trenches*, or *Senks* cut out for that purpoſe. Be ſure to ſuffer no Hen-houſes, Hog-ſties, or Houſes of Eaſement, or any other filthy Smells to be near it; for Hen-dung or Feathers ſwallow'd, oftentimes prove *mortal*, and the ill Air of a Jakes as often is the cauſe of *Blindneſs*; likewiſe the very ſmell of Swine will frequently breed the *Farcy*, and no Animal whatſoever more delights in *cleanlineſs*, or is more offended at *unwholeſome ſavors* than the Horſe.

Let your Stable be built of *Brick* rather than *Stone*, ſince the latter is ſubject to *ſweating* in wet weather; which Dampneſs and Moiſture is the Original of *Rheums* and *Catarrhs*. Let your *Wall* be of a good convenient thickneſs, as about eighteen or twenty Inches thick, both for ſafety and warmth in *Winter*, and to keep the Sun from annoying him in *Summer*, which would hinder Concoction. You may (if you pleaſe) make *Windows* both on the Eaſt and North ſides, that you may have the benefit of the Air during Summer from the North, and of the Morning Sun during Winter from the Eaſt. And I would adviſe you to *glaze* your Windows, and make them with *Saſhes*, to let in Air at pleaſure, and to keep out Poultry, for the reaſons afore recited; and likewiſe to make cloſe *Wooden Shootters*, that during the middle time of the Day the Stable may be *dark*, which will cauſe him to take his *Reſt* as well in the Day as the Night. Let your *Floor* (I mean that part on which he is always to ſtand, or lie down on) be made of *Oaken Planks*, and not *pitch'd*, for 'tis eaſier and warmer for the Horſe to lie on *Boards* than *Stones*: be ſure to lay them *level*, for if they are laid higher before than behind (as they generally are in *Inns* and *Horſe-*

courſers

courſers Stables, that their Horſes may appear to more advantage in ſtature; his *hinder legs* will *ſwell*, and he can never lie at eaſe, becauſe his hinder parts will be ſtill *ſlipping down*. Lay your Plank *croſs-way*, and not at *length*; and underneath them ſink a good *Trench*, which receiving the *Urine* thro holes bor'd on purpoſe in the Planks, may convey it into ſome *common receptacle*. Let the *ground* behind him be raiſed *even* with the Planks, that he may continually ſtand on a *Level*. Let the *Floor* behind him be pitcht with *ſmall Peble*; and be ſure let that part of your Stable where the *Rack* ſtands be well *wainſcotted*. I would have two *Rings* placed at each ſide of his *Stall* for his *Halter* to run through, which muſt have a light wooden *Logger* at the bottom of it, to poiſe it *perpendicularly*, but not ſo heavy as to *tire* the Horſe, or to hinder him from eating. Inſtead of a *fixt Manger* I would have you have a *Locker*, or *Drawer* made in the Wainſcote partition, for him to eat his Corn out of, which you may take in and out to cleanſe at pleaſure. And whereas ſome may object the narrowneſs of the Room, you may remedy that at your pleaſure, by allowing it to be the larger: tho conſidering the ſmall *Quantity* of Provender, you are to put in at a time (as you ſee hereafter) you need not make it *very large*. I would not adviſe you to make any *Rack*, but inſtead thereof (according to the *Italian* faſhion) to give your Horſe his Hay *on the ground*, upon the *Litter*; or elſe you may (if you pleaſe) nail ſome *Boards* in the form of a *Trough*, in which you may put his Hay, and the Boards will prevent him from trampling and ſpoiling it.

Some poſſibly may object, that this way of feeding him may *ſpoil his Creſt*, and that the *blowing* upon his Hay will ſoon make it nauſeous to his Palate. For the *ſpoiling his Creſt*, it rather *ſtrengthens* it, and makes it *firm*, whereas, on the contrary,

to

to lift up his Head *high* to the Rack will make him *withy-cragged*: but the way forementioned he will feed as he lies, which will be for his eaſe and ſatisfaction. As to the *quantity* of his Hay, you are to give it him in ſuch *ſmall Proportions* (tho the oftner) that it may be eaten before his *Breath* can in the leaſt have tainted it. But the chief Reaſon why I adviſe you to this way is this, becauſe the receiving his Hay *down* upon the ground, will help to *cleanſe* his Head from any *Rheum* or *Doſe*, which he may have gotten by negligence and over-exerciſe, and induce him by *ſneezing* to throw out all manner of *watry humors* that may annoy his head. If your Stable will allow, you may build ſeveral partitions of Boards, and at the head towards the Manger let them be advanc'd to that height, that one Horſe may not *moleſt* or *ſmell* to another, and ſo divide the whole into as many equal Stands or Stalls as it will admit of, allowing to each room enough to turn about in, and *lie down* at pleaſure. You may make one of your Stalls cloſe, which may ſerve for your Groom to lie in, in caſe of a *Match*, *Sickneſs*, &c. and where he may burn Candle without the Horſe's diſcerning of it. Behind the Horſes I would have a *Range* of *Preſſes* made with *Peggs* in them to hang up *Saddles*, *Bridles*, *Houſing-cloaths*, &c. as likewiſe Shelves to place your *Curry-combs*, *Bruſhes*, *Duſting-cloaths*, *Ointments*, *Waters*, or any other Neceſſaries upon.

Now that you may not *cumber* your Stable with *Oat-bins*, I think it neceſſary to tell you, that the beſt way is to make uſe of the Invention of Mr. *Farmer* of *Tuſmore* in *Oxfordſhire*. Which is done (according as it is deſcribed by the ingenuous Dr. *Plot*, in his *Natural Hiſtory* of *Oxfordſhire*) 'by letting the *Oats* 'down from a *Loft* above, out of a *Veſſel* like the 'Hopper of a *Mill*, whence they fall into a ſquare 'Pipe let into the wall, of about four inches *Diago-*

'nal,

'*nal* which comes down into a *Cupboard* alſo ſet 'into the wall, but with its end ſo near the bot-'tom that there ſhall never be above a *Gallon*, or 'other deſirable quantity in the Cupboard at a 'time, which being taken away and given to the '*Horſes*, another *Gallon* preſently ſucceeds; ſo that 'in the lower part of the Stable, where the Horſes 'ſtand there is not one inch of room taken up for 'the whole proviſion of *Oats*; which contrivance 'hath alſo this further convenience, that by this '*motion* the *Oats* are kept conſtantly *ſweet*, (the ta-'king away one *Gallon* moving the whole *Maſs* a-'bove) which laid up any otherwiſe in great quanti-'ties, grow frequently *muſty*.

Now I would have you have two made, the one for the *Oats*, the other for your *ſplit Beans*, and both let into your range of *Preſſes*; the Partitions may eaſily be made over head, to ſeparate your *Oats* from your *Beans*. Or if you like not this way, you may convert it into an *Hay-loft*, or *Chambers* for your *Grooms*, which you fancy; but whatever you make choice of, let the *Floor* over head be *ceil'd*, that no duſt from above fall upon your Horſes. But if you have the convenience of a *Rick-yard*, ſo that you keep your Hay abroad, it is the opinion of ſome knowing Horſemen, that to *tuck* it out of the *Rick* by little and little, as you have occaſion to uſe it, makes it ſpend much better than it would otherwiſe do out of the *Hay-Tallet*.

As to the reſt of its Perquiſites, a *Dung-yard*, a *Pump*, a *Conduit*, are neceſſary; and if you can have that convenience, ſome *Pond* or *running River* near hand. But be ſure, never let the front of your *Stable* be without *Litter*, that by frequent practice your Horſe may learn to empty his Bladder when he is come from *Airing*, which will be both *healthful* for you Horſe, and *profitable* for your Land.

Having thus laid down a *model* for a *Stable*, my

next

next buſineſs is to tell the *Groom* his duty; I mean not thoſe which *generally* appertain to all Servants, ſuch as are *Obedience*, *Fidelity*, *Patience*, *Diligence*, &c. but thoſe more eſſentially belonging to this Office. *Firſt* then he muſt love his Horſe in the next degree to his Maſter, and to endeavour by fair uſage to acquire a *reciprocal* love from him again, and an exact *Obedience*, which if he know how to pay it to his Maſter, he will the better be able to teach it his Horſe; and both the one and the other are to be obtain'd by fair means, rather than by paſſion and outrage. For thoſe who are ſo *irrational themſelves*, as not to be able to command their own paſſions, are not fit to undertake the reclaiming of an Horſe, (who by *nature* is an *irrational* Creature) from his.

He muſt then put in practice that *Patience*, which I would have him maſter of at all times, and by that and fair means he ſhall attain his end: For nothing is more tractable than a Horſe, if you make uſe of kindneſs to win him. Next, *Neatneſs* is requiſite in a *Groom*, to keep his Stable *clean ſwept* and in *order*; his *Saddles*, *Houſing-cloaths*, *Stirrops*, *Leathers*, and *Girths*, clean, and above all his Horſe clean *dreſs'd* and *rubbed*. *Diligence* in the laſt place is requiſite in a daily practice of his duty, and in obſerving any the ſmalleſt alteration, whether caſual or accidental; either in his Countenance, as Symptoms of Sickneſs, or in his Limbs and Gate, as *Lameneſs*, or in his Appetite, as *forſaking* his *Meat*, and immediately upon any ſuch *diſcovery* to ſeek out for Remedy. *This* is the ſubſtance of a Groom's duty in *general*, and which I ſhall treat of more at large as occaſion ſhall offer it ſelf.

In the mean time ſince *Bartholomew tide* is now come, and the pride and ſtrength of the *Graſs* nipp'd by the ſevere Froſts and cold Dews which accompany this *ſeaſon*, ſo that the Nouriſhment thereof turneth into *raw Crudities*, and the Cold-

neſs of the *Night* (which is an Enemy to the Horſe) abates as much Fleſh and Luſt as he getteth in the *Day*, we will now *take him up* from *Graſs* whilſt his *Coat* lies ſmooth and ſleek.

Having brought him home, let your Groom for that Night *ſet him up* in ſome ſecure and ſpacious Houſe, where he may evacuate his Body, and ſo be brought to warmer keeping by *Degrees*; the next day *ſtable* him. But tho it be held as a general Rule amongſt the generality of Grooms, not to *cloath* or *dreſs* their Horſes till two or three days after their *ſtabling*, I can find no Reaſon but Cuſtom to perſwade one to it; but it being *little conducive* either to the *advantage* or *prejudice* of the Horſe, I ſhall leave it to their own Fancies: But as to the giving of *Wheat-ſtraw*, to take up his *Belly* (a Cuſtom us'd by Grooms generally at the Horſe's firſt houſing) I am utterly averſe from it. For the Nature of a Horſe being *hot* and *dry*, if he ſhould feed on Straw, which is ſo likewiſe, it would *ſtraighten* his Guts, and cauſe an *Inflamation* of the *Liver*, and by that means diſtemper the *Blood*; and beſides it would make his body ſo *coſtive*, that it would cauſe a *Retention of Nature*, and make him *dung* with great pain and difficulty; whereas *full feeding* would expel the Excrements, according to the true intention and inclination of *Nature*. Therefore let moderate *Airing*, warm *Cloathing*, good *old Hay*, and *old Corn*, ſupply the place of *Wheat-ſtraw*.

To begin then methodically, that your Groom may not be to ſeek in any part of his Duty, I ſhall acquaint him, that his firſt buſineſs is, after he hath brought his Horſe into the Stable in the morning to *water* him, and then to rub over his body with a *hard Wiſp* a little moiſten'd, and then with a *woolen* cloath; then to cleanſe his *Sheath* with his *wet* hand from all the *Duſt* it had contracted during his Running, and to waſh his *Yard* either with *White-*

White wine, or *Water*. Then he may trim him according to the manner that other Horſes are trimm'd, except the inſide of his Ears, which (though ſome ſtill continue that faſhion) ought not to be meddled with, for fear of making him *catch cold*.

When this is done, let him have him to the *Farrier*, and there get a Set of Shoes anſwerable to the ſhape of his Foot, and not to *pare* his Foot that it may fit his Shoe, as too many Farriers do, not only in *Brabant* and *Flanders*, but here likewiſe. Be ſure let his Feet be well open'd betwixt the *Quarters* and the *Thruſh*, to prevent *Hoof-binding*: and let them be open'd *ſtraight*, and not *ſide ways*, for by that means in two or three Shoeings, his *Heels* (which are the ſtrength of his *Feet*) will be cut quite away. Pare his Foot as *hollow* as you can, and then the Shoe will not preſs upon it. The Shoe muſt come *near* to the Heel, yet not be ſet ſo *cloſe* as to *bruiſe* it; nor yet ſo *open* as to *catch* in his Shoes, if at any time he happen to *over-reach*; and ſo hazard the pulling them off, the breaking of the *Hoof*, or the bruiſing of his *Heel*. The *Webbs* of his Shoes muſt be neither too *broad*, nor too *narrow*, but of a *middle ſize*, about the breadth of an inch, with ſlop'd *Spunges*, and even with his Foot; for though it would be for the advantage of the *Travelling* Horſe's Heel, to have the Shoe ſit a little *wider* than the Hoof, on both ſides, that the Shoe might bear his weight, and not his Foot touch the ground; yet the *Hunter* being often forc'd to gallop on rotten ſpungy Earth, to have them larger would hazard laming; and pulling off his Shoes, as hath been ſhown before.

There is an Old Proverb, *Before behind, and behind before*; that is, in the Fore feet the *Veins* lie *behind*, and in the hinder-feet they lie *before*. Therefore let the Farrier take care that he prick him

not, but leave a ſpace at the *Heel* of the Fore-feet, and a ſpace between the *Nails* at the *Toe*. When your Shoe is ſet on according to this Direction, you will find a great deal of his Hoof left to be *cut off* at his *Toe*. When that is cut off, and his Feet ſmoothed with a File you will find him to ſtand ſo *firm*, and his Feet will be ſo *ſtrong*, that he will tread as boldly on *Stones* as on *Carpet-ground*.

By that time he is *ſhod*, I preſume 'twill be time to *water* him, therefore take him to the *River*, and let him, after he has drank, *ſtand* ſome time in the *Water*, which will cloſe up the *holes* (according to the opinion of ſome Horſemen) which the driving of the Nails made. Then have him gently home, and having ty'd him up to the Rack, *rub* him all over *Body* and *Legs* with dry Straw; then ſtop his Feet with *Cow-dung*, ſift him a Quarter of a Peck of clean *old Oats*, and give them to him; then *litter* him, and leave him a ſufficient quantity of *old Hay* to ſerve him all *Night*, and ſo leave him till the next *Morning*.

CHAP. IV.

How to order the Hunter for the firſt Fortnight.

I Preſume by this your Horſe will have evacuated all his *Graſs*, and his *Shoes* will be ſo well *ſettled* to his Feet, that he may be fit to be rid abroad to Air without danger of ſurbating. Therefore 'tis now neceſſary that I begin in a more particular manner to direct our *unexperienc'd Groom* how he ought to proceed to order his Horſe according to Art.

Firſt then you are to viſit your Horſe *early* in the *Morning*, to wit, by Five a Clock if in Summer, or Six,

Six, if in Winter, and having *put up* his *Litter* under his Stall, and *made clean* your Stable, you ſhall then feel his *Ribs*, his *Chaul* and his *Flank*, for thoſe are the chief ſigns by which you muſt learn to judge of the *good*, or *evil ſtate* of your Horſes body, as I ſhall now ſhew you.

Lay your Hands on the lower part of his *ſhort-ribs*, near the *Flank*, and if you feel his *Fat* to be exceeding *ſoft* and *tender*, and to *yield* as it were under your hand, then you may be confident it is *unſound*, and that the leaſt violent Labour or Travel will *diſſolve* it: which being diſſolved, e're it be hardned by good Diet, if it be not then remov'd by *ſcouring*, the fat or greaſe belonging to the outward parts of the Body will fall down into his *heels*, and ſo cauſe *goutineſs* and *ſwelling*. I need not trouble you with the *outward* ſigns of this Diſtemper, they are evident to the Eye: but tho every Groom can inform you when a Horſe is ſaid to have the *greaſe* fallen into his *heels*, yet may be he cannot inſtruct you in the cauſe why *Travel diſſperſeth* it for a time, and when the Horſe is *cold* it *returns* with more violence than before. The reaſon therefore is this: The Greaſe which by indiſcreet exerciſe, and negligence in keeping, is melted and fallen into his Legs, *ſtanding ſtill* in the Stable *cools* and *congeals*, and ſo unites it ſelf with other ill humours, which flow to the affected part, ſo that they ſtop the natural *Circulation* of the Blood, and cauſe *inflamations* and *ſwellings* as aforeſaid: but *Travel* producing *warmth* in his Limbs, *thaws* as it were the *congeal'd* humours, and diſperſes them throughout the Body in general; till *Reſt* gives them opportunity to unite and *ſettle* again. Now tho moſt Grooms are of opinion that this Diſtemper is not to be *prevented* by care or caution, that when it has once ſeiz'd a Horſe it remains incurable; yet they are miſtaken in both, for by Art it may be pre-

vented, and by Art cured: altho the cure is ſo difficult to be wrought, that a Groom cannot be too careful to prevent it.

As for the *inward* Greaſe which is in his *Stomach*, *Bag*, and *Guts*, if when once melted it be not removed by Art, Medicine, and good Feeding, it *putrifies*, and breeds thoſe mortal Diſeaſes which inevitably deſtroy the Horſe, tho it be half a year, or three quarters of a year after. And this is generally the ſource of moſt *Fevers*, *Surfeits*, *Conſumptions*, &c. and ſuch other Diſtempers which carry off infinite numbers of Horſes, for want of the *Farriers* knowledge in the firſt Cauſes of the Diſtemper: which to prevent ſhall follow the enſuing Directions.

After by feeling on his *Ribs* you have found his Fat *ſoft* and unſound, you ſhall feel his *Chaul*, and if you find any *fleſhy ſubſtance*, or great round *Kernels* or *Knots*, you may be aſſured, that, as his *outward* Fat is unſound, ſo *inwardly* he is full of *glut* and *purſive*, by means of groſs and tough Humours cleaving to the hollow places of the *Lungs*, ſtopping ſo his *Windpipe*, that his wind cannot find free paſſage, nor his Body be capable of much Labour. Therefore the chief end and intention of Art is by good ſound Food to *enſeam* and *harden* his Fat, and by moderate Exerciſe, warm Cloathing, and gentle Phyſick to *cleanſe* away his *inward Glut*, that his Wind, and other parts being freed from all groſsneſs, his courage and activity in any labour or ſervice may appear to be more than redoubled.

The ſame Obſervations you muſt make from his *Flank*, which you will find always to correſpond with the *Ribs* and *Chaule*, for till he is drawn clean it will feel *thick* to your *gripe*, but when he is *enſeamed*, you will perceive nothing but two thin skins; and by theſe three Obſervations of the *Ribs*, *Flank*, and *Chaps*, you may, at any time, paſs an in-

different

different judgment of your Horſes being in a *good* condition or a *bad*.

When you have made theſe *Remarks*, you ſhall ſift your Horſe a handful or two (and no more) of good old ſound *Oats*, and give them to him to preſerve his Stomach from cold humors that might oppreſs it by drinking *faſting*, and likewiſe to make him *drink* the better. When he hath eaten them pull off his Collar, and *rub* his *head*, *face*, *ears*, and *nape* of the *Neck* with a clean Rubbing Cloth made of *Hemp*, for 'tis ſoveraign for the head, and diſſolveth all groſs and filthy Humours. Then take a ſmall *Snaffle*, and waſh it in fair water, and put it on his head, drawing the Reins thro the Headſtal, to prevent his ſlipping it over his head, and ſo tie him up to the Rack, and dreſs him thus.

Firſt in your *Right hand* take a *Curry-comb* ſuitable to your Horſes skin, as if your Horſe *coat* be *ſhort* and *ſmooth*, then muſt the Curry comb be *blunt*, but if *long* and *rough*, then muſt the Teeth be *long* and *ſharp*, ſtanding with your Face oppoſite to the Horſes, hold the left cheek of the *Headſtal* in your left hand, and Curry him with a good hand from the Root of his *Ears*, all along his *Neck* to his *Shoulders*: then go over all his *Body* with a more moderate hand, then Curry his *Buttocks* down to the hinder *Cambrel* with a hard hand again; then change your hand, and laying your right Arm over his Back, join your right ſide to his left, and ſo Curry him gently from the top of his *Withers*, to the lower part of his *Shoulder*, every now and then fetching your ſtroke over the left ſide of his *Breaſt*, and ſo Curry him down to the Knee, but no further: Then Curry him all under his Belly, near his *Fore-bowels*, and in a word all over very well, his Legs under the Knees and Cambrels only *excepted*. And as you dreſs the left ſide, ſo muſt you the right likewiſe.

Now by the way take notice, whether your Horſe keeps *a riggling up and down*, biting the Rack-ſtaffs, and now and then offering to ſnap at you, or lifting up his Leg to ſtrike at you, when you are Currying him; if he do, 'tis an apparent ſign of his diſpleaſure by reaſon of the *ſharpneſs* of the Comb, and therefore you muſt file the Teeth thereof more blunt: but if you perceive that he plays theſe or ſuch like tricks thro *Wantonneſs* and the pleaſure he takes in the Friction, then you ſhall ever now and then correct him with your Whip gently for his Waggiſhneſs.

This Currying is only to raiſe the *duſt*, and therefore after you have thus curried him, you muſt take either a *Horſe-tail* (nail'd to an handle) or a clean *duſting Cloath* of *Cotton*, and with it ſtrike off the looſe duſt rais'd by your Curry-comb. Then dreſs him all over with the *French-bruſh*, both Head, Body, and Legs to the very Fetlocks, obſerving always to *cleanſe* the Bruſh from the *filth* it gathers from the bottom of the Hair, by rubbing it on the Currycomb. Then duſt him the ſecond time. Then with your hand wet in water rub his body all over, and as near as you can leave no *looſe-hairs* behind you; and with your *wet hands* pick and cleanſe his *Eyes*, *Ears*, *Noſtrils*, *Sheath*, *Cods*, and *Tuel*, and ſo rub him till he be as dry as at firſt. Then take an *Hair-patch*, and rub his Body all over, but eſpecially his *fore-bowels* under his *Belly*, his *Flank*, and between his hinder *Thighs*. Laſtly, *wipe* him over with a fine white Linnen Rubber.

When you have thus dreſt him, take a large *Saddle cloath* (made on purpoſe,) that may reach down to the *Spurring-place*, and lap it about his Body; then clap on his *Saddle*, and throw a *Cloath* over him for fear of catching cold. Then take two *Ropes* of *Straw* twiſted extream hard together, and with them rub and chafe his Legs from the Knees and

Cam-

Cambrels downwards to the ground, picking his *Feſtock-joints* with your hands from Duſt, Filth and Scabs. Then take another *Hair-patch*, kept on purpoſe for his Legs, (for you muſt have two) and with it rub and dreſs his Legs alſo.

Now by the way let me give you this neceſſary caution, be ſure whilſt you are *dreſſing* your Horſe let him not ſtand *naked*, his Body being expos'd to the penetration of the *Air*, whilſt you are telling a *Banbury ſtory* to ſome Comrades, that accidentally come into the Stable, as I have ſeen ſome Grooms, that would ſtand *lolling* over their Horſes, when they were *uncloath'd*, and trifle away their time by liſtning to ſome idle diſcourſe; but when you have *ſtripp'd* him fall to your Buſineſs *roundly*, without any intermiſſion till you have ſaddled him, and thrown his Cloth over him.

And the reaſon why I adviſe you to throw a Cloth over him, whilſt you are dreſſing his Legs is this; that altho 'tis a general Rule amongſt Grooms, that an Horſe cannot take *cold* whilſt he is *dreſſing*, yet is that ſaying to be underſtood only of his *Body*, not of his *Legs*; for the rubbing of his Legs will not prevent catching cold in his Body.

When this is done, you ſhall with an *Iron Picker* pick his Feet clean, (that the ſtopping of his Feet may not be a means of his taking up Stones in them) *comb* down his Mane and Tail with a wet Manecomb, then ſpirt ſome *Beer* into his Mouth, and ſo *draw* him out of the Stable.

Being *mounted*, take or walk him to ſome running *River*, or freſh clear *Spring*, diſtant a Mile or two from your Stable, (which will refine his *Mouth* which he may have *loſt*, during his Summers Running, and will likewiſe ſettle his Body upon his *Rake*) and there let him drink about half his *draught* at firſt, to prevent raw Crudities ariſing in his Stomach. After he hath drunk bring him *calmly out* of the Water, and ſo ride him gently for a while; for nothing

thing is more *unbeſeeming* a Horſeman, than to thruſt his Horſe into a *ſwift Gallop*, as ſoon as he comes out of the Water, for theſe three *Cauſes*. Firſt, it not only *hazards* the *breaking* of his *Wind*, but aſſuredly *endangers* the *incording*, or *burſting* of him. Secondly, it *begets* in him an ill habit of *running away*, as ſoon as he hath done drinking. Laſtly, the foreſight he hath of ſuch *violent exerciſe*, makes him oftentimes *refuſe* to *quench* his *Thirſt*: and therefore (as I ſaid) firſt *walk* him a little way, and then put him into a *Gentle Gallop* for 5 or 6 ſcore, then give him *wind*: and after he hath been *rak'd* a pretty ſpace, then ſhew him the Water *again*, and let him drink what he pleaſes, and then *gallop* him *again*; and thus do till he will drink no *more*, but be ſure to obſerve always that you *gallop* him not ſo much as either to *chaſe*, or *ſweat* him.

Now by the way obſerve, that in his *galloping after Water*, (after the firſt weeks *enſeaming*,) if ſometimes you give him a *watering Courſe ſharply*, of twelve or twenty ſcore, (as you find your Horſe,) it will *quicken* his *ſpirits*, and cauſe him to *gallop* more *pleaſantly*, and teach him to *manage* his *Limbs* more *nimbly*, and to *ſtretch* forth his *Body largely*.

When your Horſe hath done drinking, then *rake* him to the top of the next *Hill*, (if there be any near your Watring-place) for *there* in the morning the *Air* is *pureſt*, or elſe to ſome ſuch place, as he may gain beſt advantage both of *Sun* and *Air*, and there air him a *foot-pace* an *hour*, or ſo long as you (in your diſcretion) ſhall think *ſufficient* for the ſtate of his Body, and then ride him *home*.

During the time of your Horſes *airing*, you will eaſily perceive ſeveral marks of your Horſes *ſatisfaction*, and the pleaſure which he takes in this *Exerciſe*. For he will *gape*, *yawn*, and as it were *ſhrug* his *Body*. If he offer to *ſtand ſtill*, to *dung*, or *ſtale*, which his Airing will provoke, be ſure *give* him *leave*, as

like-

likewiſe to *ſtare about*, *neigh*, or *liſten* after any *noiſe*.

Now Airing brings ſeveral *Advantages* to the Horſe. *Firſt*, it *puriſies* the *Blood*, (if the Air be *clean* and *pure*) it *purges* the *Body* from many *groſs* and ſuffocating *humours*, and ſo *hardens* and *enſeams* the Horſes *Fat*, that it is not near ſo liable to be *diſſolv'd* by ordinary Exerciſe. *Secondly*, it teaches him how to let his *Wind take equally* and *keep time* with the other *Actions* or *Motions* of his Body. *Thirdly*, it *ſharpens* the *Appetite*, and provokes the *Stomach* (which is of great advantage both to *Hunters* and *Gallopers*, who are apt to *loſe* their *Stomach* through *exceſs* or *want* of *Exerciſe*): for the *ſharpneſs* of the *Air* will drive the Horſes *natural Heat* from the *exterior* to the *interior* parts, which *beat* by furthering *Concoction* creates an *Appetite*. *Laſtly*, it *increaſes* Luſt and *Courage* in him, provided he be not too early air'd.

But whereas Mr. *Markham*, in his *Way to get wealth*, quar. *p.* 44. directs, if your Horſe be very *fat* to *air* him before *Sun-riſe*, and after *Sun-ſetting*; and that the *Author* of the *Gentlemans Jockey*, oct. *p.* 14. ſays, that nothing is more *wholeſome* than *early* and *late* Airings; I think the contrary may be made out from *Experience*. For in this Art, all things that any ways hinder the *ſtrength* and vigor of *Nature*, are to be avoided; now, that extremity of Cold and being out early and late to do ſo, is evidently ſeen by Horſes that *run abroad* all Winter, which however *hardily* bred, and kept with the *beſt* care and Fodder, yet cannot by any means be *advanc'd* to ſo good caſe in *Winter*, as an *indifferent* Paſture will raiſe them to in *Summer*. And this holding true of the *Nocturnal Colds*, muſt needs be verified in ſome proportionate meaſure of the *Morning* and *Evening Dews*, and that piercing Cold which is obſerv'd to be more *intenſe* at the *opening* and *cloſe* of the day, than any part of the Night. Beſides that, the *Dews* and moiſt *Rimes* do as much Injury to a Horſe, as the ſharpeſt

Colds

Colds or *Frosts*: since (as I have found by experience) a Horse any ways inclinable to *Catarrhs*, *Rheums*, or any other *cold* Distempers, is apt to have the humors augmented, and the disease most sensibly increas'd by these early and late Airings.

But if he be not had forth to *air* till the *Sun* be *risen*, (as you must cast to have him dress't, and ready to lead forth against that time) his spirits will be chear'd and comforted by that *universal Comforter* of all living Creatures; and indeed all Horses naturally desire to enjoy the Sun's *warmth*, as you may observe by those Horses which *lie out* all Night, who assoon as the *Sun* is *risen*, will repair to those places where they may have the most benefit of his *Beams*, and by them be in part *reliev'd* from the coldness of the foregoing *Night*. And besides the benefit of the *Sun*, the *Air* will be so mild and temperate, as it will rather *invigorate* than *prey* upon his spirits, and more *increase* his Strength than *impair* it.

Neither, tho we disallow of Early and Late airings, need we be at a loss to bring down our Horses *fat*, and from being *pursive*, and *too high* in Flesh, to reduce him to cleanness, and a more moderate state of Body: For if you do but observe this *one* Rule of keeping a *fat* Horse so much longer out at a time both Morning and Evening, you will undoubtedly obtain your *end* by such *long Airing*, join'd with true sound *Heats*, which you may expect indeed, but will never find from those that are shorter, how early and late soever: for this Method joyn'd with good *feeding* is the best *Prescription* can be given in this case, and 'tis from the *length* of your *Airings* only that you must hope to bring your Horse to a perfect *Wind*, and true *Courage*. And therefore a Horse that is *high* in *Flesh*, is a fitter subject to *work* on than one that is low, because he is better able to endure Labour, whereas the other must of necessity be so favoured in training, to improve his

Strength

Strength and Fleſh, that he is in danger (without he be under the care of a very Skilful Keeper) of proving thick winded for want of *true Exerciſe* in Training.

When you are returned from Airing, and are diſmounted, lead your Horſe on the Straw, which (as I told you before) ſhould always lie before the Stable-door; and there by whiſtling and ſtirring up the Litter under his Belly will provoke him to ſtale, which a little practice will bring him to, and is advantagious for the Horſes *health*, and the keeping of your Stable clean; then lead him into his Stall (which ought likewiſe to be well littered) and having ty'd up his head to the empty *Rack*, take off his Saddle, rub his *Body* and *Legs* all over with the *Freſh-bruſh*, then with the *Hair-patch*, and laſt of all with the *Woollen cloth*.

Then you ſhall *cloath* him with a *Linen cloath* next to his Body, and over that a *Canvas* cloath, and both made ſo fit as to cover his *Breaſt*, and to come pretty low down to his *Legs*, which is the *Turkiſh* way of Cloathing, who are the moſt curious People (ſays the Duke of *Newcaſtle*) in keeping their Horſes, and eſteem them the moſt of any Nation. Over the forementioned put a *Body-cloath* of ſix, or eight *Straps*, which is better than a *Sircingle*, and *Pad* ſtuft with *wiſps*, becauſe this keeps his *Belly* in *ſhape*, and is not ſo ſubject to hurt him.

Now theſe Cloaths will be ſufficient for him at his firſt *ſtabling*, becauſe being *inur'd* to the cool Air he will not be ſo apt to *take cold*, the weather likewiſe at that ſeaſon being indifferently warm; but when ſharp weather approaches, and that you find his *Hair riſe* about his *outward* parts that are uncloathed, as *Neck*, *Gaſcoins*, &c. then add another Cloath, which ought to be of *Woollen*; and for any Horſe *bred* under this *Climate*, and kept only for *ordinary* hunting, this is cloathing ſufficient.

Now

Now the *design* of *cloathings* is only by their help join'd to the *warmth* of the *Stable*, and the *Litter* (which must always lie under the Horse) to keep his Body in such a *moderate* Natural *Heat*, as shall be sufficient to assist *Nature*, that *skilful* Physitian in expelling her Enemies, by dissolving those *raw* and *gross* humors which are subject to *annoy* the Horse, and which would very much prejudice him if they were not *removed*; which *warm cloathing* does in a great measure by *dispersing* them into the *outwards parts*, and *expelling* them by *sweating* as he sleeps and lyes down, which will be a means to *purge* his Body, and keep it clean from *glut* and *redundant* humours.

But yet (as in all things the *golden mean is best*) there is a *mean* to be observ'd too here: for as too *few* Cloaths will not assist Nature *sufficiently* in the expulsion of her *Enemies*, so *too many* will *force* her *too much*, and cause *weakness* in your Horse by too violent *sweatings*. Therefore you must have a care of following the Example of some *ignorant* Grooms, who because they have acquired a *false* Reputation by living in some Noblemans or Gentlemans Service, that are noted Sportsmen, think they are able to give Laws to all their *Fraternity*, and therefore without any reason heap *Multiplicity* of Cloaths on the Horse, as if they meant to bury him in *Woollen*. You must know, that both the *temperature* of the *weather*, and the *state* of his *body* are to be observ'd; and that all Horses are not to be cloathed *alike*: Your *fine skin'd* Horse, as the *Barb*, *Turk*, *Spanish-horse*, &c. require more cloaths than our *English* common Horses, that are *bred* in a *colder climate*, and have naturally *thicker* Skins, and a *longer* Coat. But that you may not *err*, I have told you already how you are to *cloath* your Horse, and therefore shall only add this one *General* Rule, That a *Rough* Coat shews *want* of Cloaths, and a *Smooth* Coat Cloathing

ing *ſufficient*: ever obſerving, that by his *Countenance*, his *Dung*, and other *outward Characters* (which I ſhall by and by give you *more* at *large*) you perceive your Horſe to be in *health*, and yet notwithſtanding your Horſes *Coat* ſtill *ſtares*, you muſt add *more* cloaths till it *lie*; as on the *other hand* if it will *lie* with the aſſiſtance of a *ſingle* Linen Cloath it is ſufficient.

But if when he has been in *keeping* ſome time, you perceive him apt to *ſweat* in the *Night*, 'tis a ſign that he is *over fed*, and wants *exerciſe*: but if he ſweat at his *firſt coming* from *Graſs*, you muſt know that there is cauſe rather to *encreaſe*, than *diminiſh* the Cloaths I have allotted at his firſt Houſing; for it proceeds from the *foul humours* which oppreſs Nature, and when by exerciſe they are *evacuated*, Nature will *ceaſe working*, and he will continue in a *temperate* ſtate of Body all the year after.

When *he* is *cloath'd up*, *pick* his *Feet* clean with an *Iron Picker*, and waſh his *Hoofs* clean with a *Spunge* dipt in *fair water*, and then dry them with *Straw* or a *Linen Cloath*, and if there be *occaſion*, and that you find your Horſes *Legs* dirty, you may *bathe* them likewiſe, only you muſt be ſure to *rub* them *dry* before you go out of your Stable, then leave him on his *Snaffle* for an hour, or more, which will aſſiſt his Appetite.

When an *Hour* is *expired* you ſhall come to him again, and having tuck'd an *handful* of *Hay*, and *duſted* it, you ſhall let your Horſe *teaſe* it out of your hand till he hath eaten it; then pull off his *Bridle*, and having rubb'd his *Head* and *Neck* clean, with the *Hempen-cloath*, as before, *pull* his *Ears*, and *ſtop* his *Noſtrils* to make him *ſnore*, which will help to *bring away* the moiſt *Humours* which *oppreſs* his *Brain*, and then put on his *Collar*, and give him a Quarter of *Oats clean dreſt*, in a Sieve, having firſt made his *Locker*, or *Manger* clean with a Wiſp of Straw, and a Cloth.

Whilſt

Whilſt he is eating his *Corn*, you ſhall *ſweep* out your *Stable*, and ſee that all things are *neat* about him, and turning up his *Cloaths* you ſhall *rub* his *Fillets*, *Buttocks*, and *Gaſcoins* over with the *hair-patch*, and after that with a *Woollen Cloath*; then ſpread a clean *Flannel Fillet cloth* over his *Fillets* and *Buttocks* (which will make his *Coat* lie *ſmooth*) and turn down his *Houſing-cloaths* upon it. Then *anoint* his *Hoofs* round from the *Cronet* to the *Toe* with this Ointment, *&c.*

Take four Ounces of *Venice Turpentine*, three Ounces of *Bees-wax*, two Ounces of the beſt *Roſin*, one pound of *Dogs-greaſe*, half a pint of *Train Oil*. Melt all theſe Ingredients (except the *Turpentine*) together, being melted remove them from the Fire, and then put in the *Turpentine*, and keep it *ſtirring* till all be well *incorporated*, then put it in a *Gally-pot*, and when it is cold cover it cloſe from *duſt*, and reſerve it for *uſe*.

After this *pick* his *Feet* with an *Iron Picker*, and *ſtop* them with *Cow-dung*; and by this time your Horſe (if he be not a very ſlow Feeder) will have *eaten* his Oats, which if you find he does with a *good* Stomach, ſift him another *Quart*, and throw them to him, and ſo feed him by *little and little*, whilſt he eats with an Appetite; but if he *fumbles* with his *Corn*, then give him no more at that time.

And this I think a better Direction than to preſcribe a *ſet quantity* of *Provender*, as all *Authors* I have yet met with have done. For without doubt no *certain* quantity of Meat can be *allotted* for all ſorts of *Horſes*, any more than for all ſorts of *Men*; and therefore proportion the quantity to the Horſes Appetite: but be ſure at all times give him his *full feeding*, for that will keep his body in better *ſtate* and *temper*, and increaſe his *ſtrength* and *vigor*. Whereas on the contrary, to keep your Horſe *always ſharp ſet*, is the ready way to procure a *Surfeit*, if at any time he can

can come at his *full* of *Provender*, according to the common Proverb, *Two hungry Meals makes the third a Glutton.* But tho you perceive he gathers *Flesh* too fast upon such *home-feeding*; yet be sure not to *stint* him for it, but only *increase* his *Labour*, and that will assist both his Strength and Wind.

When these things are done, you shall *dust* a pretty quantity of *Hay*, and throw it down to him on his *Litter*, after you have taken it up under him; and then *shutting* up the *Windows* and *Stable-door*, leave him till *one* a *clock* in the Afternoon; at which time you shall come to him, and having *rubb'd* over his *Head*, *Neck*, *Fillets*, *Buttocks*, and *Legs*, as before, with the *Hair-patch* and *Woollen cloth*, you shall *feed* him as before, and then leave him till the time of his *Evening watring*, (which should be about *three* of the clock in *Winter*, and *four* in *Summer*) and then having put back his *foul Litter*, and swept away that and his *Dung*, you shall *dress* and *saddle* him as before, and *mounting* him you shall *rake* him to the *water*, and after *drinking* and *galloping* you shall *air* him along by the *River side*, till you think it time to go home; then order him in all *points*, as to rubbing, feeding, stopping his Feet, *&c.* as you did in the morning; and having *fed* him at six a *clock*, be sure *feed* him again about nine; and having *litter'd* him well, and thrown him *Hay* enough to serve him for all *Night*, you shall leave him till the next *Morning*. And as you have spent this day, so you must *order* him in *all respects*, for a *fortnight* together, and by that time his *Flesh* will be so *hardned*, and his *Wind* so *improv'd*; his *Mouth* will be so *quicken'd*, and his *Gallop* brought to so good a stroke, that he will be fit to be put to *moderate Hunting*.

Now during this *Fortnights* keeping you are to make several *Observations*, as to the *Nature* and *Disposition* of your Horse, the *temper* of his *Body*, the *course* of his *Digestion*, &c. and order him accordingly.

ingly. As *first*, if he be of a *churlish* Diſpoſition, you muſt *reclaim* him by *Severity*; if of a *loving* temper, you muſt *win* him by *Kindneſs*. *Secondly*, you muſt obſerve whether he be a *foul Feeder*, or of a *nice Stomach*; if he be quick at his Meat, and retain a *good* Stomach, then 4 times of *full feeding*, in a *day* and a *nights* ſpace, is *ſufficient*; but if he be a *ſlender Feeder*, and *ſlow* at his Meat, then you muſt give but a little at once, and *often*, as about every *two* hours, for freſh Meat will draw on his *Appetite*; and you muſt always leave a *little* Meat in his *Locker* for him to eat at his own *leiſure* betwixt times of his *feeding*; and when at any time you find any *left*, you ſhall ſweep it away, and give him *freſh*, and *expoſe* that to the *Sun* and *Air*, which will prevent *muſtineſs* and reduce it to its firſt *ſweetneſs*, before it was blown upon.

Now as to the manner of *feeding*, you may *ſharpen* his Stomach by *change* of Meat, as giving one Meal *clean Oats*, another *Oats* and *ſplit-Beans*, and (when you have brought him to eat Bread) you may give him another meal of *Bread*, always obſerving to give him oftneſt that which he likes beſt; or if you pleaſe you may give him both *Corn* and *Bread* at the ſame *time*, provided you give him that laſt which he eats *beſt*, and which has the beſt Digeſtion.

'Tis obſerv'd of ſome Horſes, that they are of ſo *hot* a *Conſtitution*, that without they may *drink* at every *bit* they cannot *eat*, and thoſe Horſes uſually carry no *Belly*; in this caſe therefore you muſt let a *Pail* of *Water* ſtand continually before them, or at leaſt offer them Water at *Noon*, beſides what they *fetch* abroad at their *ordinary* times.

Next you are to obſerve the nature of his *Digeſtion*, that is, whether he retains his Food *long*, which is the ſign of a bad Digeſtion; or whether nature does expel the *Dung* more *frequently*; which if he do, and that his Dung be *looſe* and *bright*, 'tis a ſign of

of a good *habit* of *Body*; but if he dung hard, and *seldom*, then on the contrary 'tis a sign of a *dry* Body; and therefore to remedy this, you shall once in a day give him a *handful* or two of *Oats*, well *wash'd* in good *strong Ale*, for this will *loosen* his Body, and keep it *moist*, and you will find it also good for his *Wind*, notwithstanding the opinion of some to the contrary.

CHAP. V.

Of the Second Fortnights Diet, and of his first Hunting, and what Chases are most proper to Train him.

BY that time you have *spent* this *Fortnight*, according to the foregoing *Rules*, your Horse will be in a pretty *good state* of Body; for the gross *humors* will be *dry'd* in his Body, and his *Flesh* will begin to be *harden'd*, which you will perceive (as I told you at first) by his *Chaul*, his short *Ribs*, and his *Flank*; for the *Kernels* under his *Chaps* will not feel so *gross* as at first they did, his *flesh* on his short *Ribs* will not feel so *soft* and *loose*, nor the thin part of his *Flank* so *thick* as at his *first* housing; so that now you may without *hazard* adventure to *hunt* him moderately.

But before I proceed, I think it necessary to clear one *point*, which I have heard much *discuss'd* amongst *Horsemen*, which is, What sort of *Chase* is most proper for the *training* of a *young* Horse? some being of *one* Opinion, some of *another*. For some would have a Horse, which is *design'd* either for a *Buck-hunter* or *Fox-hunter*, us'd from the beginning to the *Chase* which they are *design'd* for. Others think those *Chases* too violent for a *young* Horse, and therefore chuse to train him after *Harriers*; and of this Opinion I must own my self to be, since *Experience*

has fully *ſhewn* me the *Advantages* of the *one*, and the *Inconveniences* of the *other*. Now to prove this *Aſſertion*, let us take a ſlight view of the *ſeveral* Chaſes which are commonly uſed by our *Nobility* and *Gentry*, where the Horſe is made a *Companion* and *Member* of the *Sport*, and they are theſe; the *Stag*, *Buck*, *Hind*, *Fox*, *Ottar* and *Hare*.

As for the *three firſt* here mentioned, as there is not much *difference* in the hunting of them, ſo the *Inconveniences* from each chaſe are in a manner the ſame alſo. For which ſoever you hunt, 'tis either in *Covert*, or at *force*. Now if *Deer* be hunted in a *Park*, they uſually chuſe the moſt woody parts of it, as a *Refuge* from the purſuits of their *Enemies*, which is both *unpleaſant* to the *Rider* and *troubleſome* to the *Horſe*, to follow the Dogs thro the *thick Buſhes*; and beſides, uſually the ground in *Parks* is full of *Molebanks*, *Trenches*, &c. which is dangerous for a young Horſe to gallop on, till he has attained to ſome *perfection* in his *Stroke*. But if they be turned out of the Park, and be hunted at *force*, you will find, that as ſoon as you have *unharbour'd* or *rous'd* them, they will immediately make out *end ways* before the Hounds *five* or *ſix*, nay ſometimes *ten* Miles, they following in *full Cry* ſo ſwiftly, that a Horſe muſt be compell'd to run *up* and *down hill* without any *intermiſſion*; *leaping* Hedge, Ditch, and Dale, nay often *croſſing Rivers*, to the great *danger* of the *Rider*, as well as of the *Horſe*. So that in my opinion 'tis altogether *improper* to put a *young* Horſe to ſuch *violent* labour at the firſt, till by *practice* and *degrees* he hath been made acquainted with *hard ſervice*.

Now beſides the *ſwiftneſs* and *violence* of this Chaſe, and the danger of *tracking* his *Wind*, and *burſting* his *Belly*; beſides the *ſtraining* of his *Limbs* by ſuch deſperate Riding, and the creating in a young Horſe a *loathſomneſs* to his Labour, by undergoing ſuch violent and unuſual ſervice; the *ſeaſons* for theſe Chaſes

Chaſes beginning about *Midſummer*, and ending about *Holy rood-tyde*, which is that part of the year in which the Sun's *heat* is *exceſſive*, and ſo ſcorches the *Earth*, that a *violent* Chaſe would hazard the *melting* his *Greaſe*, and the *weight* of the Rider, by reaſon of the *hardneſs* of the Ground, would occaſion *Foundring*, *Splents*, and *Windgalls*, inſomuch that in *ſhort* time the Horſe would prove altogether *uſeleſs*.

But here I cannot but deſire to be rightly *underſtood*, ſince tho' I *object* againſt theſe Chaſes as *improper* for *young* Horſes, yet I do not mean that Horſes ſhould be *excluded* this *Recreation*; but I would have thoſe which are imploy'd herein, to be Horſes of *ſtay'd years*, and by long practice and experience have been rightly *train'd* to Hunting. 'Young Horſes '(as the Duke of *Newcaſtle* ſays) being as ſubject to 'Diſeaſes as *young Children*, and therefore he adviſes 'any man that would buy a Horſe for *uſe* in his ordi-'nary occaſions, as for *Journeys*, *Hawking*, or *Hunt-'ing*, never to buy a Horſe until the *mark be out of 'his Mouth*, and if he be *ſound* of Wind, Limb, and 'Sight, he will laſt you *Eight* or *Nine* years with 'good keeping, and never fail you; and therefore '(purſues he) I am always ready to buy for ſuch 'purpoſes an *old Nag* of ſome *Huntſman* or *Falconer*, 'that is ſound, and that is the uſeful Nag, for he 'gallops on *all grounds*, *leaps* over Hedges and Ditch-'es; and this will not fail you in your Journey, nor 'any where, and is the only Nag of uſe for Pleaſure 'or Journey. Thus far the *Duke*. And if it may be permitted to add to his advice, I would have them *ſtrait bodied*, *clean-timbred Nags*, ſuch as may be *light*, *nimble* and of *middle ſtature*, for thoſe Horſes are not near ſo ſubject to Lameneſs as thoſe of *bulk* and *ſtrength*, the cauſes whereof have been already declared.

The next *Chaſe* propoſed was that of the *Fox*, which altho' it be a Recreation much in *uſe*, and

highly *applauded* by the generality of the *Nobility* and *Gentry*; yet with ſubmiſſion to their judgment, I never could find that pleaſure in it which has been repreſented to me by ſome of its *Admirers*: and I am ſure it is *inconvenient* for the *training* of a *young* Horſe, ſince it is ſwift without reſpite, and of *long* continuance, both which, as I have already ſhew'd, are diſtaſtful to him; but the greateſt *Inconvenience* that happens to a Horſe in this Caſe is this; that when a *Fox* is *unkennel'd*, he ſeldom or never betakes himſelf to a *champion* Country, but remains in the ſtrongeſt *Coverts*, and in the thickeſt *Woods*; ſo that a Horſe can but *ſeldom* enjoy the pleaſure of *accompanying* the *Hounds*, without hazarding being *ſtubb'd*, or other as *dangerous* Accidents. The fitteſt Horſes for this Chaſe are Horſes of great *ſtrength* and *ability*, ſince this Chaſe begins at *Chriſtmas*, which is the *worſt* time of Riding, and ends at our *Lady-day*, when the Ground is *beſt* for it.

The next Chaſe to be ſpoken of is the *Otters*, which although it may ſeem *delightful* to ſome, yet I cannot by any means think it *convenient* for a Horſe: for he that will truly purſue this *Amphibious* ſport, muſt *often ſwim* his Horſe to the equal *hazard*, both of the *Rider* and the *Horſe*.

But to conclude with the *laſt*, and the *beſt* of Chaſes, and that is the *Hare*. It is in my opinion the moſt *pleaſant* and *delightful* Chaſe of any whatſoever, and the moſt *beneficial* for training a *young* Horſe. It is *ſwift*, and of ſome *indurance* like that of the *Fox*, but far more *pleaſant* to the Horſe, becauſe *Hares* commonly run the *Champion* Country; and the *ſcent* not being ſo *hot* as the Foxes, the *Dogs* are *oftner* at *default*, and by that means the Horſe has many *Sobbs*, whereby he recovers *Wind*, and regains new *ſtrength*. This Chaſe begins at *Michaelmas*, and laſts till the *End* of *February*.

Now the *beſt Dogs* to bring your Horſe to *perfe-*

ction

ſtion of Wind and Speed, are your *fleet Northern* Hounds; for they, by means of their *hard running*, will draw him up to that extraordinary *ſpeed*, that he will not have time to *loiter*, and by continual practice will be ſo *inur'd* and *habituated* to the violence of their Speed, that in a ſhort time he will be able to ride on *all ſorts of Ground*, and be at ſuch *command* upon the *hand*, that he will *ſtrike* at what *rate* you pleaſe, and *three quarters ſpeed* will be leſs troubleſome to him than a *Canterbury gallop*.

I have often thought this one of the *Reaſons* why your *Northern Breeders* for the generality *excel* thoſe of the *South*; ſince certainly the *ſpeed* of their *Hounds* contributes much to the Excellence of their *Horſes*, and makes them endure a four mile Courſe without *Sobbs*, which ſome Horſemen call *Whole-Running*: but of this more in another place.

The time being now come that he may be *hunted*, you ſhall order him on his days of *Reſt* in *all points*, as to his *Dreſſing*, hours of *Feeding*, *Watering*, &c. as in the *firſt Fortnight* afore directed; only ſince his *Labour* is now to be increas'd, you muſt endeavour to increaſe his *Strength* and *Courage* likewiſe; and this will be *effected* by adding to his *Oats* a third part of clean old *Beans* ſpelted on a Mill, and as an overplus to allow him *Bread* made after this manner.

Take four Pecks of clean old *Beans*, and two Pecks of *Wheat*, and *grind* them together, and *ſift* the *Meal* thro a Meal-ſieve of an indifferent fineneſs, and *knead* it with *warm water* and good ſtore of *Barm*, and let it lie an hour or more to *ſwell*, for by that means the Bread will be the *lighter*, and have the eaſier and quicker *Digeſtion*; after which being with a *Brake*, or any other way exceedingly *well-kneaded*, make it up into great Houſhold *Peck-loaves*, which will be a means to avoid *Cruſt*, and prevent its *drying* too ſoon; *bake* them *throughly*, and let them *ſtand* a good while in the *Oven* to *ſoke*, then *draw* them, and

turning the *bottoms* upwards let them ſtand to cool.

When your *Bread* is a *day old* you may venture to feed your Horſe with it, having firſt *chipt* away the *Cruſt*; and ſometimes giving him *Bread*, ſometimes *Oats*, and now and then *Oats* and *ſpelted Beans*, according as you find his ſtomach; you need not *fear* but ſuch Feeding will bring him into as good *condition* as you need deſire for *Ordinary Hunting*.

When your *Bread* is prepar'd, and your *firſt Fortnight* expir'd, you muſt then pitch upon a Day for his firſt *going abroad* after the *Dogs*, and the *Day before* you *hunt* you muſt always *order* him after this *manner*. In the morning proceed in your *uſual method* as before; only *obſerve* that day to give him no *Beans*, becauſe they are hard of digeſtion, but give moſt of *Bread* if you can draw him on to eat it, becauſe it is more *nouriſhing* than *Oats*; and after your *Evening Watering*, which ought to be ſomewhat *earlier* than at other times, give him only a little *Hay* out of your hand, and no more till the next day that he *returns* from *Hunting*: and to prevent his *eating* his *Litter*, or any thing elſe but what you give him, you ſhall inſtead of a *Muzzle* put on a *Cavezone* join'd to a headſtal of a Bridle, being lin'd with *double Leather* for fear of *hurting* him, and tying it ſo *ſtraight* as to hinder his *Eating*; and this will prevent *Sickneſs* in your Horſe, which is incident to ſome Horſes when their *Muzzle* is ſet on, notwithſtanding the invention of the *Lattice-window*, now adays ſo much in uſe; but this way your Horſes *Noſtrils* are fully at *liberty*, and he will never prove *ſick*. But as to his *Corn*, give him his *meals*, both after his *Watering*, and at *nine* a clock, at which time be ſure to *litter* him very well, that he may the better take his *Reſt*, and leave him for that *Night*.

The next *morning* come to him very *early*, as about *four* a clock, and having dreſs'd a Quarter of a Peck of *Oats*, very clean, put them into his *Locker*, and

pour

pour into it a *Quart* of good ſtrong *Ale*, and after having *mixt* the Oats and Ale very well give him them to eat, whilſt you put back his *Dung* and foul *Litter*, and make *clean* his *Stable*, but if he will not eat *warſh'd* Oats then give him *dry*; but be ſure put no *Beans* to them. When he has *done eating*, *Bridle* him, and *tie* him up to the *Ring*, and *dreſs* him. When he is dreſs'd *ſaddle* him; then throw his *Cloth* over him, and let him ſtand till the *Hounds* are ready to go *forth*. But be ſure not to draw your Saddle *Girths* ſtraight till you are ready to *mount*, leſt by that means he become *ſick*. But generally *old Horſes* are ſo *crafty*, that when an ignorant *Groom* goes to *girt* them up *hard*, they will *ſtretch* out their *Bodies* to ſuch a bigneſs by holding their Wind (on purpoſe to gain *eaſe* after they are girt) that 'twill appear difficult to *girt* them; but afterwards they let go their *Wind*, and their *Bodies* fall again.

When the *Hounds* are *unkennelled* (which ſhould not be till *Sun-riſing*) go into the *Field* along with them and *rake* your Horſe up and down *gently* till a *Hare* be *ſtarted*; always obſerving to let him *ſmell* to other Horſes *Dung*, (if he be deſirous of it) which will provoke him to *empty* himſelf, and let him *ſtand ſtill* when he does ſo: and if you meet with any *dead Fog*, *Ruſhes*, or ſuch like, ride him upon them, and by *whiſtling* provoke him to *empty* his *Bladder*.

When the *Hare* is *ſtarted*, you are to follow the *Hounds* as the other Hunters do, but to conſider, that this being the firſt time of your Horſes *hunting*, he is not ſo well vers'd in the different ſorts of *Grounds* as to know how to *gallop* ſmoothly, and with eaſe on them; and therefore you are not to put him as yet to above *half* his *ſpeed*, that he may learn to carry a *ſtaid Body*, and to manage his *Legs* both upon *Fallows*, and *Greenſwarth*. Neither are you to *gallop* him often, nor any long time together, for fear of *diſcouraging* him, and breeding in him

him a *diſlike* to this Exerciſe; but obſerving to croſs the *Fields* ſtill to your beſt advantage, you ſhall *make in* to the *Hounds* at every *default*, and ſtill keep your Horſe (as much as theſe Rules will allow you) within the *cry* of the *Dogs*, that he may be uſed to their Cry; and you will find that in a very ſhort time he will take ſuch *delight* and *pleaſure* in their *Muſick*, that he will be deſirous to follow them more eagerly.

Now if at any time the *Chaſe* be led over any *Carpet ground*, or *ſandy* High-way, on which your Horſe may *lay out* his Body ſmoothly, you may there gallop him for a *quarter* or *half* a *mile*, to teach him to *lay out* his *Body*, and to *gather up* his *Legs*, to *enlarge* and *ſhorten* his *Stroke*, according to the *different Earths* he gallops on, as if on *Green-ſwarth*, *Meadow*, *Moor*, *Heath*, &c. then to *ſtoop*, and *run* more on the *Shoulders*; if amongſt *Mole-hils*, or over high *ridges* and *furrows* then to gallop more *roundly*, and in leſs compaſs, or according to the vulgar phraſe *two up and two down*, that thereby he may *ſtrike* his Furrow *clear*, and avoid ſetting his *Fore-feet* in the *Bottom* of it, and by that means *fall over*; but by this way of galloping, tho he ſhould happen to ſet his Feet in a furrow, yet carrying his body ſo *round* and *reſting on the hand* in his gallop, would prevent his falling; and to this *perfection* nothing but *uſe*, and ſuch moderate *Exerciſe* can bring him.

According to theſe Rules you may ſpend your Time in Hunting till about *three* a *clock* in the Afternoon, at which time you ſhall have him *home* in a *ſoot pace* as you came out in the Morning, and be ſure that he be *cool* before you bring him out of the *Field*; and as you are going home conſider with your ſelf, whether or no he hath *ſweat* a *little*, (for you muſt not ſweat him *much* the firſt time) but if not, then *gallop* him *gently* on ſome *Skelping Earth*, till he ſweat at the *Roots* of his *Ears*, a little on his *Neck*,

Neck, and in his *Flank*, but it muſt be done of his own *voluntary motion*, without the compulſion of *Whip* and *Spur*: and then when he is *cool* as aforeſaid, have him *home* and *Stable* him, and be ſure avoid *walking* him *in hand* to cool him, for fear he cool *too faſt*, or *waſhing* him, for fear of cauſing an *obſtruction* of the natural courſe of the *Humours*, (which are thought by ſome Horſemen to abound moſt in *Winter*) and by that means cauſe an *inflamation* in his *Legs*, which is the Parent of the *Scratches*.

When you *ſet* him *up* in his *Stall* (which muſt be well *litter'd* againſt his coming home) *tye* up his *Head* to the Ring with the Bridle, and then rub him well with dry Straw all over both *Head*, *Neck*, *Fore-howels*, *Belly*, *Flanck*, *Buttocks* and *Legs*; and afterwards rub his *Body* over with a *dry cloth* till there be not a *wet hair* left about him, then *take off* his *Saddle* and rub the place where the Saddle ſtood *dry* likewiſe, and ſo *cloath* him with his ordinary Cloaths with all *ſpeed*, for fear leſt he take *cold*; and if you think him *too hot* throw a *ſpare cloath* over him, to prevent his *cooling* too *faſt*, which you may *abate* when you pleaſe, and ſo let him ſtand on his *Snaffle two hours* or *more*, *ſtirring* him with your *Whip* now and then in his Stall, to keep his *Legs* and *Joints* from growing *ſtiff*.

When that time is expired, and you think it may be *throughout cold*, then come to him, and having *drawn* his *Bridle*, *rubbed* his *Head*, and *pick'd* his *Feet* from Dirt and Gravel which he may have gather'd abroad, put on his *Collar*, and *ſift* him a Quart, or three Pints of *Oats*, and *mix* with them a handful of clean dufted *Hempſeed*, and give them to him; but give him not above the *quantity* preſcribed, for fear of taking away his *ſtomach*, which will be very much *weakned* through the *heat* of his *body*, and *want* of *water*. Then remove the *ſpare cloth* (if you have not done it before) for fear of keeping him *hot* too long,

and

and when he has *eaten* his *Corn*, throw a pretty quantity of *Hay* clean dusted, on his *Litter*, and let him *reſt* two or three Hours, or thereabouts.

Whilſt you are abſent from him, you ſhall prepare him a good *Maſh*, made of half a Peck of *Malt* well ground, and *water* that is boiling *hot*, obſerving to put no more *water* than your *Malt* will *ſweeten*, and your *Horſe* will *drink*, and then *ſtir* them together with a *Rudder*, or *Stick*, and then *cover* it over with cloth, till the water has extracted the *ſtrength* of the *Malt*, which will be evident to your *taſte* and *touch*, for 'twill be almoſt as *ſweet* as *Honey*, and feel *ropy* like *Birdlime*; then when it is *cold*, that you can ſcarce perceive it to *ſmoak*, offer it to your Horſe, but not *before*, leſt the *ſteam* aſcend into his *Noſtrils*, and thereby offend him with its *ſcent*; and when he has drunk the *water*, let him if he pleaſe eat the *Malt* alſo. But if he refuſe to *drink*, yet you muſt give him no other *water* that night, but by placing it in one Corner at the *head* of his *Stall*, in ſuch manner that he may not throw it down, (which you may effect by nailing a *Spar* acroſs before the *Bucket*) let it ſtand by him all *Night*, that he may drink at his pleaſure.

Now you will find this *Maſh*, or (as ſome call it) *Horſe-Caudle*, very *beneficial* to your Horſe on ſeveral Accounts; for it will comfort his *Stomach*, and keep his *Body* in a due temperate *heat* after his days Hunting; it will *cleanſe* and *bring away* all manner of *Greaſe* and groſs *humours*, which have been *diſſolved* by this Days labour, and the *fume* of the *Malt-grains*, after he has drunk the water, will *diſperſe* watry *humours*, which might otherwiſe *annoy* his *head*, and is allowed by all Horſemen to be very *advantageous* on that account.

When he has eaten his *Maſh*, then *ſtrip* him of his *Cloths*, and run him over with your *Curry-comb*, *French Bruſh*, *Hair Patch*, and *Woollen Cloath*, and cloath

cloath him up again, and then cleanſe his *Legs* as well as his *Body* of all *Dirt* and *Filth* which may annoy them, as you have been directed in *Dreſſing*; then remove him into another *Stall* (that you may not *wet* his *Litter*) and *bath* his *Legs* all over from the *Knees* with warm *Beef-broth*, or, which is better, with a quart of warm *Urine*, in which four Ounces of *Salt-Peter* hath been diſſolv'd: then rub his *Legs dry* as when you came in from *Water*, ſet him into his *Stall*, and give him a good *Home-feeding* of *Oats*, or *Bread*, (which he likes beſt) or *both*, and having ſhook good ſtore of *Litter* under him, that he may reſt the better, and throw him *Hay* enough for all night on it ſhut up your *Stable* cloſe, and leave him to his *Reſt* till morning.

The next *morning* come to him betwixt ſix and ſeven a *clock*, for that is time enough, becauſe the *Mornings reſt* is as pleaſant and refreſhing to the *Horſe* as it is to a *Man*, for then the *meat* being concocted the *ſleep* is more ſweet, and the *brain* is at that time more thin and pure. If he be *laid* diſturb him not, but ſtay till he riſes of his own accord, (and to know this you ought to have a private *peep-hole*) but if he be *riſen*, then go to him, and the firſt thing you muſt do is to put back his *Dung* from his *Litter*, and to obſerve what *Colour* it is of: obſerve whether it be *greaſie*, and *ſhining outwardly*, and *break* it with your Feet, that you may ſee whether it be ſo *inwardly*; for if it be *greaſie* and *foul* either within or without, (which you may know by its *outward ſhining*, and by *ſpots* like Soap, which will appear *within*) or if it appear of a *dark brown* colour, and *harder* than it was, it is a ſign that your former days *hunting* was *beneficial* to him, by *diſſolving* part of the inward *glut* which was within him; and therefore the next time you hunt you muſt *increaſe* his *labour* but a *little*. But if you perceive no ſuch *Symptoms*, but that his *Dung* appears *bright*, and rather *ſoft* than *hard*, without

out *greaſe*, and in a word that it holds the ſame *pale yellow* colour it did before you hunted him, then 'tis a ſign that a days Hunting made no *diſſolution*, but that his *Body* remains in the ſame *ſtate* ſtill, and therefore the next days Hunting you may almoſt *double* his *Labour*.

When you have made theſe *Remarks* from his *Dung*, you ſhall then proceed to order him as in his days of *Reſt*, that is to ſay, you ſhall give him a handful or two of *Oats* before *Water*; then *dreſs*, *water*, *air*, *feed*, &c. as in the *firſt Fortnight*.

Now as to his *Feeding*, you muſt remember the way I have already *ſhew'd*, of *changing* his Food; as giving him one while *Bread*, another *Oats*, a third time *Oats* and *Beans*, which you find he likes beſt; obſerving always, that *variety* will *ſharpen* his *Appetite*. But *Bread* being his *chief* Food, as being more *nouriſhing* and *ſtrong* than the others, you muſt feed him *often'ſt* with it.

And as in the *firſt Fortnight* I directed you to obſerve his *Digeſtion*, whether it were *quick* or *ſlow*, ſo likewiſe muſt you do now that he begins to *eat Bread*. If you find him *quick*, and that he retains his *Bread* but a *little while*, then (as I have already directed) you ſhall only *ſlightly chip* your *Bread*; but if he be *ſlow*, and *retains* it *long*, *cut away* all the *Cruſt*, and give it to ſome other Horſe, and feed your Hunter only with the *Crum*; for that being *light* of Digeſtion ſoon converts to *Chyle* and *Excrements*, but the *Cruſt* being *ſlow* of Digeſtion requires by reaſon of its *hardneſs* longer time before it be *concocted*.

The *next day* after he has *reſted*, you ſhall *hunt* him again as you did the *firſt* day, obſerving from the *Remarks* you have made, to hunt him *more* or *leſs*, according as you find the *temper* and *conſtitution* of your Horſe; and when you are *return'd home*, obſerve to put in Practice the ſame *Rules* which you have juſt now read; and thus hunt your Horſe *three times* a

week

week for a *fortnight* together, observing to give him his *full feeding*, and no other *Scowrings* but *Mashes*, and *Hempseed*, which is *equal* in its Vertue to the *former*, and only carries off *superfluous Humors* in the *Dung*.

And here before I conclude this *Chapter*, I cannot but take notice of the *Abuse* of *Scowrings*, and my *own ignorance*, being led away by the *perswasions* and my mistaken *opinion* of other mens *Skill*, who because they could talk of giving a *Scowring*, (tho Experience has since taught me, that they never *knew* the *Operation* of them, nay nor the *disposition* of the *Horses* which they kept) I thought most eminent and skilful *Horse-Doctors*, but indeed I found to my cost, that my ignorance led me into the same *mistake* with those men that take *Physick* by way of *Prevention*, and by that means render their Bodies more *liable* to *Diseases*, their *Pores* being so much *opened* by *Physick*. In like manner I found that tho I bought *Horses* of *sound* and *strong* Constitution, yet by following the false *Rules* and *Practices* of *Others*, I quickly brought them to weak *habits* of Body; and by continually using them to unnecessary *Physick*, to be *tender*, and apt to take *Cold* and *Surfeits* on every small occasion: which taught me to know, that as *Kitchin Physick* is best for a *Man*, (unless he languish under some more than ordinary *Distemper*) so *natural* and true *sound Feeding* is best for a Horse, it strengthning his *Constitution*, and keeping his Body in good *temper*; for a Horse that is *full-fed* with good natural Diet is not subject to *costiveness*; and from hence I infer, that a Horse which is *sound*, and in *health*, and of a *strong* Constitution, needs little *Physick* more than good *wholsome meat*, and his *fill* of it, provided you order him as he ought to be when he is come from Hunting.

But as *Horses* no more than *Men* are free from *Distempers*, and by reason of *abuses* and unkind Masters are rather more liable to them, (it being become

come a Proverb, (*As many Diſeaſes as a Horſe*); ſo when at any time they *happen*, recourſe muſt be had to *Phyſick*; and as it is good in its true uſe, ſo I ſhall in the *ſubſequent* part of my diſcourſe ſet down when, and what *manner* of *Scourings* are uſeful, and how they are to be *applied* with *skill* and *ſafety*; of which in its proper place.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Horſes Third Fortnights Keeping, and firſt thorough-*Sweating.*

BY this time your Horſe will be *drawn* ſo *clean*, his *Fleſh* will be ſo *inſeam'd*, and his *Wind* ſo *improv'd*, that he will be able to *ride* a *Chaſe* of three or four Miles without much *blowing* or *ſweating*; and you will find by his *Chaul* and *Flank*, as well as his *Ribs*, that he is in an indifferent *good ſtate* of body, and therefore this *next Fortnight* you muſt *increaſe* his *labour*, by which means you will come to a true *knowledge* of what he is able to do, and whether or no he will ever be fit for *Plates*, or a *Match*.

When your Horſe is *ſet* over night, and *fed* early in the morning, (as in the *laſt* Fortnights Preparation for Hunting was directed) then go into the *Field* with him, and when your Horſe is *empty*, as he will be by that time you have *ſtarted* your *Game*, you ſhall *follow* the Dogs at a good *round rate*, as at *half-ſpeed*, and ſo continue till you have *kill'd* or *loſt* your firſt *Hare*. This will ſo *rack* your Horſes *mind*, and by this time he will have ſo *emptied* himſelf, that he will be fit to be rid the next *Chaſe briskly*; which as ſoon as begun you ſhall follow the Dogs at *three quarter* ſpeed, as near to them as is conſiſtent with the diſcretion of a good *Horſeman*, and a true *Huntſman*;

man; but be ſure as yet not to *ſtrain* him.

During this days *Riding* you ſhall obſerve your Horſe's *ſweat*, under his *Saddle*, and *Forebowels*, if it appear *White* like *Froth* or *Soap-ſuds*, 'tis a ſign of inward glut and foulneſs, and that your days ſport was fully ſufficient, and therefore you ſhall have him home, and order him as before you are directed. But if your *Sport* has been ſo indifferent, as not to *ſweat* your Horſe thoroughly, then you ſhall make a *Train-ſcent* of four miles long, or thereabout and laying on your *Fleeteſt Dogs*, *ride* it *briskly*, and then having firſt *cool'd* him in the *Field*, *ride* him home and uſe him as aforeſaid.

Now that I may not leave you in ignorance what a *Train-ſcent* is, I ſhall acquaint you that it has its Name, as I ſuppoſe, from the manner of it, *viz.* the *trailing* or *dragging* of a *dead Cat* or *Fox* (and in caſe of neceſſity a *Red-herring*) three or four Miles, (according to the Will of the Rider, or the directions given him) and then laying the Dogs on the *ſcent*.

But this *Caveat* let me give all Huntſmen, to keep about two or three couple of the *fleeteſt* Hounds you can poſſibly procure for this purpoſe only. For altho I have ſeen skilful *Sportſmen* uſe their *Harriers* in this Caſe for their diverſion; yet I would perſwade them not to uſe them to it often; for it will teach them to lie off the *Line*, and fling ſo *wide* that they will never be worth any thing.

When you *unbridle* your Horſe give him inſtead of *Hempſeed* and *Oats*, a handſome quantity of *Rye-bread*, (to which end I would adviſe you to bake a Peck Loaf for this purpoſe) which being cold and moiſt will aſſiſt in *cooling* his body after his Labour, and prevent *Coſtiveneſs*, to which you will find him addicted, then give him Hay, and afterwards a Maſh, and then order him in all points as formerly.

The next morning if you perceive by his *Dung*

that his Body is *diſtampered*, and he is *hard* and *bound*, then take ſome *Crums* of your *Rye bread* and work it with as much ſweet freſh *Butter* as will make it into Paſte, and then making it into Balls about the bigneſs of a large *Wallnut*, give him five or ſix of them in the morning *faſting*; and then ſetting on your Saddle upon his Cloth, *mount* him, and *gallop* him *gently* in ſome adjoyning *graſs-Plat*, or *Cloſe*, till he begin to ſweat under his *Ears*, then lead him into the *Stable*, and let him be well rubb'd, and throwing a ſpare Cloth over him, and good ſtore of freſh Litter under him, let him *ſtand* two hours on the *Bridle*, then give him a quantity of *Rye-bread*, then throw him ſome *Hay* to chew upon, and after that get him another warm *Maſh*, and then feed him with *Bread* and *Corn* as much as he will, and be ſure to allow him what Hay he will eat. The next day water him *abroad*, and order him as in his days of *reſt*.

The day following hunt him again, but by no means ſo *ſeverely* as you did the time before till the *Afternoon*, but then ride him after the Dogs *briskly*, and if that does not make him *ſweat throughly*, make another *Train ſcent*, and follow the Dogs three quarters ſpeed, that he may ſweat *heartily*. When you have a little cooled him, have him *home*, and upon his firſt entrance into the *Stable* give him too or three *Balls* as big as Wallnuts, of this moſt excellent *Scowring*, *viz.*

Take *Butter* four ounces, *Lenitive Electuary* two ounces, *Gromwel*, *Broom* and *Purſly-ſeeds*, of each one ounce, *Anniſeeds*, *Liquoriſh*, and Cream of *Tartar*, of each half an ounce, *Jallop* an ounce, make the *Seeds* into *Pouder*, and ſtir them into a *Paſte*, with the Electuary and the Butter; knead it well, and keep it cloſe in a Pot for uſe.

Aſſoon as you have given your Horſe theſe *Balls* rub him *dry*, then dreſs him and *cloath* him up warm,

warm, and let him ſtand two or three hours on the *Snaffle*, then give him two or three handfuls of *Rye-bread*, and order him as you did before, as to *Hay*, *Provender*, *Maſh*, *&c.* and ſo leave him till the *Morning*.

Then come to him and firſt obſerve his *Dung* whether it keep the true Colour, or whether it appear *dark*, or *black*, or *red* and *high* coloured; next whether it be *looſe* and *thin*, or *hard* and *dry*. If it be of the right colour, I mean *Pale yellow*, 'tis a ſign of *health*, *ſtrength* and *cleanneſs*; if it be *dark*, or *black*, then 'tis a ſign there is *Greaſe* and other ill *humours* ſtirred up which are not yet evacuated: if it be *red* and *high* coloured, then 'tis a token that his *Blood* is *Feveriſh* and diſtempered through inward heat: if it be *looſe* and *thin*, 'tis a ſign of *Weakneſs*, but if *hard* and *dry*, it ſhews the Horſe to be *hot inwardly*, or elſe that he is a *foul feeder*: But if his *dung* carry a *medium* betwixt *hard* and *ſoft*, and ſmell *ſtrong*, 'tis a ſign of *Health* and *Vigour*.

When theſe Obſervations have been taken notice of concerning his *Dung*, then you ſhall *feed*, *dreſs*, *water*, *&c.* as in his former days of *Reſt*; obſerving always to give *variety*, and his belly full of *Corn* and *Bread*. The next have him abroad in the Field again, but by no means put him to any *labour*, further than to *rake* him from hill to hill after the *Dogs*, to keep him within ſound of their *Cry*; for the deſign of this Day's *Exerciſe* is only to keep him in *breath*, and get him an *Appetite*. Obſerve as you ride, that you let him *ſtand* ſtill to *dung*; and *look back* on it that you may draw Inferences from the *Faces*. When the Day is well nigh *ſpent* bring him home without the leaſt *ſweat*, and order him as at *other* times, only obſerve to give no *Scourings*, nor *Rye-bread*. You may if you pleaſe *water* your Horſe this day, both at your going into the *Field* and at your coming *Home*, obſerving to *gallop* after it, to *warm* the

water in his Belly. The next is a day of *Reſt*.

In the *ſame manner* in every reſpect as you have *ſpent* this *Week* you muſt ſpend the next *likewiſe*, without alteration in any point; and by that time aſſure your ſelf that your Horſe will be *drawn clean* enough for any ordinary *Hunting*; ſo that afterward obſerving to *hunt* your Horſe moderately *twice* or *thrice* aweek, according to your own *pleaſure*, and the *conſtitution* of your Horſes body, you need not queſtion but to have him in as good *ſtate* and *ſtrength* as you would deſire, without danger of his *Wind*, *Eye-ſight*, *Feet*, or *Body*.

Now when you have thus according to *art* drawn your Horſe *clean*, you will perceive thoſe *ſigns* which I told you of, verified; for his *Fleſh* on his *ſhort Ribs* and *Buttocks* will be as hard as a *Board*, his *Flank* will be *thin*, and nothing to be *felt* but a *double skin*, and *chaps* ſo clean from *Fat*, *Glut*, or *Kernels*, that you may *hide* your *Fiſts* in them; and above all his *Exerciſe* will give plain Demonſtration of the *Truth* of this *Art*, for he will run *three* or *four* Miles three quarters ſpeed without *ſweating*, or ſcarce *blowing*: I ſay when this is *perfected*, you muſt avoid all *ſcourings* after hunting, (becauſe Nature has nothing to work on) but *Rye bread*, and a *Maſh*, except your Horſe be now and then troubled with ſome little *Poze* in the Head; and then you ſhall bruize a little *Muſtard-ſeed* in a fine Linen *Rag*, and *ſteep* it in a quart of ſtrong *Ale* for three or four hours, and then untying the Rag *mix* the *Muſtard-ſeed* and the *Ale* with a quarter of a Peck of *Oats*, and give it your Horſe.

Laſtly, when your Horſe is *drawn clean*, you muſt beware that he *grows* not *foul* again thro *want* of either *Airing*, or *Hunting*, or any other *Negligence*, leſt by that *means* you procure to your ſelf and your Horſe double *pains* and *labour*, and no *thanks* from your *Maſter*.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Of making a Hunting-Match, its advantages and diſadvantages.

SInce many *Perſons of Honour* delight in good Horſes, both for *Hunters* as well as *Gallopers*, it may not be improper to ſpeak a word in this place concerning the *Advantages* or *Diſadvantages* which happen in making of *Hunting-Matches*; ſince he that proceeds cautiouſly and upon true grounds in *matching* his Horſe, is already in a great meaſure ſure of gaining the Prize, at leaſt if the Proverb be true, that a *Match well made is half won.*

The *firſt* thing to be *conſider'd* by him that deſigns to *match* his Horſe, for his own *advantage* and his Horſes *credit*, is this; That he do not *flatter* himſelf in the opinion of his Horſe, by *fancying* that he is ſwifter than the *wind*, when he is but a *ſlow Galloper*; and that he is *whole-running*, (that is, will run *four miles* without a *ſobb* at the *height* of his *ſpeed*) when he is not able to run a *mile*.

And the ground of this Error I ſuppoſe ariſes from a Gentlemans being miſtaken in the *ſpeed* of his *Hounds*, who for want of *Tryal* againſt other *Dogs* that have been really *fleet*, has ſuppos'd his own to be *ſwift*, when in reality they were but of *middle ſpeed*; and becauſe his Horſe (when trained) was able to follow them *all day*, and at any hour to *command* them upon *deep* as well as *light* Earths, has therefore falſly concluded him to be *ſwift* as the *beſt*; but upon tryal againſt a Horſe that has been *rightly* train'd after Hounds that were *truly fleet*, has to his *coſt* bought his *Experience*, and been convinced of his *Error*.

Therefore I would perſwade all *Lovers* of *Hunters* to get two or three Couple of *try'd Hounds*, and *once* or *twice* a week to follow after them a *Train-ſcent*; and when he is able to *top* them on all *ſorts* of *Earth*, and to endure *Heats* and *Colds* ſtoutly, then he may the better rely on his *Speed* and *Toughneſs*.

That Horſe which is able to ride a *Hare-chaſe* of five or ſix miles briskly, and with good courage, till his *body* be as it were bath'd in *ſweat*; and then upon the *death* of the *Hare*, in a nipping *frosty* morning can endure to *ſtand ſtill*, till the *ſweat* be *frozen* on his *back*, ſo that the *cold* may *pierce* him as well as the *heat*; and then even in that extremity of Cold to ride another *Chaſe*, as *briskly* and with as much *courage*, as he did in the former: That Horſe which can thus endure *Heats* and *cold* of theſe is of moſt *value* amongſt *Sports-men*. And indeed 'tis not every Horſe that is able to endure ſuch extraordinary *Toyl*; and I my ſelf have ſeen very *brave* Horſes to the *Eye*, that have rid the *firſt Chaſes* to admiration, that when the *Cold* had ſtruck to them, and they began to grow *ſtiff* have *flagg'd* the *ſecond*, and given *quite out* the *third* Heat.

Therefore to make a judgment of the goodneſs of your own Horſe, obſerve him after the *death* of the firſt *Hare*, if the *Chaſe* has been any thing *brisk*: if when he is *cold*, he *ſhrinks* up his *Body*, and *draws* his *Legs* up together, 'tis an infallible token of *want* of *Courage*; and the ſame you may collect from the *ſlackning* of his *Girths* after the firſt Chaſe, and from the *ſetting* of his *Teeth*, and the *dulneſs* of his *Countenance*; all which are true *marks* of *Faintneſs*, and *Trying*: and therefore there is no *reliance* on ſuch a Horſe, in caſe of a *Wager*.

But if on the *contrary*, you are Maſter of a Horſe (not only in your own *judgment*, but in the *opinion* of *knowing* Horſemen) that is *approv'd* for *Speed*, and *Toughneſs*, and you are deſirous to *match* him, or otherwiſe

wiſe to *run* for a *Plate*; I will to the beſt of my power tell you the *advantages* that are to be gain'd in *Matching*.

But before I enter upon the *ſubject* propos'd, I think it convenient to tell you the way our *Anceſtors* had of making their *Matches*, and our *modern* way of deciding *Wagers*. Firſt then the *old way* of Tryal was by running ſo many *Train-ſcents* after Hounds (as was agreed on between the *parties* concern'd) and a *Bell-Courſe*, this being found not ſo *uncertain* and more *durable* than *Hare-hunting*, and the *advantage* conſiſted in having the *Trains* led on *Earth* moſt *ſuitable* to the *nature* of the Horſes. Now others chooſe to *hunt* the *Hare* till ſuch an *hour* prefix'd, and then to run theſe *Wild-gooſe Chaſe*, which, becauſe it is not known to all *Huntſmen*, I ſhall explain the *uſe* and *manner* of it.

The *Wildgooſe Chaſe* received its *Name* from the manner of the *flight* which is made by *Wildgeeſe*, which is generally *one after another*: ſo the two Horſes after the running of Twelveſcore *Yards*, had liberty, which Horſe ſoever could get the *leading*, to *ride* what *ground* he pleas'd; the *hindmoſt* Horſe being bound to follow him, within a certain *diſtance* agreed on by Articles, or elſe to be *whipt* up by the *Triers* or *Judges* which rode by, and which ever Horſe could *diſtance* the other won the *Match*.

But this *Chaſe* was found by Experience ſo *inhumane*, and ſo *deſtructive* to good *Horſes*, eſpecially when two *good* Horſes were match'd; for *neither* being able to *diſtance* the other, till ready both to *ſink* under their *Riders* through Weakneſs, oftentimes the *Match* was fain to be drawn, and left *undecided*, tho both the Horſes were quite *ſpoiled*.

This brought them to run *Train-ſcents*, which afterwards was chang'd to *three Heats*, and a *ſtraight Courſe*; and that the *Lovers* of *Hunting-horſes* might be encouraged to keep *good Ones*, *Plates* have been

erected in many places of this Land, purpoſely for *Hunters*, and of ſome their *Articles* exclude all others (namely *Gallopers*) from *Running*.

But whether you deſign to *match* your Horſe againſt any *One* Horſe in particular, or to put him in for a *Plate*, where he muſt run againſt all that come in general; yet 'tis neceſſary that you know the *nature* and *diſpoſition* of your Horſe, before you venture any *wager* on his head; that is to ſay, whether he be *hot* and *fiery*, or *cool* and *temperate* in Riding; whether he be very *ſwift*, but not *hard at bottom*, or *ſlow*, but yet *ſure*, and one that will *ſtick at mark*; on what *ſort* of *Earths* he moſt *delights* to gallop on, whether to *climb* or *run down* hills, or elſe to *skelp* on a *Flat*; whether to run on *deep*, or *light Grounds*; whether on *rack ways*, or *Carpet*-ground; whether amongſt *Mole hills*, or on *Meadow* ground; whether he be *well* winded, or *thick* winded; ſo that tho he will anſwer a *Spur*, and mend upon *Lapping*, yet he muſt have eaſe by *Sobbs*. All theſe things muſt be known, to the end that you may draw thoſe *advantages* from them which may be offered in *matching*; as this for Example.

If your Horſe be *hot* and *fiery*, 'tis odds but he is *fleet* withal (for generally thoſe Horſes are ſo) and delights to run upon *light* and *hard flats*; and muſt be held *hard* by the Rider, that he may have time to recover *Wind* by *Sobbs*; or elſe his *Fury* will choak him. But whereas it is the general opinion that nothing that is *violent* can be *laſting*; and therefore that it is impoſſible that ſuch hot mettled Horſes can be *tough* and *hard* at bottom, this I conceive may be but a popular Error; for I have ſometimes ſeen by Art thoſe two Qualities reconciled, at leaſt ſo far, as to make the moſt *Fiery Horſe* manageable, and to endure both *Whip* and *Spur*; and then tho he ſhould not prove at bottom ſo *truly tough* as the *craving Drudge*, yet by his Riders ma-

nagement his *Speed* shall answer it in all points and serve in its *stead*; But to return to my Subject.

The best way to *match* such a Horse is to agree to run *Train-scents*, and the fewer the *better* for you, before you come to the *Course*: Also in these *Train-scents* the *shorter* you make your *distance* the *better*: and above all things be sure agree to have the leading of the first *Train*, and then making choice of such grounds as your Horse may best shew his *Speed*, and the *Fleetest Dogs* you can procure, give your *Hounds* as much *Law* before you, as your *Tryers* will allow, and then making a loose try to win the *Match* with a *Wind*; but if you fail in this attempt then *bear* your Horse, and save him for the *Course*.

But if your Horse be *slow*, yet *well-winded*, and a *true Spurr'd Nag*; then the more *Train-scents* you run before you come to run the *straight Course* the better. Observing here too, to gain the leading of the first *Train*, which in this case you must lead it upon such *deep Earths* that it may not end near any *light Ground*. For this is the *Rule* received among *Horsemen* that the next *Train* is to *begin* where the *last ends*, and the last *Train* is to *be* ended at the *starting Place* of the Course. Therefore observe to end your *last* on deep Earths as well as the *first*.

In the next place have a care of making a *Match* of a *sudden*, and in *Drink*, for fear lest you repent when you are *Sober*. Neither make a match against a Horse, which you do not know, without first consulting some skilful or trusty *Friend*, on whose *Judgment* and *Honesty* you can safely rely, and who is able to give a good *Account* of your *Adversaries* Horse's *Speed* and his manner of Riding; and if you find him any ways correspondent to your own in *speed* or *goodness*, be not too *Peremptory* to venture, but upon some reasonable probabilities of *Winning*: for 'tis neither *Braggs* nor *Fancy* that will make your Horse run one jot the *better*, or your Adver-

Adverſaries the *worſe*: and remember this, that there is no Horſe ſo good, but there may be another as good; and then if you proceed on good *Grounds*, and true *Judgment*, you may be the bolder to go on, and ſtand to your *Match*, notwithſtanding the opinion of other men may be againſt you.

One material *Advice* I had like to have forgot and that is this; be ſure at no time give *advantage* of *Weight*, for you will find the *inconvenience* of it at the latter *end* of the *Day*: for tho a Horſe *feel* it not when he is *freſh*, yet it will *ſink* him very much when he grows *weak*; a *Horſe length* loſt by odds of *Weight* in the firſt *Train*, may prove a diſtance in the ſtraight *Courſe* at *laſt*; for the *Weight* is the ſame every *Heat* tho his *ſtrength* be not.

But if on the other ſide you gain any advantage of *Weight*, article that the *Horſeman* ſhall ride ſo much *weight* as you are agreed on, *beſides* the *Saddle*, for by this means the *Rider* (if he be not weight of himſelf) muſt carry the *dead weight* ſomewhere about him, which will be troubleſome to the *Rider* as well as the *Horſe*, and the more to the *latter*, ſince 'tis more remote from his *Back* than if it were in the *Saddle*, and by conſequence will more diſorder his *ſtroke* if the Rider *incline* to either *ſide*, than if it were nearer the *Center*; as you may ſee by a pair of *Scales*, where if the *Pin* be not placed exactly in the midſt of the *Beam*, the *longeſt* part (as being moſt diſtant from the Center) will be the *heavieſt*.

Now as to the time that you take for dieting, that muſt be according to the nature of your Horſe, and the preſent ſtate of Body he is in; for tho he may be clean enough for ordinary *Hunting*, yet he may be far diſtant from that perfect ſtate of Body, that is required in a *Match*, and to keep him in ſuch ſtrict *Diet* all the *Seaſon*, (except on ſuch extraordinary Occaſions) would be an *unneceſſary* Expence.

As to your Horſes *Diſpoſition* for *Running*, you muſt

muſt know it by uſe and *Obſervation*, for in this point Horſes very much differ, for ſome run beſt when they are *high* in *caſe*, others when they are in *middle condition* of *Fleſh*, and ſome again when they appear to the Eye poor, and low in Fleſh; therefore according to your Horſes *Nature*, and the time required to bring him into his *beſt State*, you muſt order your day for the tryal of your *Match* to be.

But if you deſign to put him in for ſome *Hunting Plate*; there neither the *choice* of your *Ground*, the *Weight*, nor the *Horſes* you are to run againſt are at your *diſpoſal*, but you muſt take them as you find them; only the time for bringing your Horſe into a good *Condition* is at your own *diſcretion*, ſince you may begin as ſoon or as late as you pleaſe to keep him in ſtrict *Diet*, the time for all *Plates* being uſually *fixt*, and annually the ſame.

CHAP. IX.

Of the ordering the Hunter, for a Match or a Plate.

WHen you have either *Matcht* your Horſe, or entertained thoughts of putting him in for a *Plate*, you muſt conſider that you ought to reſerve a Month at the leaſt, to draw his Body perfectly *clean*, and to refine his *Wind* to that degree of *perfection* which Art is capable of *attaining* to.

Firſt then you muſt take an exact view of the *ſtate* of his Body, both *outwardly* and *inwardly*; as whether he be *low* or *high* in *Fleſh*, or whether he be *dull* and *heavy* when abroad, and this occaſioned through too much *hard riding*, or through ſome *Greaſe* that by hunting has been *diſſolved*, but for want of a ſcowring has not been *removed*.

If

If he appear *ſluggiſh* and *Melancholly* from either of theſe cauſes, then give him half an ounce of *Diapente* in a pint of good old *Malaga Sack*, which will both *cleanſe* his *Body*, and *revive* his *Spirits*: and then for the firſt week you ſhall *feed* him continually with *Bread*, *Oats* and *ſplit Beans*, giving him ſometimes the *one* and ſometimes the *other*, according as he likes, always leaving ſome in his *Locker* to eat at his own leiſure when you are abſent; and when you return at your hours of *Feeding* to take away what is left, and to give him freſh till you have made him *wanton* and *playful*. To which end you ſhall obſerve, that though you ride him every day *morning* and *evening* on *Airing*, and every other day on *Hunting*, yet you are not to *ſweat* him or put him to any violent *labour*, the deſign this week being to keep him in *Wind* and *Breath*, and to prevent *purſiveneſs*.

But you are to obſerve that both your *Oats*, *Beans* and *Bread* are to be now ordered after another manner than you did before, for firſt you muſt dry your *Oats* well in the *Sun*, then put them into a clean *Bag* and *beat* them ſoundly with a Flail or Cudgel, till you think they are *hulled*; then take them out of the bag and *winnow* them clean both from hulls and duſt, and ſo give them to your Horſe as you have occaſion. Your *Beans* in like manner muſt be ſeparated from the *hulls* which are apt to breed *Glut*, and muſt either be thrown away or given amongſt chaff to ſome more ordinary Horſe. And for your *Bread*, whereas before you only *chipt* it, now you muſt cut the *Cruſt clean* away, and diſpoſe of it as you pleaſe; for 'tis *hard* of *digeſtion*, and will be apt to *heat* and *dry* his Body. And now that you are to put him into *ſtricter keeping*, you are to make a *finer* ſort of Bread than before, as thus;

Take two Pecks of *Beans*, and two of *Wheat*, and *grind* them together, but not too *fine*, to prevent too

too much *Bran* being in the Bread; and *dreſs* one Peck of the *Meal* through a fine *Range*, and knead it up with new *Ale Barm*, and the *Whites* of a dozen new laid *Eggs*, and ſo *bake* it in a *Loaf* by it ſelf, and the reſt dreſs through a *Boulter*, and knead it only with *Ale* and *Barm*; and uſe it in all other points as the former: Now the *Peck loaf* is to be given your Horſe when you *ſet* him, and the other at *ordinary* times.

This *Bread* aſſiſts *Nature* much in increaſing the *Strength*, *Courage*, and *Wind* of your Horſe, provided you add thereto (as I have always told you) *true Labour*, as any Bread whatſoever; nay even as either of M. *De Greys* ſorts of Bread, which he mentions in his *Compleat Horſeman*, 4to. *p.* 232. *ed.* 4th. eſpecially his *laſt*, which he ſays *is better Bread, and a greater Cooler*; and which he preſcribes to make thus.

'Take *Wheat Meal* one Peck, *Rye-meal*, *Beans* and 'Oat-*meal*, all ground very ſmall, of each half a 'Peck, *Anniſeeds*, and *Liquoriſh*, of each one ounce, 'White *Sugar Candy* four ounces, all in fine *Pouder*, 'the *yolks* and *whites* of twenty *Eggs* well beaten, 'and ſo much *White-wine* as will knead it into a '*Paſte*; make this into great *Loaves*, bake them 'well, and after they be two or three days old, let 'him eat of this Bread, but chip away the *Outſide*.

Now the Reaſon why I have cited this is, becauſe I have heard ſeveral (who would be thought knowing Horſemen) applaud this very *Bread* beyond any other to be met with in any Book, tho for my part I can find nothing *excellent* in the whole *Compoſition*.

For firſt *Oatmeal* tho it be ſtrong, yet it is a dry grain, *hard* of *Digeſtion*, and a great *dryer up of the Blood*. The *Wheat* is of a drying quality likewiſe, tho it be light; for the *Anniſeed* and *Liquorice*, they are not only *Phyſical* but *hot* alſo; ſo that the Body becomes *over-heated*, and thereby *coſtive*. And yet theſe People will not be *perſwaded*, but theſe *Drugs* will

will make him *long-winded*; possibly they might assist him in *Neighing*, as some men say it doth *Songsters* in *Vocal Musick*, wherein there is no *Exercise* of the Body used; but where *bodily Strength* is required, I am apt to believe it more *prejudicial* than *profitable*.

But here some will *object* that there is *Rye* and *Beans*, both which are *moistning*; especially the *Rye* which is both *cold* and *moist*, and is the very reason *De Grey* himself gives why he put *Rye* into his latter Bread, because (says he) *Rye* is a *Loosner* and a *Cooler*, and therefore it will make the Horse more *soluble*.

I have already said, that if his *Body* have *Feeding* proportionate to his *Labour*, the Horse will continue in a right state of *Health*. Yet since he is hot by Nature, and *Labour* might increase his natural *Heat*, and render him *costive*, therefore I have all along prescrib'd him *Rye-bread* alone as *Physical*. But here let the Horse be in what condition soever, whether *bound* in his body or *laxative*, yet *Rye* being a part of your Bread, your Horse must *continually* feed thereon, which has this undeniable *disadvantage*, that if he be *loose* in his *body*, this *Bread* (to use *De Grey*'s own words) will make him more *soluble*.

And now whilst I am discoursing of *Horse-bread*, I cannot but *condemn* another *curiosity* in some *Feeders*, who think, by dressing their *Meal* to the utmost degree of *Fineness*, they do *wonders*, and that such *pure Food* must of necessity bring him to the *greatest perfection* imaginable both of Body and Wind.

But in this point I think they are deceiv'd, for the *Meal* being dress'd so very *fine*, nothing remains but the *quintessence* of it; which tho it be lightned by *Barm* and *Whites of Eggs*, yet when it is above a day old 'twill begin to *harden* (as may be observ'd by *Manchet*) and especially if *Oatmeal* be in it, by reason of its *drying quality*, whereby it will not be so *easie* of *digestion*, as it would be otherwise if it had no *Bran* in it; and by consequence will be more apt to

oppress

oppreſs his Stomach, if he be *heated*, before it be throughly *digeſted*, and ſo breed raw *crudities*, and an *inflamation* of the *blood*, and by that means hazard a *Surfeit*, than which nothing can be of worſe conſequence to a *Horſe* that is *matcb'd*.

And therefore 'tis that I adviſe, that your *Horſe-bread* ſhould only be made of *Wheat* and *Beans*, and that it ſhould not be *dreſs'd* too *fine*, nor too *courſe*, but ſo, as that there may be neither ſo much Bran left as to *annoy* the *Blood*, nor ſo little as to make your Bread too *cloſe* and *ſolid*; but you may leave ſome on purpoſe to *ſcowr* the *Maw*, and further your Horſes *Digeſtion*. And thus much by way of Digreſſion.

Having ſpoken to the *firſt* condition of Horſes which we propos'd, viz. *melancholly*, and *low in fleſh*, we are now to ſpeak of thoſe which are *brisk* and *lively*; which if your Horſe be ſo, that when you lead him out of the Stable he will leap and play about you, then you muſt not only avoid giving him the *Scowring* laſt mentioned of *Sack* and *Diapente*, but any other whatſoever: for there being no foul *Humours*, or any *ſuperfluous* matter left in his body for the *Phyſick* to work on, it will prey upon the ſtrength of his body, and by that means weaken it, which it muſt be your utmoſt endeavour to preſerve by full *Feeding* and *ſound Labour*, which will neceſſarily produce a perfect *Wind*, which is the ſupport of *Strength*, for when his *Wind* once fails, his *Strength* avails nothing.

As to the manner of it, if your Horſe be ingag'd in a *Hunting match*, you ſhall *ſweat* him twice this week, but not by *hunting* him after the *Hare*, as formerly, but by *Train ſcents*, ſince the *former* on this Occaſion may prove *deceitful*; for tho the *Hounds* be very *ſwift*, yet the *Scent* being *cold*, the *Dogs* will often be at *fault*, and by that means the Horſe will have many *Sobs*, ſo that when he comes to run

Train-

Trainſcents in earneſt your Horſe will look for *eaſe*, his *Wind* being not ſo perfect as in Art it ought to be.

Therefore lead your *Train-ſcents* with a *dead Cat* over ſuch *Grounds* as you are likely to *run* on, and *beſt agrees* with your Horſes *Humour*, and be ſure make choice of the *Fleeteſt* Hounds you can get, and then your Horſe will be kept up to the *height* of his *ſpeed*.

As to the Number of *Train-ſcents* that you are to *ride* at a time, that you muſt order according to your *Match*, or (which is better) according to your Horſes *ſtrength*, and *ability* for performing his *Heats*. For if you *labour* him beyond his *Strength*, 'twill take him off his *ſpeed*, weaken his *Limbs*, and daunt his *Spirit*. If you give him *too little* Exerciſe, it will give opportunity for *purſiveneſs* and ill *humours*, as *Glut*, &c. to increaſe in him, and gain in him a *habit* of *Lazineſs*, that when he comes to be put to labour above his *uſual rate*, he will grow *reſtiff*, and ſettle like a *Jade*, either of which will redound to your *diſcredit*, and therefore it muſt be from your own *knowledge* in the *ſtate* of his Body, and not from any *general Directions* in writing, that you muſt ſteer your Courſe.

Only this *Direction* may be given you, that if you are to run *Eight Train ſcents* and the *ſtraight Courſe*, more or leſs, you are to put him to ſuch *ſevere labour* not above *twice* in your whole *Months* keeping; and if it be in the firſt *Fortnight*, 'twill be the better, for then he will have a *compleat Fortnight* to recover his *ſtrength* again; and for his *labour* in his laſt *Fortnight*, let it be proportionate to his *ſtrength* and *wind*, as ſometimes *half* his Task, and then *three* parts of it. Only obſerve that the *laſt* Tryal you make in the *firſt Fortnight* be a Train-ſcent *more* than your *Match*, for by that means you will find what he is *able* to do. And for the *proportion* of his Exerciſe, *twice* a week (as I have already ſaid) is ſufficient to

to keep him in *breath*, and yet will not diminish or injure his *Vigour*.

But if your *Hunting-match* be to run *fewer* Train-scents, then you may put him to his *whole Task* the oftner, according as you find him in condition; only observe that you are not to *strain* him for *Ten days* at least before he *ride* his *Match*, that he may be led into the *Field* in perfect *strength* and *vigour*.

If you intend him for a *Plate*, let him take his *Heats* according to this *Direction*, only let it be on the *Place*, that he may be *acquainted* with the *Ground*; and as for the *Hounds* you may *omit* them, as not being *ty'd* to their *speed*, but that of your *Adversaries* Horse's. But as to your *Number* of *Heats*, let them be according to what the *Articles* exact; only observe that as to the *sharpness* of them, they must be *regulated* according to the *temper* of his *strength*, and the *purity* of his *Wind*. And when you heat him provide some Horses upon the *Course* to *run at him*, which will *quicken* his *spirits*, and *encourage* him, when he finds he can *command* them at his pleasure. And here too the same *Rule* must be *observed*, not to give your Horse a *Bloody heat* for *Ten days* or a *Fortnight* before the *Plate* be to be run for: And let his *last heat* which you give him before the day of *Tryal* be in all his *Cloaths*, and just *skelp* it over; which will make him run the next time much more *vigorously*, when he shall be *stript naked*, and *feel* the *cold Air* pierce him.

But now that I am speaking of *sweating*, it may be expected that I should lay down some *Rules* how to order a Horse that is in *keeping* for a *Match* in *Frosty weather*, or in case he be an *old strain'd Horse*, so that you dare not *heat* him in *hard Weather*, for fear of *Laming* him afresh.

In these cases some Horsemen have practic'd *sweating* their Horse in the *House*, by laying on him multiplicity of *Cloaths*, being first made *hot* at the

Fire; which is the most *unnatural* way of *sweating* a Horse that can be, since 'tis *provoked* by heat arising from the *outward parts*, and is too *violent*, the extremity of the *heat* joined to the *weight* of the *Cloaths*, not only *weakning*, but almost *smothering* him.

The next way in use, is to give him his Heat *abroad*, as I just now mentioned in his *Cloaths*, but this too is not so *natural* and *kindly*, as without his Cloaths, since here too the *heat* is augmented from *without*, and consequently abates his *strength* the more, and yet doth not altogether so well improve his Wind.

Therefore if either you have a Horse that has been *strain'd*, or otherwise the *weather* be *unseasonable*, find out some *dead Fog*, or *sandy way*, though of but half a *Miles* length, and three *breath* your Horse till he *sweat* as you would have him. I remember to have heard of a *Gentleman* having *match'd* his Horse for a very *considerable sum*; and the weather proving *hard*, took this *course* to keep his Horse in *breath*; he caused *Straw* and *foul Litter* to be *spread* all along *round* an adjoyning *Close*, and every *morning* his Servants *shook* it up and *turn'd* it, to keep it *hollow* and *soft*, and then the Horse was had forth to *gallop* on it after his Water, and by this means kept his Horse in *tolerable* Wind.

Now during this *Month*, both on his *Resting-days*, and after his *sweats* on *Heating days*, you are to observe the same *Rules* which you were taught in the *first week* of your *Third Fortnights* keeping; only you are to omit all *Scowrings*, but *Rye-bread* and *Mashes*; since your Horse being in so *perfect a state* of Body has no need of any. Only if you think there may be any occasion, and that your Horse prove *Thirsty*, about *Eight* or *Nine* a Clock at *Night* you may give him this *Julep* to *cool* him and *quench* his *Thirst*.

Take *Barly-water* two Quarts, of *Syrup* of *Violets* 3 Ounces, of *Syrup* of *Lemons* two Ounces, mix them together, and give them to your Horse to *drink*;

if

if he refuſe, *faſten* it from falling as you did the *Maſh*, and ſo let it *ſtand* by him all *Night*.

During the laſt *Fortnight*, you muſt not only *dry* your *Oats*, and *hull* them by *beating*, but likewiſe take half a Strike of Oats and *waſh* them in the *Whites* of a dozen or twenty *Eggs*, and ſtirring them therein let them *ſoak* all Night; then the next Morning take them and *ſpread* them abroad in the *Sun*, till they be as dry as at firſt, and ſo give them to your Horſe, and when they are ſpent prepare more in the *ſame* manner. This Food is *light* of *Digeſtion*, and very *ſoveraign* for his *Wind*.

His *Beans* muſt be order'd as before, only give them not ſo *frequently*, if he will eat his *Oats* without them; and for his *Bread* this Fortnight let it be three parts *Wheat* to one of *Beans*, and let it be ordered as before directed. And likewiſe if you find him inclin'd to *coſtiveneſs* forget not to *relieve* Nature by giving him Oats *waſh'd* in two or three *Whites* of *Eggs* and *Ale* beat together, for that, as I have told you already, will *cool* his body, and keep it *moiſt*.

During the *laſt* Week omit giving him a *Maſh*, only give the *Barly-water* as before; but as to *Hay* let him have as much as he will *eat* (which will not be much, if he have his *fill* of better food) till a day *before* he is to ride his *Match*, but then you muſt hold your hand, that he may have time to *digeſt* that which he has *eaten*, and then and not before you may *muzzle* him with your *Cavezone*; and be ſure that *day*, and ſo till the *morning* he is led out, to *feed* him as much as poſſible, for ſuch a days Labour will require ſomething to maintain *ſtrength*. Therefore in the Morning, an hour before you are to *lead out*, give him a *Toſt* or two of *White bread* ſteept in *Sack*, which will revive his *Spirits*, and ſo lead him into the *Field*.

But if you are to run for a *Plate*, which uſually is not till *three* a clock in the *Afternoon*, then by all

means have him out *early* in the morning to *air*, that he may *empty* his Body, and when he is come in from Airing feed him with *Tosts* in *Sack*; for you must consider, that as too much *fulness* will endanger his *wind*, so too long *fasting* will cause *faintness*. When he has eaten what you think fit to give him, put on his *Cavezone*, and then having *chafed* his *Legs* soundly with *Piece grease* and *Brandy* warmed together, or *Train-oil*, (which ought likewise to be us'd *daily* at Noon for a *Week* before the *Match*, or *longer* if you see cause,) shake up his *Litter*, and shutting up your *Stable* close, and preventing any *Noise* to be made near him, leave him to his *Rest* till the *hour* come that he is to go into the *Field*.

As to *platting* his *Main* and *Tail*, *shooing* him with *Plates*, *pitching* his *Saddle* and *Girths*, and the like preparations, they are things which every *Groom* can instruct you in, and therefore I shall not trouble you with *Rules* concerning them, but in lieu thereof shall add some farther Directions how to judge of the *State* of your Horses *Body*, and if you find any thing amiss therein how to redress it.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Means to judge of your Horſes State of Body, and of curing all Caſualties that may happen after Matching.

THere are ſeveral *Obſervations* to be made by you during your *Dieting* your Horſe, which if you *miſcarry* in, may be the *loſs* of your *Match*, or your *ſhare* in the *Plate*. Therefore, that you may know how to proceed *regularly* in this *Art*, I ſhall endeavour to *ſum* them *up*.

Firſt then you are to obſerve his *Chaul*, his *Ribs*, and his *Flank*, according to the Rules formerly laid *down*; for if he be *clean within*, he will alſo be *clean there*; but yet he may feel clean *there*, when he is not clean *within*: and therefore thoſe *Grooms* are very *conceited*, who upon their *firſt view* of a Horſe and *handling* of his *Flank*, pronounce him to be in a *true ſtate* of Body; for gentle *Airing*, warm *Cloathing*, ſcanty *Feeding*, may *diſperſe* the groſs *Fat* and *Glut*, and drive it from the *outward* parts, ſo that he may *appear* clean, when in reality he is *not* ſo: and therefore you are only a *competent Judge*, who know how he was cleanſed.

Therefore you are to obſerve, firſt, whether in *all points* you have proceeded according to *Art* in his *Training*; as whether he performs his *Heats* with *vigor* and true *courage*, whether he have been all along *home-fed*, whether you have not ſuffer'd *purſiveneſs* to increaſe by *too little* labour, or abated his Fleſh and Strength by *too much*. Theſe things are the very *grounds* of *Keeping*, and therefore ought to be *ſcan'd* and *conſider'd* with *judgment*.

Next you are to obſerve his manner of *Feeding*, as whether he holds his *Appetite* or no; and obſerve

what ſort of *Food* he likes beſt, and of that give him *oſteneſt*; and in caſe his *ſtomach* abate, keep him out *longer* Morning and Night, at his *airings*.

In like manner you muſt obſerve his *Dung*, which tho it be as fallacious oftentimes as a *Sick mans Water*, it being liable to *alteration* on the *change* of *Diet*, or being *influenc'd* by the *air*, yet being *clean* and in *health* it will uſually be a *pale yellow* colour, and be voided in *round Pellets*; but if it be *looſe*, and *ſoft*, it is an *infallible* ſign of *weakneſs*, and therefore muſt by *good Feeding* be remedied as ſoon as poſſible. But if it be *hard* and *dry*, ſo that he cannot dung but with *difficulty* and *ſtraining*, then you muſt endeavour to *relieve* Nature, but not with *ſcowrings*, which would *weaken* too much, but rather chuſe to give him this *Clyſter*, which will both cool and refreſh him.

Take a Quart of *Whey*, of Syrup of *Violets*, and *Pulpe* of *Caſſia*, of each four Ounces, and of *Manna* half an Ounce; this will *Purge* him gently, and is moſt excellent to *cool* his Bowels.

The next thing to be conſidered is *Lameneſs*, which if it proceed from *old ſtrains* you muſt make uſe of this *Ointment*, which I have ſeveral times experimented with good *ſucceſs*.

Take freſh *Butter*, Oyl of *Bayes*, *Dialthea*, and *Turpentine* of each two Ounces, *mix* and *boil* them together on a *ſoft fire*, and when they are well *incorporated*, as hot as the Horſe can ſuffer it, *anoint* the Horſe *twice* a day, and give him *exerciſe*, by *Airing* him abroad Morning and Evening, a *foot pace*, and you will find it a certain *Remedy* for any *Strain* in the *Shoulder*, *Clap* on the *back ſinews*, or any *grief* whatſoever, that proceeds from *Strains*.

But if you only fear *Lameneſs* from *Old Strains*, then you muſt be careful that your *Exerciſe* be moderate, and always when you come in from Water and his *Legs* are *rubb'd* dry, *anoint* them with ſuch ſupple

ſupple, *Oyntments*, as are accounted good for the *Limbs*, as *Linſeed*, *Train*, *Sheepsfoot*, *Neatsfoot*, *Nerve-Oyl*, and the like; all which may be uſed on his days of *Reſt*, but on his *heating* days *Urine* and *Salt-Peter*. Some Horſemen make uſe of *Brandy* and *Sallet*-Oyl mix'd, and *bathe* his *Legs*, and afterwards *beat it in* with a hot Iron, and commend it as the beſt thing for the *Limbs* of an *Old ſtiff* Horſe.

But if your Horſe through *Negligence*, or any *caſualty* happen to have the *Greaſe* fall into his *Heels*, you muſt endeavour to remove it by a good *ſound beat*, and a *ſcouring* after it, and apply to his *Legs* this *Poultiſe*.

Take of *Hony* a Pound, of *Turpentine*, *common Gum*, *Meal of Linſeed*, and the Meal of *Fenugreek*, of each 4 Ounces, and the Pouder of *Bay-berries* well ſearch'd three Ounces, *mix* and *boil* all theſe well together; then take it *off*, and put to it a Pint of *White-wine*, then boil it again, till it be very *thick*: and with this, as hot as the Horſe can ſuffer it, lap his *legs* about *Plaiſter-wiſe*, and *renew* it only *once* in *three days*, and it will certainly bring his Legs within compaſs.

If your Horſes *Feet* be *bad*, either *ſurbated*, or *foundred*, then inſtead of *Cow-Dung*, you may ſtop them with *blue-clay* and *Vinegar* tempered together, and on his Heating-days at Night ſtop them with *grey-ſcope*, and keep it in with a piece of an old Shoſole.

If your Horſe be trouble with any *Doſe* in his head give him *Muſtard-ſeed* among his *Provender*, but it be a *worſe* Cold, which you will perceive by his *Ratling*, then give him this *Lambitive*, or *Electuary*.

Take of *Honey* and *Treacle*, each half a Pound, having mixt theſe together, add to them Pouder of *Cummin ſeed*, *Liquoriſh*, *Bay-berries*, *Anniſeeds*, each an Ounce, mix all theſe together, and put them to the *Honey* and *Treacle*, which will make it of thick conſiſtance. If your horſe hath a *Cold*, inſtead of

his *Oats* before Water, give him the quantity of a *Walnut* of this *Lambitive* on the top of a *ſtick* or in a *Spoon*, and let him *lick* it off; and the ſame do after *Airing*, when firſt you come in, and you will find the *advantage* of it.

Theſe at preſent are all the *Inconveniences* that I can call to mind, which are *lyable* to *Hunters*, or *Gallopers* in their *Keeping*; and tho through *inadvertency*, or want of memory I ſhould have omitted any, yet from theſe *Grounds*, you may from your *Remedies* for any common *Accident* or *Diſtemper*; and now that we draw near to the *Match-day*, and the *End* of our *Diſcourſe*, we will only diſcuſs ſome few *Rules* relating to the *Tryal* of the *Hunting Match*. I mean Rules to be obſerved in *Riding*, and ſo *conclude*.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Of riding a Hunting-Match, or Heats for a Plate, and the Advantages belonging to each.

I Have endeavoured to ſhew the Neceſſity and the Manner of *Training* and *Dieting* Horſes, but this alone is not ſufficient to the *winning* of either *Match* or *Plate*, without a *knowing* and an *honeſt Rider*, and a *skilful Judge* or *Tryer* be join'd thereto; but ſince no man is fitter to *ride* the Horſe than he that has the *training* of him, I ſhall lay down ſome *general Rules* how to ride to the beſt Advantage either a *Hunting-match*, or three *Heats* and a *Courſe* for a Plate.

The firſt Requiſite in a *Rider*, next to *faithfulneſs* in his *Truſt*, is to have a good *cloſe Seat*, his *Knees* being held firm to his *Saddle skirts*, his *Toes* turned inward, and his *Spurs* outward from the Horſes ſides, his *left hand* governing his Horſe's *Mouth*, and his *right* commanding his *Whip*; obſerving during all the Tryal throughout to ſit firm in his *Saddle*, without *waving*, or *ſtanding up* in his *Stirrups*, which very much *incommodes* the Horſe, notwithſtanding the conceited Opinion of ſome *Jockeys* that it is a *becoming Seat*.

When you *ſpur* your Horſe, *ſtrike* him not hard with the *Calves* of your Legs, as if you would beat the wind out of his body, but juſt turn your Toes *outwards*, and bring the Spurs *quick* to his ſides; and ſuch a *ſharp ſtroke* will be more ſerviceable to the *quickning* of your Horſe, and ſooner *draw blood*. Be ſure not to *ſpur* your Horſe but when there is occaſion, and avoid ſpurring him

him under the *fore-bowels*, between his *Shoulders* and his *Girths* near the *Heart* (which is the tenderest place) till the laſt *Extremity*.

When you *whip* your Horſe let it be over the *ſhoulder* on the *near* ſide, except upon *hard running*, and when you are *at all*; then be ſure with a *ſtrong jerk* to ſtrike your Horſe in the *Flank*, for there the *skin* is tenderest, and moſt *ſenſible* of the *Laſh*.

Obſerve when you *whip* or *ſpur* your Horſe, and that you are certain he is at the *top* of his *ſpeed*, if then he clap his *Ears* in his *Pole*, or *whisk* his *Tail*, be ſure that you *bear him hard*, and give him as much *comfort* as ever you can, by ſawing his *Snaſle to* and *fro* in his Mouth, and by that means *forcing* him to *open* his *Mouth*, which will *comfort* him, and give him *wind*.

If there be any *high wind* ſtirring when you *ride*, obſerve if it be in your *Face* to let your Adverſary *lead*, and to hold hard *behind* him till you ſee your opportunity of giving a *Looſe*; yet you muſt obſerve to ride ſo *cloſe* to him, that his Horſe may *break* the *Wind* from yours, and that you by *ſtooping* low in your *Seat* may *ſhelter* your ſelf under him, which will aſſiſt the ſtrength of your Horſe. But if the *Wind* be in your *Back*, ride *exactly* behind him, that your Horſe may alone enjoy the benefit of the *Wind*, by being as it were *blown forward*, and by breaking it from him as much as you can poſſible.

Next obſerve what *Ground* your Horſe *delights* to *run* beſt on, *hearing* your Horſe (as much as your Adverſary will give you leave) on *level Carpet-ground*, becauſe your Horſe naturally will be deſirous to *ſpend* himſelf more *freely* thereon. But on *deep Earths*, &c. give him more *liberty*, becauſe he will naturally *favour* himſelf thereupon. Be

ſure,

ſure, if you are to run *up hill*, to *favour* your Horſe and *bear him*, for fear of running him out of wind; but *down hill* (if your Horſes *Feet* and *Shoulders* will endure it, and you dare venture your own *Neck*) always give him a *Looſe*.

Only take this for a *general* Rule, that if you find your Horſe to have the *Heels* of the other, that then you be careful to preſerve his Speed till the laſt *Trainſcent*, if you are not to run a ſtraight *Courſe*, but if ſo, then till the *Courſe*, and ſo to husband it then too, that you may be able to make *a Puſh for it* at the laſt *Poſt*.

Next you are to obſerve the nature of your *Oppoſites* Horſe, and if he be *fiery*, then to run juſt *behind*, or juſt *cheek by joul*, and with your *Whip* make as much noiſe as you can, that you may force him on *faſter* than his Rider would have him, and by that means *Spend him* the ſooner. Or elſe keep juſt *before him* upon ſuch a *ſlow Gallop*, that he may either *over-reach*, or by treading on your Horſes *Heels* (if he will not take the *leading*) endanger falling over.

Obſerve on what ground the *contrary* Horſe runs *worſt*, and on that *Earth* be ſure to give a *looſe*, that your *Adverſaries* being forced to *follow* you, may hazzard *ſtumbling*, or *clapping* on the *back Sinews*.

Obſerve likewiſe in your *Riding* the ſeveral *Helps* and *Corrections* of the *Hand*, the *Whip*, and the *Spur*, and *when*, and how *often* he makes *uſe* of them; and when you perceive that his Horſe begins to be *blown* by any of the former *Symptoms*, as *Whisking* his *Tail*, *clapping down* his *Ears*, *holding* out his *Noſe* like a *Pig*, *&c.* you may then take it for granted that he is at the top of what he can do; therefore in this caſe obſerve how your *own*

rides,

rides, and if he run *cheerfully* and *ſtrongly* without *Spurring*, then be ſure keep your *Adverſary* to the ſame *ſpeed* without giving him *eaſe*, and by that means you will quickly bring him to *give out*, or elſe *diſtance* him.

Obſerve at the *End* of every *Train-ſcent* what *Condition* the other Horſe is in; and how he *holds* out in his *Labour*; which you may be able to give a *judgment* of by his *Looks*, the *Working* of his *Flank*, and the *ſlackneſs* of his *Girths*. For if he look *dull* 'tis a ſign his *Spirits fail* him; if his *Flanks* beat much, 'tis a token that his *Wind* begins to *fail* him, and then of neceſſity his *Strength* muſt too. If his *Wind* fail him, then his *Body* will grow thin and appear *tuckt up*, which will make his *Girths* appear *ſlack* to the Eye. And therefore take this for a *Rule*, that there is no *greater* Sign of *Weakneſs* than this which I have laſt *mentioned*; ſo that if your *Adverſaries* Horſe want *girting* after the *firſt Scent*, provided he were *cloſe girt* at his firſt *ſtarting*, you need not much *deſpair* of *winning* your Wager.

When each *Train-ſcent* is ended (and ſo likewiſe after every *Heat* for a Plate) you muſt have dry Straw, and *dry* Cloaths both *Linen* and *Woollen* which have been *ſteeped* in *Urine* and *Salt-petre* a day, or two, and then dryed in the Sun; and likewiſe one or two of each which have been ſo *ſteeped*, muſt be brought *wet* into the *Field*; and after the *Train* is ended you muſt have two or three *Helpers*, and after your *Groom* has with a *Knife of Heat* (as the D. of *Newcaſtle* calls it) which is an old piece of a *Sword-blade*, ſcrapt off all the *Sweat* from your Horſes *Neck*, *Body*, *&c.* you muſt ſee that they firſt with Straw, and then with their *dry Cloaths rub* him dry all over, whilſt others are employed about his *Legs*; and as ſoon as they

are

are rubb'd *dry* then *chafe* them with your *wet* Cloaths, and never give over till you are called by the *Judges* to *ſtart* again. This will keep his Joynts *plyant* and *nimble*, and prevent any *inflamation* which might ariſe from any *old Strain*.

The next thing to be conſider'd is the *Judges*, or *Tryers* Office, which is to ſee that all things are *ordered* according to the *Articles*, which to that end ought to be publickly *read* before the Horſes *Start*.

Next that each *Tryer* on whoſe ſide the *Train* is to be led, according to the *Articles*, give *directions* for its *leading* according to the adviſe of the *Rider*, or his *Knowledge* of the *Nature* and *Diſpoſition* of that Horſe on *whoſe ſide* he is *Choſe*.

Next that each *Tryer* be ſo advantagiouſly *Mounted*, as to *ride up* behind the Horſes, (but not upon them) all day; and to obſerve that the *Contrary* Horſe *ride* his *True ground*, and obſerve the *Articles* in every particular, or elſe not to *permit* him to *proceed*.

Next that after each *Train ſcent* be *ended*, each *Tryer* look to that Horſe *againſt* whom he is *choſen*, and obſerve that he be *no ways* reliev'd but with *rubbing*, except *Liberty* on both ſides be given to the *contrary*.

Next, as ſoon as the *time* which is allow'd for *rubbing* be *expired*, which is generally *half* an hour, they ſhall *command* them to *mount*, and if either Rider *refuſe*, it may be lawful for the other to *ſtart* without him, and having *beat* him the *diſtance* agreed on, the *Wager* is to be *adjudg'd* on his *ſide*.

Next, the *Tryers* ſhall keep off all other *Horſes* from *croſſing* the *Riders*, or *leading* them; only they themſelves may be allow'd to *inſtruct* the Riders by

word of *mouth* how to *ride*, whether *slow*, or *fast*, according to the *Advantages* he perceives may be gain'd by his *Directions*.

Lastly, if there be any *weight* agreed on, they shall see that *both* Horses bring their *true* weight to the *starting place*, and carry it to the *end* of the *Train*, on penalty of *losing* the *Wager*.

The same *Rules* are to be observ'd (especially this *last*) by those *Gentlemen* which are *chosen* to be *Judges* at a *Race* for a *Plate*; only they usually *stay* in the *Stand*, that they may the *better* see which Horse *wins* the *Heat*.

Now for *running* for a *Plate*, there are not so many *Observations* to be made, nor more *Directions* requir'd than what have been already mention'd; only this, that if you *know* your Horse to be *tough at bottom*, and that he will *stick at mark*, to ride him each *Heat* according to the *best of his performance*, and avoid as much as *possible* either *riding* at any *particular* Horse, or staying for any, but to ride each Heat *throughout* with the best speed you can.

But if you have a very *fiery Horse* to manage, or one that is *hard-mouth'd*, and difficult to be *held*, then *start behind* the rest of the Horses with all the *coolness* and *gentleness* imaginable; and when you find your Horse to begin to ride at some *Command*, then *put up* to the other Horses, and if you find they ride at their *Ease*, and are *hard held*, then endeavour to draw them on faster; but if you find their *Wind* begin to *rake hot*, and that they want a *Sob*, if your own Horse be in *Wind*, and you have a *Loose in your hand*, keep them *up to their speed*, till you come within three quarters of a *Mile* of the *end* of the *Heat*; and then give a *Loose*, and *push* for it, and leave to *Fortune* and your Horses Goodness the Event of your Success.

Many more *Rules* there are which may not occur at present to my *memory*, and others which I *purposely* omit; but these may serve the *honest Jockey*, and for the others which relate to *Foul-play*, as *crossing*, *hanging* on the *Posts*, *leaning* on the other *Horseman*, *yoking*, &c. I desire not to instruct any one in them, and could *wish* that they might *never* be *made use of*, but be wholly *relinquished* by all honest Horsemen.

Lastly, when either your *Hunting-Match*, or your *Trial for the Plate* is ended, assoon as you have *rubb'd* your Horse *dry*, you shall *cloath him up*, and *ride him home*, where the first thing you give him shall be this *Drink* to comfort him.

Take a pint and half of *sweet Milk*, and put three *Yolks* of *Eggs* beaten into it; then make it *lukewarm*, and put in three penny-worth of *Saffron*, and three spoonfuls of *Sallet-Oyl*, and give it him in a Horn.

When this is done *dress* him *slightly* over with your *Curry Comb*, *Brush*, and *Woollen Cloth*; and then bath the place where the *Saddle stood* with warm *Sack* to prevent *Warbles*, and wash the *Spurring-places* with *Piss* and *Salt*, and then afterwards *annoint* them with *Turpentine* and Pouder of *Jet* mix'd together; and be sure let the *Stable* be very well *littered*; and then *cloath* him up with *all speed*, and so let him *stand* two hours. Then feed him with *Rye bread*, after that with a very good *Mash*: then give him his *Belly full* of *Hay*, and what *Corn* and *Bread* he will eat. Then bath his *Legs* well with *Urine* and *Salt-petre*, leave him *Corn* in his Locker, and so let him rest till the next Morning; at which time order him as *before directed* in his days of *Rest*.

Thus I have *imparted* to the publick what my own *Experience* has *taught* me, relating to this part

of

of *Horsemanship*. I desire no Person to *rely* on it further than they shall find it *advantageous* upon *Practice* and *Tryal*. If others *more skilful* would be as free to *communicate* their *Observations* on this Subject, this profitable part of *Knowledge* might then perhaps be improv'd to *perfection*. The giving a *Specimen* was all that is here *designed*. If the *Reader* finds any *Errors*, he is desired either to *pardon* or *amend* them. To those that either know no *better*, or want *other Helps*, this possibly may prove no *unwelcome* piece of Service.

THE

THE APPENDIX TO THE HUNTER.

AS there has been already Directions given in the *Hunter* for the Make and Uſe of a *Scowring*, which for Efficaſy and Goodneſs far excels all that I ever yet ſaw in Print, fully anſwering its deſigned Title, which no other Book I ever yet read of would do, notwithſtanding the Encomiums given them by their Authors, as you ſhall be Judge by one Example given you, (out of many) which are the Words in the Introduction of the *Gentleman's Jocky*; As, firſt, it tells you that *Slipper Sauce Scowrings*, which are ſtuft with Poyſonous Ingredients, cannot chuſe but bring forth Infirmity; but wholeſome *Scowrings* that are compoſed of beneficial and nouriſhing Simples, neither occaſion Sickneſs nor any manner of Infirmity, but bring away Greaſe, and all manner of Foulneſs in that kind.

Then, next, it tells you, That no Man in a lingring Courſe can certainly tell which way the Greaſe and other Foulneſs will avoid: as whether in his *Ordure*, which is the ſafeſt; into *Sweat* which

is Hazardous; into his *Limbs*, which is miſchievous; or remain and putrify in his Body, which is mortally Dangerous: Now for the *Scowring* propoſed in that Book, *Page* 21. The firſt *Scowring*.

Take a Pint of the beſt ſweet *Sack*, and put thereto better than an Ounce of the cleareſt and pureſt *Roſin*, bruiſed to a very fine Duſt, and brew them together exceeding much, then when the *Sack* and it is incorporated together, put thereto half a Pint of the beſt *Sallet Oyl*, and brew them alſo well together, then laſtly, Take a full Ounce and half of Brown *Sugar Candy*, beaten to Pouder, and put it in alſo, then mull all upon the Fire, and being Luke-warm, *&c.* Not to keep you too long, we will examine wherein the mighty Vertue of this *Scowring* conſiſts: Firſt, It is owned *that* in the Horſes *Ordure* is the beſt way, which is as much as to ſay, that gentle Purging is the beſt and ſafeſt to cleanſe away the Greaſe and other Foulneſs: *Sack*, has no purging Quality, neither has *Roſin*; *Sallet Oyl* is no purger, but by its oliganous Quality, may cauſe a Coſtive Body to void its *Ordure* with more Eaſe, but has no ſtimulating Quality to cauſe any Foulneſs to be voided with it, unleſs it lay ready in the way, ſo in it ſelf unfit as well as unable to collect and expel any Greaſe or Foulneſs, unleſs it lay in the way; and as for *Sugar Candy*, I need not contend whether it has any purging Quality, but rather, it is allowed to hinder than forward the Paſſage of Humours by its thickning them, which every one knows it does in all *Colds* and *Coughs*; but perhaps it will be urged, what it is that makes the Horſe ſo Sick, Sweat, and Purge; to all which I readily anſwer, It is the *Slipper Sauce* Mixture; for whenever the Stomach receives into it what is hurtful, or what it cannot digeſt, it calls all its Spirits together, in order to ex-

expel its Enemy, which if Nature be ſtronger than the Enemy then it expels it, if not, it kills; ſo that ſeeing the Horſes never Vomit, (for Anatomical Reaſons I could give, would time permit) the Horſe has no other way to rid his Stomach of the offending Mixture but by *Stool*, which Stools are not the ſame as thoſe cauſed by Purgers; for it is demonſtrable by our own Natures, that thoſe *Fluxes* which are occaſioned by *Surfeits* upon our eating crude undigeſtible things, are not the ſame as thoſe looſe Stools which are cauſed by the Purge we take, in order to aſſiſt Nature in throwing off the offending Matter, and putting a ſtop to thoſe unnatural Fluxes which are the effect and not the cauſe of any offended Stomach.

As the Scowring before deſcribed in the *Hunter* is ſufficient for what it was deſigned, as well as for many other ſmall Infirmities, yet great Diſeaſes require thoſe that are Stronger, but the ſtrong ought to be avoided in leſſer Diſtempers, or where Prevention is only intended, neither do the ſtronger Purges that are skilfully compounded and prepared carry the leaſt danger with them, as all thoſe I have ever yet read in Authors do, which are compounded of ſtrong churliſh Ingredients, without being corrected: And that ſo uſeful a Purge might not be wanting, I have added this following Purge, which for Safety and Goodneſs, far excels all I have ever yet ſeen.

A Choice Purge.

Take of Aloes Succotrina brought to a fine Pouder, four Ounces, and pour upon it half a Pint of Spring Water, wherein hath been diſſolved (over a very gentle Fire) one Ounce of Spaniſh Liquoriſh Juice; put them in an Earthen Pan ſet over a very

gentle Fire, continually ſtirring it; that the Aloes may not burn to the bottom, continuing it on ſo long, until about half the Water be evaporated, or ſo much that theſe following Ingredients (being mixt with it may make it of a ſoft Conſiſtency fit to be framed into Balls when you uſe it). The Ingredients to be added are, Jalap in Pouder half an Ounce, Colocynthus in fine Pouder, half an Ounce; Rheniſh Tartar in Pouder, half an Ounce; Agarick in Pouder, half an Ounce; Mercurius Dulcis, half an Ounce, Chymical Oil of Aniſeeds, one Drachm and a half; mix them all well in a Mortar and make a Maſs; of which one Ounce or ten Drachms is a Doſe ſufficient to purge any Horſe, or at moſt, one Ounce and a half. I could write much in the commendation of this purging Maſs, but I need not; for its own worth, when uſed, will extol it beyond all I can ſay; the griping and churliſh Quality of the Ingredients being blunted and taken quite away by the Liquoriſh and Oil of Aniſeed; ſo that it works with all the Sweetneſs and Gentleneſs imaginable: *Its Vertues*; It is one of the beſt Horſe Purges yet known, for it cures all Diſeaſes where Purging is required; not only carrying off the Seeds of moſt Diſtempers, purifying the Blood and Juices, but making the Appetite and Digeſtion Strong and Good, for being given in the beginning of the Farcy, prevents and cures Surfeit, Greaſe, and Greaſe fallen into the Legs, if at the ſame time you waſh his Legs with our Green Water which ſhall be deſcribed anon; alſo Gourded or Swelled Legs, Worms of all ſorts, as Botts, Truncheons, and Maw-Worms, ordering the Horſe in the time of the Taking as in other Purges; but this being ſomething difficult to prepare, and not always to be had, I have therefore given you this following Purge, which is a very good one, and to be had of any Apothecary, *viz.* Take of the Pouder

der of Aloes Succatrina, one Ounce; Pouder of Jalap, one Drachm; Pouder of Colicynthis, one Drachm; Mercurius Dulcis, one Drachm; Cream of Tartar, one Drachm; with as much Syrup of Buck-thorn as is ſufficient, make a Maſs for one Doſe.

The Green Water for many Sorrances.

Take one Ounce of Verdigreaſe, one Ounce and half of Roach Alum, two Ounces of Copperas, one Ounce and half of Roman Vitriol, being all in very fine Pouder; put them all into a two quart Bottle, upon which, pour one quart of the beſt and ſtrongeſt White-wine Vinegar, which Bottle ſhould firſt have ſome pieces of Lead or Iron made faſt about its Neck, to make it ſink in a Kettle of Water; alſo a hard rowl of Hay to keep the bottom of the Bottle from touching the bottom of the Kettle; then fit a Cork to it, having firſt cut three Notches along the Sides of the Cork, (as is uſed to be done in Vinegar-Bottles to let the Vinegar out at) theſe Notches are for Vents, leſt the Bottle ſhould break. Then take a Kettle, and firſt ſet in the hard rowl of Hay, then ſet in the Bottle upon the Hay, ſo that it may ſtand upright in the Kettle; then fill the Kettle ſo full of Cold Water, that about two or three Inches of the Neck of the Bottle may remain above the Water, then ſet the Kettle over a Fire, and ſo let the Kettle boil half an Hour, or ſo long till the Vinegar has diſſolved the Pouders; now and then taking the Bottle up and ſhaking the Pouders and Vinegar together, when they are well mixt, take them from the Fire, and keep it cloſe ſtopt with a Cork for your Uſe; the way to uſe it is this, You muſt have provided an Earthen Pan, which will hold about Three Gallons, the which you muſt fill with Chamber-Lie which is made by

Healthy, Sound, and Young People; and the older the Chamber Lie is, the better for your Uſe; it ſhould ſtand in the Pan Three Weeks at the leaſt before you uſe it. You ought never to be without this Pan full of ſtale Chamber-Lie: Then when you have any occaſion to uſe them for a moderate Grief, mix with one Quart of the ſtale Chamber-Lie half a Pint or more of the above deſcribed Vinegar; or if you would have it ſtronger, more of the Vinegar; then being mixt together, either hot, or (if in Winter) cold, with a ſoft Rag bathe his Legs, Heels, or part affected twice a Day. *The Virtues of this Water*, It is the beſt Remedy yet known to the World, for the Cure and Prevention of many great and dangerous Sorrances ſubject to a Horſe, as Mallender, which it cures at once or twice Dreſſing; Mange dry or wet, Rat Tails, Scratches, Gourded or Swelled Legs and Heels; alſo preventing and curing the Greaſe fallen into the Legs and Heels; it likewiſe cures the Farcy, if to theſe two laſt named Diſeaſes you purge before, and once, twice, or thrice in the time of curing; It is a noble cleanſer and healer of all ſtubborn and foul Ulcers and Wounds in a Horſe; preventing the breeding of Worms, and all proud Fleſh in Wounds, as well as a Repeller or driver away of any Flux of Humours from any part: alſo Clifts and Cracks in the Heels, Pains, *&c.* preventing of Wind-Galls, by its repelling and ſtrengthening Quality. The Green Water alone without the Chamber Lie is the beſt of Remedies to cure all Fiſtulas, Cankers, and Gald-Backs, not diſpoſing of ſuch Sorrances to Rot, Feſter, and grow worſe, as all Greaſy and Oil Medicines do.

A speedy, safe, and certain Cure for the Farcy.

Before I begin, I shall beg the Readers Patience whilst I explain to him the Nature and Cause of this most dreadful Distemper; which like the Pox, has had innumerable Pretenders to the Cure; but as for all I have ever yet seen read or met with, both to its Cause and Cure, are to all those Pretenders as unknown as the *Antipodes* were above a Thousand Years ago; as their Ignorant and Unskilful Methods of Cure shew. As, First, by putting of nonsensical Compositions into the Horses Ears, which will avail as much as a Plaister put to the Heel of a Mans Shoe will do in curing him of the Head-Ach: No, all those numberless Train of Prescriptions signifies no more to the Cure, than Water to the washing a Blackmoor White. Neither is there any thing that so much hinders the Cure, or is so dangerous to the Horse, as the advising and practising of Bleeding: For by Bleeding you draw all that Venom which Nature by her strength had thrown forth into the Blood again; it being allowed by all, that Bleeding draws all from without in; and Sweating drives all from within out. But to be as short with the Description of the Cause of the Farcy as I can, in order to be longer on the Cure; It is an Infectious Disease which cometh from Colds, Heats and Colds, Surfeits, Fevers, and sometimes from Infectious Air; all or either of these corrupting the Blood and Juices, which is afterwards by the strength of Nature thrown out, and are commonly divided into these Kinds; the Button or Knotted Farcy, the Running Farcy, the Water Farcy, and the Pocky Farcy: All which are the same, nothing else but differing in Degrees of Malignity, and acquire

other Names, according to the Parts they affect, as the Head, Legs, &c. now seeing it is a Corruption of the Blood and Juices, the Method of Cure cannot be performed without correcting and carrying off those foul Humours in order to restore them to their Pristine State, which is not to be attempted if the Farcy be too far gone, or that it has corrupted the Horses Lungs, or any other noble Bowel; so that the sooner that you attempt the Cure after you perceive it, or when you suspect it, the more safe and speedy will be the Cure. First then you must avoid Bleeding.

But begin his Cure by giving him a Good Dose of either of those purging Masses already described, which will mitigate the Venom and carry off a great deal of those corrupted Humours from the Vital and Noble Parts, and let the purging be repeated twice, thrice, or four times at due Distances, and as soon as conveniently his Strength will permit; and let him not fail to have three or four Ounces of this following Digestive Pouder given him at a time, mixt in his Oats and Beans (being first wet with Beer or Ale three times a Day.)

The Digestive Pouder.

Take Antimony in fine Pouder, one pound, of Lignum Vitæ Wood in Pouder, half a Pound; Cinnabar of Antimony in fine Pouder, three Ounces; Pouder of Liquorish four Ounces; Pouder of Elecampane, four Ounces; Aniseeds, three Ounces; mix all these well together, being all in fine Pouder, and keep it in a Bottle close stopt for use: it is a noble cleanser and purifier of the Blood and Juices, destroying all Corruption, and maintaining the Vital Parts sound and Vigorous, preventing and curing the

he Murren; and does wonderfully forward and cure the Farcy; if he at firſt refuſe to Eat it in his Oats, as above directed, ſtrew over them two or three handfuls of Bran and he will eat them, and time will make it familiar to him; alſo in the time of his Cure of the Farcy, let him drink no Water without a Quart, three Pints, or more of this following Noble Farcy Diet Drink, putting it into his Pail, then adding as much Cold Water as you think he will drink at a time, and if he refuſe it at firſt, let him be without Water till he drinks it, and a little time will bring him to take it.

The Farcy Diet Drink.

Take Antimony in fine Pouder, two Pound; Quick-ſilver, one Pound; grind them very well in an Iron Mortar together for about three or four hours, then boil them in a new Iron-pot, being firſt tied up in a Rag; with theſe following Ingredients tied up in a Bag, *viz.* Raſpings of Guajacum, three Pound; the Bark of Guajacum bruiſed two Pound; Reaſons ſlit, one Pound and a half; Figs ſlit, one Pound; Carraway-ſeeds, half a Pound; ſweet Fennel ſeeds, half a Pound; Liquoriſh cut and ſlit, half a Pound; boil all theſe in eight or ten Gallons of running Water, till it comes to half, to which add three Quarts of ſtrong Lime-water, made by quenching of ſix Pound of Quick lime in a ſufficient quantity of Water, which let ſtand Twenty-four Hours to ſettle, then pour off the clear for uſe, which is the Lime-water to be added above, which when added keep it for your uſe; the Quick-ſilver and Antimony may ſerve again ſeveral times more, *viz.* ten or twelve. This Farcy Drink can never enough be praiſed; it ſweetens the Blood after an admirable manner, correcting all Corruption in the

Blood

Blood and Juices, diſpoſing all Sorrances to a ſafe and ſpeedy healing.

And, Laſtly, If you perceive that any of the Knots or Swellings are ripened, you muſt open them with a Lancet, ſuch as the Chirurgeons Bleed with, to let out the Corruption, and then waſh them with the Green Water before deſcribed, and be aſſured that there is no curable Farcy but with this Method will be cured; and the worſt that it was ever yet tryed on never withſtood it above a Fortnight, excepting only that ſo many Purges cannot be given in ſo ſhort a time; yet the Diſeaſe will be over-come in the Fortnight, notwithſtanding you muſt continue to purge him at convenient Diſtances, as his Strength will allow, and as I ſaid before, till you think him ſafe and free from any lurking Humours; and if you work him through all the time of his Cure, except thoſe days you purge him, it will be the better.

A Pectoral Drink.

For any new *Cold*, *Cough*, or *Graſs Cold*, this following is an admirable Pectoral Drench, which will very much aſſiſt and ſtrengthen his Wind, purify his Blood, and make a lean Hide bound ſurfeited Horſe fat and luſty.

Take Reaſons of the Sun ſtoned, one Pound; Liquoriſh ſliced, two Ounces; Sugar Candy, two Ounces; Treacle, one Pound; Sallet Oil, three Ounces; Horſe Spice, three Ounces; two or three Heads of Garlick pounded with the Reaſons; Hony, two Spoonfuls; Ale, three Quarts; boil it till it comes to two Quarts, and give about a Pint in the Morning, faſting one or two Hours after it, and ſo let it be repeated every Morning as Occaſion requires; twice is enough for a Cold, and the whole will do in moſt of the other Caſes it is good for, a Surfeit, Short-Winded, Hide bound, and to make a lean

a lean Horſe to thrive, this is extraordinary Good to be given to your Horſe now and then, as well to preſerve Health as to reſtore; more eſpecially at his coming from Graſs: You will do beſt to Air him in the time of taking it.

A Poulteſs to diſſolve a Swelling.

Take of our Garden Green Orris Roots, and White Lilly Roots, of each one Ounce; Marſh Mallows, Pellitory, Penuroyal, Origan, Calamint, Rue, of each a Handful; Camomil, Melilot, and Elder Flowers, of each half a handful; Green Aniſeeds, common Fennel, and Cuminſeeds, of each half an Ounce, boil them to a Maſh in Water and White-Wine Vinegar, then bruiſe them into an even ſmooth Maſs in a Stone Mortar, adding to them of the Meal of Lupins, and of Beans, of each one Ounce and a half; Oil of Camomil, one Ounce and a half; Oil of Orris, one Ounce and a half; mix them well in the Mortar, then heat them again; then apply more or leſs of this Poulteſs, according to the part affected, being hot. I could not by any means miſs of giving you the Forms of this and the ripening Poulteſs, by reaſon of their extraordinary uſefulneſs in all Tumours, becauſe I never yet did meet with any tolerable Forms in any Authors I have yet ſeen; and ſince Tumors or Swellings are ſo frequent to Horſes by Hurts and Bruiſes, the which if a timely and judicious Cure be not attempted, they degenerate into incurable Fiſtulas and Cancerous Ulcers, for it is allowed by all Chirurgeons, that the ſafeſt way to cure all Swellings (which by them are called Tumours,) except Malignant ones, is by diſſolving of them if poſſible, which is the moſt ſucceſsful, and which ought to be uſed as ſoon, and as much as poſſible, but if that cannot be done

done, then all poſſible ſpeed ought to be uſed to ripen them for the Reaſons aforeſaid.

A Poultiſs proper to Mollifie or ſoften, and bring to Suppuration, that is, Ripen a Swelling when it is neceſſary.

Take White-Lilly-Roots, and Marſh-Mallow-Roots, of each four Ounces; the Leaves of common Mallows, Marſh Mallows, Groundſel, Violet Plants, Brank Urſin, of every one of theſe Herbs one handful; the Meal of Linſeed and Fenugreek-ſeeds, Gooſe Fat, and Oil of Lillies, of each three Ounces.

The Roots when waſhed and ſliced, are to be boiled in Water, and the Leaves being added ſome time after, the Boiling is to be continued till the whole Maſs becomes perfectly tender and ſoft; at which time having ſtrained the Decoction, beat the remaining groſs Subſtance in a Stone Mortar with a wooden Peſtle, to a Pulp, then let the Decoction and Pulp be put into a Skillet, and having intermixt the Meals of Line-ſeed and Fenugreek-ſeeds, Gooſe Fat, and oil of Lillies, let 'em be boiled together over a gentle Fire, ſtirring about the Ingredients from time to time, till they be all ſufficiently thickned, this Poultriſs I was unwilling to leave out, becauſe I have ever ſeen dangerous Conſequences happen to Tumors or Swellings that would not be diſcuſſed, that is, go away of themſelves, or by means, for the want of ſuch a Poultiſs to bring them to a ſpeedy ripening: For if a Swelling that cannot be driven away ſhould remain too long before it be ripened, it generally putrifies and turns to a Fiſtulous Ulcer, or a Canterous Ulcer, which ſeldom or very rarely admits of a Cure. Theſe two Poulteſſes are excellent, but I would tie none to a ſtrict Form; ſo that

that these may serve the Ingenious as a Model for the making many others.

An Eye-Water.

Take a new Earthen Pipkin which will hold five Pints, or three Quarts; put into it of the Stone called *Lapis Caliminaris*, in a very fine Pouder; of the Pouder of the best Bolarmonick, called *Venetian Bole*; and of the best White Vitriol, of each of these one Ounce and a half, boil them over a gentle Fire till it comes to a Quart, then let it settle, and pour the clear from the Fæces, to which Water, put in of Sugar of Lead, called *Saccharum Saturni*, three Drachms; Salt of Vitriol three Drachms; Camphir dissolved in Spirit of Wine, half an Ounce; Tincture of Aloes, one Ounce; Tincture of Opium, three Drachms; Red Rose Water, one Quart; Prepared Tutty, half an Ounce, mix all together and keep it in a Bottle for your Use. It is one of the best Horse Eye-Waters extant, for all Diseases of the Eyes, as Pin and Web, Pearls, Clouds, Bloodshot, Sore and Running Eyes, salt, hot, and sharp Rheums, Ulcers, Fistulas, Bruises, Stripes; in Bruises, Fistulas, Ulcers, Stripes, it will be of double Force if you mix with it a little Honey, with as much as you use at the time of using, also Moon Blind, strengthning the sight to a Miracle, by only syringing into the Eyes a Syringe full two or three times a day. Concerning the extraordinary Virtue of this Water, I shall here give you one Instance out of many. A young unruly Horse being put into a Cart, in order to learn him to draw, was so unruly that two or three could scarce govern him, so that and one of the Men by violently Whipping him over the Face, it hapned that he received a most grievous Stroke from a knotted Whip cord in the Eye,

Eye, ſo that the Cord had quite cut through the firſt Coat of the Eye, ſo deep that the Dent of Wound would more than bury the Whip-cord; and that Wound was all along the middle of the Sight of the Eye, which inflamed the Eye and Eye-lid to that Degree, that the Eye-lid was as big as ones Fiſt; and all the beſt Fariers judged it impoſſible to recover and ſave the Sight; the Eye-lid was bathed with a Rag dipt in a little hot Beer, wherein had been boiled a little Butter, and a handful of Sage Leaves, as hot as the Horſe could endure, which ſoon brought down the ſwelling, and into the Eye was injected with a Syringe, two or three Syringefuls of the above-ſaid Water at a time, and that two or three times a day, which (by the Bleſſing of God) made a perfect Cure of the Eye in leſs than a Week, and reſtored the Horſe to his perfect Sight as before.

For the Worms in a Horſe.

Take Antimony in fine Pouder, half a Pound of Quick-ſilver, two Ounces; boil them in four Pails full of Water till it come to three, of which mix half a Pailful with as much Water as he will drink, it firſt being ſtrained, and ſo continue it till all is gone.

For a Horſe that is bitten by a Mad Dog.

As ſoon as poſſible, after the Horſe is bitten, let all the bitten parts be ſeared with a hot Iron, (with this Caution) that you ſear not, nor let the hot Iron touch nor damage neither Nerve nor Tendon; neither his Eyes or any noble Member, whereby the Horſe may receive any damage from the Operation; then let a ſtrong bliſtering Plaiſter be applied to each part where the Iron had been, as well as all thoſe parts

parts bitten, which you could not attempt to Sear with the hot Iron, for the Reasons before given, *viz.* the hurting the Nerves, Tendons, or other noble Parts, except the Eyes and inside of the Mouth.

The Blistering Plaister.

Take Burgundy Pitch, one Ounce; Ship Pitch, and Common Rosin, of each of these half an Ounce; of the common *Lapis Infernalis*, or Caustick Stone, (the which you may have of the Chymists for a small matter) one Dram; *Cantharides*, or Spanish Flies, in very fine Pouder, six Drachms, or one Ounce. The manner of preparing of it is thus: Take a Pipkin, and first put in the Burgundy Pitch, Ship Pitch, and Rosin, and set them over a soft Fire to melt, stirring them about to incorporate them; then when it is well melted, put in the *Lapis Infernalis* in Pouder, stirring it all the while that it may equally mix; lastly, put in by degrees the Ounce of Cantharides, being in fine Pouder, stirring it all the while, and if you perceive that the Pouders make it too thick, you may, at your Discretion, add a little of the Rankest Oil you can get, but you must be sure you do not let it boil after the Spanish Flies are in, nor to remain long on the Fire, for that would spoil the Virtue, so about a Minute or two after the Pouder of the Spanish Flies is all stirred in, take it off the Fire, and keep it for your use; and when you use it spread it pretty thick upon Leather and apply it to the Part, and let it remain on ten or twelve Hours. Then when you Dress it, cut all the Blisters that are not broken, and wipe them clean, then apply to the Parts this following Plaister.

The Plaister that is to be applied to the Parts when the Blistering Plaister is removed.

Take four Heads of Garlick, one Ounce of Venice Treacle, half an Ounce of Venice Turpentine, half an Ounce of the Filings of Peuter, and one Drachm of the Pouder of Spanish Flies, and half an Ounce of Honey, and two Drachms of Verdigrice in Pouder, pound all these together in a Mortar, when you use it spread it on Leather and apply it, binding it on by reason that it is not very apt to stick; but when the Bite is on a part that the Plaister can-

not

not conveniently be bound on, then you muſt let the Leather be ſomething broader than what you deſign for the Plaiſter, in order that Margin may be ſpread with Burgundy Pitch, then put the Plaiſter in the middle of the Leather, and the Burgundy Pitch on the Margin, will make it ſtick without binding, this Plaiſter muſt lie on Twenty-four Hours, and then taken off, and the part cleanſed, and then a freſh Plaiſter muſt be renewed, keeping the Sores open as long as poſſible with this Plaiſter, in order to draw out the Venom that it get not into the Blood, which would kill the Horſe: ſo much for putting a ſtop to the Venom outwardly; now follows what is to be given inwardly in order to ſubdue and drive out the Venom, in caſe it ſhould have gotten into the Blood, alſo to prevent its getting into the Blood.

The Diet-Drink for the Bite of a Mad-Dog.

Take of the Leaves of Box, the Leaves of Rue, the Leaves and Roots of Primroſe, the Leaves of Sage, of each of theſe two handfuls, freſh Roots of the Male Piony, three quarters of a Pound, the Pouder of Crabs Claws, two Ounces; the Pouder of round Birthwort Roots, two Ounces, Venice Treacle, three Ounces; bruiſe all theſe things together in a Mortar, then put it in a great wide-mouthed Glaſs, ſuch as they pickle Cucumbers in, then pour upon the Ingredients five Quarts of White *Lisbon* Wine, or for want of that of the beſt Sider, or ſtrong Beer, but rather the Wine if you can, then ſtop the Glaſs ſtitely. *Note*, The Claſs ought not to be above half full, when all is in, then let it infuſe in a Kettle of hot Water, (as you are more fully taught in the Receipt for the Green Water) for the ſpace of twelve or fourteen Hours, then keep it for your Uſe. When you uſe it you muſt ſtrain off about a Pint, into which you muſt put about a Drachm of Balſam of Sulphur, and give it your Horſe in a Drenching Horn in the Morning, letting the Horſe faſt two Hours after, and ſo repeat it thrice: Then at the New and Full Moons, give him for three Mornings the ſame, and the ſame Quantity as before.

An

An Abridgment of

MANWOOD'S Forest Laws,

And of all the

Acts of Parliament

Made Since;

WHICH RELATE TO

Hunting, Hawking, Fishing, or *Fowling.*

LONDON:
Printed by *F. C.* for *N. C.* 1705.

An Abridgment of

MANWOOD'S

Forest Laws.

And of the

Acts of Parliament

Made Since;

WHICH RELATE TO

Hunting, Hawking, Fishing, or

Herding.

OF THE Forest Laws OF CANUTUS.

The Charter of the Forest of *Canutus* the *Dane*, sometime King of *England*, granted at *Winchester*, in a Parliament holden there, *Anno Domini*, 1062.

Here begin the Constitutions of King Canutus *concerning the* FOREST.

These are the Constitutions, or Laws of the Forest, which I *Canutus* King, with the *Advice* of my Nobility, do Make and Establish, That both Peace and Justice be done to all the *Churches* of *England*, and that every Offender suffer according to his quality, and the manner of his Offence.

1. There shall be from henceforth four out of the best of the Freemen, who have their accustomed Rights secure, [whom the English call Pœgened] constituted

stituted in every Province of my Kingdom, to distribute Justice, together with due punishment, as to the matters of the Forest to all my People as well English as Danish, throughout my whole Kingdom of England, which four We think fit to call the Chief Men of the Forest; [Now called Verderors.]

2. There shall be under every one of these four, out of the middle sort of Men [whom the English call Lespegend, and the Danes, Young Men] placed, who shall take upon them the care and charge as well of the Vert as the Venison, [Now called Regardors.]

3. But We will not by any means have such persons concern themselves in the Administration of Justice: yet such middle sort of Men, after their taking upon them the care of the Beasts of the Forest, shall be always reputed Free Men, such as the Danes call Eldermen.

4. Again, under every one of these, shall be two of the meaner sort of Men, whom the English call Tine Men; these shall take care of the Venison and Vert by Night, and undergo other servile Offices. [Now called Foresters, or Keepers.]

5. Such mean servant shall be free as soon as he takes his place in our Forest, and We will maintain all such at our own Charge.

6. Also every one of the Chief Men [or Verderors] shall have every year out of our Ward [which the English call Michni] two Horses, the one with a Saddle, the other without, one Sword, five Lances, one Head-piece, one Shield, and Two hundred shillings of silver.

7. Every one of the middle sort of men [or Regardors] one Horse, one Lance, one shield, and sixty shillings of silver.

8. Every one of the meaner sort of men [or Foresters] one Lance, one Cross-bow, and fifteen shillings of Silver.

9. That all of them, as well Chief Men [or Verderers] middle sort of Men, [or Regarders] and meaner sort of Men [or Foresters] shall be free and quit from all Provincial Summons, and popular pleas [which the English call Hundred Laghe] and from all Taxes concerning the Wars, or Weapons [which the English call Warlot] and from all foreign Plaints.

10. That the Causes of the Middle sort of Men [or Regarders] and of the Meaner sort of Men [as Foresters] and their Corrections, as well Criminal as Civil, shall be Adjudged and Decided by the Provident wisdom and discretion of the Chief Men [or Verderors.] But the Enormities of the Chief Men [or Verderors] if any such shall be, (lest any Crime should escape unpunished) We our self will chuse to be punished according to our Royal Displeasure.

11. These four [Chief Men, or Verderors] shall have a Royal Power, (saving in our presence) and four times in the year the general Demonstrations of the Forest, and the forfeitures of Vert and Venison (which the English call Muchehunt) where they shall all of them hold Claim, or Challenge of any thing touching the Forest, and shall go to a Threefold Judgment (which the English call Gang fordel) and thus the Three-fold Judgment shall be obtain'd; the party shall take with him five others, and be himself shall make the sixth, and so by swearing he shall obtain a Threefold Judgment, or Tripple Oath. But the Purgation of Fire (or Fiery Ordale) shall be by no means admitted, unless in such cases where the naked Truth cannot otherwise be found out.

12. But a Freeman, (i. Pegen) [so that his Crime be not inter manora] may have an honest Man who may take an Oath for him (that he) but if he hath not, he must swear himself, and shall not be excused from swearing.

13. If a stranger, or foreigner, who shall come from some place afar off, be challenged of the Forest, and the meanness of his condition be such, that he cannot procure a Pledge to his first Challenge, [which no Englishman may adjudge] Then he shall undergo the King's Caption, and there he shall stay until he shall go to the Judgment of Iron and Water: i. of the Ordale: But yet if any one shall hurt such a stranger coming from a place afar off, that is an Offender, he that doth hurt him shall have his Judgment executed upon him.

14. Whosoever shall, before my Chief Men (or Verderors) of my Forest, bear false witness, and be thereof convicted, shall be incapable for ever afterwards to be a witness, or give his Testimony in any Cause, because he hath lost the benefit of the Law, and for that his Crime he shall pay to the King Ten shillings (which the Danes call Half-hang, or Halse hang.

15. Whosoever shall offer any violence to the Chief Men (or Verderors) of my Forest, if he be free he shall lose his liberty, and all that he hath; and if he be a Villane, his right hand shall be cut off.

16. If either of them shall offend again, in the like case, he shall be guilty of death.

17. In like manner, if any person shall contend in suit, with one of the Chief Men, (or Verderors) he shall forfeit to the King as much as he is worth (which the English call Pere and Pue) and pay to the Chief Man (or Verderor) forty shillings.

18. If

18. If any person shall break the Peace before the Middle sort of Men (or Regardors) of the Forest, which they call Geth-brech, he shall pay to the King Ten shillings.

19. Whosoever shall strike any of the Middle sort of Men, (or Regardors of the Forest) in wrath, he shall forfeit as much as is usually forfeited unto the King for killing a Royal Beast of the Forest.

20. If any person shall be taken offending in the Forest, he shall suffer punishment according to the manner and quality of his offence.

21. The Punishment and Forfeiture shall not be one and the same of a Freeman (whom the Danes call Elderman) and of one that is not free, of a Master and of a Servant, of one that is known, and of one that is not known; Nor shall the management of Causes, either Civil or Criminal, of the Beasts of the Forest, and of the Royal Beasts, of the Hert, and of the Venison, be one and the same: For the Crime of Hunting hath been of old reputed (and not undeservedly) amongst the greatest Offences that could be committed in the Forest, but that of Hert is esteemed so little and trivial (except as it is a Breach of our Royal Chase) That our Constitution or Forest-Law, doth scarcely take notice of it; Nevertheless he that offends therein, is guilty of one of the Trespasses of the Forest.

22. If any Freeman shall Course or Hunt a Beast of the Forest, either casually or wilfully, so that by the swiftness of the Course, the Beast doth pant, and is put out of Breath; such Freeman shall forfeit Ten shillings to the King, and if he be not a Freeman, he shall forfeit double, but if he be a Bondman he shall lose his skin.

23. But if the first shall kill any Beast of the Forest, he shall pay double, the second time as much and the third shall forfeit, as much as he is worth, to the King.

24. But if any, or either of them, by Coursing, or Hunting, force a Royal Beast, which the English call a Staggon (or Stag) to pant, and be out of breath, The Freeman shall lose his natural Liberty for a Year, and the other for two years; But the Bondman shall be reckoned as an Out law, (which the English call a Friendless Man.)

25. But if such a Royal Beast be killed by any of them. The Freeman shall lose his freedom, The other his Liberty, and the Bondman his Life.

26. My Bishops, Abbots and Barons shall not be challenged for Hunting in my Forest except they kill Royal Beasts, and if they do, they shall make satisfaction according to my pleasure, without knowing the certainty of the forfeiture.

27. There are some Beasts (besides those of the Forest) which, while they keep within the Bounds and Limits of the Forest, are subject to be accounted for, when Hunted, by the Laws of the Forest, viz. Wild Goats, Hares and Conies. And there are also a great number of Cattle, which, although they live within the Limits of the Forest, and are subject to the charge and care of the Middle sort of Men (or Regardors) Nevertheless cannot at all be reputed Beasts of the Forest, as Wild Horses, Buffaloes, Wild Cows, &c. As for Foxes and Wolves, they are neither reckon'd as Beasts of the Forest, or of Venery, and therefore whoever kills any of them is out of all danger of Forfeiture, or making any recompence, or amends for the same; Nevertheless

nevertheless the killing them within the Limits of the Forest is a Breach of the Royal Chase, and therefore the Offender shall yield a Recompence for the same, though it be but easie and gentle. But a Wild Boar, notwithstanding he is a Beast of the Forest, nevertheless he was never thought to be a Beast of Venery.

28. No Man shall touch or meddle with Our Wood, or Timber-wood, without License of the Chief Men (or Verderors) of Our Forest, which if he do he is Guilty of the Breach of Our Royal Chase.

29. But if any Person shall Cut down a Holly Tree, or any other Tree that yieldeth food for the Wild Beasts, besides making satisfaction for the Breach of the Royal Chase, he shall pay Twenty shillings to the King.

30. I will that every Freeman may, as he pleaseth, have and take Venison, or Vert, upon his own Grounds, or in his own Fields, being out of my Chase, and let all men avoid, and forbear taking my Venison, or Vert, in every place where it is mine.

31. No Mean Man shall have, or keep any such Dogs, which the English call Greyhounds. But Free Men may, provided the Dog's Knees be cut before one of the Chief Men, (or Verderors) of the Forest, or without cutting their Knees, provided the Dogs be removed, and kept Ten miles from the limits of the Forest. But if the Dogs shall come any nearer to the Forest, the Master shall pay for every Mile one shilling. But if any of the said Dogs be found within the precincts of the Forest, the Master of such Dog shall not only forfeit the said Dog, but Ten shillings in money to the King.

32. But the little Dogs (which the Danes call Verterors, and the English Langeran) because

it manifestly appears that there is no danger in them, it shall be very lawful for any person to keep them without cutting their knees. The same Law shall be touching such Dogs the English call Ramhundt.

33. But if it happen that such sort of Dogs become mad, and run every where by the negligence of their Masters, by such means they will become unlawful, and the King shall be recompenced for such their unlawfulness, &c. But if they shall be found within the Precincts of the Forest, the Owners shall be found out, and make recompence according to the price of a Mean Man, which according to an ancient Law, called Lex Merimorum, is Two hundred shillings.

34. If a mad Dog shall bite a wild Beast of the Forest, then the Owner of the Dog shall make Recompence according to the price of a Freeman, which is Twelve times a Hundred shillings. But if a Royal Beast shall be bitten, Then the Owner of the Dog shall be guilty of the greatest Crime.

AN

An Abſtract

Of all the LAWS, made for the Preſervation of the Game of Venary, Chaſe and Warren, Hawking, Fiſhing and Fowling, as well in the King's Foreſts, and the Purlieus thereof, as in the Chaſes, Paddocks, Woods, Parks, Warrens, Fiſheries, Vivaries, and Grounds Incloſed of any His Majeſties Subjects, where Game is uſually kept, in ENGLAND and WALES.

Of a Foreſt, what it is, and whereof it doth conſiſt.

A Foreſt is a Franchiſe Royal, Created by the King, and by him ſet apart, and appointed for the Generation, Feeding and Nourishment of wild Beaſts of Venary and Chaſe, and alſo for Beaſts and Fowls of Warren; Not incident to any of His Subjects; for no Subject can have, or enjoy a Foreſt, without ſpecial Grant from the King, under

under the Great Seal of England, it being Jus Regale, peculiar only to his Imperial Crown and Dignity, as a Soveraign Prince; having particular Laws, Privileges and Officers belonging thereunto, for the preservation and continuance thereof, and of the Vert and Venison therein.

2. It is a Circuit of Ground, stored with great Woods, and Thickets of Covert, for the Shelter, Residence, and Safety of wild Beasts, and Fowls of Forest, Chase and Warren; and is also replenished with Fruitful Pastures, and Lands for their continual Feeding and Sublistence; Being privileged to rest, and abide therein under the King's Protection, for his Royal Pastime, Diversion and Pleasure.

3. A Forest is Circumscribed, or Bounded with Irremovable and Indelible Marks, Meers and Bounds, known, and Preserved either by matter of Record, or by Prescription.

4. It consists of 8 things; viz. 1. Of Soil. 2. Covert. 3. Laws. 4. Courts. 5. Judges. 6. Officers. 7. Game. 8. Bounds.

Note, A Forest is not a Place privileged generally, for all manner of Wild beasts, or Fowls, but only of those that are of Forest, Chase and Warren; The Wild beasts of the Forest, or beasts of Venary, being these five, and no other, viz. The Hart, the Hind, the Hare, the Boar and the Wolf. And although the Hart and the Hind are beasts of the same Kind, or Species, yet nevertheless they are accounted two several beasts, propter differenciam temporis in quo venati sunt, because they are of two several Seasons for Hunting; The season for Hunting the Hart being in the Summer, and the time for Hunting the Hind beginning when the season of the Hart is over.

By

By the Hart is understood as well a Stag, and Staggerd, as every other Male-Deer of that sort.

Of a Frank Chase, a Park, and a Free-Warren, what they are, and how they differ from each other.

A Frank, or Free Chase, is a franchise next in degree unto a Forest, being an open place for the keeping of Game, and in that respect something resembling it, yet with this difference, That a Chase hath neither the same kinds of Game in it, nor any particular Laws belonging to the same, proper to a Chase only; For whereas the Beasts of Forest are the Hart, Hind, Hare, Boar and Wolf, The Beasts of Chase are none of them, but other five, viz. The Buck, the Doe, the Fox, the Martron, and the Roe; In like manner, all offenders in a Chase are punishable by the Common Law of this Realm, and not by the Forest-laws. Besides, a Chase hath no such Officers as a Forest, viz. Verderors, Regardors (or Raungers) Foresters, and Agistors; Nor hath it any Courts of Attachments, Swainmote, or Justice-seat appertaining thereunto, all the Officers belonging to a Chase being only Keepers as they are called in a Park, but such are termed Foresters in a Forest.

2. As a Chase is next in degree unto a Forest, and in some sort resembling it, So is a Park to a Chase, being in many respects the same; for there is no diversity between them, save only that a Park is inclosed, and a Chase lies always open without Inclosure.

3. Lastly, The next Franchise, in degree unto a Park, is the Liberty of a Free Warren; (The

Beasts

Beasts and Fowls therein are four, Viz. The Hare, the Coney, the Pheasant, and the Partridge, and no other (being such as may be taken by Long Wing'd Hawks, according to Budœus) For as a Forest is the Highest, and greatest in Dignity of all Franchises, So it doth Surpass them all for its Extent, and Comprehensiveness, Including in it a Frank, Chase, a Park, and a Free Warren; For which reason, The Beasts of Chase, and the Beasts and Fowls of Warren are as much privileged within a Forest, as the Beasts of Forest are; Every Forest being in it self a Chase, though a Chase be not a Forest but a part of it; and to the like may be said of a Park, and a Warren: And therefore the Hunting, Hurting or Killing any of the Beasts or Fowls of Chase, Park, or Warren, within the Limits of the Forest, is a Trespass of the Forest, only punishable by the Laws of the Forest, and not otherwise.

And because the Laws made for the Preservation and Continuance of Forests, and Purlieus thereof, and the Vert, Venison, and Fowls therein, are particularly applicable unto, and only proper for Forests, and no other places; Therefore we shall begin with a brief Account of the Laws that relate to the King's Forests only, and afterwards proceed to discourse of such other Laws, as have been since made for preservation of the Game of Hunting, Hawking, Fishing and Fowling in the Chases, Parks, Warrens, Woods, or other Grounds, Fisheries, or Vivaries, within England and Wales, belonging to the Subject.

Of the Forest Laws in general.

IT is Reported by Antient Historians, That Forests have been always in this Kingdom from the first time that the same was inhabited. And the Author of Concordantia Historiarum tells us, That Gurguntius the Son of Belyn, a King of this Island, did make certain Forests, for his pleasure in Wiltshire; And that divers other Kings have done the like, since his time, Which Forests, the Kings of this Realm have always maintained, and preserved (with divers Privileges, and Laws appropriated thereunto) as places of pleasure, and delight, for their Royal Pastime, and Diversion.

And when it happen'd that any Offenders Entred into those Privileg'd Places, and Committed any Trespass therein, they had very severe Punishments inflicted upon them, according to the Laws then in force, which were very grievous, and altogether uncertain, according to the Arbitrary and Unlimited Will of the King: And thus those Laws were executed, and their Punishments continued, until about the year 1016, when Canutus the Dane became King of this Realm; Who, delighting much in Forests, Did (for the better maintenance, and preservation thereof) Establish certain Laws, or Constitutions peculiar only to Forests: By which it appears, That before his time, all Wild Beasts and Birds were only the Kings, and that no other person might kill, or hurt them: The Kings of England having by their Prerogative Royal, a Right and Privilege in all such things as none of their Subjects could Challenge any property in; and such

such were then said to be the Kings, as Wild Beasts, Birds, &c. in whose Lands or Woods soever they were found. Whereupon the said Canutus made a Law, That every Free-man might, at his pleasure, have and take his own Nett and Venison, or Hunt upon his own ground, or in his own Fields, being out of the Kings Chase; But that all Men should forbear to Have or Take the Kings Nett or Game in every place where his Highness should have the same.

Also it appears by the Laws of St. Edward the Confessor, That he did Confirm the said Law of Canutus, by a Sanction made in his time, to this Effect, That it should be lawful for every one of his Subjects to Enjoy the benefit of his own Hunting, that he could any way have or make in his own Lands, Woods, or Fields; So that he did forbear to Hunt the King's Game in his Highness Forests, or other Priviledged Places, on pain of losing his life for such Offence.

Which Laws were afterwards Confirmed by William the Conqueror, as appears in the 27 Chapter of the Book wherein his Laws were Collected and digested; and so were continued by him all his time.

After whose death, William Rufus his Son, in like manner Continued the same Laws, during his life.

And after his death, King Henry the first, his Brother, succeeding him to the Crown, by his Charter Confirmed all the Laws of the Forest made by St. Edward the Confessor, as appears by the Book kept in the Exchequer, called Liber rubrus. cap. 1. Leguum suarum: Which Laws of the Forest so continued during all the life time of the said Henry the first.

After whose decease, King Stephen by his Charter Confirmed all the said Laws, Privileges,

ledges, and Customs granted by St. Edward the Confessor, and Henry the first, and continued the same during his life.

After whose death, King Henry the second succeeding him, did, by his General Charter, Confirm the aforesaid Laws of the Forest in many particulars, but not without great Alterations and Additions. For he doth, in and by his said Charter, Recite and Declare the nature of the Laws of the Forest, and in what sense they were taken, and used, or how interpreted or construed in times past, and wherein they do differ from the Common Law of the Kingdom; And that the Kings of England before that time, and he himself even then, might make a Forest in any place of the Realm, where They, or He pleased, as well in the Lands and Inheritances of any of their, or His Subjects, as in Their, or his own Demesn Lands. Which unlimited, and unaccountable Power, claimed by the Kings of England in those times, by colour of the Forest Laws, over the Birthrights and Inheritances of their Subjects, was a mighty and insupportable Grievance to those whose Lands were so Afforested; Their Pastures and the Profits of their Lands being then devoured by the Kings Wild Beasts of his Forests, without any Recompence for the same.

And this Law of Afforesting the Subjects Lands (then daily so increasing) was thought to be a very great and insuperable Oppression, not only to the Nobility and Gentry, but also to the Commonalty of this Kingdom, being all of them debarred from Inclosing, or Improving their own Lands, so Afforested, and forced to let them lie open.

And if any of them did happen to Offend a-

gainst the Forest Laws, Their Punishments were often exceeding great for a small Offence, and the Forfeitures according to the Kings pleasure, not regarding the quantity of the Trespass, nor according to the Course of the Common-Law.

Which rigorous Execution of the Forest Laws continued during the life of Henry the second, and both the Reigns of Richard the first, and King John; Every one of which Kings did daily increase those Oppressions, by making more New Forests in the Lands of their Subjects, to their great Impoverishment.

And this Mischief was not at all remedyed, until the making of Charta de Foresta by Henry the third, published in the ninth year of his Reign, which was afterwards Confirmed, and Enlarged by Edward the first his son; Whereby it is provided, That all Forests that Hen. 3. Rich. 1. and King John had Afforested and more of the Lands, Meadows, Pastures, or Woods of any of their Subjects (being not the demeasn Lands of the Crown) should be Disafforested again. For those three Kings last mentioned, had (in their times) Afforested so much of their Subjects Lands, That the greatest part of the Kingdom was then Converted into Forests.

Of the Courts belonging to the Forest, the Judges thereof, and the Officers attending the same.

There be three Principal Courts usually kept for Matters of the Forest, viz. The Court of Attachments, the Court of Swainmote, and the High Court of the Lord Justice in Eyre of the Forest, called the Justice-seat; being each of them of a several and different nature.

The

The Court of Attachments is the most inferiour of them all, for therein the Officers do nothing but receive the Attachments of the Foresters, and Inrol them in the Verderors Rolls, that they may be in a readiness against the time that the Court of Swainmote is kept; and for that this Court cannot determine any Offence or Trespass, if the value thereof be above 4d. for all above that value must be Inrolled by the Verderors in their Roll, and sent from thence to the Court of Swainmote to be Tryed there, according to the Laws of the Forest. For notwithstanding the greatest part of all the Presentments do first begin in this Court, yet this Court cannot proceed farther therein, neither is a Presentment in this Court any Conviction against the Offender in those Offences, because he may Traverse the same, until it hath passed the Court of Swainmote, To which all Trespasses presented at the Court of Attachments must necessarily come, before the offenders can be punished, or stand convicted, as guilty in Law of their offences.

Next in degree above the Court of Attachments, is the Court of Swainmote, though much inferiour to the Justice Seat of the Forest: for when the Presentments of the Court of Attachments, and the Court of Swainmote have had their Proceedings, according to the Assizes, and Laws of the Forest, yet cannot the Court of Swainmote determine the same, or assess Fines for any offences contained in such Presentments, or give Judgement thereupon (other than to pronounce them convicted) But such Presentments and Convictions must be delivered in to the Lord Justice in Eyre of the Forest, at the Court of Justice Seat, on the first day of Sitting of the said Court, when the

same are called for, according to the Laws and Ordinances of the Forest: The Swainmote is a Court unto which all the Freeholders within the Forest do owe Suit, and Service.

The next is the most Supreme Court of the Forest, called the Justice Seat, or General Sessions, wherein the Lord Chief Justice, or Lord Justice doth sit; for unto him it only belongs to give Judgment in this Court of all offences, and to assess Fines, and Punish offenders. This Court being as the Fountain Head, unto which the other Courts of Attachments and Swainmote are but (as it were) two conduit Pipes to convey the Matters and Causes of the Forest, that from thence Judgment may be had, and given thereupon.

Note, By the Charter of the Forest, Chap. 8. The Court of Attachments shall be kept every forty days throughout the year, and the Court of Swainmote thrice in the year.

The officers of the Forest, whose personal Attendance is required at the said Courts, for putting the Forests Laws in execution, and the punishment of offendors, are principally the Verderors, Regardors, Foresters, and the Beadle of the Forest.

1. A Verderor is a Judicial Officer, chosen by Writ in the full County Court of the Shire wherein the Forest is, and sworn to maintain and keep the Assizes of the Forest, and to view, receive, and inroll the Attachments, and Presentments of all manner of Trespasses of the Forest relating to Vert and Venison.

His office is not much unlike to that of a Coroner, especially in this respect, As a Coroner by the Law, is to view the dead body of any one killed suddainly, or found dead, and (it being unknown how such person came by his, or her death)

death) he ought (upon notice given him) to repair to such dead body, and view the same, and thereupon inquire by the Oath of twelve Men of the Neighbourhood where such dead body shall be found, upon view thereof, and such Evidence and Circumstances as he can come by, how such party came by his, or her death, and by what means, and how, or what was the occasion thereof; So it is the duty of a Verderor, by his office, to look after, and view the Wild Beasts of the Forest, and if any of them be found slain, wounded, or hurt (upon notice given to him thereof) he is to go unto, and view the same, and cause an Inquisition to be made by a Jury of twelve Men out of four of the next Towns to the Forest, to know how such Beast was killed, wounded, or hurt, and by whom.

2. The next is a Regardor, whose office is, by his Oath, To make the Regard of the Forest, in such manner as the same hath been accustomed to be made in Ancient time; And also to view, and inquire of all offences of the Forest, as well touching Vert, as Venison; and of all Concealments of offences, or defaults of Foresters, and all other Officers of the Forest, concerning the Execution of their offices.

Of Regardors there be three sorts, viz. One made by the King, by Letters Patents, whereby the said Office is sometimes granted for Life, and sometimes in Fee. 2. Another sort made by the Lord Chief Justice in Eyre of the Forest, or by Writ directed to the Sheriff, which Regardors are to Exercise the said Office during the Kings pleasure only. 3. There is another sort of Regardors, made pro hac vice tantum, for the present service of the Court of Swainmote, or to serve some other time in the

absence of same of the Regardors that are sick, or not able otherwise to serve at that time.

3. The next in order is a Forester, who is sworn to preserve the Vert and Venison of the King's Forest, and to attend the Wild Beasts within his Walk or Jurisdiction, and to Attach offenders therein, either in Vert or Venison, and to present the same at the Court of Attachments of the Forest, to the end they may be punished according to the quality and quantity of their offences.

A Forester of the King's Forest is made either by Grant from the King, by Letters Patents, to hold his Office in Fee, paying a certain Fee-farm Rent yearly for the same, or else to have the same for life, or durante bene placito, and sometimes they Claim to hold the said Office by Prescription: and such Foresters have oftentimes servants under them to execute the said Office, in looking after the Forest, and taking care of the Deer therein, which have the Appellation of Foresters, but are called Walkers, or Under keepers.

4. A Beadle; He is an officer, or servant of the Forest, that doth Warn, or Summon all persons to appear at the Courts of the Forest; He also makes all manner of Proclamations, as well within the Courts of the Forest, as without, and executes all the Process of the Forest, as Bailiffs of Liberties, or Itinerant of the Sheriff, doth in his County execute all manner of Process, whether Mean, Judicial, or otherwise, as well within Liberties as without.

The Office of the Verderors at the Court of Attachments, is, To sit there to see the Attachment of the Forest, as well of Vert as Venison, and receive the same of the Foresters, and others that present them there, and then to Enter them in their own Rolls.

The

The office of the Foresters, or Keepers at this Court, is, To present offenders, and offences, or Trespasses, and to bring in Attachments there, that they have made of offenders, touching Vert and Venison, whom they have attached for committing such Trespasses in the Forest.

This Court of Attachments is kept by the Verderors, and therefore sometimes called the Verderor's Court; and yet at this Court all the Foresters, and other officers and Ministers of the Forest ought to appear, and give their attendance. Here Woodwards must present all offences committed within their charge, and the deaths of Wild Beasts of the Forest, to the Chief Forrester, or Verderor; but they cannot attach offenders, or make any Attachment, for that must be left to the Forresters, whose office it is to perform.

As to the Court of Swainmote, the Verderors are the Chief Judges thereof, although the Chief Warden of the Forest, or his Deputy, doth usually sit there; but it seems, not as a Judicial Officer, for no Judicial officer may, by the Common Law, make a Deputy. Neither could the Lord Chief Justice of the Forest legally make a Deputy, or appoint one to sit in his place in the Grand Sessions, or Court of Justice-seat of the Forest, until the Statute of 32 H. 8. cap. 35. did authorise such Lords Chief Justices to make Deputies to execute their Offices, by Writings or Instruments under their hands, and sealed with the Seals of their Offices, and not otherwise.

But there is no such power given by any Statute to the Chief Warden of the Forest to make any Deputy to execute his Office: and yet there be commonly two Deputies in every Forest, which are called Lieutenants, that

is to say, The Lieutenant of the Lord Chief Justice, or Lord Justice in Eyre of the Forest, and the Lieutenant, of the chief Warden of the Forest.

By the Charter of the Forest, this Court of Swainmore shall be kept thrice in the year, viz. 1. On the Fifteenth day before Michaelmas, when the Agistors of the Kings Woods do meet together to take the Agistments in the Demesn Woods of the Crown. 2. About Martinmas, when the Agistors receive the Kings Pawnage; and to these two Courts must come the Kings Foresters, Verderors, and Agistors, by Distress, and no other Officer, or Minister of the Forest. 3. The other Court of Swainmore shall be kept the Fifteenth day before Midsummer-day, when the Agistors meet to fawn the Kings Deer, and at this Court shall come the Kings Foresters and Verderors by Distress, and no other. But now the Law is, that all the Officers of the Forest ought to appear at every Swainmore, not only the Verderors, Regardors, Agistors, Woodwards, and all other persons within the Circuit of the Forest, which are Freeholders, but also out of every Town and Village, within the Forest, four Men and a Reve, for if any of these make default at any Court of Swainmore holden within the Forest, every of them shall be Amerced for his default, and such Amercement Estreated to the Chief Warden of the Forest, to levy the same by Distress.

Note, by the words, Ministers of the Forest, above mentioned, are intended the Stewards of the Court of Swainmore, who ought to be Men of Learning, and well skill'd in the Laws for some Pleas of the Forest are Tryed in the Court of Swainmore only, as appears by the Assises

ses and Customs of the Forest. Chap. 22. Where it is said, That if a Man be Attached for curring of Boughs within the Forest, That Plea appertains to the Court of Swainmote, before the Steward there, Anno 6. Edw. 1.

Next, in order, we shall treat of the High-Court of Justice-Seat, or Grand-Sessions of the Forest, and the Lord Chief Justice of the Forest.

The Office of Lord Chief Justice of the Forest, is a Place of great Honour and Authority, executed always by some of the Chiefest of the Nobility, who is of the Kings Priv-Council. When he is made Lord Chief Justice in Eyre of the Forest by the Kings Special Commission, he hath, by that means, as great Authority, as any Justice of Oyer and Terminer hath to hear and determine Matters at Common-Law, if not greater: for then he may punish all Trespasses, and Offences of the Forest according to the Laws of the same, and may hear and determine all Claims touching the Liberties and Franchises within the Forest, as to have Parks, Warrens, and Vivaries therein, also of them that Claim to be quit of Assarts and Purprestures, or of such as do Claim Leets, Hundreds, Goods of Felons, Fugitives and Outlaws, Felo's de se, Waifs, Estrays, Deodands, and such like Immunities and other Liberties within the Forest, as likewise of such persons that Claim to kill Hares, and other Beasts of Chase and Warren, within the Forest.

He hath also an Absolute Authority to determine all offences within the Forest, either of Vert or Venison; for such offences shall not be determined before any other Justices, except such as are appointed by Commission under the Great Seal to aid and assist him in the execution and performance of his Office.

And

And of this there are two Cases in the Year-Book of Hen. 7. The first in the 21st year of that King, Fol. 27. Where in Trespass de Malefactoribus in Paris, the Plaintiff declared, That the Defendant did enter into a certain Forest, &c. and the opinion of the Court, was, That this Action did not lie, except for offences committed in Parks; for the Statute of Westm. 1. cap. 20. is only intended to redress Injuries done in Parks, and shall be taken strictly: So that the punishment that is given for committing Offentces in Forests is punishable by the Statute of Charta de Foresta, and not otherwise, &c.

The other Case is in the same year, fo. 30. Where, upon an Indictment, for killing an Hart proclaimed, found before the Justices of the Peace, The Indictment was Challenged, because it was not set forth therein, in what place the Proclamation was made, nor in what place the Hart was killed; for if he was killed out of the Bounds of the Forest, it was no offence in him that killed him; and Fineux, Lord Chief Justice, said, That this matter might be pleaded to the Jurisdiction of the Court, because the Justices of the Forest ought to determine the same.

Add to these the purport of the Statute made in 34. E. 1. called Ordinatio Foresta, That all the Proceedings concerning Offences of the Forest, in any other place except before the Justices of the Forest, shall be void: and that no other shall have power, or authority, to proceed against Offenders in the Forest, other than the Justices of the Forest only.

When the Justices of the Forest have obtained their Commission for holding the Court of Justice Seat of the Forest, they make out their Precept to the Sheriff of the County wherein the Forest lies, and the Justice Seat is kept, commanding

manding him to summon all the Prelats, Nobility, Knights, Gentlemen and Freeholders that have Lands within the Bounds of the Forest, and out of every Town and Village four Men and a Reve, and out of every Borough Twelve lawful Men; and all persons that Claim to hold Pleas of the Forest before the Justices; To appear (such a day, and place) before the Justice in Eyre of the Forest or his Deputy, to hear and do such things as appertain to the Pleas of the Forest. And likewise that the said Sheriff do make Proclamation in all Boroughs, and other Towns, Fairs, Markets, and other publick places throughout his Bailiwick, That all persons who claim to have any Liberties, Franchises, or Free-Customs of the Forest, may be there, at the same time, and place, to make good their Claims; And that all persons Attached, since the last Court, touching Vert or Venison, and their Pledges and Mainpernors, who had a day given them until this Court for their Appearance, be there also to stand to, and abide the Judgment of the Court; and that the Sheriff be there with his Bailiffs, to execute such matters as appertain to his Office, and certifie the Justice of the Forest concerning the Premisses.

Upon this Summons, the Officers of the Forest, and all other persons that are to appear at this Court, must have a day of reasonable Warning by the space of Forty days, at the least, to hold their Sessions in, and they shall hold Pleas of Quo Warranto.

There is also another Summons directed to the Chief Warden of the Forest, to warn all the Foresters, Verderors, Regardors, Woodwards, and other Ministers of the Forest, to come to the said Court, and bring with them all the Rolls, Writings,

tings and Attachments of the Forest (made since the last Court, or left there undetermined) concerning the Vert and Venison of the Forest, and that the Regardors do likewise come thither, and bring with them all the Regards made and inrolled since the last Court, and that likewise the Agistors do appear there with their Attachments, and Rolls of Agistments, to perform such their duty concerning the same, as shall be requir'd of them by the Court. Lastly, to cause all such persons to appear at the said Court, as Claim any Liberties, or Franchises within the Forest, to shew by what Warrant they Claim to have the same.

Note, That all persons, whether they dwell within the Forest, or without, if they be summoned to appear at the Justice Seat of the Forest, in respect of the Lands within the same, to serve there upon Inquests, ought to appear in proper person only, and not otherwise.

But all such persons which are to appear there, in respect of making their Claims, to have any Liberties or Priviledges within the Forest, may appear there either in Person, or by Attorney at their own Elections.

Note, That all the Rolls of such offences, as have passed the Courts of Attachments and Swainmote, are to be sealed up by the Verderors, and kept until the next Court of Justice-Seat, and then they are to present the same to the Lord Justice in Eyre of the Forest.

But if any Officer or Minister of the Forest, that hath the Custody of such Rolls (at such time, as the Court of Justice Seat is holden) their Heirs, Executors, Assigns, or Tenants of their Lands (in what County soever they be) do not bring in such Rolls the First day of holding the said Court, there shall issue out a Precept

a Precept to the Sheriff of the County, where such Lands do lie, "Commanding him, That "the Wife and Children of such offender, be- "ing first by him turned out of Doors, he "cause to be seized all the Lands and Tene- "ments of such offender in his Bailywick, so "that he be responsible to the Lord Justice in "Eyre of the Forest, as to the value of them, "for a Year, unless the Tenants of such "Lands come before the end of the Year, and "bring in the said Rolls.

And such is the severity of the Laws of the Forest touching this matter, That if the Rolls of the Forest should happen to be casual- ly lost, yet the Officers by whom they were so lost, their Heirs, Executors, or Tenants must make a Fine with the King for the same.

Or if it happen such Rolls be burnt, or other- wise destroyed by the Common Enemy of the Nation, yet that shall not avail for an Excuse by the Laws of the Forest (though at Com- mon Law it would be allowable) but even in this case the officer in whose custody they were, or had the Charge of them by the direction of the Court, must make his Fine for the same or else his land shall be seized: And so it is of Agistors, if they fail of their Rolls, or Ac- counts.

Likewise if the Verderors make default at the Court of Justice Seat, they shall be Amerced for the same, and distrained by their lands, to bring in their Rolls, Indictments, and other Writings concerning the Forest.

Note, That before any Justice Seat of the Forest can be holden, the Regardors must make their Regard, which is done by the Kings Writ, sent by the Lord Justice in Eyre to the Sheriff of that County, where the Forest is, in

which

which the Court of Justice Seat shall be kept, together with an Abstract of all such matters as the Regardors shall inquire of. Who, when they have made their Range, and Affirmed, at the Courts of Attachments, and Swainmote, such matters as they shall have found in their Survey, are to present the same, under their hands and seals, unto the Lord Chief Justice in Eyre of the Forest, at the Court of Justice Seat within the same.

And then the Lord Chief Justice in Eyre, or his Deputy, being set in Court, together with those that are in Commission with him, as his Assistants, after the Commission read, and the Officers of the Forest called over, then the Freeholders of the Forest must be called, and such other persons as were summoned to appear at that time, out of which there is then chosen a substantial Jury of the discreetest men, not under the number of 18 or exceeding 24; After which Jury is sworn, the Lord Chief Justice in Eyre, or his Deputy, or some other person skill'd in the Laws of the Forest by his Appointment, shall give in Charge to the Jury the Principal matters they are to inquire of, being a brief account of the several offences that have at any time been committed against the Laws of the Forest; Against which there are some that respect the Court of Justice Seat of the Forest only, as the account of Money received by the Verderors for dogs kept unexpeditated within the Forest, is to be made before the Justice in Eyre, at the next Court of Justice Seat; The like for punishing Nusances of the Forest. Also unlawful Hunting in the Forest, shall be punished by Judicial Sentence at the Court of Justice Seat; and so shall offenders in the Purlieus of the Forest, with divers others.

After

After the Jury have brought in their Verdict, and the same is recorded, and that the other Business is over, The Steward shall give the Oath to the Inhabitants of the Forest, of the age of twelve years, to this Effect, To be true Liegeman unto the King; To do no hurt unto the Wild Beasts, or any thing else belonging to the Forest; Nor to conceal any Offences committed by others, but to the uttermost of their power to reveal them unto the Officers of the Forest, or such persons as ought to see the same redrest.

Then after the ending of the said Court of Justice Seat, or Grand Sessions of the Forest, the Lord Chief Justice in Eyre of the Forest, at his return to the Court, Certifies the King what offences have been committed in the Forest since the last Court before this was holden there; and how the offenders have been prosecuted for the same; and what officers of the Forest have faithfully discharged their Trusts, as they ought, according to the incumbent duty of their offices, and who have been remiss therein, That they may be encouraged, or displaced accordingly.

Of the Limits of the Forest, and the Offences committed therein, and how to distinguish between an Offence committed within the Forest, and within the Regard of the Forest.

Every Forest is bound with Limits to know the true Circuit, or Circumference thereof, which in the old Perambulations are called Marks, Meres, and Boundaries; By a Mark is signified any Thing that hath an Ascent from the ground upward in Height, as a Hill, Tree, Church, &c. By a Mere of the Forest is

is meant the distance and place between the Forest, and the soil of any other person, whereon any thing doth stand that may be discernable afar off, and conspicuous to the view of the Person authorised to set out the Limits of the Forest, as a dwelling house, a Mill, &c. Lastly, by the word Boundary, is understood any Thing wherewith the Forest is bounded, that is upon the Level, and not higher in view than the soil of the Forest it self is, as a River, High-way, &c. And these are the Marks, Meres, and Boundaries, spoken of before, whereby a Forest is circumscribed, being irremovable and indelible; in regard they are such Things as be immovable of themselves, or irremovable by others, as Hills, Churches, Highways, and Rivers be, and yet sometimes for want of such permanent Boundaries, great Trees conspicuously known have been made use for that purpose, though very rarely and upon cogent necessity: These Boundaries are also indelible as being preserved by Matter of Record or Prescription.

It is very material and requisite for all persons to be well acquainted with, or at least to have some competent knowledge of the Bounds or Limits of the Forest, especially such Gentlemen as live near the same, and the officers concerned therein; for if one be presented for killing a Wild Beast of the Forest, the place where the same was done ought punctually to be known, for it might be killed out of the Forest, and then no offence to the Forest-laws, except in some special cases; and therefore the Limits of the Forest ought particularly to be known. So according to the words of Charta de Foresta of the 9th of Hen. 3 Artic. 2. That Men who dwell out of the Forest shall not come before

before the Justices of the Forest by Common Summons; in this case the Limits of the Forest ought to be known, that it may be distinguished who are dwellers within the Forest, and who without. Likewise by the Statute de Malefactoribus, Anno 21 E. 1. "If any Forester do find any "Trespasser wandring in his liberty within "the Forest, intending to do hurt or damage "therein, and after Hue and Cry made to "him, to stand unto the Peace will not yield "himself, but do fly or resist; in this case, if "the Forester do kill any such offender he shall "not be impeached for this Felony. In this case, it will be absolutely necessary to know the exact Bounds and Limits of the Forest; for in all probability Issue will be taken, Whether the Trespasser was killed within the same, or not; and if within the Limits of the Forest, the Forester may plead the said statute in Justification, but otherwise it will be Felony in him.

And farther it is to be observed, That all the Meres and Boundaries of the Forest, are according to the Assizes of the Forest, Anno 6. Edw. 1. intirely the Kings, and parcel of the Forest, except in some particular cases, as where they do consist of such things as the King hath no interest in, or that are or may be any succour or relief to the Wild Beasts of the Forest; For if a dwelling house, Mill, or the like, be a Mere, or Mark of the Forest, yet the King shall not have any interest in the same thereby, for the reason above mentioned

But by the Assizes of Pickring, Anno 8 Edw. 3. It was Adjudged, That no person might fish in any River that is a Boundary or Mere of a Forest, without Warrant, because it is parcel of the Forest, and the Kings as a Mere of the

Foreſt. And therefore the Abbot of Whitby was indicted, at thoſe Aſſizes, for killing an Hart in the River of Darwent, being the Marches of the Foreſt, and carrying away the Veniſon with him; But he made a Fine for the ſame, and was bound to the good behaviour of the Foreſt, and ſo much for the Limits of the Foreſt, and the Offences committed therein, next of the difference between an Offence committed within the Foreſt, and within the Regard of the Foreſt.

In the Aſſizes and Cuſtoms of the Foreſt, Anno 6. Edw. 1. Artic. 3. It is ſaid, "If any perſon "ſhall be found felling an Oak out of the demeaſn "wood, and within the Regard of the Foreſt, "without the View, or delivery of the Foreſter, "or Verderor, he ſhall be Attached by four Plev-"ges, and by the View of the Verderor the "Oak ſhall be appraiſed, and the names of the "Pledges ſhall be written in the Roll of the Fo-"reſters and Verderors. Here the words [With-in the Regard of the Foreſt] ſhall be under-ſtood within the Limits of the Foreſt. But it is quite otherwiſe in the fifth Article of the ſame Aſſizes and cuſtoms, where it is ſaid. If any man ſhall be found Attachable contrary to his Sureties and pledges (that is to ſay, if he be bound to the good Behaviour towards the Foreſt, and after that Offends in the like nature) he ſhall be diſtrained by his Chattels found within the Bounds, or Limits of the Foreſt: By which it appears, that ſuch a perſon may have Chattels diſtrainable within the Bounds and Limits of the Foreſt, which are nevertheleſs out of the Regard of the Foreſt, being peradventure in ſuch places as were exempted by Charter out of the Burthen and Charge of the Foreſt, as appears by the Perambulations made

made of the Forests in Edw. the firsts time, when divers Woods within the Limits and Bounds of the Forest were Exempted out of the Regard of the Forest; So that there happens to be sometimes Towns, Parks, and Woods, which lie within the Bounds and Limits of a Forest, which notwithstanding are no part of such Forest, as Wallwood in Essex formerly was, being within the Forest of Waltham, and yet no part thereof, nor within the Regard of the same; And so Havering Park is within the Meres and Bounds of the said Forest of Waltham, nevertheless, out of the Regard of the same, and not any part thereof: But all such Franchises, Lands, or Woods that be any part of a Forest, are within the Regard of the same, and all such as are within the Meres and Bounds of a Forest, and are no part thereof, are out of the Regard of the Forest: And this is the meaning of the distinction to be made of the words, Within the Regard of the Forest, Within the Limits [or Bounds] of the Forest, and in the Forest.

Of the Time of Fawning for the **Deer** of the **Forest**, called the **Fence**, or **Forbidden-month**, and how all persons ought to demean themselves in the **Forest** during that time.

By the Charter of the Forest of Henry the third Artic. 8. **The third Court** of Swainmote **is appointed to be kept fifteen days** before Midsummer, **at which time all the** Foresters, Verderors, **and** Agistors **should meet together for the quiet and safety of the Wild Beasts** during

ing the time of their Fawning, which is called the Fence, or Forbidden Month.

This Month consists of thirty days, viz. fifteen days before Midsummer, and fifteen days after.

During this Month diligent Watch and Ward must be kept in every Bailywick throughout the Forest, That no person be suffer'd to go out of the Kings High way, least he should steal, or carry away the young Fawns; Nor shall any Swine be then suffer'd to remain in the Forest, lest they destroy the same: Nor shall any person be suffered to go up and down, or bring into, or drive any Cattle or Beasts through the Coast grounds of the Forest, out of the High way, lest they disturb the Deer in the time of their Fawning.

And farther it is to be observed, That during this Month, the Foresters are to give Notice to each house within every Bailywick in the Forest, to keep in all their dogs, and not suffer any of them to go abroad, whether they be Mastiffs expeditated, or any other kind of Dogs whatsoever.

For such persons so wandring about the Forest, at this time, without special business, shall be Attach'd by the Watchmen and Warders, and brought before the Verderors.

Or if any person shall be found, at this time, to hurt or course any wild beast within the Forest: or to carry away any young Fawn; or to carry with him, out of the High way, any Bow, Gun, or Engine to hurt or destroy the Beasts of the Forest, he shall be Attached and brought before the Verderors.

Likewise, if any dogs shall be found running about the Forest, at this time, to disturb or affright the Deer, they shall Enquire whose they

they are, and bring them unto the Verderors.

So, if any Deer shall be found hurt, or dead within the Forest, at this time, they shall Enquire of the manner of its death, and inform the Verderors thereof.

And such is the severity of the Laws of the Forest, That if such Watchmen or Wardiers, shall endeavour to Apprehend an Trespassers, or Offenders in the Forest, to bring them before the Verderors, as aforesaid, but cannot by reason of Resistance made against them; in such cases these Officers shall, by the Laws of the Forest, make Hue and Cry after such offenders till they be taken.

Of keeping Dogs within the Forest, and Expeditating the same, and the Forfeiture for keeping them Unexpeditated therein.

NOtwithstanding the strictness and severity of the Laws of the Forest, the Inhabitants within the same are allowed to keep such Dogs as are necessary for the preservation of their Dwelling Houses, and Goods therein, although some kinds of Dogs are forbidden to be kept within the Forest, except by some particular persons.

And therefore Farmers, and substantial Freeholders dwelling within the Forest, may keep Mastiffs for the defense of their Houses within the same, provided such Mastiffs be Expeditated, according to the Laws of the Forest.

The way of expeditating of Mastiffs is done after this manner, viz. Three Claws of the Fore-foot shall be cut off by the skin, by letting one of his Fore-feet upon a piece of

Wood Eight Inches thick, and a Foot-square, and with a Mallet, setting a Chissel of Two Inches broad upon the Three Claws of his Fore-foot, and at one blow cutting them clean off.

And this Expeditating (by some called Pamphling, or Lawing of Dogs) ought to be inquired of by the Regardors of the Forest every third year, and to present such as are not Expeditated, and by whom kept, and thereupon such Dogs are to be Expeditated, and the Owners of them Amerced 3 s. for keeping such Dogs so Unlawed.

But by the Laws of the Forest, if any Mastiff, that is Expeditated, be found upon a Deer, the Owner of such Mastiff shall be quit of the Fact. By which it appears, that the Inhabitants of the Forest may keep Mastiffs Expeditated, though they should chance to fasten upon the Deer therein.

Also, it appears by the Laws of the Forest, That he who hath a Lawful Claim, by good Title, may keep Mastiffs within a Forest Unexpeditated, and by such like Claim he may keep Greyhounds within a Forest; Notwithstanding Greyhounds and Spaniels are generally forbidden to be kept within a Forest, and Mastiffs Unexpeditated are expressly forbidden, yet there is less danger in Mastiffs than in Greyhounds, and there is no Law to Expeditate the latter, because they are forbidden to be kept in a Forest; so that no Person can keep any of them there, except he that hath a Grant for that purpose from the King.

And Note, That it is farther provided by the Laws of the Forest, That if a Mastiff that is kept within any Forest Unexpeditated, do hurt or kil any Wild Beast of the Forest, the

Owner

Owner of such Mastiff shall be punished for such offence according to the quality thereof, besides the forfeiture of 3 s. for keeping such Mastiff unlawed.

Of Venison, its Name, and Signification.

AS old Foresters, by the general Term, A. Beasts of Venary, understand every Beast of Forest, so by the general word Venison, they mean every Beast of Forest and Chase, as a word of art, only proper to those Beasts, and no other.

By the Laws of the Forest, The Foresters and Verderors shall meet together, once every Forty days, throughout the Year, to see the Attachments of the Forest, concerning the Vert, and Venison: So that if any Person hunt in the Forest, and kill a Hare, the Forester may Attach him for that Offence, it being a Trespass in the Venison of the King's Forest. As appears by the Assizes of the Forest of Pickering, where two persons were Indicted for Striking a Hare in her Form, and Killing another within the Forest; one of whom was committed to Prison, and made his Fine, and was also bound to his Good Behaviour toward the Forest; and the other of them was Outlawed. Whereby it appears, that Hares are Venison, and Beasts of the Forest.

This word Venison, in Latin, Venatio, is also often taken in a general Signification for any Wild Beast killed by hunting, as a Squirrel, Wild Goat, &c. though they are neither Beasts of Forest, nor Chase. In the East Countries People do usually hunt the Bear, and esteem it as excellent Venison; for by the word Venatio, is generally meant any man-

ner of Wild Beast that is killed, or taken by Hunting; Yet, with us, in some sense, the word Venison is only taken for the flesh of the Hart, the Hind, the Buck and the Doe, and the other Beasts of that kind; for amongst the Common People, nothing is thought to be Venison, but the Flesh of Red and Fallow Deer; and the reason is, because such People do not believe any thing of Fresh-meats to be Venison, but such as are Bak'd, and eaten for Venison, as are the Red and Fallow-Deer. But there is a two-fold signification of the word Venison, one in relation to such Wild Beasts as are accounted Venison, for the Pleasantness and Delicious Tast of their Flesh, and the other in respect of the great Delight, Pleasure, and Satisfaction which all Lovers of Game do rather take in Hunting, Chasing, and Killing the Wild Beasts, whether of Forest and Chase, or otherwise, than they do in Eating them.

Of Hunting and Hawking within the Forest. 2. Of the Abuses of Licenses to Hunt therein. 3. The manner of Taking Fee-Deer yearly within the same. 4. How Trespassers shall be punished for unlawfully Hunting in Forests.

THe King, and all such persons as have any sufficient Warrant or Authority by Charter or Grant from His Majesty, or His Ancestors, may only Hunt and Hawk within the Forest, and no other: Also all such Persons as have any lawful Claim allowed in Eyre, in respect of any Grant to Hunt, or Hawk within the

Forest,

Forest, may use the same accordingly, provided they pursue their Authority in the same manner it is granted unto them.

But if any Knight, Esquire, or Gentleman, doth dwell within the Regard of the Forest, and be Lord of a Manor there, yet he may not Hunt or Hawk therein, except he hath a lawful Claim for so doing allowed him in Eyre, as aforesaid; because, by the Laws of the Forest, no Person may Hunt or Hawk within any part of the Forest, that is within the Regard of the Forest, though it be within his own Fee, except he hath a sufficient Warrant so to do: And therefore, they must forbear to Hunt or Hawk in their own Grounds if they be within the Regard of the Forest, because it is a Trespass of the Forest so to do, unless they have good Warrant for the same.

But by the Charter of the Forest, Anno 9 H. 3. cap. 11. Every Arch-Bishop, Bishop, Earl, or Baron, coming to the King by his Commandment, and passing through any of His Majesties Forests. It shall be lawful for any such Prelate, or Peer, to kill one or two of the Kings Deer therein, by the view of the Forester, if he be present, or otherwise to cause a Horn to be blown for him, that he seem not to steal the Kings Deer. And the same they may do in their return home from the King. By which it appears, That those Prelates and Peers have, by the said Charter, a lawful License to Hunt in the Kings Forests, but yet with this Restriction, That such Prelate, or Nobleman must be sent for by the King. 2. He must be an Arch-Bishop, or Bishop, Earl, or Baron. 3. Such Hunting must be made by the View of the Forester. 4. If the Forester be absent, a Horn must be blown.

Then

When as to Licenses to Hunt or Hawk in the Kings Forests, Chases, Parks, or Warrens, These things ought to be considered. 1. Who may grant such Licenses. 2. How such Licenses ought to be used. 3. The difference between a License of Profit, and a License of Pleasure, and a License in Law, and a License in Fait.

As to the First, The King being the Chief Soveraign of this Realm (unto whom the Government, and Regulation of Forests, and such like places of Royal Pastime and Recreation do principally appertain) may himself grant Licenses to Hunt and Hawk in any of his Majesties Forests, Chases, Parks, or Warrens unto any of his Subjects, according to his Royal Will and Pleasure.

Secondly, Whosoever hath any special Authority derived from his Majesty in that behalf, under the Great Seal of England, may in like manner, grant Licenses, in some respect, and in some places, to Hunt, and Hawk in His Majesties Forests, Chases, Parks, or Warrens: As the Lord Chief Justice in Eyre of the Kings Forest may Grant a License, or give a Warrant to any Nobleman, or Gentleman that hath a Mannor, or Freehold therein; For the first to Hunt, and Hawk in his Mannor, or Lordship, and the other in his Freehold, according to the purport, or intent of such Grant or Warrant.

In like manner, a Subject that is Lord of a Forest may Grant a License to whom he pleaseth to Hunt and Hawk in his Forest. But no person can Grant any Licence, or Give Warrant to any Man to Hunt and Hawk in the Kings Forests, other than the King himself, or his Chief Justice in Eyre of the Forest; or such other persons, as have the like Authority from the King, by some special Grant to do the same. For if any of the Kings Foresters (or other

Officer)

Officer) should attempt, or presume to do the same (ex officio) Not only such Forester (or other Officer) but all those who shall Hunt or Hawk with him there, by colour of such License, or Warrant, would be all Trespassers, and liable to the punishments of the Forest-Laws, forasmuch as it is the Office and Duty of every Forester, or other Officer of the Forest, to preserve, and keep the Kings Deer, for his Majesties use, and not to kill or destroy them, except he be commanded (by special Warrant) so to do; And therefore, it is not to be reasonably supposed, That they can License, or give Warrant to any person to Hunt, or kill Deer, or any other Game within their Liberty, or Walk.

Neither can any Forester (or other such Officer) Hawk, or take any Fowls of Warren, as Fesants and Partridges, within his Walk, in the Forest, because his Office is to preserve, and not destroy them; and therefore he cannot give, or grant any Warrant, or License to another to Hawk, or take any Fowls of Warren within his Walk, or Liberty, for if he do, although he hold his Office by Patent from the King or some other Person, as hath power to grant the same, yet is such an use, such a Misuse, or abuse of his Authority, that it is a cause of Forfeiture of his Office.

In Licenses to Hunt, or Hawk within a Forest, Chase, Park, or Warren, there is this difference to be considered, whether such License be of Profit, or for Pleasure only. For a License of Profit is, where a Man hath a lawful Warrant to kill and carry away with him the Game that is taken by him, either by Hunting or Hawking in any of those places above-mentioned; but a License of Pleasure is only where a Man

hath

hath a Warrant to Hunt, or Hawk in a Forest, Chase, &c. but doth not thereby acquire any property in the Game he takes, and so hath not any Authority to carry away the same with him; neither can he that hath only a License of Pleasure, Hunt or Hawk with any more persons in his Company than himself; But he that hath a License of Profit may Hunt or Hawk with his Friends and Servants in his Company, and carry away with him the Game he hath taken to his own use.

Then, as to the manner of taking a Fee Deer yearly within the Forest, you ought to observe, That if any person hath a right or interest to have Fee Deer, within a Forest, whether it be by Prescription, as belonging to an Office, or otherwise, he ought to give Notice unto the Forester where his Warrant is to be served, in convenient time, and require him to execute the same according to the tenour and purport thereof. And if the Forester doth refuse to serve such Warrant, after Notice given unto him to execute the same, Then may the person that is to have such Fee Deer, Enter into the Walk of the Forester so refusing, with his servants, or Attendants, and there Hunt, kill, and take such Deer, as he is of right to have, and Justifie the same, both as to himself, his servants, and Attendants, because he hath a License of profit, whereby he is authorised so to do. For it is a Maxim in the Law, That where any person hath a right, or interest to any thing by the Gift, or Grant of an other, or otherwise, but cannot come by the principal thing, without doing some other Act, which is the necessary means to acquire the same, in such case he may lawfully do that other Act which is the necessary means to come by the principal thing. As if

one

one sells me all the Fish in his Pond, thereby the property of the Fish is in me, So that I may come upon his ground with servants, and Nets to take the Fish out of the Pond, and carry them away; And this I may lawfully Justifie as well as to my Servants, or those that Assist me in performing the same, as to my self, because that forasmuch as I having an Interest and Property by Law in the Principal, may Justifie the necessary circumstance, and means to acquire the same.

And so it was Adjudg'd Mich. 13 H. 7. Where, in an Action of Trespass brought against one for Hunting in the Plaintiffs Park, The defendant did plead in Justification, That the Plaintiff, as Owner of the said Park, gave a Buck unto one B. Master of this defendant, who, came with the said B. by his commandment, unto the said Park, as Servant to the said B. to help him to kill the said Buck; By virtue of which Command of the said B. the defendant Entred into the said Park, and there killed a Buck, for his Master, as it was lawful for him to do: And this Plea was held by the Whole Court to be a good Justification; by which it appears, That where a person hath an Interest, or Right to have a Fee Deer within a Forest, Chase, or Park, there he may Justifie the Killing and Taking away the same as well as to his Servants, as himself, it being the necessary means conducing to the Acquisition thereof. For otherwise, if the Forester, or Keeper, do refuse to kill and deliver such Fee Deer to the person who hath a right unto the same, if such person might not justifie the killing and Taking the Fee Deer himself, he would be without remedy to come by the same, And therefore the Law hath provided, that he who hath such a

an interest, or right to have a Fee Deer in a Forest, Chase, or Park, if the Forester or keeper will not kill it for him, or deliver it unto him according to his Warrant, but refuseth so to do, then may such person, having such right, justifie the killing and Taking the same, by himself and Servants, because it is the only means he hath left him to come by his Right: and this is justifiable as well by the Laws of the Forest, as by the Common Law of the Realm, for the 10th Article of the Assize and of the Forest, saith, "That if any person shall take a Beast "of the Forest in the same without Warrant, his "body shall be Arrested, wheresoever he be "found within the Bounds of the Forest. By which it appears, That he which takes a Deer in the Forest, without Warrant, is punishable for the same by the Laws of the Forest, Nevertheless, he that Hunts and kills a Deer, within the Forest, by lawful Warrant, shall not be liable to be punished by the Laws of the Forest, or any other Laws whatsoever, for the interest or right of such person as hath used to have Fee Deer, is a sufficient Warrant in Law to the Forester or Keeper to kill and deliver the same unto such person, if he will, but if either of those Officers refuseth so to do, then the party himself, with others to assist him, may lawfully do the same.

Nevertheless he that hath such License, or Warrant to Hunt within the Forest, must take heed that he do not abuse the same, for if he do, not only he, but all those that Hunt with him shall be accounted Trespassers from the Beginning in every thing they do, as if they had no Warrant for doing the same, and shall be punished as Trespassers of the Forest.

And

And therefore every such License or Warrant ought to be duly considered, by whom it was made, and whether he that made the same had power to grant such License or Warrant; 2. Unto whom the same was made, and for what Thing, what Time, and what Place. 3. Whether it be only a License of Pleasure, for the party unto whom it is granted merely to divert himself in the Forest, Chase, or Park; Or a License of Profit, whereby the party obtains a Property in the Thing granted, and hath liberty to Hunt or Hawk with his Servants, or Attendants, and kill and carry away with him the Game he takes by virtue of such License: All which Things must be punctually Observed and pursued according to the nature of the License or Warrant, That the party to whom the same is granted, may avoid the imputation of being accounted a Trespasser, instead of receiving benefit thereby.

There is also another division of Licenses besides those of pleasure, and profit, viz. Licences in Law, and Licences in fait, or deed; The first is by word of mouth without writing, or by Prescription, as belonging to some Office within the Forest: and the other is a License reduced into writing under hand and seal, ready to be produced upon any occasion, where the same is required.

And here it is to be observed, That a License in Law, that is by word only without Writing, is held to be of as great Validity between Subjects, as any Licence in Writing whatsoever, but whether it be so between the King and the Subject hath been questioned, because the King doth neither Grant, or Take any Thing but by Matter of Record. Nevertheless, by the Opinion of Shelley and Bryan in Easter Term 4 H. 7. The

King

King may Give many Things without Writing, that shall be good as to Chattels. And in Michaelmas Term 39 H. 6. The defendant in Trespass did plead Justification by the King's Commandment by word of Mouth only, without Writing, and held a good Justification; And therefore inasmuch as Hunting without License is but a Trespass at most, if a man may plead the Kings Commandment by word only in Bar of a Trespass, by the same parity of reason he may plead the Kings License by word only in Bar of a Trespass. But in the other Case, it is without dispute, That if a Subject, being Owner of a Forest, Chase, or Park, do License one to Hunt in any of them by word, without Writing, the same is good in Law.

Then as to the Punishment of Trespassers in Forests, that Hunt therein without any lawful Colour or Warrant for so doing; If any Forester or Keeper shall find or take any such person or persons in the manner, he shall Arrest their bodies, and carry them to Prison, from whence they shall not be delivered without special Warrant from the King, or his Majesties Justice in Eyre of the Forest, according to the Assize and Customs of the Forest, Anno 6. E. 1. Art. 10. And though the words there be, If any one shall take a wild Beast of the Forest, yet if any person be taken Hunting in the Forest, yet he is to be punished by the Law, as if he had killed and taken a Wild Beast of the Forest, for in that case the Will shall be taken for the Deed, As it was Adjudged in the Assizes of the Forest of Pickering in the time of Edw. 3. That if one Enters into a Forest with a Bow and Arrows, or with Greyhounds with an intent to Offend there notwithstanding he doth commit no Act, yet he shall be punished as if he had done some

Act

Act, for the reason aforesaid; As in the same Assizes an Abbot was, that lent a Bow and Arrows to one to kill the Kings Deer; for notwithstanding there was no Act done, yet the Abbot was Fined and Ransomed. And therefore if a Forester or Keeper shall find any person within the Forest either with Bow and Arrows, or with Greyhounds intending to Offend there, he shall Arrest, and Imprison him as if he had committed the Fact he intended, but the body of such Offender shall not be Arrested unless he shall be taken in the manner, which must be one of these four ways; viz. Stablestand, Dogdraw, Backbeare, or Bloodyhand. The first is when any person is found standing in the Forrest, with a Bow ready bent to shoot at any Deer, or with his Greyhound in a Lease ready to slip; This the Antient Foresters call Stablestand. The next is when one hath hurt, or wounded a Deer, or other Beast of the Forest, by shooting at him either by Bow, or Gun, and the Forester finds such Offender drawing after the Beast with a Hound to recover it, This Experienced Foresters call Dogdraw. The third is, Where one hath slain a Wild Beast in the Forest, and the Foresters discover him as he is carrying away the same; This they call Backbear. Lastly Bloodyhand is, Where one is found Coursing in the Forest with the Blood of any Deer, or other Beast of the Forest upon him, or is any way besmeared with such Blood after Coursing; or is otherwise found in the Forest imbrewed with Blood in any suspicious manner, albeit he be not seen to Hunt or Course there. All these are said to be taken with, or in the manner; And such Offenders as are found or taken by the Foresters in any of these cases shall be arrested by their Bodies, if they can, and be imprison-

ed until they be delivered by the King's special Commandment, or his Justice in Eyre of the Forest: But they shall be punished at the Court of Justice Seat by Fine at the discretion of the Justice in Eyre there, and Imprisoned until they have paid the same, and then be bound there to their good behaviour towards the Forest for ever afterwards: But this Punishment cannot be executed in every point, but only by a Judicial Sentence pronounced by the Justice in Eyre of the Forest at his Justice Seat there, in which case the party is always first convicted of the Offence, by a Lawful Tryal according to the Laws of the Forest.

If any take Hawks, or Destroy Eyries of Hawks in the Kings Woods, it is a Trespass against the Assizes of the Forest, and the Offenders shall make Fine for the same, Itin. Lanc. fo. 7.

If any person shall receive Venison of one that hath unlawfully come by the same, as a Trespass in the Forest, the party that so received the same shall be punished as well as he from whom he had it. And by the Assizes of the Forest, he that stealeth Venison therein, and carries away the same upon his Horse, the Horse shall be forfeited; but if such Malefactor takes the Horse of a Stranger, and carries his stolen Venison away upon the same, if such Stranger be ignorant of the fact, his Horse shall not be forfeited, Itin. Pick. fo. 3.

And it appears by Hill. 13. H. 7. That if one command another, or divers to commit a Trespass in the Kings Forest, Chase, Parke, or Warren as to Hunting, or Chasing of Deer, or other Beast, or Fowls, in this Case, he that Commands the other to do such unlawful Act, is as much a Principal in such Trespass as they that do the Fact; for in Trespasses of

the

the Forest all are Principals, and there are no Accessories in such Trespasses, as at Common Law.

And farther it is to be observed, That if a Forester, Keeper, or other Minister of the Kings Forest, Chase, Park, or Warren, that hath the care and charge of the Kings Game, and by his negligence will not Attach or Apprehend them for the same, it is a Forfeiture of his Office. And not only the Foresters, and Ministers of the Forest, but every other person, dwelling within the Forest, shall likewise do his uttermost Endeavour to Attach, and apprehend such Offendors, and Trespassors in Forests, and if he cannot take them himself, he shall cause Huy and Cry to be made after them, to the end they may be taken thereby, as if they were Felons.

And if upon such Hue and Cry made, the Offendors do still continue in their Offences, or do flie, or defend themselves with force, and will not keep the Peace, nor yield themselves when required so to do; In such cases, whosoever, coming to the Assistance of the Foresters shall chance to kill any such Offendor, within the Bounds of the Forest, shall not be Arraigned for the same before the King's Justices, or any other his Ministers of Justice, but shall be acquitted of the same, as if no such act had been done.

And if the Foresters, and those with them, cannot apprehend such Offendors in the Forest, by reason of their flying out of the same, Then may they follow such Offendors with Fresh Pursuit (being still within view, but not otherwise,) out of the Forest, and there Apprehend them; but then they cannot use such Extremity and Force with such Offendors, as they might do if they were within the Limits of the

Forest; And therefore the usual way is (in case such Offenders cannot be taken without danger) for the Foresters to inquire and find out their Names, with the places of their Abode, and Present them to the next Swainmote, or Court of Attachments, That they may be proceeded against according to the Laws of the Forest.

Of the Purlieu, or Pourallee of the Forest, and who may Hunt therein, when, how often, how far, and in what cases.

A Purlieu, or Pourallee, is a Circuit of Ground adjoyning unto the Forest, Circumscribd with immoveable Boundaries, known only by matter of Record; This Compass of Ground was once Forest, and afterwards Disafforested by the Perambulations made for the severing the New Forests from the Old. This Pourallee began at the first after this manner, viz. When King Henry the II. came first to be King of England, which was Anno Domini 1154. He took such great delight in the Forests of this Kingdom, That (being not contented with those he found here, though many and large) he began, within a few Years after his coming to the Crown, to inlarge divers Great Forests, and to Afforest the Lands of his Subjects that any way were near adjoyning unto those Forests, and so they continued during his Reign.

After whose death, King Rich. 1. Succeeding him to the Throne, within some short time after his coming to the Crown, began to follow the Example of Hen. 2. His Father, not only in the delight and pleasure he took in

in Forests, but also in daily Afforesting the Lands of his Subjects that any way lay near to His Forests; by means whereof, the Inlarging of Forests did daily increase during His Reign

After whose disease, King John, His Brother, coming to the Crown, did, in like manner, soon afterwards begin by little and little to follow the Examples of His Father and Brother, in Afforesting the Lands of his Subjects, that lay any way near unto his Forests, so that the greatest part of the Lands of the Kingdom was become Forest. And thus they continued until the 17th year of his Reign, at which time, in regard this grievance was not particularly injurious unto a small number, or the meanest persons, but generally to all degrees of People, divers Noblemen and Gentlemen, finding a convenient opportunity, repaired to the King, and besought him to Grant unto them, That they might have all those New Afforestations that were made by King Hen. 2 Rich. 1. and himself disafforested again; All which King John seemed not unwilling to do, but promised to grant accordingly, and at last contented to subscribe, and seal to such Articles concerning the Liberties of the Forest, which they then demanded, being for the most part, in such sort, as are now contained in the Charter of the Forest of the said King John, dated at Kuningsemede, or Ryme-Mead, between Staines and Windsor, the 15th of June, in the 18th Year of his Reign.

At which time the said King John gave them liberty to choose certain Honourable Persons, who should have Authority to see those things performed which he had then Granted. Whereupon they made choice of divers Noblemen and Gentlemen, to the number of 25, who

were sworn (with others their Assistants) to see the aforesaid Liberties, so Granted and Confirmed by the King, to be in every point observed. And further, the King sent His Mandats to the Sheriffs of every County, to see these Ordinances of His to be diligently observed and kept, and moreover procured the Pope to Confirm the same. Notwithstanding all which, before any Disafforestation was made upon this Grant, King John dyed at Newark Castle in Nottinghamshire.

After whose death, Henry the third, his eldest Son, at the age of 9 years, Succeeded in his throne, so that by reason of his Minority nothing was done until the 9th year of his Reign, at which time the Two Charters were made, and Confirmed by the said King Henry the Third, called Magna Charta, and Charta de Foresta, and caused to be sent into every County throughout the Kingdom to be Published, and Proclaimed.

And for the better accomplishing and performing of those Articles of Charta de Foresta, as concerned the Disafforestation of such Woods and Lands as were Afforested by H. 2. R. 1. and King John, The said Henry the Third Ordered Inquisitions to be taken by Substantial Juries for severing the New Forests from the Old; And thereupon two Commissioners were sent to take those Inquisitions, by virtue whereof, many great Woods and Lands were not only Disafforested, and improved to Arable Land by the Owners thereof. So that now after this Charter thus made and confirmed; some of these New Afforestations were Perambulated, and after such Inquisitions taken, and the certainty known by Matter of Record, which were the Old, and which were the New Forests.

Never-

Nevertheless the greatest part of the New Afforestations were still remaining to be Disafforested during the Life of King Henry the Third.

After whose disease, Edward the First, His Eldest Son, Succeeded Him unto the Crown, who being often besought, and Petitioned as well by the Nobility, as Commonalty of this Kingdom, to Confirm the aforesaid Liberties, which his Father had Granted, was graciously pleased to Confirm the same according to their Request. And now all things having been Granted, Performed, and Confirmed concerning the two Charters, viz. Magna Charta, and Charta de Foresta, the same were Delivered, Signed, Sealed, and Confirmed, to the Sheriffs of London, to be Proclaimed, which was accordingly done in Paul's Church-yard, in the Presence of a Numerous Concourse of People there met together. Whereupon the Lords and Commons soon after began to put the King in mind of Granting Commissions to Persons fitly qualified for the same, that Perambulations might forthwith be made of all New Afforestations, that they might be Disafforested, according to the First and Third Articles of Charta de Foresta.

Whereupon three Bishops, three Earls, and three Barons were appointed by the King to take care of, and see those Perambulations performed, who caused them to be made accordingly, and Inquisitions to be taken thereupon, and returned into the Court of Chancery; whereby the King was ascertained what Woods and Lands were Ancient Forests, and what were Newly Afforested, and caused all those that were Ancient Forests to be Meered, and Bounded with Immovable Boundaries,

to be known by Matter of Record for ever. And likewise those Woods and Lands that had been Newly Afforested, the King caused to be separated from the Old, and to be Returned into Chancery by Marks, Meres, and Bounds to be known, in like manner, by matter of Record for ever.

By which it appears, how the Purlieus, or Pourallees had their first beginning; For, all such Woods and Lands as were Afforested by H. 2 R. 1. or King John, and by Perambulations severed from the Ancient Forests, were, and yet are, called Pourallees, viz. Woods and Lands severed from the Old Forests, and Disafforested by Perambulation; Pourallee in French being the same as Perambulatio in Latine.

But, notwithstanding such New Afforestations were Disafforested by Perambulation, whereby the same became Pourallee, or Purlieu, yet they were not thereby so Disafforested as to every Man, but that they do, in some sense, continue Forest still as to some Persons, though Disafforested, in some sort, as to others. For by the words of Charta de Foresta, if the King had Afforested any Woods or Lands of his Subjects, to the Damage of them whose they were, they should be forthwith Disafforested again, that is, only as to those Persons whose Woods and Lands they were, who, as the proper Owners thereof, might Fell and Cut down their Woods at their own pleasure, without any License from the King, as also convert their Meadows and Pastures into Tillage, or otherwise improve their Grounds to the best advantage. In like manner, They might Hunt and Chase the Wild Beasts of the Forest towards the same, so that they do not Forestal them in their return thither; but yet no other

person

person could claim such benefit in the Pourallee but only the proper owner of the Soil thereof; So that the same remains Forest still, as to all those that have no property in the Lands therein: For the Owners of the Woods and Lands therein may suffer the Pourallee to remain Forest still, if they be so minded, notwithstanding such Disafforestation (as appears by the Statute of 33 Edw. 1 cap. 5.) as some have thought it most expedient for them, because thereby they had the benefit of Common within the Forest, which otherwise, by having their Lands severed from the Forest, by way of Pourallee, they were excluded from: Which doth prove, That the Woods and Lands in the Pourallee are Disafforested only for the Owners thereof, and not for every one to Hunt, and spoil the Wild Beasts there at his pleasure; for if they chance to wander out of the Forest into the Pourallee, yet the King hath a property in them still against every Man, but the proper owner of the Grounds wherein they are, for such person hath a special property in them ratione soli, but yet so as he may only take them by Hunting, or Chasing with his Greyhounds, or Dogs, without any Forestalling, or Foresetting them in their Course back again towards the Forest; for the King hath always Rangers in the Pourallee to attend such Wild Beasts of the Forest, as come there, to rechase them back into the Forest; which proves, that though the Wild Beasts of the Forest do by chance stray into the Pourallee, yet the King hath a Property still in them, or otherwise the Ranger could have no lawful Authority to Rechase them into the Forest.

So it appears by Hill. 13 Hen. 7. fo. 16. pl. 14. That though a Man may prescribe to

Chase

Chase the Wild Beasts in my Ground, which are my Wild Beasts, yet he may not prescribe to Chase the King's Wild Beasts which are in my Grounds, such as are the Wild Beasts which stray out of the Forest of the King into the Pourallee.

In like manner, it is the Opinion of Mr. Justice Cockeine in Pasch. 7. Hen. 6. fol. 36. pl. 41. That if a Hart go out of the King's Forest, the Foresters may follow him, and make Proclamation in the adjacent Towns, that no Man presume to Hunt, or slay him, after which it is not lawful for any one to molest such Hart; whereby it appears, That though such Wild Beasts be out of the Forest, and in the Pourallee, yet nevertheless the King hath still a Property in them, which proves, that the Pourallee is in some sense a Forest still for the King's Wild Beasts to have their Free Concourse in, and safe return to the Forest, without molestation of any Person, except the Owner of the Grounds in the Pourallee, who, when he finds them there, may Rechase them towards the Forest, provided he do neither Forestal or Forefet them in their return thither.

Yet notwithstanding what hath been hitherto said of a Forest, and a Purlieu, or Pourallee, there is still this further difference to be observed between them, which is, That all the Woods and Lands within the Regard of the Forest, are absolutely within the Bondage and Charge of the Forest, as well in respect of the Owners thereof, as of any other Person; for no Person may Cut down his own Woods, or Improve his own Lands within the Regard of the Forest, without License from the King, or his Chief Justice in Eyre of the Forest: Neither shall any

any Person in any wise Hunt, Chase, or molest the Wild Beasts of the Forest in his own Grounds within the Regard of the Forest, without License, or Warrant from the King, or His Chief Justice of the Forest, so to do.

But those, whose Grounds are within the Pourallees, are not subject to the Bondage of the Forest, in as much as their Lands are without the Regard of the Forest, and therefore may Cut down their own Woods, Convert their Meadows and Pastures into Tillage, and otherwise Improve their Estates there to the best advantage, at their Pleasure, without License or Warrant for so doing; but yet the Woods and Lands in the Pourallees, are not absolutely freed from the Bondage of the Forest, in respect of the Wild Beasts having their Haunts therein when they happen to stray out of the Forest; and therefore as they were once absolutely Forest, so they are still in some sense, that is to say, conditionally Forest, and not absolutely free.

For, as to such Lands which neither are, or never were either Forest or Pourallee, but allways absolutely free, if they adjoyn not too near unto the Limits of the Forest, It is lawful for any person that is owner of such Lands, (provided he be qualified by Law to keep Greyhounds) to Hunt and Chase with his Dogs such Wild Beasts as he shall find therein; but he must take heed that he do not forestal, or forefet them in their return to the Forest.

But who shall be said properly to be a Purlieu-Man, and that may lawfully Hunt in the Pourallee do next fall in course under consideration. And therefore you are to know, That, notwithstanding the Pourallee be Forest still to such persons as have not any Lands of Inheritance

heritance therein, yet such as have, according to the value required by Law, may keep Greyhounds, and when they find the Wild Beasts of the Forest within their Grounds in the Pourallee they may chase them towards the Forest, for as Owners of those grounds they have property in such Wild Beasts ratione Soli, so long as they are in the same; and if they do first make their Course in their own grounds, within the Pourallee, they may pursue their Chase through every Man's Grounds; but if the Wild Beasts do make towards the Forest, they must not Forestal or Foreset them, either with Dogs, Guns, Cross-bows, Long-bows, Hays, or other Engine whatsoever, but suffer them to have their free passage thither: for all such Forestalling or Forsetting is absolutely forbidden by the Assizes of Woodstock, made in the 39 Year of Heny the Second, on pain of the Offenders suffering a Years Imprisonment, and making Fine at the King's Discretion; So that the Pourallee is free (in some respect) for some sort of Persons to Hunt therein, and who they ought to be shall be next declared.

First, Then you must understand, That he who may lawfully hunt in any Pourallee ought to have Woods or lands of freehold within the Pourallee, to the yearly value of 40s. according to the Statute of 13 Rich. 2. cap. 13. and according to the Statute of 1 Jac. 1. cap. 7. he ought to have lands of Inheritance of the yearly value of 10li. or lands of Freehold of the yearly value of 30li. or have goods worth 200li. or be the Son of a Knight, or Baron, or person of a higher degree, or Son and heir apparent of an Esquire. But by a late Act made in the 22 and 23 year of the Reign

Reign of King Charles the second, chap. 25 No Man may keep Greyhounds within the Pourallee, or elsewhere within England or Wales, other than he that hath Free Warren, or is Lord of a Manor, or is such a Freeholder as is seized in his own right, or the right of his wife, of lands, tenements, or hereditaments of the clear yearly value of 40li. (over and above all charges, and reprises) of some Estate of Inheritance; or of lands tenements, or hereditaments in his own right, or in the right of his wife, (for term of life, or lives.) of the yearly value of 80li. (over and above all Charges, and Reprises.) or that is worth in goods, or chattels 400li. For no person, as the Law is now at this day, may hunt his own Pourallee, with Greyhound, or other Dog, that is likely to kill any Beast of Venary, or Chase, Except he may dispend after the rate last above mentioned, by the year of Free Lands within the Pourallee, or otherwise, as is last before declared; and for that reason the Pourallee is called Purluy, or said to be for him that is so qualified, but so that he always first begin his Course in his own grounds within the Pourallee, from whence it hath the name of Purlieu [for the place] by which is meant his own grounds in particular, but not generally every place, or every mans Grounds within the Pourallee, and that by reason of the difference (which hath been before observed) between a Pourallee-Man, and one that hath Grounds within the Pourallee: For notwithstanding a Man hath Grounds within the Pourallee, yet if he be not qualified by Law according to the Statutes before cited, he is no Pourallee Man; Nevertheless if he finds any Wild Beasts of the Forest in his own Grounds within the Pourallee, he may Chase them thereout

out with little Dogs, but not with Greyhounds, or other great Dogs, as appears by the Earl of Arundels Case, in Hill. 43 Edw. 3. fo. 8. pl. 23. But if a Man have no Estate of Inheritance within the Pourallee either in Lands or Woods there, he cannot pretend to any Privilege therein, but is utterly Excluded from Hunting or Chasing therein, for to such the Pourallee is absolutely Forest still; It being a Privilege only intended for a Pourallee-Man to Hunt and Chase there, in his own Grounds and not otherwise.

But then, in the next place ought to be considered, in what manner a Pourallee-Man may Hunt, and chase the wild beasts of the Forest, within his own Pourallee, for the understanding of which he ought to know, That when he finds any Wild beasts of the Forest, within his own Grounds, in the Pourallee, he may let slip his Dogs, at them, and hunt and chase them towards the Forest, but he must take heed he do not hinder their return to the Forest, lest he incur the penalty of the Statute of Hen. 2. made at Woodstock, as hath been before mentioned. For though he finds such wild beasts in his own Pourallee, and in respect thereof, hath a property in them, ratione soli, against all persons but the King, nevertheless such his property is only upon this Condition, That if he can slay them with his Dogs in chase, without forestalling, before they can recover the Forest, then they are absolutely his, but if they once recover the Forest, though they be but within the List of the Forest, before the dogs fasten upon them, then they are the Kings, or other owner of the Forest.

But if such Pourallee-Man do first make his Chase in his own Freehold, he may pursue the same

same through every mans grounds within the Pourallee, prohibited he enter not into the Forest, which he may not do, unless where he finds the wild beasts of the Forest in his Pourallee grounds and lets slip his dogs at them, and in chasing them towards the Forest, the dogs fasten upon one of them, before it can get into the Forest, or the limits thereof, and the wild beast by force draws the dogs, as they hang upon him, into the Forest, and being a considerable space within the same, the dogs slay the wild beast; In this case, by reason of the first property the Pourallee-Man had in the beast ratione Soli, and likewise by the pursuit, and possession thereof by his dogs, before it got into the Forest, he may follow his Chase into the same, and there take, and carry away the Beast, because he was actually possessed thereof by his dogs (being in the nature of Servants) as of his own proper goods, before the Beast could recover the Forest.

But it appears by Mich. 12 H. 8. fo. 10. That if a Pourallee-Man begins his Course in another Mans ground, where the wild beasts of the Forest are, within the Pourallee, if his dogs fasten upon a wild beast, before it can get within the Bounds of the Forest, and the beast draws the dogs into the Forest, and is there slain by them, here the Pourallee Man shall not enter into the Forest, nor take the beast so killed, because his Course was wrongful from the beginning, for he could claim no property in the beast ratione Soli, because he began his Chase in another Mans ground; And therefore though he come not within the Limits of the Forest, yet he shall be deemed a Trespasser there, upon account of his dogs entring therein, and killing a Wild Beast there, and he having no right or interest

to chase in the other Mans grounds where he began his first Course, cannot justifie such Act, as done by a lawful Pourallee-Man, that found the wild beasts in his own grounds within the Pourallee; but the owner of the Grounds were the Chase was first begun, might well have made such Justification.

So, if a Man lets flie his Faulcon at a Pheasant, in his own Wood, he may pursue his Flight after the Pheasant into any other persons ground. And notwithstanding his Falcon kills the Pheasant in the other persons ground, yet the Master of the Faulcon shall have the same, and not the Owner of the Ground where it was killed, for the reason above given.

In the next place it is to be understood, That a Pourallee Man must hunt his own Pourallee himself with no more Company than his own servants, neither may he appoint, license, or warrant any other person except his servants in his presence, to hunt by his Commandment in his Pourallee; for the Authority that he hath is but a Conditional License of profit, which is strictly annexed to his person, and cannot be transferred to another: As Mich. 18. Edw. 4. fo. 14. pl. 12. in Ashtons Case, If one grant me License to hunt, and kill a Buck, in his Park, and afterwards to dispose of the same, my servants cannot justifie killing the Buck by my Commandment, because the License goes strictly to me, unto whom it was granted, and to no other person whatsoever.

Moreover no Pourallee-Man may hunt, or slay any rascally Deer, viz. such as are out of season, which he shall find at any time in his Pourallee, for such are good for nothing when dead, and commonly not able to stand course, or shift for themselves.

Also,

Also, when a Pourallee-Man lets slip his dogs at the wild beasts of the Forest in his own Grounds, and his dogs do still pursue their Course towards the Forest, he must take care, before they enter the same, to recal them back, for otherwise, if they happen to kill that Beast, or any other in the Forest he will be deemed a Trespasser that kills Deer within the Forest; But if he calls back his dogs before they enter the Forest, he would be excused, though they should happen to kill a Deer therein, provided he Enter not into the Forest, nor meddle with the Deer so killed.

Then, as to the time when and how often a Pourallee-Man may Hunt in his own Pourallee, you are to observe these Rules following.

1. No Man ought to Hunt in the night, viz. after Sun-setting, and before Sun-rising; for, by the Law, in some cases, from Sun-rising to Sun-setting is accounted, a day, called dies Solaris; And the reason why no Man is permitted to Hunt in the Pourallees in the Night time, is, That the Wild Beasts may not be disturbed of the peaceable feeding, and rest they enjoy in the Night time in the Forest; for 'tis utterly impossible to Hunt in the Pourallees in the Night, without disturbing the Wild Beasts that are within the Forest: For though peradventure the dogs in their Course do not pursue the Deer out of the Pourallees into the Forest, nevertheless the Noise that is commonly made at such times by the dogs running at the deer, and the terrour of those deer that are then affrighted out of the Pourallees into the Forest, will in a great measure disquiet, and abundantly terrifie those Wild Beasts that are within the Forest. Besides, it is the nature of those wild beasts to seek their food in the night

time being a time of rest, when no body is stirring to molest, or disturb them, for all the day they confine themselves to their Covers, being afraid of the noise which is made by all sorts of people, that are then about their business, and occasions, so that then they cannot feed quietly, or with that liberty and freedom they delight in. And therefore hunting in the Pourallees, or other places in the Night time is expressly forbidden by the 13 Article of the Assizes of Woodstock.

2. No Pourallee-Man may Hunt on the Lords day, (commonly called Sunday) for that day is wholly appropriated to the Service of Almighty God, and by his Laws appointed to be kept holy, and not be prophaned by using or doing any Worldly Business therein. Besides by the Statutes of 1 Car. 1. cap. 1. and 3 Car. 1. cap. 4. Penalties are provided against such persons as shall use any unlawful Exercise, or Recreation, Sports or Pastimes whatsoever upon the Lords day; Whereby Hunting, and such like Sports, and Recreations are also forbidden to be used on that day by the Laws of the Realm.

3. Pourallee-Men are Forbidden by the Laws of the Forest to Hunt in their Pourallee, during all the time of continuance of the Fawning or Fence Month, which begins fifteen days before Midsummer, and ends fifteen days after; for then either the Fawns being very young, or the Does big bellied are neither able to run, or stand a Course: And therefore Hunting at that time, their dogs peradventure pursuing their Chase into the Forest, may make great distruction of the Kings Game therein, and for that reason this space of time is called the Forbidden Month, wherein no Man may either hunt in the Forest, or Pourallee.

4. Every

4. Every Pourallee Man is forbidden, by the Laws of the Forest, to Hunt in his own Grounds within the Pourallee, every day, or oftner than three days in any one week; (Sunday excepted) Least with the Noise, and Terror of their often Hunting in the Pourallees, the Wild Beasts of the Forest be disquieted, and put from their food, and wonted Layer.

5. No Pourallee-Man may hunt in his own grounds, within the Pourallee, with more Company than his own Servants; For the Laws of the Forest do prohibit Multitudes of people to meet together, only to Hunt, lest they should terrifie and disturb the Kings Wild Beasts, that are within the Limits of the Forest. Nevertheless the Privilege every Pourallee-Man hath of hunting in his own Pourallee, being an Interest both of Profit and Pleasure, he may, therefore in that respect, lawfully Justifie the Hunting therein both for himself, and for his Servants: For, as hath been said before, He that hath only an Interest, or License of Pleasure, may Justifie for himself, but not for his Servants: But notwithstanding a Pourallee-Man may Justifie to Hunt with his Servants, yet he cannot Justifie to Hunt with every other person.

6. All the Laws of the Forest, and Charters made concerning the Pourallees do forbid every Man to disturb, or make Course after any Deer, found in his Pourallee, within forty days, next after the King hath made a General Hunting in the Forest, adjoyning thereunto; Because then the Wild Beasts of the Forest come not into the Pourallees of their own Accord, but as they are forced into the same by the Hunters, with clamours and blowing of Horns, so that they fly thither for refuge, where they are pri-

vileged to rest in peace for forty days, without being hunted, chased, or otherwise molested; In which time it is presumed they will either return of themselves unto the Forest, or be rechased thither by the Rangers, with their Dogs: And therefore the Wild Beasts have that time of Liberty allowed them to remain there undisturbed, as appears by the Charter granted for the Pourallees of the Forest of Windsor in the County of Surrey.

7. No Man shall presume to Hunt within seven Miles of the Borders of the Forest, or in his own Pourallee, within forty days next before the King hath issued out his Proclamation, declaring his Royal Will and Pleasure to make a General Hunting in that Forest; Because that during all that time, the wild Beasts of the Forest ought to have the liberty and freedome of their Coverts and Thickets to enjoy their full repose and quiet therein, until the King comes to view them, and make choice of such as he shall think fit to Hunt and Chase for his Game.

8. It is not lawful for any Man to Hunt in the Pourallee, at such time as a Forester is serving a Warrant within that part of the Forest, that borders upon such Pourallee; Nor at such time as any Nobleman is Hunting in such part of the Forest; (If such Pourallee Man have notice given him thereof) That the Game in the Forest may not be disturbed at such times.

9. And lastly, No Pourallee-Man, or other person may Hunt or Chase any unseasonable Deer, viz. Deer of Antler, in the Winter, or Does, and other winter Deer, in the Summer; For when they are out of season they are unwholsome, and not fit for the use of Man. Besides (as hath been said before) they are commonly not able to stand Course, or shift

for

for themselves, by making their Escape into the Forest again: And therefore the Laws of the Forest do utterly forbid the Coursing, Hunting, & killing them in the Pourallees, or elsewhere, while they are out of Season.

And these are the Laws and Ordinances of the Pourallees made in the time of Henry the Second, at Woodstock, which though they seem chiefly to respect disorderly Hunting in the Pourallees, yet they might be more properly called the Laws of the Forest (in as much as they tend chiefly to the preservation of the Wild Beasts of the Forest) if it were not for their coherence and dependance upon the Common, and Statute Laws of this Realm, being indeed grounded upon the Reason of the Common Law.

Of the Officers belonging to the Pourallees, called Rangers.

FOrasmuch as the Pourallees were once, and in some sense still are Forest, therefore it was necessary to have Officers there to Attend, and take upon them the Charge of the preservation of the wild Beasts of the Forest, that should happen to make their Escape out of the Forest, and come therein; for otherwise the Laws of the Pourallees could not be executed, and so the Forest would be destroyed by the Pourallee-Men in a short time. For which reason Rangers were first appointed; Who, notwithstanding they are not Officers in the Forest, yet are Officers considerable of, and to the Forest; for all Officers in the Forest have charge of the Vert, and Venison of the Forest, but a Ranger hath (no charge of Vert, but) only charge of

Venison coming out of the Forest into the Pourallees, his place of Charge, from whence his Office is to Conduct the same back again into the Forest.

This Officer is appointed by the King, or his Chief Justice in Eyre, and made by Letters Patents under the Great Seal, with a Fee commonly of 20, 30, or 40 li. or more by the year, payable out of the Exchequer, as also certain Fee Deer both red and fallow to be taken annually at proper seasons, out of the Forest.

The Substance of his Oath is this.

To Rechase, and with his Hounds drive back the Wild Beasts of the Forest, as often as they range out of the same into his Pourallee.

To present all unlawful Hunting, and Hunters, of wild Beasts of Venary and Chase, as well within the Pourallees as within the Forest.

To present those, and all other Offences at the next Court of Attachments, or Swanimote, which shall first happen.

These Officers, called Rangers belong only unto such Pourallees as were once the Woods and Lands of the Subject and were afterwards disafforested again, and so became Pourallees; but there be some Forests in England, that never had any inlargement by new Afforestations, and therefore have no Pourallees at this day; So that there can be no Rangers belonging unto them because they have no Pourallees. For which reason, it appears by a case in Pasch. Anno 7 H. 6. fol. 35. pl. 14. That in such Forests, where there be no Pourallees for the wild Beasts to Escape into out of the Forest, nor Rangers to rechase them back again into the Forest, there

there the Foresters may follow the Wild Beasts out of the Forest, and rechase them into the Forest. But where there be Pourallees, and Rangers there the Foresters cannot do so, unless that such Foresters do follow them with fresh pursuit within their view.

How and where Offences in the Pourallees shall be tried, and punished.

In regard all Offences committed within the Pourallees, contrary to the Laws aforesaid, are accounted trespasses of the Forest, as being injuries done to the Wild Beasts of the Forest, therefore the Rangers are bound both by their Oath and Office to look after the same; And to present as well such Offences, as Offendors, at the next Court of Attachments, holden for the Forest, next adjoyning unto the Pourallee wherein the Offence was committed, or else at the next Court of Swanimote, or Justice Seat, which shall first happen to be kept for that Forest. To the intent that such Offendors may be tryed for such their Offences at the Court of Swanimote before the Verderors, Foresters, Regardors, Agistors and other Ministers of the Forest, according to the Laws and Ordinances of the Forest.

After which Tryal, and Conviction thereupon, for any the Offences aforesaid, The Offendors so Convicted, are to be bound over, with sufficient Sureties, to be of the Good Behaviour towards the Forest, till the next Court of Justice-Seat to be holden for that Forest, upon which the Pourallee-borders, wherein the Offence was committed; where they are to be punished at the Discretion of the Lord

Chief Justice, or other Justice in Eyre of the Forest, by Fine or Imprisonment, or both: For no Judgment can be given, or Judicial Process awarded in the Court of Swanimote, for that is peculiarly reserved unto the Lord Chief Justice, or other Justices in Eyre of the Forest.

And Note, That at every Court of Swanimote, all Presentments of the Foresters, for any Offence committed within the Forest, or the Pourallees thereof, are there to be delivered to the Jury, who are Sworn to Inquire of the Truth of those Matters; and if they find such Presentments to be true, then the Offenders shall stand Convicted thereof in Law, but shall not be admitted to Traverse any such Presentment, because it is contrary to the Assises of the Forest.

Nevertheless, all Presentments made by the Foresters and Jury, against any Person for an Offence committed in the Forest, or any Pourallee belonging thereunto, before the Lord Chief Justice, or other Justice in Eyre of the Forest, at the Justice-Seat or Court of Grand Sessions of the Forest, are traversable by the Assizes of the Forest, as was Adjudged by the whole Court, at the Justice-seat holden at Waltham-Cross in Essex, before the Earl of Bedford, then Lord Chief Justice in Eyre of all the Forests on this side Trent, in July in the 24th Year of the Reign of Queen Elizabeth; Where certain Offences were presented at the said Court of Justice Seat by the Foresters and Jury against divers Offenders, which were all Traversed, because they were not first presented at the Court of Swanimote, and found by the Jury there, and Convicted, by which means they become Matter of Record, and therefore not Traversable.

Moreover

Moreover, there is also a Method of Proceeding against Offendors in Forests, and Pourallees by way of Outlawry, which is after this manner: If any person be presented, for any Offence committed within the Forest, or the Pourallees thereof, at either of the Courts of Attachments, or Swanimote, and such Offendor do dwell in a Foreign County, out of the Forest, so that he cannot be Attached by the Foresters to answer the same, then he shall be Outlawed for such his Offence, according to the Proceedings of Outlawries at Common-Law; That is to say, He must be Exacted, or called to appear and render his Body, at five several County-Courts, and then when he is quinto exactus, or the fifth time called to appear, the Coroner of the County where such Proceedings are made, will, for such his Contempt in not appearing, pronounce him Outlaw'd, that is, out of the Protection of the Law, and so such an Offendor shall be taken as an Outlaw whersoever he can be found, and shall forfeit all his Goods and Chattels to the King, and the Profits of his Lands, by Inquisition of the Sheriff, and the Coroners.

Lastly, We shall set down such of the Articles of the Charge given to the Jury, at the Court of Swanimote, as relate to the Offences committed in the Pourallees.

1. You shall Inquire if all those that owe suit to this Court, be here, and those that be not, you shall present their Names.

2. If there be any that maketh any great, or small Closes next to the Borders of the Forest, and Inlargeth his own Ground, by setting out his Hedges and Ditches, whereby the Forest is streightned.

3. If

3. If any Person hath lately burnt any Heath, Fern, or Ling, within any place adjoyning to the Forest, you shall Present the same.

4. If there be any Person that hath Hunted the King's Deer within Seven Miles about the Forest, at any time within Forty days next after the King's Hunting therein, or Forty days before it was so Hunted, for these Reasons; First, Because the King before his Hunting, or his Commission granted to kill the Deer, might have a sight of them, where they lie at rest in their Haunts; And Secondly, because the Deer, after the King's Hunting, being driven out of the Forest, by the force of the Hounds, and Noise of Men, and Horns, may afterwards resort to their Haunts in the Forest: If there be any such, you shall let us know who they are.

5. If any Person hath any Great Park, or Great Close within Three Miles of the Forest, that have Sultaries, or Great Gaps, called Deer-Leaps, to receive Deer into them, when they be in Chasing, and when they are in them, cannot get out again.

6. If any Person hath slain any of the King's Deer within the Forest, without Warrant, you shall present his Name, and what Deer was so slain, and within whose Walk the same was done.

7. If any Person that had a Warrant for Deer, hath taken more than his Warrant did mention, how many, what Deer, and of what season (for a Buck is out of season in Winter, and a Doe in Summer) and whether he took the Deer, contained in his Warrant, without sight of the Verderors or Foresters, or not.

8. If

8. If any person keeps any Hounds, or Dogs, and Riding, or Going through the Forest, as the high-ways do lie, taketh not up his Dogs, but suffereth them to Chase, and Kill the King's Deer, whether the Death of such Deer be within the Forest, or without, you shall present the Name of the Person, and the Deer so killed.

9. If any Person hath taken any Deer with Nets, Cords, Ropes, Double Pater nosters, Buckstalls, or other Engin, and who keeps any such Engins within the Forest, or near it, you shall present their Names.

10. If any Person Chase, Course, or set any Net, or Engin, though he kill not, you shall present his Name, and Fact, and where and when the same was done.

11. If any Person come into the Forest, and there kill any Fox, Hare, Cony, or any other Beast, or Fowl of Warren, without Authority, the same is Punishable as a Breach of the King's Free Chase, and therefore you shall let us know the same.

12. If there be any Person that dwelleth about the Borders of the Forest, which keeps any strange Greyhound, and waiteth when the King's Deer are out of the Forest, and Foreset-teth such Deer, so that they Return Home, and by that means are hurt, or slain, you shall Present who he is, and who owns the Greyhound, that they may be punished for the same accordingly.

13. If there be any Person within the Jurisdiction of this Court, that keeps any Hounds, or Greyhounds, and is not qualified so to do by the Laws and Statutes of this Kingdom, who Hunteth in the Pourallee of his own authority, you shall Present his Name, the Time when

when he so Hunted, and what Damage he did to the King in diminishing the Game at such Hunting.

14. If any Pourallee Hunter Hunts oftner than thrice in a Week, or before the Sun-rising, or after the Suns setting, or with other Company than his own Menial Servants, or on Sundays, or in the Fawning, or Fence Month, which is fifteen days before, and Fifteen days after Midsummer.

15. If any Pourallee Hunter at any time forestall the King's Deer, whether it be with dead Hay, or with Quick; for they ought to let-run at the Tail of the Deer, otherwise it is Finable, as if he Hunted in the Forest.

16. If any Person hath made any Coppice, or Incloſure of the Pourallee, in hindring the King's Deer from getting into the Forest, or hath Impounded the Beasts of any Commoner out of the County, and not put them in open Pound, in the County, whether it be in the time of Pownage, or not, you shall give us notice thereof.

An

An Abſtract

Of all the *Statute*-LAWS, from *Magna-Charta* to this Time, made for the Preſervation of the Game of Hunting, Hawking, Fiſhing and Fowling, in Foreſts, Chaſes, Parks, Warrens and Fiſheries, in ENGLAND and WALES.

Charters and Ordinances of the Foreſt.

ALL Foreſts Afforeſted by H. 2. ſhall be viewed by Lawful Men, and if he hath Afforeſted any other Woods but his own Demeſne, whereby any is prejudiced, they ſhall be Diſafforeſted; ſaving Common of Herbage, and other things within the Foreſt, to ſuch as have been accuſtomed to enjoy them. Chart. de Foreſta, 9 Hen. 3. Cap. 1.

2. None ſhall come before the Juſtices of our Foreſt, by Common Summons, which dwell out of the Foreſt, unleſs they be Impleaded there, or be Sureties for others that are Attached for the Foreſt, Cap. 2.

3. All Foreſts, ſo converted from Woods by Rich. 1. or King John, ſhall be Diſafforeſted, unleſs they be our Demeſne Woods, Cap. 3.

4. All

4. All Prelates, Peers, Knights, and other Freeholders, having Woods in Forests, shall enjoy them, as they did at the Coronation of H. 2. acquitted of all Purpresture, Wasts and Assarts made before the 2d Year of the Coronation of H. 3. and they that make them henceforwards shall be answerable to the King for the same, Cap. 4.

5. Rangers of the Forests shall exercise their Offices, as was used at the Coronation of H. 2. and not otherwise, Cap. 5.

6. Lawing of Dogs shall be made in Forests, from 3 Years to 3 Years, by the View and Testimony of Lawful Men, and not otherwise, and he that hath not his Dog Lawed shall be Amerced 3 s. Also an Ox shall be taken for Lawing of Dogs: and it shall be done by the usual Assize, viz. That three Claws of the Fore-foot be cut off by the skin. Yet such Lawing shall not be but where it hath been used from the Coronation of H. 2. Cap. 6.

7. No Forester or Bedle shall make Scotall, or gather Garb, Oats, Corn, Lamb or Pig, but by the sight, and upon the Oath of the Twelve Rangers when they shall make their Regard. And there shall be so many Foresters Assigned for Keeping the Forest, as shall be thought sufficient for the same, Cap. 7.

8. There shall be only three Courts of Swanimote kept in the Year, viz. one 15 days before Michaelmas, another about Martinmas, and the third 15 days before Midsummer. At the first two of which, none shall appear by Distress, but the Foresters and Verderers, and Gestakers; and at the others, only the Foresters and Verderers. Howbeit the Foresters and Verderers shall meet every 40 days, to see the Attachments of the Forests, as well for Green Hue, as Hunting;

and

and the Swainmotes shall not be kept but in the Counties where they have been used to be kept, Cap. 8.

9. Every one having a Wood in the Forest, may Agist it, and take his Pawnage there at his pleasure; he may drive his Hogs through the King's Woods, or elsewhere for that purpose; and if they lie all Night in the Forest, he shall not be question'd for it, Cap. 9.

10. If Deer be killed no man shall loose either life or Member for it, but shall be fined, if he have any thing, if not, he shall be imprisoned a Year and a Day, and (if he can find good Sureties) shall then be delivered, but if not, he shall abjure the Realm. Cap. 10.

11. A Prelate, Peer of the Realm, being sent for by the King, in coming, and returning may kill a Deer, or two in the Forest through which he passes. Dowbeit it must not be done privily, but in the view of the Forester, if present, but if absent, by causing one to blow a Horn for him. Cap. 11.

12. Every Freeman may within the Forest, (upon his own ground) make a Mill, Spring, Marlpit, Dike, or Arable Ground, without inclosing such arable, so it be not done to the nusance of his Neighbours. Cap. 12.

13. Every Freeman may have his Ayries of Hawks, Eagles, or Herons, and also Honey, found in his Woods within the Forest. Cap. 13.

14. No Chiminage, or Toll shall be taken in Forests but by a Forester in Fee, that farmes his Bailywick, and only of such as buy their Bushes, Timber, Bark or Coal to sell it again, viz. 2d. for a Cart and a peny for an Horse to be taken half yearly, and it shall only be taken where used to be taken, and not elsewhere. Neither shall any

any Chiminage be taken of such as carry burthens of Bushes, Barke, or Coal, albeit they sell it, unless they take them out of the Kings Woods. Cap. 14.

15. All persons outlawed for Trespass in Forests since the time of H. 2. unto the Coronation of H. 3. shall be released, finding sureties to offend no more. Cap. 15.

16. No Constable, Castellan or Bailiff, shall hold Pleas of Forests for Green Hue or Hunting, but the Forester shall attach such Pleas, and present them to the Verderors of the Provinces, who shall enroll them and present them inclosed under their Seals unto the chief Justice of the Forest, when he comes into those parts to hold Pleas of the Forest, to be determined before him. Cap. 16.

17. The King grants these Liberties of the Forest to all Men, saving to all other persons the Liberties and Free customs in Forests, Warrens, and other places, which they have formerly enjoyed. Cap. 17.

18. The Lords demanded the imprisonment of Trespassers in their Parks, and Ponds, but it was denied by the King and so deferred. Merton. Cap. 11. 20 H. 3.

19. Trespassers in Parks and Ponds shall give treble damages to the party grieved, suffer three years Imprisonment, be fined at the Kings Pleasure, and give Surety never to offend in the like manner again. And if they cannot find Surety, they shall abjure the Realm; or, being Fugitive, shall be Outlawed. Westm. 1. Cap. 20. 3 E. 1.

20. A Forester, Parker or Warrener, shall not be questioned for killing a Trespassor, who (after the Peace Cried unto him) will not yield himself, so it be not done out of some other former malice. Stat. 21 E. 1.

21 Those

21. Those to whom the King hath granted Purlieu (whereby their Woods are Disafforested) shall be quit of the Charge of the Forest, but then they are to have no Common there. Howbeit such as are willing to return their Woods into the Forest, shall enjoy Common and other Easements as they did before. Ordinatio Forestæ. 33 E. 1. Stat. 5.

22. Presentment of Trespasses, Green Hue, and Hunting in Forests, shall be made at the next Swainmote, by the Foresters within their several Bailiwicks, before the Foresters, Verderers, Regardors, Agistors, and other Ministers of the Forest, and they shall be also enquired of by the Oaths as well of Knights, as other Lawful Men (not suspected) of the nearest parts where the Trespasses were committed: and the Presentments so enquired of shall be solemnly confirmed, and Sealed by the Seales of the said Ministers: Ordinatio de Forestæ, 34 E. 1. cap. 1.

23. If any Officer die, or be otherwise hindred, that he cannot Present at the Swanimote, the Justice of the Forest, or his Lieutenant, shall put another in his Place, that the Indictment may be made nevertheless by all, in Form aforesaid; also all Officers which are to be placed, shall be put as hath been used, except the Verderers, who shall be Ordained by Election, or Writ, Cap. 2.

24. No Minister of the Forest shall be put upon any Assize, Jury, or Inquest to be taken without the Forest, Cap. 3.

25. No Officer of the Forest shall Surcharge the Forest, on pain to be Imprisoned by the Justice of the Forest, or his Lieutenant; and he by whom they were Placed shall be also punished at the King's Pleasure. At every Swanimote, Enquiry shall be made of Surchargers, Foresters,

kers, and other Ministers there, and of Oppressions done to the People, Cap. 4.

26. Trespasses committed in Grounds Disafforested shall be pardoned, yet so as the Hedges and Ditches shall be cast down, and removed: saving the King's Arrentations which shall remain according to the Assize of the Forest: also the Wood Felled in the Forest shall be carried away, but that standing, though Sold, shall be preserved. Cap. 5.

27. The Justice, or his Lieutenant, shall take Fines and Amerciaments of Persons Indicted for Trespasses committed there, and shall not tarry for the Eyre. Commoners restrained from their Commons, by the Perambulation, shall be restored to them again, saving the King's Arrentations, as is aforesaid. Cap. 6.

28. None shall be taken or Imprisoned for Vert or Venison, unless he be taken with the Manner, or else Indicted according to the form of the Statute 34 E. 1. And then the Warden of the Forest shall let him to Mainprize, until the Eyre of the Forest, without taking any thing for his Deliverance. And if the Warden will not do so, he shall have a Writ out of the Chancery, of old ordained for persons Indicted, to be Bailed till the Eyre. Anno 1 E. 3. Sat. 1. cap. 8.

29. If the Warden, after the Writ served, shall not deliver the person Indicted to Mainprize, the Plaintiff shall have a Writ out of the Chancery, directed to the Sheriff, to Attach the Warden, to Answer his Default before the King at a certain Day, and then the Sheriff, (the Verderors being called in) shall deliver the Person Indicted by good Mainprize, in the presence of the said Verderors, and shall deliver the Names of the Main-pernors to the same

Verderors

Verderors, to Answer in the Eyre before the Justices. Ibid.

30. If the Chief Warden be thereof Attainted, he shall be Awarded to pay treble Damniages to the Party aggrieved, committed to Prison, and Ransomed at the King's Will ib.

31. The Great Charter, and also that of the Forest are confirmed, Anno 1 E. 3. Stat. 3. cap. 1.

32. The Perambulations of Forests shall continue as they were bounded in the time of E 1. and every County shall have a Charter thereof. And where they are not bounded, it shall be now done, and a Charter thereof shall be also made thereof. Ibid.

33. Every Man having Wood within the Forest, may take House-boot, and Hay boot in his said Wood, without being Attached for the same by the Ministers of the Forest, so that it be done by the View of the Foresters, Stat. 1 E. 3. Stat. 2 cap. 2.

34. No Forester, or any other Minister there, shall gather any Victuals, or other thing, by colour of his Office, but what is due of old right, Stat. 25 E. 3. Stat. 5. cap. 22.

35. A Jury for the Trial of a Trespass within a Forest shall give up their Verdict where they received their Charge, and shall not by Menace, or otherwise, be constrained to give their Verdict of a Trespass done in the Forest, otherwise then their Conscience will clearly inform them, Stat. 7 R. 2, 3.

36. No Officer of the Forest shall Imprison any without due Indictment, or per main ouvre with his hand at the Work (that is, being taken with the Manner, or Trespassing in the Forest) nor shall constrain any to make Obligation of Ransome against his Will, and the Assise of the Forest, on pain to pay the Party

grieved double Damages, or to be Ransomed at the King's will, Stat. 7 R. 2. 3.

37. If any having Woods in his own Ground within any Forest, Chase, or Purlieu, shall Cut, or cause the same, (or any part thereof) to be Cut, by the King's License (where such Forest, Chase, or Purlieu are his) or without License (where they belong to others) he may keep them several, and Inclosed during Seven years next after their felling, Anno 22 E. 4. cap. 7.

38. Every Justice of the King's Forests, Chases, and Parks, by Writing, under the Seal of his Office, may make as many Deputies as he please, which shall have like Power as the Justice himself hath, Anno 32 H. 8. cap. 35.

39. An Act for the certainty of the Forests and Meers, Limits and Bounds thereof, Anno 16 Car. 1. cap. 16.

Of Bows, and Guns, and Shooting at Game.

1. NOne shall Shoot with, or keep in his House any Cross-bow, Hand-gun, Hagbut (Hakebut, or Haquebut) or Demihake, unless his Lands be of the value of 100 l. per annum, on pain to forfeit 10 l. for every such Offence, Anno 33 H. 8. cap. 6.

2. None shall Shoot with, or have any* Hand-gun under the length of one Yard, nor Hagbut,

---

* *Note*, The word *Hand-gun* includes a *Dag*, though Invented since the Statute, and the word *Cross-bow* includes a *Stonebow*, and a *Hag but* is a *Hand-Gun*, Three Quarters of a Yard long. Co. 5. *Part* 71, 72.

or

or Demihake under the Length of Three quarters of a Yard, on pain to forfeit 10 l. And it shall be lawful for any Man, having Lands of 100 l. per annum, to seise any such Gun, or any Cross-bow used or kept contrary to the Form of this Statute, but then he ought to break them within 20 Days after, on pain of 40 s. Idem Statut.

3. None shall Travel with a Cross-bow bent, or Gun charged (except in time of War) or Shoot within a Quarter of a Mile of a City, Borough, or Market-Town (except for the Defence of himself and his House, or at a Dead-Mark) on pain of 10 l. Idem Statut.

4. None shall command his Servant to Shoot in any Gun, or Cross-bow, (except at a Dead-Mark, or in time of War) on pain of 10 l. Idem Statut.

5. The Penalties above-said shall be divided between the King and the Party who is the Prosecutor. Idem Statut.

6. Howbeit the Followers of Lords Spiritual or Temporal, Knights, Esquires, Gentlemen, and the Inhabitants of Cities, Boroughs, or Market-Towns, may keep in their Houses, Use, and Shoot (but at a Dead Mark only) with Guns, not under the Length above-said. So may the Owner of a Ship for the defence thereof; and also he that dwells two furlongs distant from a Town, or within five Miles from the Sea-Coast, and this last may Shoot at any Wild Beast, or Fowl, save only Deer, Heron, Shovelard, Pheasant, Partridge, Wild-Swan, or Wild Elke. Idem Stat.

8. It shall be lawful for any person to convey the party offending before the next Justice of the Peace, who, upon the Examination and Proof, shall have power to Commit him to

Prison, there to remain till he hath satisfied the Penalty, which in this case, shall be divided between the King and the Party that so takes the Offender. Idem Stat.

9. Every Placart granted by the King, which expresseth not at what Beasts or Fowl the Grantee shall Shoot, and where the Grantee entreth not into Recognizance of 30 l. in the Chancery, to Shoot at no other, shall be Adjudged void. Idem Statut.

10. Justices of Peace in Sessions, and Stewards of Leets, have Power to hear and determine the said Offences. Idem Stat.

11. When the Conviction is in Sessions, the whole Forfeiture is to be levied to the King's use. When in a Leet, the one half is the King's, and the other half ought to be divided between the Lord, and the Prosecutor. Idem Stat.

12. Here, if a Jury shall willingly conceal any thing, the Justices, or Steward have power to Impannel another Jury, by whom, if they first be found guilty of Concealment, they shall forfeit 20 l. a piece, viz. to the King, if it be in Sessions, but if in a Leet, then the one halfe to the Lord, and the other half to the Prosecutor. Idem Statut.

13. Forfeitures arising by this Act, shall be sued for, viz. by the King, within one Year, and by a common person within six Months, otherwise they shall be lost. Idem Statut.

14. A Servant, upon Command, may use his Master's Cross bow, or Gun, (not prohibited by this Act) to he Shoot at no Fowle, Deer, or other Game, and may also, by a License in Writing, carry it to any place to be mended. Idem Statut.

15. None under the degree of a Baron shall Shoot with any Hand-Gun, within any City, or Town;

Town; or Shoot at any Fowl whatſoever, with any Hail ſhot, on pain of Ten Pound, and Three Months Impriſonment. Idem Stat.

16. This Act ſhall not reſtrain thoſe, who, according to the value of their Land, are Authorized to ſhoot by the 33 H. 8. 6. ſo that they forbear to uſe any Hail ſhot; and all others that preſume to Shoot, ſhall preſent their own Names, viz. (in a Corporation to the Mayor, or Head-Officer, and in the Country to the next Juſtice of the Peace) on pain of 20 s. and the ſaid Juſtice, or Head-Officer is to ſee them Recorded at the next Seſſions on like pain of 20s. which Forfeitures are to be divided between the King and the Proſecutor. Idem Stat.

Of Hunting, Hawking, Fowling and Fiſhing.

17. If any ſhall Hunt within Foreſts, Parks or Warrens in the Night-time, or Diſguiſed, one of the King's Council, or a Juſtice of Peace, to whom Information thereof ſhall be made, ſhall by his Warrant cauſe the Offender to be brought before himſelf, or ſome other Councellor, or Juſtice of the Peace, to be examined, where, if he conceal the Fact, ſuch Hunting ſhall be deemed Felony; but being confeſſed, the offence is only Fineable at the next General Seſſions. And here a Reſcous of the Execution of any ſuch Warrant ſhall be alſo deemed Felony. Anno 1 H. 7. cap. 7. Hunting.

Of Hunting, Hawking, Fowling and Fishing.

Hawking. Fowling. 1. NOne shall take Pheasants or Partridges with Engines in anothers ground without License on pain of 10l. to be divided betwixt the owner of the ground and the Prosecutor. Anno 11 H. 7. cap. 17.

2. None shall take out of the nest any Eggs of Falcon, Gosshawk, Lanner, or Swan on pain of a Year and a Days Imprisonment, and to incur a fine at the King's pleasure, to be divided betwixt the King and the owner of the ground, where the Eggs shall be so taken. Idem Statut.

3. None shall have any Hawk of English breed, called an Eyesse, Gosshawk, Tassel, Lanner, Lanneret, or Falcon, on pain to forfeit the same to the King. Idem Statut.

4. He that brings an Eyesse Hawk from beyond the Sea, shall have a certificate under the Customers Seal where he Lands, or if out of Scotland, then under the Seal of the Lord Warden, or his Lieutenant, testifying that she is a foreign Hawk upon the like pain of forfeiting the Hawk. Idem Statut.

5. None shall take, kill, or scare away any of the Hawks aboveſaid from the Coverts where they use to breed, on pain of 10l. to be recovered before Justices of Peace, and divided betwixt the King and the Prosecutor. Idem Statut.

6. None shall kill or take any Pheasants or Partridges with any Net or Engine in the night time on pain to forfeit for every Pheasant 20s. and for every Partridge 10s. which if the Offender pay not in ten days, he shall suffer a Monthes imprisonment without Bail, and enter into Bond

(for

(for two years only) with good Sureties before some Justice of Peace, not to offend in the like kind. Anno 33 Eliz. cap. 10.

7. The Forfeiture aforesaid shall be recover'd in any Court of Record and divided betwixt the Lord of the Mannor and the Prosecutor. But in case the Lord shall dispense with the Offender, the poor of the Parish are to have his Moiety, to be recover'd by any of the Churchwardens. Idem Statut.

8. None shall Hawk or Hunt with his Spaniels in Standing Corn, or before it is Shacked, (except in his own ground, or with the owners consent) on pain to forfeit 40 s. to the owner of the ground as abovesaid. Idem Statut.

9. Justices of Assize, Justice of Peace in Sessions and Stewards in Leets, have power to hear and determine these Offences and one Justice of Peace may examine such an Offender, and bind him over with good Sureties to answer it at the next General Sessions, if the Offence be not before determined at the Assizes, or in a Leet. Idem Statut.

10. This Act shall not restrain Fowlers which unwillingly take Pheasants or Partridges, and forthwith let them go at large. Idem Statut.

11. Every person convicted by his own confession or by two witnesses upon Oath, before two or more Justices of the Peace, to have killed or taken any Pheasant, Partridge, Pigeon, Duck, Heron, Hare, or other Game, or to have taken or destroyed the Egges of Pheasants, Partridges or Swans, shall by the said Justices be committed to prison without Baile, unless he immediately pay to the use of the poor where the Offence was committed or he be apprehended 20 s. for every Fowl, Hare, or Egg, so killed, taken, or destroyed.

And

And after one Months committment shall before two or more Justices of the Peace be bound with two sufficient sureties in 20l. a piece, with condition never to offend in the like kind. Anno 1 Jac. cap. 27.

12. Every person convicted, as abovesaid, to keep a Greyhound, Dog, or Net, to kill or take Deer, Hare, Pheasant, or Partridge, unless he have inheritance of 10l. per annum, a Lease for Life of 30l. per annum, or be worth 200l. in goods, or otherwise be the Son of a Knight or Heir apparent of an Esquire, shall suffer Imprisonment as aforesaid, unless he pay 40s. to the use abovesaid. Idem Statut.

13. None shall sell, or buy to sell again any Deer, Hare, Pheasant or Partridge (except by them bought up, or from beyond Sea) on pain to forfeit for every Deer 40s. Hare 10s. Pheasant 20s. and Partridge 10s. to be divided between the Prosecutor, and the Poor of the Parish where the Offence is committed. Idem Statut.

14. Justices of Assize, and of Peace in Sessions, and two or more out of Sessions have power to hear and determine these Offences. Idem Statut.

15. None shall by any former Law suffer punishment for the same Offences for which he shall be punished by this Law. Idem Statut.

16. This Act shall not restrain one Licensed in open Sessions to kill Hawks-meat, but then he shall there become bound by Recognisance in 20l. not to kill any of the Game prohibited by this Law, nor to Shoot within 600 paces of an Hearnery, within 100 paces of a Pigeon-house, or in a Park, Forest, or Chace, whereof his Master is not owner or keeper, and the Clerk of the peace his Fee for such a License is 12d. Idem Statut.

17. Every

17. Every person convicted by his own confession or by two witnesses upon Oath, before two or more Justices of the Peace, to have Hawked at, or destroyed any Pheasant or Partridge betwixt the 1st of July, and the last of August, shall suffer one Months Imprisonment without bail, unless he forthwith pay, to the use of the poor where the Offence was committed, or be apprehended, 40 s. for every time so Hawking, and 20 s. for every Pheasant or Partridge so destroyed or taken. Anno 7. Jacobi primi cap. 11.

18. He that shall be punished by this Law, shall not be punished again by any other. Idem Statut.

19. It shall be lawful for the Lord of a Manor or one having Inheritance of 40 l. per annum Freehold of 80 l. per Annum or goods worth 400 l. or their Servants Licensed by them, to take Pheasants or Partridges within their own grounds or Precincts, so they do it in the day time and only betwixt Michaelmas and Christmas. Idem Statut.

20. This Offence shall be prosecuted within 6 Months after it shall be committed. Idem Statut.

21. If any of mean condition shall be convicted by his own confession, or by one witness upon Oath, before two or more Justices of the Peace, to have killed or taken any Pheasant or Partridge, he shall be committed to prison without Bail, unless he forthwith pay to the use of the poor 20 s. for every Pheasant or Partridge, so killed or taken, and also become bound before one or more Justices of the Peace in a Recognisance of 20 l. never to Offend in the like kind again. Idem Statut.

22. Every Constable or Headborough with a Warrant from two or more Justices of Peace, hath power to search the Houses of persons suspected to

have

have any setting Dogs or Nets for the taking of Pheasants or Partridges, and the Dogs or Nets there found, to kill or cut in pieces at pleasure as things forfeited unto the said Officers. Idem Statut.

1. No Lay-man who hath not Lands of 40 s. per An: nor Clerk who hath not 10 l. Revenue per An: shall have or keep any Greyhound, Hound, Dog, Ferret, Net, or Engine, to destroy Deer, Hares, Conies, or any other Gentleman's Game, on pain of one whole years Imprisonment, which Justices of Peace shall have power to inflict. Anno: 13. R. 2. cap. 13.

2. None shall keep any Deer-hayes or Buck-stalls save in his own Forest or Park, on pain to forfeit for every Month they are so kept 40 s. Neither shall any Stalk with any Bush or Beast to any Deer, except in his own Forest or Park, on pain of 10 l. Anno 19 H. 7. cap. 11.

3. None shall take an old Heron without his own grounds on pain of 6 s. 8 d. nor a young Heron on pain of 10 s. for which forfeitures every Man that will may sue by Action of Debt or otherwise. Idem Statut.

4. And two Justices of Peace in Session may examine the Offenders aforesaid, and commit them to prison till they have satisfied the said forfeitures whereof the said Justices are to have the 10th part. Idem. Statut.

Hunting. 5. None shall trace, destroy or kill any Hare in the Snow; and Justices of Peace in Sessions, and Stewards in Leets have power to enquire of such Offenders, and shall assess upon every such Offender 6 s. 8 d. which penalty assessed in Sessions shall go to the King, but in a Leet to the Lord thereof Statut. 14, & 15 H. 8. 10.

6. None

6. None shall kill or chase any Deer or Conies in any Park or incloſed ground, without the owners Licenſe, on pain of three months imprisonment, to pay treble Damages to the Party grieved, to be aſſeſſed by the Juſtice, before whom he ſhall be convict, and after the ſaid three months expired, to be bound to the good behaviour 7 Years, though the party grieved may releaſe them. Idem Statut.

7. The Juſtices in Seſſions have power to hear and determine theſe Offences, and have power alſo upon ſatisfaction to releaſe the behaviour, Idem Statut.

8. If any perſon not having 40 l. per annum in Lands, or 200 l. in Goods, ſhall uſe any Gun or Croſs bow, Ferret, Dog, Net, or other Engine, for the purpoſes aforeſaid, it ſhall be lawful for any perſon worth 100 l. per annum: to take ſuch Gun, &c. from any ſuch perſon, and convert the ſame to his own uſe. Idem Statut.

9. This Act ſhall not extend to any Park or incloſed ground hereafter to be made or uſed for Deer or Conies without the King's Licenſe. Idem Statut.

10. It ſhall be in the Election of the party grieved, whether he will take for Satisfaction 10 l. in money, or treble damages. Statut. 7. Jac. 13.

11. They that kill or take away red or fallow Deer, without conſent of the owner, if convicted by confeſſion or Oath of one Witneſs, and proſecuted within 6 Months ſhall forfeit 20 l. to be levied by diſtreſs; One moiety whereof to the owner, and the other to the Informer. And for want of ſuch diſtreſs ſhall be committed to the Houſe of Correction, or the common Goal for one year, nor diſcharged till Security be given for their good behaviour for one Year after. Anno 13 Car. 2. cap. 20.

12. None

12. None punished by virtue of this Law shall incur the penalty of any other Law for the same Offence. Idem Statut.

13. Lords of Mannors or other Royalties, not under the Degree of an Esquire, may depute one or more Game-keepers, who may seise all Guns, Dogs, Bows, &c. and by warrant from a Justice of Peace, may search the Houses of such persons so prohibited as shall be suspected to keep such Guns, Dogs, Bows, &c. and seise them for the Lord of the Mannor, or destroy them. Anno 22 and 23 Car. 2. cap. 25.

14. Persons having Estates under 100 l. per annum, and that are not Sons or Heirs of Esquires or other persons of higher Degree, are declared to be persons not allowed to keep Guns, Bows, &c. Idem. Statut.

15. If any one enter a Cony-warren though not enclosed, and chase and kill any Conies without the owners consent, he shall forfeit treble Damages, and be imprisoned three Months, and till he find Sureties for his good behaviour. Idem Statut.

16. They that kill or take Conies in the night time upon the borders of Warrens, or on other grounds used for keeping Conies, shall make such recompence as shall be appointed by the Justice before whom Convicted, not exceeding 10 s. which shall go to the Poor of the Parish, and in default of Payment, to the House of Correction: They that use Snares, Harepipes, and other Engines, are liable to the same Penalties. Idem Statut.

Fishing. 17. If any Person shall take any Fish without consent of the Owner of the Water, and be thereof Convict, he shall give such Recompence, and in such time as the Justice shall appoint, not exceeding treble

ble Damages, and pay down presently such Sum as the Justice shall think fit, not exceeding 10s. In default of payment the same to be levied by distress and sale of goods, by warrant of such Justice, and for want of a Distress, the Offender to be committed, not exceeding a Months time, unless he enter into Bond with one or more Sureties, to the party injured, not exceeding ten pounds never to Offend in the like manner. Idem Statut.

18. The Justice before whom such Offender shall be convict, may destroy all the Engines about such Offender, when he shall be apprehended or taken. Idem Statut.

19. Persons aggrieved by any judgment by virtue of this Act, may appeal to the next Quarter Sessions, whose order shall be final. Idem Statut.

20. This Act shall not abridge any Royalty or Prerogative-royal of the King, nor any part of the Forest Laws of this Realm. Idem Statut.

1. None shall take Salmons betwixt the 8th of September and the middle of November, nor young Salmon with Nets or other Engines at Mill pools, betwixt the midst of April and the 24th of June, on pain of having their Nets and Engines burnt for the first Offence, for the 2d to suffer a Quarter of a years imprisonment, and after to have their Punishment encreased according to the Trespass: and in fresh waters, Overseers of this Statute shall be assigned, and sworn to inquire of the Offenders. West. 2. cap. 17. Anno 13 E. 1.

2. No

2. No Fisher shall use any Engine, by which the Fry of Fish may be Destroyed, upon the Pains mentioned in the Stat. of Westm. 2. cap. 47.

3. None shall use any Net, or Engine, to destroy the Spawn or Fry of Fish, or take Salmons, or Trouts out of Season, or Pikes shorter than ten Inches, Salmons than 16, Trouts than 8, and Barbles than 12, or shall use any Engine to take Fish other than Angle or Net, or a Tramel of two Inches and an half Meth, on pain to forfeit 20s. and the Fish so wrongfully taken with the Net or Engine wrongfully used. Anno 1 Eliz. cap. 17.

4. All persons having Jurisdiction of Conservancy upon Streams, or Waters, and Lords of Leets, have power, upon the Oaths of 12 Men, to hear and determine these Offences, and shall have all the Forfeitures which accrue thereupon. Idem Statut.

5. The Steward of the Leet shall give this Statut. in Charge to the Jury on pain of 40s. to be divided between the Queen and the Informer. Idem.

6. Here, if the Jury wilfully forbear to Present Offences of this kind, the Steward, or Bailiff shall Impannel another Jury to enquire of their Default, which being found, the first Jury shall forfeit 20s. a piece. Idem.

7. Upon default of Presentment in Leets within one Year, Justices of the Peace in Sessions, Justices

Justices of Oyre and Terminer and Justices of Assize in circuits have power to hear and determine the said Offences. Idem Statut.

8. This Act shall not restrain the taking of Smelts, Loches, Minnews, Bullheads, Gudgeons or Eels, with Nets or Engines formerly used, so that no other Fish be taken therewith. Nor shall extend to abridge any former priviledge of conservancy lawfully Enjoyed, or Fishing in Tweede, Usk, or Wye, or in waters let to farm by the Queen, so that the Spawn, or Fry of Fish be not therein wilfully destroyed. Idem Statut.

9. None shall unlawfully break down Fish-pond-heads, or Fish there without License of the Owner, or enter into any Chace, Park, Woods or other grounds, and there kill and chase the Deer, or take any Hawk or Hawks Eggs, in pain to suffer three Monthes imprisonment, and to be bound with good Sureties to the good behaviour for seven years after. Anno 5 Eliz. cap. 21. Fishing, Hunting, Hawking.

10. The Party grieved shall in Sessions, or elsewhere, recover treble damages against the Delinquent, and upon Satisfaction shall have Liberty to procure his release of the behaviour. Idem Statut.

11. Justices of Oyer and Terminer, Assize, Peace, and Gaol delivery in Session, have power to hear and determine those Offences. Idem Statut.

12. None shall erect a Weare or Wears along the Sea shore, or in any Haven or Creek, or shall willingly destroy Fishing.

destroy the Spawn or Fry of Fish on paine of 10l. to be divided between the King and the Prosecutor. Neither shall any Fish in any of the said Places, with any Net of a lesse Mesh than three inches and an half betwixt knot and knot, (except for the taking of Smoults in Norfolk only) or with a Canvas, Net or other Engine, whereby the Spawn or Fry of Fish may be destroyed, on paine to forfeit the said Net or Engine and 10 s. in money, to be divided betwixt the Poor of the Parish and the Prosecutor, and to be levied in Corporations by the Head Officers, and in other Places by Distrels and Sale of Goods, upon a Warrant of a Justice of Peace, directed unto the Constable, and Churchwardens of the Parish, for that purpose. Stat. 3. Jac. cap. 12.

13. If any person after the first of August next shall in the River Severn Fish with, or make use of any Engine or Device, whereby any Salmon, Trout, or Barbel, under the length appointed by the Statute of 1 Eliz. shall be taken or killed, or shall Fish with any Net for Salmon, Salmon mart, Salmon peal, Pike, Carp, Trout, Barbel, Chub, or Grayling, the Mesh thereof shall be under two inches and an half Square from knot to knot, or above 20 yards in length, and two yards in breadth, or above 50 yards in length, and six yards in breadth in the wing of the Net, in the said River from Ripplelock-stake to Gloucester Bridge, or above 50 yards in length below Gloucester Bridge and 60 yards in breadth in the wing of the Net, or shall Fish with more than one of these Nets at once, or shall use any Device for taking the Fry of Eels, or

he shall forfeit 5 l. for every Offence, with the Fish Instruments, &c. and 5 l. a time for watering Hemp or Flax in the said River. Statut. 13 Car. 2. cap. 9.

14. The Justices of the Peace of the Counties of Worcester, Salop and Gloucester, shall be Conservators of the said River, in their respective Counties, and make one, or more Conservators under them, to whom, or to any Constable, &c. upon their own Knowledge or Information of such Offence, shall Issue Warrants to search all suspected Houses, for such unlawful Instruments, and seize them. Idem Stat.

15. None shall be punished for the said Offences but by Information or Indictment before the Justices of the Assize, or General Quarter Sessions. The one Moiety of the Forfeitures are to the Poor, and the other to the Prosecutor, to be levied by Fieri Facias, or Cap. ad satisfaciendum. Idem Stat.

16. The Jurisdiction of the Lords of Leets, and all Rights, Titles, &c. of the King and others, in the said River, always saved. Idem Stat.

1. If any Person shall unlawfully Hunt, take in Toyles, kill, or take away any Deer, in any Forest, Chase, Purlieu, Park, or other Ground Inclosed, or shall be aiding or assisting therein, and be thereof Convicted by Confession, one Witness or more, shall forfeit 20 l. though no Deer be killed or wounded; and for each wounded, killed or taken 30 l. to be levied by Distress upon his Goods,

and for want of Distress Imprisonment for a Year without Bail, and to be set in the Pillory for an Hour in the next Market-Town, Anno 3 & 4 W. & M. cap. 10.

2. Every Constable, Headborough, &c. shall have power to search the Houses of suspected persons, and where any Venison, or Skin of Deer shall be found, to apprehend the Party, and if he do not give a good account how he came by them, he shall be convicted by the Justice of such offence, and be subject to the forfeitures and penalties as if thereof Convicted. Idem Statut.

3. To prevent flight, or removal of Offenders after Conviction, The Constable, or other Officer, are authorised to detain the Offender in Custody, during such time (not exceeding two days) as a Return may be made to the Warrant for the Distress. Idem Statut.

4. All owners of Deer, and persons acting under them, may oppose and resist Offenders, and be equally indemnified, as if such fact had been committed within any Ancient Chase, or Park Idem Statut.

5. No Certiorari to be allowed for removal of the Proceeding, unless the Party convicted become bound to the Prosecutor in 50l. to pay his full Costs and Damages, to be ascertained upon his Oath. In default whereof, the Justice shall proceed to the Execution of the Conviction. Idem Statut.

6. No

6. No Offender punished by this Act, shall be prosecuted upon any other Statute for the same offence. Idem Statut.

7. Any person prosecuted for putting this Act in Execution, may plead the General Issue, and give the special Matter in Evidence. Idem Statut.

8. If any person shall in the Night time pull down any Pales, or Walls of any Forest, Park, Chase, &c. and be thereof Convict, shall suffer Imprisonment three Months without Bail. Idem Statut.

1. That whereas divers Laws have been made for the Preservation of the Game, which wanting due Execution, the Game of this Kingdom hath been destroyed. It is Enacted that all Laws now in force, and every Article not hereby altered, or repealed, shall now be Executed under the Penalties therein contained to be levied and disposed of, as the said Laws direct. Anno 4 & 5 W. & M. cap. 7.

Hunting, Hawking, Fishing, Fowling.

2. In case any Hare, Partrige, Pheasant, Fish, Fowl, or other Game shall be found in any Offenders House, the Offender is to be carried before a Justice of Peace of the County, and being convicted shall forfeit any Sum not under 5 s. nor above 20 s. For want of Distress the Offender is to be carryed to the House of Correction for a Month, or some other space of time, not less than 10 Days. And if any person not qualified by the Laws, shall Keep, or

Use

like any Bows, Greyhounds, Setting Dogs, Ferrets, Purslet, Mayes, Snares, &c. he shall be subject to the same Penalties, as the Person who shall be found to have any Hare, Partridge, Pheasant, Fish, Fowl, or other Game in his Custody, as aforesaid. And if any Person charged shall not give sufficient Evidence of his Innocence, he shall be Convicted thereof in the same manner as the Person first charged therewith, and to such Person to Person, till the said Offender be discovered. Idem Statut.

3. All persons Authorized by Lords of Manors, &c. may within their Royalties, oppose and resist such Offenders in the night time, in the same manner as if such fact had been committed within any antient Chase, Park, or Warren enclosed. Idem Statut.

4. No person shall keep any Net, Angle, Leap, Pitch, &c. and that owners of Fisheries or their Deputies, may seise and keep all Nets, &c. Also any person by a Warrant from a Justice of the Peace, may, in the day time, search the Houses of persons suspected, and seise, detain, or destroy them, as prohibited to be kept by persons unqualified by Law. Idem Statut.

5. This Act shall not abridge any Fisher-man or his Apprentice, lawfully authorized to Fish in Navigable Rivers, with lawful Nets. Idem Statut.

6. If any inferiour Tradesman, Apprentice, or dissolute person presume to Hunt, Hawk, Fish, or Fowl, he shall be Subject to the Penalties of this Act, and be sued for wilful trespass, in coming

ing on any Mans Land, and if found guilty, the Plaintiff shall not only recover his damages, but full costs of suit. Idem Statut.

7. For preserving the red and black Game of Growse or Heathpolts; No person on any Mountains, Hills, Heaths, Moors, Forests, and Hares or other Wasts, shall burn between the 2d of February and 24 of June, any Grig, Ling, Heath, Fuze, Gos or Fern, upon pain of being committed to the house of correction, for 10 Days or a Month, there to be whipt, and kept to hard labour. Idem. Statut.

FINIS.

The TABLE for *Hunting*.

Being the First Part.

Introduction page 1 *Terms of Art* 4
Some general Names of Hounds *and* Beagles 18
Terms relating to Forests, &c. 19
Of the Hound Rache *and* Sluth-hound 27
Of the Blood-hound ibid. *Of the* Gaze-hound 31
Of the Grey-hound 32 *Of the* Harrier *and* Terrier 34
Of the Hound Levyner *or* Lyemer 35
Of the Tumbler ibid. *Of the* Spaniel 36
Of the White Hound 37 *Of the* Fallow Hounds 38
Of the Dun Hound ibid.
The marks of a good Hound 40
The Election of a Dog and Bitch for good Whelps ibid.
How to enter young Hounds at the Hart, *&c.* 41
Of Coursing with Gray-hounds 43
The Laws of the Leash or Coursing 46
The Stiles of Hunting different from the English, *both Antique and Foreign* 48
Of Hart *Hunting* 53 *The Nature of a* Hart ib.
Of the Rut of Harts 58
Of the time of Harts *Mewing* 61
Of the Coats and Colours of Harts, *and their diversities* ib.
How to know an old Hart *by the Slot, Entries*, &c. 63
The names and diversities of Harts-heads *according to Hunters Terms* 65
How to seek a Hart *in his haunts or feeding places according to the seasons of the year* 66
In what manner the Huntsman shall go drawing in the Springs 67
Directions for Harbouring a Stag 68
How to find a Hart *lost the night before* 69
How to find a Hart *in high Woods* 70
How to unharbour a Hart *and cast off the Hounds* ib.
What subtilties are used in hunting a Hart *at force* 71
How to kill a Hart *at Bay* 74

Directions at the death of a Buck *or* Hart 75
Buck-*Hunting* 76 Roe-*Hunting* 78
Rain-Deer-*Hunting* 81 Hare *Hunting* 85
Of Parks and Warrens 91 *Of* Coney-*catching* 92
Of the Ferret 94 *Of* Fox-*Hunting* 96
Of Badger-*Hunting* 101 *Of* Otter-*Hunting* 105
Of the Squirrel 108
Of the Marter *or* Wild-Cat 110
A short Account of Beasts not Hunted in England, *and first of the* Wolf 112
Of Wild-goat-*Hunting* 117
Of Wild-boar-*Hunting* 119 *Of* Bear-*Hunting* 123
Of the Beaver 127 *Of the* Elk 129
Diseases and Cures of Hounds 131
Diseases and Cures of Spaniels 135

The TABLE for *Hawking*.

Being the Second Part.

THE *Introduction* Page 1 *Terms of Art* 4
Of the Haggard Faulcon 11
How to know the Nature and Disposition of several Hawks, *and what must be observed from thence* 17
Of the Faulcon 19
Of the Manning, Luring, Flights, and Mewing of a Faulcon, *with other things belonging to an Ostrager* 21
Of bathing a Faulcon *lately reclaimed; how to* make *her, and to bate the Check* 25
How to enseam a Faulcon *with her Castings and Scowrings* 27
General instructions for an Ostrager or Faulconer 31
How to hood a Hawk 34
How to make your Hawk *know your Voice and her own feeding* 35
How to make your Hawk *bold and venturous* 36
How to make a Hawk *know the Lure* ib.
How to make a Hawk *flying* 37
A Flight for a Haggard 39

How

*How to make a Soar-*Faulcon, *or* Haggard *kill at the very first* ib.
Remedy for a Hawks *taking ſtand in a Tree* 40
How to help a Hawk *froward and coy through pride of greaſe* ib.
How to make a Hawk *hold in her head, and not mind Check* 41
How to continue and keep a Hawk *in her high flying* ib.
A flight for the Hern 43
Of the Haggard-faulcon; *why ſo called, her good ſhape and properties, &c.* 45
Of the Barbary-faulcon 47 *Of the* Gerfaulcon 48
Of the Saker 50
Of the Lanner, Lanneret, *and* Tuniſan 51
Of the Merlin 54
Of the Mewing of Merlins, Faulcons *&c. And which is the beſt way of Mewing* 56
Of the Hobby 58 *Of the* Goſhawk 59
How to make the Soar or Haggard Goſhawk 61
How to make a Goſhawk *fly to the* Partridge 62
How to help a Goſhawk *that turneth Tail to Tail, and giveth over her Game* 63
How to make a Goſhawk *fly quickly* 64
How to fly a Goſhawk *to the River* ib.
An excellent way to preſerve a Goſhawk *in the time of her flying, eſpecially in hot weather* 65
How to fly the Wild-gooſe *or* Crane *with the* Goſhawk 66
How to Mew a Goſhawk, *and draw her out of the Mew, and* make *her flying* ib.
Some general Obſervations for an Oſtrager or Faulconer in keeping and reclaiming a Goſhawk 67
Of the Sparrow Hawk 70
How to make a Sparrow-hawk, *whether Eyeſs, Brancher, Soar, Mew'd, or Haggard* 71
How to Mew Sparrow-hawks 75
The duty of a Faulconer, with neceſſary Rules and Obſervations for him to follow 76

Of Diſeaſes and dangerous accidents incident to Hawks, and their ſeveral Cures. 77
Of Caſtings and Mewtings, either good or bad according to their ſeveral Complexions and Smells 78
Of the Cataract 81. Of the Pantas or Aſthma ib.
Of Worms 82 Of the Filanders 83
Another approved medicine for Filanders or Worms in Hawks 84 Of Hawks Lice ib.
A ſafe and eaſie way to kill Lice in Hawks ib.
How to keep and maintain all manner of Hawks in health, good plight and liking 85
Of the Formica 86
Of the Frownce ib. Of the Pip 87
How to remedy that Hawk which endeweth not, nor putteth over as ſhe ſhould do 88
How to make a Hawk feed eagerly that hath loſt appetite, without bringing her low ib.
How to raiſe a Hawk that is low and poor 89
How to remedy a Hawk that is ſlothful and averſe to flying ib.
Of ſwoln feet in a Hawk 90
How to ſcour Hawks before you caſt them into the Mew ib.

The TABLE for *Fowling*.

Being the Third Part.

WHat Fowling is, with the nature and diverſity of all manner of Fowl Page 1
Of the haunts of Fowl 3
The readieſt way to take great Fowl with Nets 5
How to take ſmall Water-fowl with Nets 6
How to take ſmall Birds with Bird-lime 7
How to take great Fowl with Lime twigs 9
Of the great and leſſer Springs 11
Of the Fowling-piece and Stalking-horſe 13
How to take all manner of Landfowl by day and night 18
Of Bat-fowling 20
Of the Day net, and how to take Birds therewith 21

Of

The TABLE for FOWLING.

Of taking small Birds which use Hedges and Bushes with Lime-twigs 22

How to make the best sort of Bird-lime, *and how to use it* 25

The best and most experienced way of making Water Bird-lime 27

In what manner Snipes *may be taken with* Bird-lime ib.

The manner of taking Felfares *by* Water-Bird lime 28

How to take Pidgeons *with* Lime-twigs 29

How to take Magpies, Crows, *and* Gleads, *with* Lime-twigs ib.

How to take Rooks *when they pull up the Corn by the* Root 30

How to take Birds with Baits, either Land *or* Water-fowl ib.

A most excellent and approved way how to take the Hern 32 *How to take* Pheasants *several ways* 33

The fashion of Pheasant-*Nets* 36

Of driving of Pheasant-*powts* ib.

The season for the using of Nets or Lime 39

How to take Partridges *several ways* ib.

Of taking Partridges *with Nets* 40

How to take Partridges *with* Bird-lime ib.

How to drive Partridges 41

How to take Partridges *with a Setting dog* 42

How to take Rails, Quails, Morepots, *&c.* 44

How to elect and train a Setting-dog from a Whelp till he comes to perfection 45

How to train a Water-dog, and the use thereof 49

How to take, preserve, and keep all manner of Singing-birds 52 *Of the* Nightingale 53

How to make a Net-trap to take him 55

Of the Canary-bird 59 *Of the* Black Bird 61

Of the Throstle 62 *Of the* Robin-red-breast 64

Of the Wren 65 *Of the* Wood lark 66

Of the Skie lark; *the several ways to take them, and when taken, how to order them* 69

Of the Linnet 71

Of

Of the Gold-finch *or* Chriſtmas fool, *ſo called in* Norfolk 72 *Of the* Tit-lark 73
Of the Chaffinch 74 *Of the* Starling *ibid.*
Of the Redſtart 75 *Of the* Bull finch 76
Of the Green-finch *ib.* *Of the* Hedge-Sparrow *ib.*

The TABLE for *Fiſhing*.

Being the Fourth and laſt Part.

THE *Introduction* Page 1 *An Encomium, or ſomewhat in praiſe of Fiſhermen and Fiſhing* 7
Fiſh-ponds to improve, and the fiſh therein contained 8
Carps *to make them grow to an extraordinary bigneſs in a Pond* 10
General Obſervations to be underſtood in the Art of Angling 11
Aſtrological Elections for Angling in general 13
What proviſion is to be made for Angling tools 14
A Line after the beſt manner, how to make 15
Of the Hook, Flote, and other things worth the obſervation 16
Flies Natural and Artificial, and how to uſe them 17
Of Ground-angling 22 *Of Night-angling* 23
What times are ſeaſonable, and what unſeaſonable to angle in 24 *Of the* Barbel 26
Of the Bream 28 *Of the* Bleak 30
Of the Bull-head *or* Millers Thumb 31
Of the Chevin 32 *Of the* Char *ibid.*
Of the Chub, Cheven, Chavender 33
Of the Carp 34 *Of* Dace *or* Dare 36
Of the Eel 38 *Of the* Flounder 40
Of the Gudgeon 41 *Of the* Guinard *ib.*
Of the Loach 42 *Of the* Minnow 43
Of the Pope *or* Ruff *ibid.* *Of the* Pike 44
Of the Pearch 47 *Of the* Rud 49
Of the Roach 50 *Of the* Stickleback 52
Of the Salmon 53 *Of the* Tench 55
Of the Torcoth 58 *Of the* Trout *ibid.*

Of

Of the Umber *or* Grayling 60 *Fishes Haunt, &c. ib.*
Experimental Observations and Directions for Angling 83 *An Angling Song* 71

The Table for the *Hunting-Horse.*

Being an *Appendix* to the first Part.

OF Hunting-Horses *in general, their excellency, and the necessity and benefit of the Art of Keeping* Page 1
Of Breeding, the choice of a Stallion, *and* Mares, *with some general Remarks on Marks and Colours* 7
Of the Age *a* Hunter *should be of, before he be put to Hunting: Of the Stable, and* Groom, *and of the Horses first taking up from Grass, in order to his further dieting* 21
How to order the Hunter *for the first Fortnight* 30
Of the second Fortnights Diet, and of his first Hunting, and what Chases are most proper to Train him 45
Of the Horses third Fortnights keeping, and first Through *sweating* 58
Of making a Hunting Match, its advantages and disadvantages 63
Of the ordering the Hunter *for a Match or Plate* 69
Of the means to judge of your Horses state of Body, and of curing all Casualities that may happen after Matching 79 *Of Riding a Hunting Match, or Heats for a Plate, and the advantages belonging to each* 83

The Table to the Appendix of the *Hunter.*

A *Choice Purge* 93
The Green Water for Sorrances 95
A speedy safe and certain Cure for the Farcy 97
The Digestive Pouder 98
The Farcy *Diet Drink* 99 *A Pectoral Drink* 100
A Poultess to dissolve a swelling 101
A Poultess to Mollify or Ripen a Swelling 102
An Eye-Water 103 *A Remedy against the Worms* 104

For a Horſe bit by a mad Dog 104
The Bliſtering Plaiſter 105
The Plaiſter to be applied after the Bliſtering Plaiſter ibid.
The Diet-Drink for the bite of a Mad-Dog 106

An Abridgment of *Manwood's* Foreſt Laws. And of all the Acts of Parliament made ſince; which relate to *Hunting*, &c.

OF *the Foreſt Laws of* Canutus, Page 1
An Abſtract of all the Laws made for the Preſervation of Game, &c. 9
Of a Foreſt, *what it is, and whereof it doth conſiſt* ib.
Of a Frank Chaſe, *a* Park, *and a* Free Warren, *what they are, and how they differ from each other* 11
Of the Foreſt *Laws in general* 13
Of the Courts belonging to the Foreſt, *the Judges thereof, and the Officers attending the ſame* 16
Of the Limits of the Foreſt, *and the Offences committed therein* 29
Of the time of Fawning for the Deer *of the* Foreſt, *&c.* 33
Of keeping Dogs within the Foreſt, *&c.* 35
Of Venilon, *its Name and Signification* 37
Of Hunting *and* Hawking *within the* Foreſt, *&c.* 38
Of the Purlieu, *or* Pourallæ *of the* Foreſt, *and who may* Hunt therein, *when, how often, how far, and in what caſes* 50
Of the Officers belonging to the Pourallees, *called* Rangers 67
How and where Offences in the Pourallees *ſhall be tried, and puniſhed* 69
An Abſtract of all the Statute *Laws, from* Magna-Charta *to this time, made for the Preſervation of the Game of* Hunting, Hawking, *&c.* 75
Charters and Ordinances of the Foreſt ibid.
Of Bows, and Guns, and Shooting at Game 82
Of Hunting, Hawking, Fowling *and* Fiſhing 85, 86

FINIS.